GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 56

The Anabasis of Alexander

Arrian

ΑΛΕΞΑΝΔΡΟΥ ΑΝΑΒΑΣΙΣ

The Anabasis of Alexander

Part One: Books I–IV

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

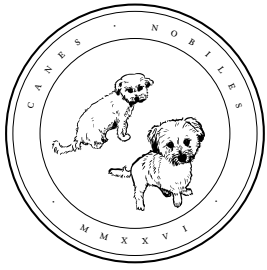


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is used under a Creative Commons
Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License
creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0



Volume 56 of the Canes Nobiles Greek interlinear texts

The Greek text follows Roos's Teubner Arrian

Set from the Perseus Digital Library, with corrections

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

Words Roos secludes are not printed; words he supplies
are printed without their brackets; ⁂ marks a gap in the text.

CONTENTS

BOOK I

I · The Sources, and the Haemus 7
II · The Getae, the Celts, and Pelium 19
III · Thebes Revolts 32
IV · The Fall of Thebes 40
V · Across the Hellespont 48
VI · The Granicus 56
VII · Sardis, Ephesus, and Miletus 69
VIII · Halicarnassus 82
IX · Lycia, Pamphylia, and a Plot 96
X · Aspendus, the Pisidians, and Gordium 105

BOOK II

I · Memnon at Sea, and the Gordian Knot 115
II · Cilicia, and the Illness at Tarsus 124
III · Darius Comes Behind 132
IV · Issus 144
V · The Persian Queens, and Darius' Letter 154
VI · Tyre Refuses Him 166

BOOK II

(continued)

VII · The Mole and the Fleet 174
VIII · The Fall of Tyre 188
IX · Darius' Offer, and Gaza 197

BOOK III

I · Egypt, Alexandria, and Ammon 207
II · To the Tigris 220
III · The Eve of Gaugamela 229
IV · Gaugamela 239
V · Babylon, Susa, and the Persian Gates 251
VI · The Death of Darius 264
VII · Hyrcania and Aria 277
VIII · Philotas and Parmenion 288
IX · The Capture of Bessus 297

BOOK IV

I · The Revolt of Sogdiana 305
II · The Scythians, and the Disaster at the Polytimetus 314
III · The Death of Cleitus 326
IV · Callisthenes and Obeisance 337
V · The Conspiracy of the Pages 347
VI · Scythian Envoys, and the End of Spitamenes 353
VII · The Sogdian Rock and Rhoxane 363
VIII · Into India 375
IX · Massaga 389
X · Aornus 396

BOOK I

I · THE SOURCES, AND THE HAEMUS

Arrian follows Ptolemy and Aristobulus, who served with Alexander and wrote after his death, and gives what other writers tell only as reported. Philip dies, and Alexander, about twenty, is granted the leadership against Persia by the Greeks of the Peloponnese, all but the Spartans, while Athens yields in alarm. In spring he marches into Thrace, where the free Thracians on Mount Haemus roll wagons down on the phalanx; the men open ranks or lie under locked shields, and the Thracians are routed. He defeats the Triballians at the Lyginus and reaches the Danube, where their king has fled to an island. His ships cannot land there, so he gathers hides and dugouts to cross against the Getae.

Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος ὁ Ἀριστοβούλου pr.1
Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus and Aristobulus the (son)-of-Aristobulus
ὅσα μὲν ταὐτὰ ἄμφω περὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοῦ Φιλίππου
whatever indeed the-same both about Alexander the (son)-of-Philip
συνέγραψαν, ταῦτα ἐγὼ ὡς πάντῃ ἀληθῆ ἀναγράφω,
wrote these-things I as wholly true record
ὅσα δὲ οὐ ταὐτά, τούτων τὰ πιστότερα ἐμοὶ
whatever-things but not the-same of-these the more-trustworthy to-me
φαινόμενα καὶ ἅμα ἀξιαφηγητότερα ἐπιλεξάμενος.
appearing and at-the-same-time more-worth-relating having-selected
ἄλλοι μὲν δὴ ἄλλα ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀνέγραψαν, οὐδ' pr.2
others indeed indeed other-things about Alexander recorded nor
ἔστιν ὑπὲρ ὅτου πλείονες ἢ ἀξυμφωνότεροι ἐς ἀλλήλους·
is-there about whom more or more-discordant with one-another
ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ Πτολεμαῖός τε καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος πιστότεροι
but to-me Ptolemy both and Aristobulus more-trustworthy
ἔδοξαν ἐς τὴν ἀφήγησιν, ὁ μὲν ὅτι συνεστράτευσε
seemed for the narrative the-one indeed because campaigned-with

βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, Ἀριστόβουλος, Πτολεμαῖος δὲ πρὸς τῷ
king Alexander Aristobulus Ptolemy and besides the
ξυστρατεῦσαι ὅτι καὶ αὐτῷ βασιλεῖ ὄντι αἰσχρότερον ἢ
to-have-campaigned-with because also for-him king being more-shameful than
τῳ ἄλλῳ ψεύσασθαι ἦν· ἄμφω δέ, ὅτι τετελευτηκότος
for-any other to-lie it-was both and because having-died
ἤδη Ἀλεξάνδρου ξυγγράφουσιν αὐτοῖς ἥ τε ἀνάγκη καὶ ὁ
already Alexander writing for-them the both compulsion and the
μισθὸς τοῦ ἄλλως τι ἢ ὡς συνηνέχθη ξυγγράψαι ἀπῆν.
reward of-the otherwise anything than as it-happened to-write was-absent
pr.3 ἔστι δὲ ἃ καὶ πρὸς ἄλλων ξυγγεγραμμένα, ὅτι
there-are and things-which also by others written because
καὶ αὐτὰ ἀξιαφήγητά τε μοι ἔδοξε καὶ οὐ πάντῃ
also themselves worth-relating both to-me seemed and not wholly
ἄπιστα, ὡς λεγόμενα μόνον ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀνέγραψα.
untrustworthy as being-said only about Alexander I-recorded
ὅστις δὲ θαυμάσεται ἀνθ' ὅτου ἐπὶ τοσοῖσδε συγγραφεῦσι
whoever and will-wonder for what with so-many historians
καὶ ἐμοὶ ἐπὶ νοῦν ἦλθεν ἥδε ἡ συγγραφή, τά τε
also to-me into mind came this the history the-things both
ἐκείνων πάντα τις ἀναλεξάμενος καὶ τοῖσδε τοῖς ἡμετέροις
of-those all one having-read and these the our
ἐντυχὼν οὕτω θαυμαζέτω.
having-met-with so let-him-wonder
1.1 λέγεται δὴ Φίλιππος μὲν τελευτῆσαι ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος
it-is-said indeed Philip indeed to-have-died under archon
Πυθοδήλου Ἀθήνησι· παραλαβόντα δὲ τὴν βασιλείαν
Pythodelus at-Athens having-received and the kingship
Ἀλέξανδρον, παῖδα ὄντα Φιλίππου, ἐς Πελοπόννησον
Alexander son being of-Philip to Peloponnese
παρελθεῖν· εἶναι δὲ τότε ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν ἔτη Ἀλέξανδρον.
to-have-gone to-be and then about the twenty years Alexander

ἐνταῦθα ξυναγαγόντα τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ὅσοι ἐντὸς 1.2
there having-assembled the Greeks as-many-as within
Πελοποννήσου ἦσαν, αἰτεῖν παρ᾽ αὐτῶν τὴν ἡγεμονίαν τῆς
Peloponnese were to-ask from them the leadership of-the
ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας στρατιᾶς, ἥντινα Φιλίππῳ ἤδη ἔδοσαν·
against the Persians expedition which to-Philip already they-had-given
καὶ αἰτήσαντα λαβεῖν παρ᾽ ἑκάστων πλὴν Λακεδαιμονίων·
and having-asked to-receive from each except Lacedaemonians
Λακεδαιμονίους δὲ ἀποκρίνασθαι μὴ εἶναί σφισι πάτριον
Lacedaemonians and to-answer not to-be for-them ancestral
ἀκολουθεῖν ἄλλοις, ἀλλ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἄλλων ἐξηγεῖσθαι.
to-follow others but themselves others to-lead
νεωτερίσαι δὲ ἄττα καὶ τῶν Ἀθηναίων τὴν πόλιν.
to-have-revolted and somewhat also of-the Athenians the city
ἀλλὰ Ἀθηναίους γε τῇ πρώτῃ ἐφόδῳ Ἀλεξάνδρου 1.3
but Athenians at-least at-the first approach of-Alexander
ἐκπλαγέντας καὶ πλείονα ἔτι τῶν Φιλίππῳ δοθέντων
panic-struck and more still than-the to-Philip given
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ εἰς τιμὴν συγχωρῆσαι. ἐπανελθόντα δὲ ἐς
to-Alexander for honor to-have-conceded having-returned and to
Μακεδονίαν ἐν παρασκευῇ εἶναι τοῦ ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν στόλου.
Macedonia in preparation to-be of-the to — Asia expedition
ἅμα δὲ τῷ ἦρι ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ Θρᾴκης, ἐς 1.4
at-the-same-time and with-the spring to-march toward Thrace to
Τριβαλλοὺς καὶ Ἰλλυριούς, ὅτι τε νεωτερίζειν ἐπύθετο
Triballians and Illyrians because both to-be-revolting he-learned
Ἰλλυριούς τε καὶ Τριβαλλούς, καὶ ἅμα ὁμόρους
Illyrians both and Triballians and at-the-same-time neighbors
ὄντας οὐκ ἐδόκει ὑπολείπεσθαι ὅτι μὴ πάντῃ ταπεινωθέντας
being not it-seemed to-be-left-behind except — wholly humbled
οὕτω μακρὰν ἀπὸ τῆς οἰκείας στελλόμενον.
so far from the home setting-out

1.5 ὁρμηθέντα δὴ ἐξ Ἀμφιπόλεως ἐμβαλεῖν εἰς Θρᾴκην τὴν
having-set-out indeed from Amphipolis to-invade into Thrace the
τῶν αὐτονόμων καλουμένων Θρᾳκῶν, Φιλίππους πόλιν
of-the independent called Thracians Philippi city
ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχοντα καὶ τὸν Ὄρβηλον τὸ ὄρος. διαβὰς
on left keeping and — Orbelus the mountain having-crossed
δὲ τὸν Νέστον ποταμὸν λέγουσιν, ὅτι δεκαταῖος ἀφίκετο
and the Nestus river they-say that on-the-tenth-day he-arrived
ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τὸν Αἷμον.
at the mountain — Haemus

1.6 καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀπήντων αὐτῷ κατὰ τὰ στενὰ τῆς ἀνόδου
and there met him at the narrows of-the ascent
τῆς ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῶν τε ἐμπόρων πολλοὶ ὡπλισμένοι
the to the mountain of-the both traders many armed
καὶ οἱ Θρᾷκες οἱ αὐτόνομοι, παρεσκευασμένοι εἴργειν
and the Thracians the independent prepared to-keep-off
τοῦ πρόσω κατειληφότες τὴν ἄκραν τοῦ Αἵμου τὸν
from-the forward having-seized the summit — of-Haemus the
στόλον, παρ᾽ ἣν ἦν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡ πάροδος.
expedition along which was for-the army the passage

1.7 ξυναγαγόντες δὲ ἁμάξας καὶ προβαλόμενοι πρὸ σφῶν
having-collected and wagons and having-put-before in-front-of them
ἅμα μὲν χάρακι ἐχρῶντο ταῖς ἁμάξαις ἐς τὸ
at-the-same-time indeed as-a-palisade they-used the wagons for the
ἀπομάχεσθαι ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν, εἰ βιάζοιντο, ἅμα δὲ
to-fight-back from them if they-should-be-forced at-the-same-time and
ἐν νῷ εἶχον ἐπαφιέναι ἀνιοῦσιν ᾗ ἀποτομώτατον
in mind they-had to-let-loose on-those-going-up where steepest
τοῦ ὄρους ἐπὶ τὴν φάλαγγα τῶν Μακεδόνων τὰς
of-the mountain on the phalanx of-the Macedonians the
ἁμάξας. γνώμην δὲ πεποίηντο ὅτι ὅσῳ πυκνοτέρᾳ
wagons judgment and they-had-formed that by-as-much-as denser

τῇ φάλαγγι καταφερόμεναι συμμίξουσιν αἱ ἅμαξαι, τοσῷδε
the phalanx rushing-down they-would-meet the wagons by-so-much
μᾶλλόν τι διασκεδάσουσιν αὐτὴν βίᾳ ἐμπεσοῦσαι.
more somewhat they-would-scatter it by-force having-fallen-on
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ βουλὴ γίγνεται ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα 1.8
for-Alexander and deliberation arises how most-safely
ὑπερβαλεῖ τὸ ὄρος· καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐδόκει διακινδυνευτέα, οὐ
he-will-cross the mountain and since it-seemed must-be-risked not
γὰρ εἶναι ἄλλῃ τὴν πάροδον, παραγγέλλει τοῖς ὁπλίταις,
for to-be elsewhere the passage he-orders the hoplites
ὁπότε καταφέροιντο κατὰ τοῦ ὀρθίου αἱ ἅμαξαι, ὅσοις
whenever should-rush-down down the steep the wagons for-as-many-as
μὲν ὁδὸς πλατεῖα οὖσα παρέχοι λῦσαι τὴν τάξιν, τούτους
indeed the-road wide being should-allow to-break the formation these
δὲ διαχωρῆσαι, ὡς δι' αὐτῶν ἐκπεσεῖν τὰς ἁμάξας·
and to-part-aside so-that through them to-fall-out the wagons
ὅσοι δὲ περικαταλαμβάνοιντο, ξυννεύσαντας, τοὺς δὲ 1.9
as-many-as and should-be-caught having-bent-together some and
καὶ πεσόντας ἐς γῆν, συγκλεῖσαι ἐς ἀκριβὲς τὰς ἀσπίδας,
even having-fallen to ground to-lock-together to exactness the shields
τοῦ κατ' αὐτῶν φερομένας τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ τῇ ῥύμῃ
so-as on them rushing the wagons and with-the momentum
κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ὑπερπηδώσας ἀβλαβῶς ἐπελθεῖν. καὶ
according-to the likelihood having-leapt-over harmlessly to-pass-on and
οὕτω ξυνέβη ὅπως παρήνεσέ τε Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ εἴκασεν.
so it-happened as exhorted both Alexander and conjectured
οἱ μὲν γὰρ διέσχον τὴν φάλαγγα, αἱ δ' ὑπὲρ τῶν 1.10
the-ones indeed for parted the phalanx the-others and over the
ἀσπίδων ἐπικυλισθεῖσαι ὀλίγα ἔβλαψαν· ἀπέθανε δὲ οὐδεὶς
shields having-rolled little harmed died and no-one
ὑπὸ ταῖς ἁμάξαις. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Μακεδόνες θαρσήσαντες,
under the wagons there indeed the Macedonians having-taken-courage

ὅτι ἀβλαβεῖς αὐτοῖς, ἃς μάλιστα ἐδεδίεσαν, αἱ ἅμαξαι
because harmless to-them which most they-had-feared the wagons
ἐγένοντο, σὺν βοῇ ἐς τοὺς Θρᾳκας ἐνέβαλον.
had-become with a-shout on the Thracians fell

1.11 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τοὺς τοξότας μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως
Alexander and the archers indeed from the right wing
πρὸ τῆς ἄλλης φάλαγγος, ὅτι ταύτῃ εὐπορώτερα
in-front-of the other phalanx because there easier
ἦν, ἐλθεῖν ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἐκτοξεύειν ἐς τοὺς Θρᾳκας ὅπῃ
it-was to-go ordered and to-shoot-at at the Thracians wherever
προσφέροιντο· αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τὸ ἄγημα καὶ τοὺς
they-should-advance he-himself and having-taken the agema and the
ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἦγεν.
shield-bearers and the Agrianians on the left led

1.12 ἔνθα δὴ οἱ τοξόται βάλλοντες τοὺς προεκθέοντας τῶν
there indeed the archers shooting the running-out-ahead of-the
Θρᾳκῶν ἀνέστελλον· καὶ ἡ φάλαγξ προσμίξασα οὐ
Thracians checked and the phalanx having-closed not
χαλεπῶς ἐξέωσεν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀνθρώπους ψιλοὺς καὶ
with-difficulty drove-out from the position men light-armed and
κακῶς ὡπλισμένους βαρβάρους, ὥστε Ἀλέξανδρον ἀπὸ τοῦ
badly armed barbarians so-that Alexander from the
εὐωνύμου ἐπάγοντα οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ ῥίψαντες
left advancing no-longer they-awaited but having-thrown-away
ὡς ἑκάστοις προὐχώρει τὰ ὅπλα κατὰ τοῦ ὄρους ἔφυγον.
as to-each it-was-feasible the arms down the mountain they-fled

1.13 καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν αὐτῶν ἐς χιλίους καὶ πεντακοσίους,
and died indeed of-them about thousand and five-hundred
ζῶντες δὲ ἄνδρες μὲν ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν δι᾽ ὠκύτητα καὶ
alive and men indeed few were-taken because-of swiftness and

τῆς χώρας ἐμπειρίαν, γυναῖκες δὲ ὅσαι ξυνείποντο αὐτοῖς
of-the country experience women and as-many-as followed them
ἑάλωσαν πᾶσαι, καὶ τὰ παιδάρια καὶ ἡ λεία πᾶσα ἑάλω.
were-captured all and the little-children and the booty all was-captured
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τὴν μὲν λείαν ὀπίσω ἀπέπεμψεν ἐς τὰς 2.1
Alexander and the indeed booty back sent-off to the
πόλεις τὰς ἐπὶ θαλάσσῃ, Λυσανίᾳ καὶ Φιλώτᾳ παραδοὺς
cities the on sea to-Lysanias and Philotas having-handed-over
διατίθεσθαι· αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ ἄκρον ὑπερβαλὼν προῄει διὰ
to-dispose-of he-himself and the summit having-crossed advanced through
τοῦ Αἵμου ἐς Τριβαλλούς, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸν Λύγινον
— Haemus to Triballians and arrives at the Lyginus
ποταμόν· ἀπέχει δὲ οὗτος ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἴστρου ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν
river is-distant and this from — Ister as toward —
Αἷμον ἰόντι σταθμοὺς τρεῖς.
Haemus for-one-going stages three
Σύρμος δὲ ὁ τῶν Τριβαλλῶν βασιλεύς, ἐκ πολλοῦ 2.2
Syrmus and the of-the Triballians king from long
πυνθανόμενος τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου τὸν στόλον, γυναῖκας μὲν
learning — of-Alexander the expedition women indeed
καὶ παῖδας τῶν Τριβαλλῶν προὔπεμψεν ἐπὶ τὸν Ἴστρον
and children of-the Triballians sent-ahead to — Ister
διαβαίνειν κελεύσας τὸν ποταμὸν ἐς νῆσόν τινα τῶν ἐν
to-cross having-ordered the river to island some of-the in
τῷ Ἴστρῳ· Πεύκη ὄνομα τῇ νήσῳ ἐστίν.
— Ister Peuce name to-the island is
ἐς ταύτην δὲ τὴν νῆσον καὶ οἱ Θρᾷκες οἱ πρόσχωροι 2.3
to this and the island also the Thracians the neighboring
τοῖς Τριβαλλοῖς προσάγοντος Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐκ πολλοῦ
to-the Triballians approaching Alexander from long
συμπεφευγότες ἦσαν καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Σύρμος ἐς ταύτην
having-fled-together were and himself — Syrmus to this

ξυμπεφεύγει ξὺν τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν· τὸ δὲ πολὺ πλῆθος
had-fled-together with the around him the and great multitude
τῶν Τριβαλλῶν ἔφυγεν ὀπίσω ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ἔνθενπερ
of-the Triballians fled back to the river whence-indeed
τῇ προτεραίᾳ ὡρμήθη Ἀλέξανδρος.
on-the day-before had-set-out Alexander

2.4 ὡς δὲ ἔμαθεν αὐτῶν τὴν ὁρμήν, καὶ αὐτὸς ὑποστρέψας
when and he-learned their the movement also himself having-turned-back
τὸ ἔμπαλιν ἐπὶ τοὺς Τριβαλλοὺς ἦγεν, καὶ καταλαμβάνει
the back against the Triballians led and catches-them
καταστρατοπεδεύοντας ἤδη. καὶ οἱ μὲν καταληφθέντες
encamping already and the-ones indeed caught
πρὸς τῷ νάπει τῷ παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν παρετάσσοντο·
beside the glen the along the river were-drawn-up
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν μὲν φάλαγγα ἐς βάθος
Alexander and also himself the indeed phalanx in depth
ἐκτάξας ἐπῆγε, τοὺς τοξότας δὲ καὶ τοὺς σφενδονήτας
having-drawn-up led-on the archers and also the slingers
προεκθέοντας ἐκέλευσεν ἐκτοξεύειν τε καὶ σφενδονᾶν ἐς
running-out-ahead he-ordered to-shoot both and to-sling at
τοὺς βαρβάρους, εἴ πως προκαλέσαιτο αὐτοὺς ἐς τὰ
the barbarians if somehow he-might-draw-out them to the
ψιλὰ ἐκ τοῦ νάπους.
open from the glen

2.5 οἱ δὲ ὡς ἐντὸς βέλους ἐγένοντο, παιόμενοι ἐξέθεον ἐπὶ
they and when within missile they-came being-struck ran-out at
τοὺς τοξότας, ὅπως ἐς χεῖρας ξυμμίξειαν γυμνοῖς οὖσι
the archers so-that to hands they-might-close with-unarmored being
τοῖς τοξόταις. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς προήγαγεν αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς
the archers Alexander and when he-had-drawn them from the
νάπης ἔξω, Φιλώταν μὲν ἀναλαβόντα τοὺς ἐκ τῆς ἄνωθεν
glen out Philotas indeed having-taken the from the upper

Μακεδονίας ἱππέας προσέταξεν ἐμβάλλειν κατὰ τὸ κέρας
Macedonia cavalry ordered to-charge at the wing
τὸ δεξιόν, ᾗπερ μάλιστα προὐκεχωρήκεσαν ἐν τῇ ἐκδρομῇ·
the right where most they-had-advanced in the sally
Ἡρακλείδην δὲ καὶ Σώπολιν τοὺς ἐκ Βοττιαίας τε καὶ
Heracleides and and Sopolis the from Bottiaea both and
Ἀμφιπόλεως ἱππέας κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας ἐπάγειν ἔταξε.
Amphipolis cavalry at the left wing to-lead-on he-posted
τὴν δὲ φάλαγγα τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἵππον πρὸ 2.6
the and phalanx of-the infantry and the other horse in-front-of
τῆς φάλαγγος παρατείνας κατὰ μέσους ἐπῆγε. καὶ ἔστε
the phalanx having-extended at center led-on and while
μὲν ἀκροβολισμὸς παρ' ἑκατέρων ἦν, οἱ Τριβαλλοὶ οὐ μεῖον
indeed skirmishing from each-side was the Triballians not less
εἶχον· ὡς δὲ ἥ τε φάλαγξ πυκνὴ ἐνέβαλλεν ἐς αὐτοὺς
had when and the both phalanx dense charged at them
ἐρρωμένως καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς οὐκ ἀκοντισμῷ ἔτι, ἀλλ'
vigorously and the cavalry not with-javelin-throwing any-longer but
αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἵπποις ὠθοῦντες ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ προσέπιπτον,
together-with with-the horses pushing here and there fell-on
τότε δὴ ἐτράπησαν διὰ τοῦ νάπους εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
then indeed they-were-turned through the glen into the river
καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσι μὲν τρισχίλιοι ἐν τῇ φυγῇ, ζῶντες 2.7
and die indeed three-thousand in the flight alive
δὲ ὀλίγοι καὶ τούτων ἐλήφθησαν, ὅτι ὕλη τε δασεῖα
and few also of-these were-taken because wood both thick
πρὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἦν καὶ νὺξ ἐπιγενομένη τὴν ἀκρίβειαν
in-front-of the river was and night having-come-on the thoroughness
τῆς διώξεως ἀφείλετο τοὺς Μακεδόνας. αὐτῶν δὲ
of-the pursuit took-away-from the Macedonians of-their-own and

Μακεδόνων τελευτῆσαι λέγει Πτολεμαῖος ἱππέας μὲν
Macedonians to-have-died says Ptolemy cavalry indeed
ἕνδεκα, πεζοὺς δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς τεσσαράκοντα.
eleven infantry and about the forty

3.1 ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς μάχης τριταῖος ἀφικνεῖται Ἀλέξανδρος
from and the battle on-the-third-day arrives Alexander
ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἴστρον, ποταμῶν τῶν κατὰ τὴν
at the river the Ister of-rivers the throughout —
Εὐρώπην μέγιστον ὄντα καὶ πλείστην γῆν ἐπερχόμενον
Europe greatest being and most land traversing
καὶ ἔθνη μαχιμώτατα ἀπείργοντα, τὰ μὲν πολλὰ
and peoples most-warlike bounding the-ones indeed many
Κελτικά, ὅθεν γε καὶ αἱ πηγαὶ αὐτῷ ἀνίσχουσιν, ὧν
Celtic whence at-least also the springs for-it rise of-whom
τελευταίους Κουάδους καὶ Μαρκομάνους·
last Quadi and Marcomanni

3.2 ἐπὶ δὲ Σαυροματῶν μοῖραν, Ἰάζυγας· ἐπὶ δὲ Γέτας τοὺς
then and of-Sauromatians a-portion Iazyges then and Getae the
ἀπαθανατίζοντας· ἐπὶ δὲ Σαυρομάτας τοὺς πολλούς· ἐπὶ
immortalizing then and Sauromatians the many then
δὲ Σκύθας ἔστε ἐπὶ τὰς ἐκβολάς, ἵνα ἐκδιδοῖ κατὰ
and Scythians as-far to the outlets where it-discharges through
πέντε στόματα ἐς τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον.
five mouths into the Euxine sea

3.3 ἐνταῦθα καταλαμβάνει αὐτῷ ἡκούσας ναῦς μακρὰς ἐκ
there he-finds for-him having-come ships long from
Βυζαντίου διὰ τοῦ πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου κατὰ τὸν
Byzantium through the sea the Euxine up the
ποταμόν. ταύτας ἐμπλήσας τοξοτῶν τε καὶ ὁπλιτῶν
river these having-filled with-archers both and hoplites

τῇ νήσῳ ἐπέπλει, ἵνα οἱ Τριβαλλοί τε καὶ οἱ Θρᾷκες
to-the island sailed-against where the Triballians both and the Thracians
ξυμπεφευγότες ἦσαν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο βιάζεσθαι τὴν ἀπόβασιν.
having-fled-together were and tried to-force the landing
οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀπήντων ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὅπῃ αἱ νῆες 3.4
the and barbarians met-them at the river wherever the ships
προσπίπτοιεν· αἱ δὲ ὀλίγαι τε ἦσαν καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ οὐ
should-put-in the and few both were and the army not
πολλὴ ἡ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν, καὶ τῆς νήσου τὰ πολλὰ ἀπότομα
large the on them and of-the island the most-part sheer
ἐς προσβολήν, καὶ τὸ ῥεῦμα τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ παρ᾽ αὐτήν,
for attack and the current of-the river the along it
οἷα δὴ ἐς στενὸν συγκεκλεισμένον, ὀξὺ καὶ ἄπορον
as indeed into narrow shut-in swift and difficult
προσφέρεσθαι.
to-approach
ἔνθα δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος ἀπαγαγὼν τὰς ναῦς ἔγνω διαβαίνειν 3.5
there indeed Alexander having-withdrawn the ships decided to-cross
τὸν Ἴστρον ἐπὶ τοὺς Γέτας τοὺς πέραν τοῦ Ἴστρου
— Ister against the Getae the beyond — Ister
ᾠκισμένους, ὅτι τε συνειλεγμένους ἑώρα πολλοὺς ἐπὶ τῇ
settled because both assembled he-saw many on the
ὄχθῃ τοῦ Ἴστρου, ὡς εἴρξοντας, εἰ διαβαίνοι, — ἦσαν
bank — of-Ister as about-to-bar-him if he-should-cross were
γὰρ ἱππεῖς μὲν ἐς τετρακισχιλίους, πεζοὶ δὲ πλείους
for cavalry indeed about four-thousand infantry and more
τῶν μυρίων — καὶ ἅμα πόθος ἔλαβεν αὐτὸν
than-the ten-thousand and at-the-same-time longing seized him
ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Ἴστρου ἐλθεῖν.
beyond — Ister to-go

3.6 τῶν μὲν δὴ νεῶν ἐπέβη αὐτός· τὰς δὲ διφθέρας,
of-the indeed indeed ships embarked himself the and hides
ὑφ᾽ αἷς ἐσκήνουν, τῆς κάρφης πληρώσας καὶ ὅσα
under which they-camped with-the chaff having-filled and as-many-as
μονόξυλα πλοῖα ἐκ τῆς χώρας ξυναγαγών — ἦν δὲ
dugout boats from the country having-collected there-was and
καὶ τούτων εὐπορία πολλή, ὅτι τούτοις χρῶνται οἱ
also of-these abundance great because these use the
πρόσοικοι τῷ Ἴστρῳ ἐφ᾽ ἁλιείᾳ τε τῇ ἐκ τοῦ Ἴστρου
dwellers-by — Ister for fishing both the from — Ister
καὶ εἴποτε παρ᾽ ἀλλήλους ἀνὰ τὸν ποταμὸν στέλλοιντο
and if-ever to one-another up the river they-should-travel
καὶ λῃστεύοντες ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν οἱ πολλοί — ταῦτα ὡς
and plundering from them the many these as
πλεῖστα ξυναγαγὼν διεβίβαζεν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν τῆς στρατιᾶς
most having-collected he-carried-across on them of-the army
ὅσους δυνατὸν ἦν ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε τρόπῳ. καὶ γίγνονται
as-many-as possible was in the such manner and are
οἱ διαβάντες ἅμα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἱππεῖς μὲν ἐς χιλίους
the having-crossed together-with Alexander cavalry indeed about thousand
καὶ πεντακοσίους, πεζοὶ δὲ ἐς τετρακισχιλίους.
and five-hundred infantry and about four-thousand

By night Alexander crosses the Danube, leads his men through standing grain, and drives the Getae from their town, which he razes. Envoys come from the river peoples and from the Celts of the Ionian Gulf, who say they fear nothing but that the sky may fall on them. Hearing that Cleitus and Glaucias have revolted, he leaves the Autariatae to the Agrianian king Langarus and marches to Pelium. Trapped in a narrow defile, he drills the phalanx in silence until the Taulantians flee in fright, crosses the river under covering fire, and on the third day routs their careless camp; Cleitus burns the city and escapes to Glaucias.

διέβαλον δὲ τῆς νυκτὸς ᾗ λήιον ἦν σίτου βαθύ· καὶ ταύτῃ 4.1
they-crossed and in-the night where a-crop was of-grain deep and there
μᾶλλόν τι ἔλαθον προσχόντες τῇ ὄχθῃ. ὑπὸ
more somewhat they-escaped-notice having-put-in at-the bank toward
δὲ τὴν ἕω Ἀλέξανδρος διὰ τοῦ λήιου ἦγε, παραγγείλας
and the dawn Alexander through the crop led having-ordered
τοῖς πεζοῖς πλαγίαις ταῖς σαρίσσαις ἐπικλίνοντας τὸν
the infantry slanting with-the sarissas bending-down the
σῖτον οὕτω προάγειν ἐς τὰ οὐκ ἐργάσιμα. οἱ δὲ ἱππεῖς
grain so to-advance into the not tilled the and cavalry
ἕστε μὲν διὰ τοῦ λήιου προῄει ἡ φάλαγξ ἐφείποντο·
while indeed through the crop advanced the phalanx followed
ὡς δὲ ἐκ τῶν ἐργασίμων ἐξήλασαν, τὴν μὲν ἵππον 4.2
when and out-of the tilled-land they-rode-out the indeed horse
ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος παρήγαγεν, τὴν
to the right wing himself Alexander led-along the
φάλαγγα δὲ ἐν πλαισίῳ Νικάνορα ἄγειν ἐκέλευσε.
phalanx and in a-square Nicanor to-lead ordered
καὶ οἱ Γέται οὐδὲ τὴν πρώτην ἐμβολὴν τῶν ἱππέων 4.3
and the Getae not-even the first charge of-the cavalry
ἐδέξαντο· παράδοξος μὲν γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἡ τόλμα ἐφάνη
awaited unexpected indeed for to-them the daring appeared

τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου, ὅτι εὐμαρῶς οὕτως τὸν μέγιστον
— of-Alexander that easily so the greatest
τῶν ποταμῶν διεβεβήκει ἐν μιᾷ νυκτὶ τὸν Ἴστρον οὐ
of-the rivers he-had-crossed in one night — Ister not
γεφυρώσας τὸν πόρον, φοβερὰ δὲ καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος ἡ
having-bridged the crossing fearful and also of-the phalanx the
ξύγκλεισις, βιαία δὲ ἡ τῶν ἱππέων ἐμβολή.
locking-together violent and the of-the cavalry charge

4.4 καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἐς τὴν πόλιν καταφεύγουσιν, ἣ
and at-the indeed first to the city they-flee which
δὴ ἀπεῖχεν αὐτοῖς ὅσον παρασάγγην τοῦ Ἴστρου· ὡς
indeed was-distant for-them about a-parasang — from-Ister when
δὲ ἐπάγοντα εἶδον σπουδῇ Ἀλέξανδρον τὴν μὲν φάλαγγα
and advancing they-saw in-haste Alexander the indeed phalanx
παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν, ὡς μὴ κυκλωθεῖέν πῃ οἱ πεζοὶ
along the river so-that not they-be-surrounded anywhere the infantry
ἐνεδρευσάντων τῶν Γετῶν, τοὺς ἱππέας δὲ κατὰ μέτωπον,
having-laid-an-ambush the Getae the cavalry and in front
λείπουσιν αὖ καὶ τὴν πόλιν οἱ Γέται κακῶς τετειχισμένην,
they-leave again also the city the Getae badly walled
ἀναλαβόντες τῶν παιδαρίων καὶ τῶν γυναικῶν ἐπὶ τοὺς
having-taken-up of-the little-children and of-the women onto the
ἵππους ὅσα φέρειν οἱ ἵπποι ἠδύναντο·
horses as-many-as to-carry the horses were-able

4.5 ἦν δὲ αὐτοῖς ἡ ὁρμὴ ὡς πορρωτάτω ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
was and for-them the impulse as farthest from the river
ἐς τὰ ἔρημα. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τήν τε πόλιν λαμβάνει καὶ
into the wilds Alexander and the both city takes and
τὴν λείαν πᾶσαν ὅσην οἱ Γέται ὑπελίποντο. καὶ τὴν
the booty all as-much-as the Getae had-left-behind and the
μὲν λείαν Μελεάγρῳ καὶ Φιλίππῳ ἐπαναγαγεῖν δίδωσιν,
indeed booty to-Meleager and Philip to-bring-back he-gives

αὐτὸς δὲ κατασκάψας τὴν πόλιν θύει τε ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ
he-himself and having-razed the city sacrifices both on the bank
τοῦ Ἴστρου Διὶ Σωτῆρι καὶ Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ αὐτῷ τῷ
— of-Ister to-Zeus Savior and to-Heracles and to-the-very —
Ἴστρῳ ὅτι οὐκ ἄπορος αὐτῷ ἐγένετο, καὶ ἐπανάγει
Ister because not impassable to-him it-had-been and he-brings-back
αὐτῆς ἡμέρας σώους σύμπαντας ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
on-the-same day safe all to the camp
ἐνταῦθα ἀφίκοντο πρέσβεις ὡς Ἀλέξανδρον παρά τε τῶν 4.6
there arrived envoys to Alexander from both the
ἄλλων ὅσα αὐτόνομα ἔθνη προσοικεῖ τῷ Ἴστρῳ καὶ
others as-many-as independent peoples dwell-by — Ister and
παρὰ Σύρμου τοῦ Τριβαλλῶν βασιλέως· καὶ παρὰ Κελτῶν
from Syrmus the of-the-Triballians king and from Celts
δὲ τῶν ἐπὶ τῷ Ἰονίῳ κόλπῳ ᾠκισμένων ἦκον· μεγάλοι οἱ
and the on the Ionian gulf settled came great the
Κελτοὶ τὰ σώματα καὶ μέγα ἐπὶ σφίσι φρονοῦντες· πάντες
Celts the bodies and great on themselves thinking all
δὲ φιλίας τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐφιέμενοι ἥκειν ἔφασαν.
and friendship — of-Alexander desiring to-have-come said
καὶ πᾶσιν ἔδωκε πίστεις Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ ἔλαβε· τοὺς 4.7
and to-all gave pledges Alexander and received the
Κελτοὺς δὲ καὶ ἤρετο, ὅ τι μάλιστα δεδίττεται αὐτοὺς
Celts and also asked what ever most frightens them
τῶν ἀνθρωπίνων, ἐλπίσας ὅτι μέγα ὄνομα τὸ αὐτοῦ καὶ
of-the human-things having-hoped that great name the his both
ἐς Κελτοὺς καὶ ἔτι προσωτέρω ἥκει καὶ ὅτι αὐτὸν
to Celts and still farther has-come and that him
μάλιστα πάντων δεδιέναι φήσουσι.
most of-all to-fear they-will-say

4.8 τῷ δὲ παρ᾽ ἐλπίδα ξυνέβη τῶν Κελτῶν ἡ ἀπόκρισις·
to-him but contrary-to expectation happened of-the Celts the answer
οἷα γὰρ πόρρω τε ᾠκισμένοι Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ χωρία
as for far both settled from-Alexander and regions
δύσπορα οἰκοῦντες καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐς ἄλλα τὴν ὁρμὴν
hard-to-pass inhabiting and of-Alexander to other-things the impulse
ὁρῶντες ἔφασαν δεδιέναι μήποτε ὁ οὐρανὸς αὐτοῖς
seeing they-said to-fear lest-ever the sky on-them
ἐμπέσοι, Ἀλέξανδρόν τε ἀγασθέντες οὔτε δέει οὔτε κατ᾽
should-fall Alexander and having-admired neither from-fear nor for
ὠφέλειαν πρεσβεῦσαι παρ᾽ αὐτόν. καὶ τούτους φίλους τε
advantage to-have-sent-envoys to him and these friends both
ὀνομάσας καὶ ξυμμάχους ποιησάμενος ὀπίσω ἀπέπεμψε,
having-named and allies having-made back sent-away
τοσοῦτον ὑπειπὼν ὅτι ἀλαζόνες Κελτοί εἰσιν.
so-much having-remarked that boasters Celts are
5.1 αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπ᾽ Ἀγριάνων καὶ Παιόνων προὐχώρει. ἔνθα
he-himself and toward Agrianians and Paeonians advanced there
δὴ ἄγγελοι ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ Κλεῖτόν τε τὸν Βαρδύλεω
indeed messengers arrived to-him Cleitus both the (son)-of-Bardylis
ἀφεστάναι ἀγγέλλοντες καὶ Γλαυκίαν προσκεχωρηκέναι αὐτῷ
to-have-revolted announcing and Glaucias to-have-gone-over to-him
τὸν Ταυλαντίων βασιλέα· οἱ δὲ καὶ τοὺς Αὐταριάτας
the of-the-Taulantians king the-others and also the Autariatae
ἐπιθήσεσθαι αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν πορείαν ἐξήγγελλον· ὧν
to-be-going-to-attack him on the march reported which
δὴ ἕνεκα κατὰ σπουδὴν ἐδόκει ἀναζευγνύναι.
indeed on-account-of with haste it-seemed to-break-camp
5.2 Λάγγαρος δὲ ὁ τῶν Ἀγριάνων βασιλεὺς ἤδη μὲν
Langarus and the of-the Agrianians king already indeed
καὶ Φιλίππου ζῶντος ἀσπαζόμενος Ἀλέξανδρον δῆλος
also Philip living courting Alexander evident

ἦν καὶ ἰδίᾳ ἐπρέσβευσε παρ᾽ αὐτόν, τότε δὲ παρῆν
was and privately had-sent-envoys to him then and was-present
αὐτῷ μετὰ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν, ὅσους τε καλλίστους καὶ
with-him with the shield-bearers as-many-as both finest and
εὐοπλοτάτους ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν εἶχε·
best-armed around himself he-had
καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἔμαθεν ὑπὲρ τῶν Αὐταριατῶν πυνθανόμενον 5.3
and when he-learned about the Autariatae inquiring
Ἀλέξανδρον, οἵτινές τε καὶ ὁπόσοι εἶεν, οὐκ ἔφη
Alexander who both and how-many they-might-be not he-said
χρῆναι ἐν λόγῳ τίθεσθαι Αὐταριάτας· εἶναι γὰρ
it-was-necessary in account to-place the-Autariatae to-be for
ἀπολεμωτάτους τῶν ταύτῃ· καὶ αὐτὸς ἐμβαλεῖν ἐς τὴν
least-warlike of-the there and himself to-invade into the
χώραν αὐτῶν, ὡς ἀμφὶ τὰ σφέτερα μᾶλλόν τι
country of-them so-that about the own-affairs more somewhat
ἔχοιεν. καὶ κελεύσαντος Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐσβάλλει ἐς
they-might-be-occupied and having-ordered Alexander he-invades into
αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐμβαλὼν ἦγε καὶ ἔφερε τὴν χώραν
them and having-invaded he-plundered and he-ravaged the country
αὐτῶν. Αὐταριᾶται μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ τὰ αὑτῶν εἶχον·
of-them the-Autariatae indeed indeed about the own-affairs were-occupied
Λάγγαρος δὲ τά τε ἄλλα ἐτιμήθη μεγάλως πρὸς 5.4
Langarus and the both other-things was-honored greatly by
Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ δῶρα ἔλαβεν, ὅσα μέγιστα παρὰ
Alexander and gifts received those-which greatest among
βασιλεῖ τῷ Μακεδόνων νομίζεται· καὶ τὴν ἀδελφὴν τὴν
king the of-the-Macedonians are-customary and the sister the
Ἀλεξάνδρου Κύναν καὶ ταύτην ὡμολόγησε δώσειν αὐτῷ
of-Alexander Cyna and her he-promised to-give to-him
ἐς Πέλλαν ἀφικομένῳ Ἀλέξανδρος.
to Pella having-come Alexander

5.5 ἀλλὰ Λάγγαρος μὲν ἐπανελθὼν οἴκαδε νόσῳ ἐτελεύτησεν.
but Langarus indeed having-returned home by-disease died
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ παρὰ τὸν Ἐριγόνα ποταμὸν πορευόμενος
Alexander and along the Erigon river marching
ἐς Πέλλιον πόλιν ἐστέλλετο. ταύτην γὰρ κατειλήφει ὁ
to Pelium city set-out this for had-seized —
Κλεῖτος ὡς ἐχυρωτάτην τῆς χώρας· καὶ πρὸς ταύτην ὡς
Cleitus as strongest of-the country and to this when
ἦκεν Ἀλέξανδρος, καταστρατοπεδεύσας πρὸς τῷ Ἐορδαϊκῷ
came Alexander having-encamped by the Eordaicus
ποταμῷ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐγνώκει προσβάλλειν τῷ τείχει.
river on-the next-day had-decided to-attack the wall
5.6 οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κλεῖτον τὰ κύκλῳ τῆς πόλεως ὄρη
the and around — Cleitus the in-a-circle of-the city mountains
ὑπερδέξιά τε ὄντα καὶ δασέα κατεῖχον ὡς πάντοθεν
commanding both being and wooded held so-as from-every-side
ἐπιτίθεσθαι τοῖς Μακεδόσιν εἰ τῇ πόλει προσβάλλοιεν·
to-attack the Macedonians if the city they-should-attack
Γλαυκίας δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ τῶν Ταυλαντίων βασιλεὺς οὔπω παρῆν.
Glaucias and to-him the of-the Taulantians king not-yet was-present
5.7 Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν δὴ τῇ πόλει προσῆγεν· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι
Alexander indeed indeed to-the city advanced the and enemy
σφαγιασάμενοι παῖδας τρεῖς καὶ κόρας ἴσας τὸν ἀριθμὸν
having-slaughtered boys three and girls equal the number
καὶ κριοὺς μέλανας τρεῖς, ὥρμηντο μὲν ὡς δεξόμενοι
and rams black three had-rushed indeed as about-to-receive
ἐς χεῖρας τοὺς Μακεδόνας, ὁμοῦ δὲ γενομένων ἐξέλιπον
into hands the Macedonians close and having-become they-abandoned
καίτοι καρτερὰ ὄντα τὰ κατειλημμένα πρὸς σφῶν χωρία,
although strong being the seized by them positions
ὥστε καὶ τὰ σφάγια αὐτῶν κατελήφθη ἔτι κείμενα.
so-that also the victims of-them were-taken still lying

ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ κατακλείσας αὐτοὺς ἐς τὴν 5.8
on-that indeed indeed the day having-shut-up them into the
πόλιν καὶ στρατοπεδευσάμενος πρὸς τῷ τείχει ἐγνώκει
city and having-encamped by the wall had-decided
περιτειχισμῷ ἀποκλεῖσαι αὐτούς· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ παρῆν
with-a-circumvallation to-shut-off them on-the and next-day was-present
μετὰ πολλῆς δυνάμεως Γλαυκίας ὁ τῶν Ταυλαντίων
with great force Glaucias the of-the Taulantians
βασιλεύς. ἔνθα δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος τὴν μὲν πόλιν ἀπέγνω
king there indeed Alexander the indeed city despaired
ἑλεῖν ἂν ξὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει, πολλῶν μὲν ἐς αὐτὴν
to-take — with the present force many indeed into it
καὶ μαχίμων ξυμπεφευγότων, πολλῶν δὲ ἅμα τῷ
and warlike having-fled-together many and together-with —
Γλαυκίᾳ προσκεισομένων, εἰ αὐτὸς τῷ τείχει προσμάχοιτο.
Glaucias about-to-press-on if he-himself the wall should-fight-against
Φιλώταν δὲ ἀναλαβόντα τῶν ἱππέων ὅσους ἐς προφυλακὴν 5.9
Philotas and having-taken of-the cavalry as-many-as for an-outpost
καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐς ἐπισιτισμὸν
and the pack-animals the from the camp for foraging
ἔπεμπε. καὶ ὁ Γλαυκίας μαθὼν τὴν ὁρμὴν τῶν ἀμφὶ
he-sent and — Glaucias having-learned the movement of-the around
Φιλώταν ἐξελαύνει ἐπ᾽ αὐτούς, καὶ καταλαμβάνει τὰ κύκλῳ
Philotas rides-out against them and seizes the in-a-circle
ὄρη τοῦ πεδίου, ὅθεν οἱ ξὺν Φιλώτᾳ ἐπισιτιεῖσθαι ἔμελλον.
mountains of-the plain whence the with Philotas to-forage were-about
Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ἐπειδὴ ἀπηγγέλθη αὐτῷ, ὅτι κινδυνεύουσιν 5.10
Alexander and when it-was-reported to-him that are-in-danger
οἵ τε ἱππεῖς καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἰ νὺξ αὐτοὺς καταλήψεται,
the both cavalry and the pack-animals if night them will-overtake
αὐτὸς μὲν ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας
himself indeed having-taken the both shield-bearers and the archers

καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ ἱππέας ἐς τετρακοσίους ἐβοήθει
and the Agrianians and cavalry about four-hundred went-to-help
σπουδῇ· τὸ δὲ ἄλλο στράτευμα πρὸς τῇ πόλει ἀπέλιπεν,
in-haste the and other army by the city he-left
ὡς μὴ ἀποχωρήσαντος παντὸς τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ οἱ ἐκ
so-that not having-withdrawn all the army also the from
τῆς πόλεως ἐπιδραμόντες τοῖς ἀμφὶ Γλαυκίαν συμμίξειαν.
the city having-run-out with-the around Glaucias might-join
5.11 ἔνθα δὴ Γλαυκίας προσάγοντα Ἀλέξανδρον αἰσθόμενος
there indeed Glaucias approaching Alexander perceiving
ἐκλείπει τὰ ὄρη· οἱ δὲ ξὺν Φιλώτᾳ ἀσφαλῶς ἐπὶ τὸ
abandons the mountains the and with Philotas safely to the
στρατόπεδον διεσώθησαν. ἐδόκουν δ' ἔτι τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον ἐν
camp got-through-safe they-thought and still — Alexander in
δυσχωρίᾳ ἀπειληφέναι οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κλεῖτον καὶ Γλαυκίαν·
difficult-ground to-have-cut-off the around — Cleitus and Glaucias
5.12 τά τε γὰρ ὄρη τὰ ὑπερδέξια κατεῖχον πολλοῖς μὲν
the both for mountains the commanding they-held with-many indeed
ἱππεῦσι, πολλοῖς δὲ ἀκοντισταῖς καὶ σφενδονήταις καὶ
cavalry with-many and javelin-men and slingers and
ὁπλίταις δὲ οὐκ ὀλίγοις, καὶ οἱ ἐν τῇ πόλει κατειλημμένοι
hoplites and not few and the in the city shut-up
προσκείσεσθαι ἀπαλλαττομένοις ἤμελλον· τά τε χωρία δι'
to-press-on on-them-withdrawing were-about the both positions through
ὧν ἡ πάροδος ἦν τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ στενὰ καὶ ὑλώδη ἐφαίνετο,
which the passage was — for-Alexander narrow and wooded appeared
τῇ μὲν πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπειργόμενα, τῇ
on-one-side indeed by the river hemmed-in on-the-other
δὲ ὄρος ὑπερύψηλον ἦν καὶ κρημνοὶ πρὸς τοῦ ὄρους,
and a-mountain very-high was and cliffs by the mountain
ὥστε οὐδὲ ἐπὶ τεσσάρων ἀσπίδων ἂν τῷ στρατεύματι
so-that not-even on four shields — for-the army

ἡ πάροδος ἐγένετο. ἔνθα δὴ ἐκτάσσει τὸν στρατὸν
the passage would-have-been there indeed draws-up the army
Ἀλέξανδρος ἕως ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι τὸ βάθος τῆς φάλαγγος.
Alexander as-far-as hundred and twenty the depth of-the phalanx
ἐπὶ τὸ κέρας δὲ ἑκατέρωθεν διακοσίους ἱππέας ἐπιτάξας 6.1
on the wing and on-each-side two-hundred cavalry having-posted
παρήγγελλε σιγῇ ἔχειν τὸ παραγγελλόμενον ὀξέως
he-ordered in-silence to-keep the being-commanded quickly
δεχομένους.
receiving
καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἐσήμηνεν ὀρθὰ ἀνατεῖναι τὰ δόρατα 6.2
and at-the indeed first he-signaled upright to-raise the spears
τοὺς ὁπλίτας, ἔπειτα ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος ἀποτεῖναι ἐς
the hoplites then at a-signal to-extend for
προβολήν, καὶ νῦν μὲν ἐς τὸ δεξιὸν ἐγκλῖναι τῶν
the-charge and now indeed to the right to-incline of-the
δοράτων τὴν σύγκλεισιν, αὖθις δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ ἀριστερά. καὶ
spears the close-array again and to the left and
αὐτὴν δὲ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔς τε τὸ πρόσω ὀξέως ἐκίνησε
itself and the phalanx to both the forward quickly he-moved
καὶ ἐπὶ τὰ κέρατα ἄλλοτε ἄλλῃ παρήγαγε.
and to the wings now-here now-there led-along
καὶ οὕτω πολλὰς τάξεις τάξας τε καὶ μετακοσμήσας ἐν 6.3
and so many formations having-formed both and having-rearranged in
ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον οἷον ἔμβολον ποιήσας τῆς
short time on the left a-sort-of wedge having-made of-the
φάλαγγος ἐπῆγεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. οἱ δὲ πάλαι μὲν
phalanx led-on against the enemy the-ones and long indeed
ἐθαύμαζον τήν τε ὀξύτητα ὁρῶντες καὶ τὸν κόσμον τῶν
wondered the both swiftness seeing and the order of-the

δρωμένων· τότε δὲ προσάγοντας ἤδη τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ἀλέξανδρον
things-being-done then and approaching already the around Alexander
οὐκ ἐδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λείπουσι τοὺς πρώτους λόφους.
not they-awaited but abandon the first hills

6.4 ὁ δὲ καὶ ἐπαλαλάξαι ἐκέλευσε τοὺς Μακεδόνας καὶ τοῖς
he and also to-raise-the-war-cry ordered the Macedonians and with-the
δόρασι δουπῆσαι πρὸς τὰς ἀσπίδας· οἱ δὲ Ταυλάντιοι ἔτι
spears to-clash against the shields the and Taulantians still
μᾶλλον ἐκπλαγέντες πρὸς τῆς βοῆς ὡς πρὸς τὴν πόλιν
more panic-struck at the shout as toward the city
ἐπανήγαγον σπουδῇ τὸν στρατόν.
led-back in-haste the army

6.5 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ λόφον τινὰς κατέχοντας ἰδὼν οὐ πολλοὺς
Alexander and a-hill some holding seeing not many
τῶν πολεμίων, παρ᾽ ὃν αὐτῷ ἡ πάροδος ἐγίγνετο,
of-the enemy past which for-him the passage was
παρήγγειλε τοῖς σωματοφύλαξι καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἑταίροις,
ordered the bodyguards and the around himself companions
ἀναλαβόντας τὰς ἀσπίδας ἀναβαίνειν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους καὶ
having-taken-up the shields to-mount on the horses and
ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τὸν γήλοφον· ἐκεῖσε δὲ ἐλθόντας, εἰ ὑπομένοιεν
to-ride against the hillock there and having-come if should-stand-fast
οἱ κατειληφότες τὸ χωρίον, τοὺς ἡμίσεας καταπηδῆσαι ἀπὸ
the having-seized the position the half to-leap-down from
τῶν ἵππων καὶ ἀναμιχθέντας τοῖς ἱππεῦσι πεζοὺς μάχεσθαι.
the horses and having-mingled with-the cavalry on-foot to-fight

6.6 οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι τὴν ὁρμὴν τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου ἰδόντες
the and enemy the onset the of-Alexander seeing
λείπουσι τὸν γήλοφον καὶ παρεκκλίνουσιν ἐφ᾽ ἑκάτερα τῶν
leave the hillock and turn-aside to either-side of-the
ὀρῶν. ἔνθα δὴ καταλαβὼν Ἀλέξανδρος τὸν γήλοφον
mountains there indeed having-seized Alexander the hillock

σὺν τοῖς ἑταίροις τούς τε Ἀγριᾶνας μεταπέμπεται καὶ
with the companions the both Agrianians sends-for and
τοὺς τοξότας, ὄντας ἐς διςχιλίους· τοὺς δὲ ὑπασπιστὰς
the archers being about two-thousand the and shield-bearers
διαβαίνειν τὸν ποταμὸν ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις τὰς
to-cross the river ordered and after these the
τάξεις τῶν Μακεδόνων· ὁπότε δὲ διαβάντες τύχοιεν,
battalions of-the Macedonians whenever and having-crossed they-happened
ἐπ᾽ ἀσπίδα ἐκτάσσεσθαι, ὡς πυκνὴν εὐθὺς διαβάντων
to shield(-side) to-deploy so-that dense at-once of-those-having-crossed
φαίνεσθαι τὴν φάλαγγα· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐν προφυλακῇ ὢν
to-appear the phalanx he-himself and in outpost being
ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου ἀφεώρα τῶν πολεμίων τὴν ὁρμήν.
from the hill watched of-the enemy the movement
οἱ δέ, ὁρῶντες διαβαίνουσαν τὴν δύναμιν, κατὰ τὰ 6.7
they and seeing crossing the force along the
ὄρη ἀντεπῄεσαν, ὡς τοῖς μετὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπιθησόμενοι
mountains came-on-against as the with Alexander about-to-attack
τελευταίοις ἀποχωροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ πελαζόντων ἤδη
last withdrawing he and as-they-were-approaching already
αὐτὸς ἐκθεῖ σὺν τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτόν, καὶ ἡ φάλαγξ, ὡς
himself runs-out with the around himself and the phalanx as
διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπιοῦσα, ἐπηλάλαξεν· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι
through the river attacking raised-the-war-cry the and enemy
πάντων ἐπὶ σφᾶς ἐλαυνόντων ἐγκλίναντες ἔφευγον· καὶ
all on them charging having-given-way fled and
ἐν τούτῳ ἐπῆγεν Ἀλέξανδρος τούς τε Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς
in this led-on Alexander the both Agrianians and the
τοξότας δρόμῳ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. καὶ πρῶτος μὲν
archers at-a-run as toward the river and first indeed
αὐτὸς φθάσας διαβαίνει·
himself having-got-ahead crosses

6.8 τοῖς τελευταίοις δὲ ὡς εἶδεν ἐπικειμένους τοὺς πολεμίους
the last and when he-saw pressing the enemy
ἐπιστήσας ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ τὰς μηχανὰς ἐξακοντίζειν ὡς
having-set-up on the bank the engines to-shoot as
πορρωτάτω ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐκέλευσεν ὅσα ἀπὸ μηχανῶν
farthest from them ordered as-many-as from engines
βέλη ἐξακοντίζεται, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας δὲ ἐκ μέσου τοῦ
missiles are-shot and the archers and from middle of-the
ποταμοῦ ἐκτοξεύειν, ἐπεσβάντας καὶ τούτους. καὶ οἱ μὲν
river to-shoot having-waded-in also these and the-ones indeed
ἀμφὶ τὸν Γλαυκίαν εἴσω βέλους παρελθεῖν οὐκ ἐτόλμων,
around — Glaucias within missile-range to-come not dared
οἱ Μακεδόνες δὲ ἐν τούτῳ ἀσφαλῶς ἐπέρασαν τὸν
the Macedonians and in this safely crossed the
ποταμόν, ὥστε οὐδεὶς ἀπέθανεν ἐν τῇ ἀποχωρήσει αὐτῶν.
river so-that no-one died in the withdrawal of-them

6.9 τρίτῃ δὲ ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνης ἡμέρᾳ καταμαθὼν Ἀλέξανδρος
on-the-third and from that day having-learned Alexander
κακῶς αὐλιζομένους τοὺς ἀμφὶ Κλεῖτον καὶ Γλαυκίαν,
badly bivouacking the around Cleitus and Glaucias
καὶ οὔτε φυλακὰς ἐν τῇ τάξει αὐτοῖς φυλαττομένας
and neither guards in the formation by-them being-kept
οὔτε χάρακα ἢ τάφρον προβεβλημένους, οἷα δὴ ξὺν
nor palisade or ditch put-before as indeed with
φόβῳ ἀπηλλάχθαι οἰομένων Ἀλέξανδρον, ἐς μῆκος τε
fear to-have-withdrawn thinking Alexander to length both
οὐκ ὠφέλιμον ἀποτεταμένην αὐτοῖς τὴν τάξιν, ὑπὸ νύκτα
not useful extended by-them the line toward night
ἔτι λαθὼν διαβαίνει τὸν ποταμόν, τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς
still escaping-notice crosses the river the both shield-bearers

ἅμα οἳ ἄγων καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς τοξότας
together-with him leading and the Agrianians and the archers
καὶ τὴν Περδίκκου καὶ Κοίνου τάξιν.
and the of-Perdiccas and of-Coenus battalion
καὶ προστέτακτο μὲν ἀκολουθεῖν τὴν ἄλλην στρατιάν· 6.10
and had-been-ordered indeed to-follow the other army
ὡς δὲ καιρὸν εἶδεν εἰς ἐπίθεσιν, οὐ προσμείνας ὁμοῦ
when and opportunity he-saw for attack not having-waited together
γενέσθαι πάντας ἐφῆκε τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας·
to-be all he-sent-in the archers and the Agrianians
οἱ δὲ ἀπροσδόκητοί τε ἐπιπεσόντες καὶ φάλαγγι κατὰ
they and unexpected both having-fallen-on and in-phalanx on
κέρας, ᾗπερ ἀσθενεστάτοις αὐτοῖς καρτερωτάτῃ τῇ
wing where weakest for-them with-the-strongest the
ἐμβολῇ προσμίξειν ἔμελλον, τοὺς μὲν ἔτι ἐν ταῖς εὐναῖς
charge to-engage were-about the-ones indeed still in the beds
κατέκτεινον, τοὺς δὲ φεύγοντας εὐμαρῶς αἱροῦντες, ὥστε
they-killed the-others and fleeing easily catching so-that
πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐγκατελήφθησαν καὶ ἀπέθανον, πολλοὶ
many indeed there were-caught and died many
δὲ ἐν τῇ ἀποχωρήσει ἀτάκτῳ καὶ φοβερᾷ γενομένῃ· οὐκ
and in the withdrawal disorderly and fearful having-become not
ὀλίγοι δὲ καὶ ζῶντες ἐλήφθησαν.
few and also alive were-taken
ἐγένετο δὲ ἡ δίωξις τοῖς ἀμφὶ Ἀλέξανδρον μέχρι πρὸς 6.11
was and the pursuit for-the around Alexander as-far as
τὰ ὄρη τῶν Ταυλαντίων· ὅσοι δὲ καὶ ἀπέφυγον
the mountains of-the Taulantians as-many-as and also escaped
αὐτῶν, γυμνοὶ τῶν ὅπλων διεσώθησαν. Κλεῖτος δὲ ἐς
of-them stripped of-the arms got-through-safe Cleitus and to

τὴν πόλιν τὸ πρῶτον καταφυγὼν ἐμπρήσας τὴν πόλιν
the city the first having-fled having-set-fire-to the city
ἀπηλλάγη παρὰ Γλαυκίαν ἐς Ταυλαντίους.
withdrew to Glaucias to Taulantians

III · THEBES REVOLTS

Exiles slip into Thebes, kill two officers of the garrison on the Cadmea, and persuade the assembly to revolt on the story that Alexander is dead in Illyria. He marches fast and is at Onchestus before they know it, and the rebels insist it is Alexander son of Aeropus who comes. He camps by the city and waits for an embassy, but the exiles and Boeotarchs push the people to war. Ptolemy says Perdiccas attacked the palisade without orders and fell wounded. The Thebans rout the archers, then break before the phalanx and are driven through their own gates, and the Phocians, Plataeans, and other Boeotians slaughter them without restraint.

7.1 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῶν φυγάδων τινὲς τῶν ἐκ Θηβῶν φευγόντων
in this and of-the exiles some of-the from Thebes exiled
παρελθόντες νύκτωρ ἐς τὰς Θήβας, ἐπαγαγομένων τινῶν
having-come-in by-night to — Thebes having-brought-in some
αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ νεωτερισμῷ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως, Ἀμύνταν μὲν καὶ
them for revolution from the city Amyntas indeed and
Τιμόλαον τῶν τὴν Καδμείαν ἐχόντων οὐδὲν ὑποτοπήσαντας
Timolaus of-the — Cadmea holding nothing having-suspected
πολέμιον ἔξω τῆς Καδμείας ἀπέκτειναν ξυλλαβόντες·
hostile outside — Cadmea killed having-seized
7.2 ἐς δὲ τὴν ἐκκλησίαν παρελθόντες ἐπῆραν τοὺς Θηβαίους
to and the assembly having-come-forward they-roused the Thebans
ἀποστῆναι ἀπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου, ἐλευθερίαν τε προϊσχόμενοι,
to-revolt from Alexander freedom both holding-out
παλαιὰ καὶ καλὰ ὀνόματα, καὶ τῆς βαρύτητος τῶν
old and fine names and from-the oppressiveness of-the

Μακεδόνων ἤδη ποτὲ ἀπαλλαγῆναι. πιθανώτεροι δὲ ἐς
Macedonians now at-last to-be-rid more-persuasive and to
τὸ πλῆθος ἐφαίνοντο τεθνηκέναι Ἀλέξανδρον ἰσχυριζόμενοι
the multitude they-appeared to-have-died Alexander insisting
ἐν Ἰλλυριοῖς·
among Illyrians
καὶ γὰρ καὶ πολὺς ὁ λόγος οὗτος καὶ παρὰ πολλῶν 7.3
and for also great the report this and from many
ἐφοίτα, ὅτι τε χρόνον ἀπῆν οὐκ ὀλίγον καὶ ὅτι
was-going-about because both time he-was-absent not short and because
οὐδεμία ἀγγελία παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ἀφῖκτο, ὥστε, ὅπερ φιλεῖ
no message from him had-come so-that as is-wont
ἐν τοῖς τοιοῖσδε, οὐ γιγνώσκοντες τὰ ὄντα τὰ μάλιστα
in the such-cases not knowing the things-being the most
καθ᾽ ἡδονήν σφισιν εἴκαζον.
according-to pleasure for-them they-conjectured
πυθομένῳ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὰ τῶν Θηβαίων οὐδαμῶς 7.4
for-having-learned and Alexander the of-the Thebans in-no-way
ἐδόκει ἀμεληθέα εἶναι, τήν τε τῶν Ἀθηναίων πόλιν
it-seemed to-be-neglected to-be the both of-the Athenians city
δι᾽ ὑποψίας ἐκ πολλοῦ ἔχοντι καὶ τῶν Θηβαίων τὸ
in suspicion from long holding and of-the Thebans the
τόλμημα οὐ φαῦλον ποιουμένῳ, εἰ Λακεδαιμόνιοί τε
daring not slight considering if Lacedaemonians both
πάλαι ἤδη ταῖς γνώμαις ἀφεστηκότες καί τινες καὶ
long already in-the minds having-revolted and some also
ἄλλοι τῶν ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ καὶ Αἰτωλοὶ οὐ βέβαιοι ὄντες
others of-the in Peloponnese and Aetolians not steadfast being
συνεπιλήψονται τοῦ νεωτερισμοῦ τοῖς Θηβαίοις.
will-join-in of-the revolution with-the Thebans

7.5 ἄγων δὴ παρὰ τὴν Ἐορδαίαν τε καὶ τὴν Ἐλιμιῶτιν καὶ
leading indeed along — Eordaea both and — Elimiotis and
παρὰ τὰ τῆς Στυμφαίας καὶ Παραυαίας ἄκρα ἑβδομαῖος
along the — of-Stymphaea and Parauaea heights on-the-seventh-day
ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Πέλινναν τῆς Θετταλίας. ἔνθεν δὲ ὁρμηθεὶς
arrives at Pelinna — of-Thessaly thence and having-set-out
ἕκτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἐσβάλλει ἐς τὴν Βοιωτίαν, ὥστε οὐ
on-the-sixth day invades into — Boeotia so-that not
πρόσθεν οἱ Θηβαῖοι ἔμαθον εἴσω Πυλῶν παρεληλυθότα
before the Thebans learned within Gates having-come
αὐτὸν πρὶν ἐν Ὀγχηστῷ γενέσθαι ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάσῃ.
him until in Onchestus to-be with the army whole
7.6 καὶ τότε δὲ οἱ πράξαντες τὴν ἀπόστασιν στράτευμα
and then also the having-done the revolt an-army
ἐκ Μακεδονίας Ἀντιπάτρου ἀφῖχθαι ἔφασκον, αὐτὸν δὲ
from Macedonia of-Antipater to-have-come said himself and
Ἀλέξανδρον τεθνάναι ἰσχυρίζοντο, καὶ τοῖς ἀπαγγέλλουσιν
Alexander to-have-died insisted and with-the reporting
ὅτι οὗτος αὐτὸς προσάγει Ἀλέξανδρος χαλεπῶς εἶχον·
that this himself approaches Alexander badly they-took-it
ἄλλον γάρ τινα ἥκειν Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Ἀερόπου.
another for some to-have-come Alexander the (son)-of-Aeropus
7.7 ὁ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐξ Ὀγχηστοῦ ἅρας τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ
— and Alexander from Onchestus having-set-out on-the next-day
προσῆγε πρὸς τὴν πόλιν τῶν Θηβαίων κατὰ τὸ τοῦ
advanced toward the city of-the Thebans by the —
Ἰολάου τέμενος· οὗ δὴ καὶ ἐστρατοπέδευσεν, ἐνδιδοὺς
of-Iolaus precinct where indeed also he-encamped giving
ἔτι τοῖς Θηβαίοις τριβήν, εἰ μεταγνόντες ἐπὶ τοῖς
still to-the Thebans delay if having-changed-their-minds about the
κακῶς ἐγνωσμένοις πρεσβεύσαιντο παρ' αὐτόν.
badly resolved-things they-might-send-envoys to him

οἱ δὲ τοσούτου ἐδέησαν ἐνδόσιμόν τι παρασχεῖν 7.8
they and so-much fell-short conciliatory anything to-offer
ἐς ξύμβασιν, ὥστε ἐκθέοντες ἐκ τῆς πόλεως οἵ
toward agreement that running-out from the city the
τε ἱππεῖς καὶ τῶν ψιλῶν οὐκ ὀλίγοι ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ
both cavalry and of-the light-troops not few as-far as the
στρατόπεδον ἠκροβολίζοντο ἐς τὰς προφυλακάς, καί τινας
camp skirmished at the outposts and some
καὶ ἀπέκτειναν οὐ πολλοὺς τῶν Μακεδόνων.
also killed not many of-the Macedonians
καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐκπέμπει τῶν ψιλῶν καὶ τοξοτῶν, ὥστε 7.9
and Alexander sends-out of-the light-troops and archers so-as
αὐτῶν ἀναστεῖλαι τὴν ἐκδρομήν· καὶ οὗτοι οὐ χαλεπῶς
their to-check the sally and these not with-difficulty
ἀνέστειλαν ἤδη τῷ στρατοπέδῳ αὐτῷ προσφερομένους. τῇ
checked already to-the camp itself rushing on-the
δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναλαβὼν τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν καὶ περιελθὼν
and next-day having-taken the army whole and having-gone-around
κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς φερούσας ἐπ' Ἐλευθεράς τε καὶ τὴν
by the gates the leading to Eleutherae both and —
Ἀττικήν, οὐδὲ τότε προσέμιξε τοῖς τείχεσιν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ'
Attica not-even then did-he-engage the walls themselves but
ἐστρατοπέδευσεν οὐ πολὺ ἀπέχων τῆς Καδμείας, ὥστε ἐγγὺς
encamped not far being-distant — from-Cadmea so-that near
εἶναι ὠφέλειαν τῶν Μακεδόνων τοῖς τὴν Καδμείαν ἔχουσιν.
to-be help of-the Macedonians for-those — Cadmea holding
οἱ γὰρ Θηβαῖοι τὴν Καδμείαν διπλῷ χάρακι 7.10
the for Thebans — Cadmea with-a-double palisade
ἐφρούρουν ἀποτειχίσαντες, ὡς μήτε ἔξωθέν τινα
guarded having-walled-off so-that neither from-outside anyone
τοῖς ἐγκατειλημμένοις δύνασθαι ἐπωφελεῖν, μήτε αὐτοὺς
the shut-in to-be-able to-help nor themselves

ἐκθέοντας βλάπτειν τι σφᾶς, ὁπότε τοῖς ἔξω πολεμίοις
running-out to-harm anything them whenever the outside enemy
προσφέροιντο. Ἀλέξανδρος δέ — ἔτι γὰρ τοῖς Θηβαίοις
they-should-attack Alexander and still for the Thebans
διὰ φιλίας ἐλθεῖν μᾶλλόν τι ἢ διὰ κινδύνου
through friendship to-come more somewhat than through danger
ἤθελε — διέτριβε πρὸς τῇ Καδμείᾳ κατεστρατοπεδευκώς.
he-wished waited by — Cadmea having-encamped

7.11 ἔνθα δὴ τῶν Θηβαίων οἱ μὲν τὰ βέλτιστα ἐς τὸ
there indeed of-the Thebans the-ones indeed the best for the
κοινὸν γιγνώσκοντες ἐξελθεῖν ὥρμηντο παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον
common-good judging to-go-out were-eager to Alexander
καὶ εὑρέσθαι συγγνώμην τῷ πλήθει τῶν Θηβαίων τῆς
and to-obtain pardon for-the multitude of-the Thebans for-the
ἀποστάσεως· οἱ φυγάδες δὲ καὶ ὅσοι τοὺς φυγάδας
revolt the exiles and also as-many-as the exiles
ἐπικεκλημένοι ἦσαν, οὐδενὸς φιλανθρώπου τυχεῖν ἂν παρ᾽
having-called-in were nothing humane to-obtain — from
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀξιοῦντες, ἄλλως τε καὶ βοιωταρχοῦντες
Alexander expecting especially both and being-Boeotarchs
ἔστιν οἳ αὐτῶν, παντάπασιν ἐνῆγον τὸ πλῆθος ἐς τὸν
there-are some of-them altogether urged-on the multitude to the
πόλεμον. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ οὐδ᾽ ὡς τῇ πόλει προσέβαλλεν.
war Alexander and not-even so the city attacked

8.1 ἀλλὰ λέγει Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου, ὅτι Περδίκκας,
but says Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus that Perdiccas
προτεταγμένος τῆς φυλακῆς τοῦ στρατοπέδου σὺν τῇ
posted-in-command of-the guard of-the camp with the
αὐτοῦ τάξει καὶ τοῦ χάρακος τῶν πολεμίων οὐ πολὺ
his-own battalion and from-the palisade of-the enemy not far
ἀφεστηκώς, οὐ προσμείνας παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου τὸ ἐς τὴν μάχην
being-distant not having-waited from Alexander the for the battle

ξύνθημα αὐτὸς πρῶτος προσέμιξε τῷ χάρακι καὶ διασπάσας
signal himself first engaged the palisade and having-torn-apart
αὐτὸν ἐνέβαλεν ἐς τῶν Θηβαίων τὴν προφυλακήν.
it fell on of-the Thebans the outpost
τούτῳ δὲ ἑπόμενος Ἀμύντας ὁ Ἀνδρομένους, ὅτι καὶ 8.2
him and following Amyntas the (son)-of-Andromenes because also
ξυντεταγμένος τῷ Περδίκκᾳ ἦν, ἐπήγαγε καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν
brigaded-with — Perdiccas he-was led-on also himself the
αὑτοῦ τάξιν, ὡς εἶδε τὸν Περδίκκαν προεληλυθότα εἴσω
his-own battalion when he-saw — Perdiccas having-advanced within
τοῦ χάρακος. ταῦτα δὲ ἰδὼν Ἀλέξανδρος, ὡς μὴ μόνοι
the palisade these-things and seeing Alexander so-that not alone
ἀποληφθέντες πρὸς τῶν Θηβαίων κινδυνεύσειαν, ἐπῆγε
cut-off by the Thebans they-might-be-endangered led-on
τὴν ἄλλην στρατιάν.
the other army
καὶ τοὺς μὲν τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας ἐκδραμεῖν 8.3
and the indeed archers and the Agrianians to-sally
ἐσήμηνεν εἴσω τοῦ χάρακος, τὸ δὲ ἄγημά τε καὶ τοὺς
he-signaled within the palisade the and agema both and the
ὑπασπιστὰς ἔτι ἔξω κατεῖχεν. ἔνθα δὴ Περδίκκας τοῦ
shield-bearers still outside held-back there indeed Perdiccas the
δευτέρου χάρακος εἴσω παρελθεῖν βιαζόμενος αὐτὸς μὲν
second palisade within to-come forcing himself indeed
βληθεὶς πίπτει αὐτοῦ καὶ ἀποκομίζεται κακῶς ἔχων
having-been-struck falls there and is-carried-off badly faring
ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ χαλεπῶς διεσώθη ἀπὸ τοῦ
to the camp and with-difficulty was-saved from the
τραύματος· τοὺς μέντοι Θηβαίους ἐς τὴν κοίλην ὁδὸν τὴν
wound the however Thebans into the hollow road the

κατὰ τὸ Ἡράκλειον φέρουσαν οἱ ἅμα αὐτῷ εἰσπεσόντες
toward — Heracleum leading the together-with him having-burst-in
ὁμοῦ τοῖς παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου τοξόταις συνέκλεισαν.
together-with the from Alexander archers shut-in
8.4 καὶ ἔστε μὲν πρὸς τὸ Ἡράκλειον ἀναχωροῦσιν εἵποντο τοῖς
and while indeed toward — Heracleum withdrawing they-followed the
Θηβαίοις, ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπιστρεψάντων αὖθις σὺν βοῇ τῶν
Thebans thence and having-turned-about again with a-shout the
Θηβαίων φυγὴ τῶν Μακεδόνων γίγνεται· καὶ Εὐρυβώτας
Thebans a-flight of-the Macedonians takes-place and Eurybotas
τε ὁ Κρὴς πίπτει ὁ τοξάρχης καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν τοξοτῶν
both the Cretan falls the archer-commander and themselves the archers
ἐς ἑβδομήκοντα· οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ κατέφυγον πρὸς τὸ ἄγημα
about seventy the and rest fled to the agema
τὸ τῶν Μακεδόνων καὶ τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς τοὺς βασιλικούς.
the of-the Macedonians and the shield-bearers the royal
8.5 κἀν τούτῳ Ἀλέξανδρος τοὺς μὲν αὑτοῦ φεύγοντας κατιδών,
and-in this Alexander the indeed his-own fleeing having-seen
τοὺς Θηβαίους δὲ λελυκότας ἐν τῇ διώξει τὴν τάξιν, ἐμβάλλει
the Thebans and having-broken in the pursuit the formation charges
ἐς αὐτοὺς συντεταγμένῃ τῇ φάλαγγι· οἱ δὲ ὠθοῦσι τοὺς
at them with-ordered the phalanx they and push the
Θηβαίους εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν· καὶ τοῖς Θηβαίοις ἐς τοσόνδε
Thebans within the gates and for-the Thebans to such-a-degree
ἡ φυγὴ φοβερὰ ἐγίγνετο, ὥστε διὰ τῶν πυλῶν ὠθούμενοι
the flight fearful became that through the gates being-pushed
ἐς τὴν πόλιν οὐκ ἔφθησαν συγκλεῖσαι τὰς πύλας. ἀλλὰ
into the city not they-were-in-time to-shut the gates but
συνεσπίπτουσι γὰρ αὐτοῖς εἴσω τοῦ τείχους ὅσοι τῶν
burst-in-with for them within the wall as-many-as of-the

Μακεδόνων ἐγγὺς φευγόντων εἶχοντο, ἅτε καὶ τῶν τειχῶν
Macedonians near of-the-fleeing kept because also the walls
διὰ τὰς προφυλακὰς τὰς πολλὰς ἐρήμων ὄντων.
on-account-of the outposts the many deserted being
καὶ παρελθόντες ἐς τὴν Καδμείαν οἱ μὲν ἐκεῖθεν 8.6
and having-come to — Cadmea the-ones indeed thence
κατὰ τὸ Ἀμφεῖον σὺν τοῖς κατέχουσι τὴν Καδμείαν
by — Amphieum with the holding — Cadmea
ἐξέβαινον ἐς τὴν ἄλλην πόλιν, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὰ τείχη,
went-out into the other city the-others and along the walls
ἐχόμενα ἤδη πρὸς τῶν συνεισπεσόντων τοῖς φεύγουσιν,
held already by the having-burst-in-with with-the fleeing
ὑπερβάντες ἐς τὴν ἀγορὰν δρόμῳ ἐφέροντο.
having-climbed-over into the market-place at-a-run rushed
καὶ ὀλίγον μέν τινα χρόνον ἔμειναν οἱ τεταγμένοι τῶν 8.7
and little indeed some time stood-firm the posted of-the
Θηβαίων κατὰ τὸ Ἀμφεῖον· ὡς δὲ πανταχόθεν αὐτοῖς οἱ
Thebans by — Amphieum when and from-every-side on-them the
Μακεδόνες καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἄλλοτε ἄλλῃ ἐπιφαινόμενος
Macedonians and Alexander now-here now-there appearing
προσέκειντο, οἱ μὲν ἱππεῖς τῶν Θηβαίων διεκπεσόντες
pressed the indeed cavalry of-the Thebans having-burst-through
διὰ τῆς πόλεως ἐς τὸ πεδίον ἐξέπιπτον, οἱ δὲ πεζοὶ
through the city into the plain broke-out the and infantry
ὡς ἑκάστοις προὐχώρει ἐσώζοντο.
as to-each it-went-well saved-themselves
ἔνθα δὴ ὀργῇ οὐχ οὕτως τι οἱ Μακεδόνες, ἀλλὰ 8.8
there indeed in-anger not so much the Macedonians but
Φωκεῖς τε καὶ Πλαταιεῖς καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ Βοιωτοὶ
Phocians both and Plataeans and the other and Boeotians
οὐδὲ ἀμυνομένους τοὺς Θηβαίους ἔτι οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ
not-even defending-themselves the Thebans any-longer in-no order

ἔκτεινον, τοὺς μὲν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις ἐπεισπίπτοντες, οὓς
killed the-ones indeed in the houses bursting-in-on others
δὲ ἐς ἀλκὴν τετραμμένους, τοὺς δὲ καὶ πρὸς ἱεροῖς
and to resistance turned the-others and even at shrines
ἱκετεύοντας, οὔτε γυναικῶν οὔτε παίδων φειδόμενοι.
supplicating neither women nor children sparing

IV · THE FALL OF THEBES

Arrian weighs the calamity against Sicily, Aegospotami, Leuctra, and the falls of Plataea, Melos, and Scione, and finds none so sudden or so complete. It was referred to the gods' anger for Theban treachery in the Persian war and the destruction of Plataea. The allies vote to raze the city, divide its land, and enslave its people, sparing priests and Macedonian guest-friends, and to refound Orchomenus and Plataea; Alexander is said to have spared Pindar's house and descendants. Arcadians, Eleans, and Aetolians hasten to make their peace, and Athens, which had abandoned the Mysteries in panic, sends congratulations. He demands Demosthenes and eight other leaders, then relents, and only Charidemus is exiled; he flees to Darius.

9.1 καὶ πάθος τοῦτο Ἑλληνικὸν μεγέθει τε τῆς ἁλούσης
and calamity this Greek by-greatness both of-the captured
πόλεως καὶ ὀξύτητι τοῦ ἔργου, οὐχ ἥκιστα δὲ τῷ
city and by-suddenness of-the deed not least and by-the
παραλόγῳ ἔς τε τοὺς παθόντας καὶ τοὺς δράσαντας, οὐ
unexpectedness to both the having-suffered and the having-done not
μεῖόν τι τοὺς ἄλλους Ἕλληνας ἢ καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς
less at-all the other Greeks than even themselves the
μετασχόντας τοῦ ἔργου ἐξέπληξε.
having-taken-part-in of-the deed struck-with-dismay

τὰ μὲν γὰρ περὶ Σικελίαν Ἀθηναίοις ξυνενεχθέντα, 9.2
the-things indeed for about Sicily to-Athenians having-befallen
εἰ καὶ πλήθει τῶν ἀπολομένων οὐ μείονα τὴν ξυμφορὰν
if even in-number of-the having-perished not lesser the disaster
τῇ πόλει ἤνεγκεν, ἀλλὰ τῷ τε πόρρω ἀπὸ τῆς
to-the city brought but by-the both far from the
οἰκείας διαφθαρῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸν στρατόν, καὶ τὸν πολὺν
home to-have-been-destroyed for-them the army and the great-part
ξυμμαχικὸν μᾶλλον ἢ οἰκεῖον ὄντα, καὶ τῷ τὴν πόλιν
allied rather than native being and by-the the city
αὐτοῖς περιλειφθῆναι, ὡς καὶ ἐς ὕστερον ἐπὶ πολὺ τῷ
for-them to-have-been-left-over so-that also for later for long in-the
πολέμῳ ἀντισχεῖν Λακεδαιμονίοις τε καὶ τοῖς ξυμμάχοις καὶ
war to-hold-out Lacedaemonians both and the allies and
μεγάλῳ βασιλεῖ πολεμοῦντας, οὔτε αὐτοῖς τοῖς παθοῦσιν
great king warring neither to-them the having-suffered
ἴσην τὴν αἴσθησιν τῆς ξυμφορᾶς προσέθηκεν, οὔτε τοῖς
equal the sense of-the disaster added nor to-the
ἄλλοις Ἕλλησιν τὴν ἐπὶ τῷ πάθει ἔκπληξιν ὁμοίαν παρέσχε.
other Greeks the at the calamity dismay like caused
καὶ τὸ ἐν Αἰγὸς ποταμοῖς αὖθις Ἀθηναίων πταῖσμα ναυτικόν 9.3
and the at Aegos Potami again of-Athenians reverse naval
τε ἦν καὶ ἡ πόλις οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὅτι μὴ τῶν μακρῶν τειχῶν
both was and the city nothing else except — the long walls
καθαιρέσει καὶ νεῶν τῶν πολλῶν παραδόσει καὶ στερήσει
by-destruction and of-ships the many by-surrender and by-deprivation
τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐς ταπεινότητα ἀφικομένη τό τε σχῆμα τὸ
of-the empire to humiliation having-come the both form the
πάτριον ὅμως ἐφύλαξε καὶ τὴν δύναμιν οὐ διὰ μακροῦ τὴν
ancestral nevertheless kept and the power not after long the
πάλαι ἀνέλαβεν, ὡς τά τε μακρὰ τείχη ἐκτειχίσαι καὶ τῆς
former recovered so-that the both long walls to-rebuild and of-the

θαλάσσης αὖθις ἐπικρατῆσαι καί, τοὺς τότε φοβερούς σφισι
sea again to-be-master and the then fearful to-them
Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ παρ᾽ ὀλίγον ἐλθόντας ἀφανίσαι τὴν πόλιν
Lacedaemonians and to little having-come to-destroy the city
αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ μέρει ἐκ τῶν ἐσχάτων κινδύνων διασώσασθαι.
themselves in the turn from the extreme dangers to-save
9.4 Λακεδαιμονίων τε αὖ τὸ κατὰ Λεῦκτρα καὶ Μαντίνειαν
of-Lacedaemonians and again the at Leuctra and Mantinea
πταῖσμα τῷ παραλόγῳ μᾶλλόν τι τῆς ξυμφορᾶς
reverse by-the unexpectedness more somewhat of-the disaster
ἢ τῷ πλήθει τῶν ἀπολομένων τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους
than by-the number of-the having-perished the Lacedaemonians
ἐξέπληξεν· ἥ τε ξὺν Ἐπαμεινώνδᾳ Βοιωτῶν καὶ Ἀρκάδων
dismayed the and with Epaminondas of-Boeotians and Arcadians
γενομένη προσβολὴ πρὸς τὴν Σπάρτην καὶ αὐτὴ τῷ
having-been attack against — Sparta also itself by-the
ἀήθει τῆς ὄψεως μᾶλλον ἢ τῇ ἀκριβείᾳ τοῦ
unaccustomedness of-the sight more than by-the reality of-the
κινδύνου αὐτούς τε τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς
danger them both the Lacedaemonians and the
ξυμμετασχόντας αὐτοῖς τῶν τότε πραγμάτων ἐφόβησεν.
sharing-with them in-the then affairs frightened
9.5 ἡ δὲ δὴ Πλαταιῶν ἅλωσις τῆς πόλεως τῇ σμικρότητι
the and indeed of-Plataeans capture of-the city by-the smallness
*** τῶν ἐγκαταληφθέντων, ὅτι οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν
(lacuna) of-the caught-inside because the most of-them
διαπεφεύγεσαν πάλαι ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας, οὐ μέγα πάθημα
had-escaped long-before to — Athens not great calamity
ἐγένετο. καὶ ἡ Μήλου καὶ Σκιώνης ἅλωσις, νησιωτικά
was and the of-Melos and Scione capture island-like
τε πολίσματα ἦν καὶ τοῖς δράσασιν αἰσχύνην μᾶλλόν
both towns were and to-the having-done shame more

τι προσέβαλεν ἢ ἐς τὸ ξύμπαν Ἑλληνικὸν μέγαν
somewhat added than to the whole Greek-world great
τὸν παράλογον παρέσχε.
the unexpectedness caused
Θηβαίοις δὲ τὰ τῆς ἀποστάσεως ὀξέα καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ 9.6
for-Thebans but the-things of-the revolt sudden and with no
λογισμῷ γενόμενα, καὶ ἡ ἅλωσις δι᾽ ὀλίγου τε καὶ
reasoning having-happened and the capture in short-time both and
οὐ ξὺν πόνῳ τῶν ἑλόντων ξυνενεχθεῖσα, καὶ ὁ φόνος
not with toil of-the having-captured having-come-about and the slaughter
ὁ πολύς, οἷα δὴ ἐξ ὁμοφύλων τε καὶ παλαιὰς
the great as indeed from kinsmen both and old
ἀπεχθείας ἐπεξιόντων, καὶ ὁ τῆς πόλεως παντελὴς
enmities prosecuting and the of-the city complete
ἀνδραποδισμός, δυνάμει τε καὶ δόξῃ ἐς τὰ πολέμια
enslavement in-power both and reputation for the warlike-things
τῶν τότε προεχούσης ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οὐκ ἔξω τοῦ
of-the then excelling among the Greeks not outside the
εἰκότος ἐς μῆνιν τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ θείου ἀνηνέχθη,
likely to wrath the from the divine was-referred
ὡς τῆς τε ἐν τῷ Μηδικῷ πολέμῳ προδοσίας τῶν 9.7
as of-the both in the Median war betrayal of-the
Ἑλλήνων διὰ μακροῦ ταύτην δίκην ἐκτίσαντας Θηβαίους,
Greeks after long this penalty having-paid Thebans
καὶ τῆς Πλαταιῶν ἔν τε ταῖς σπονδαῖς καταλήψεως καὶ
and of-the of-Plataeans in both the truce seizure and
τοῦ παντελοῦς ἀνδραποδισμοῦ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ τῆς τῶν
of-the complete enslavement of-the city and of-the of-the
παραδόντων σφᾶς Λακεδαιμονίοις οὐχ Ἑλληνικῆς γενομένης
having-surrendered themselves to-Lacedaemonians not Greek having-been
διὰ Θηβαίους σφαγῆς, καὶ τοῦ χωρίου τῆς ἐρημώσεως,
because-of Thebans slaughter and of-the land of-the desolation

ἐν ὅτῳ οἱ Ἕλληνες παραταξάμενοι Μήδοις ἀπώσαντο τῆς
in which the Greeks drawn-up against-Medes pushed-away —
Ἑλλάδος τὸν κίνδυνον, καὶ ὅτι Ἀθηναίους αὐτοὶ τῇ
from-Greece the danger and because Athenians they-themselves with-the
ψήφῳ ἀπώλλυον, ὅτε ὑπὲρ ἀνδραποδισμοῦ τῆς πόλεως
vote were-destroying when about enslavement of-the city
γνώμη προὐτέθη ἐν τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίων ξυμμάχοις.
a-motion was-put among the of-Lacedaemonians allies

9.8 ἐπεὶ καὶ πρὸ τῆς ξυμφορᾶς πολλὰ ἀπὸ τοῦ θείου
since also before the disaster many-things from the divine
ἐπισημῆναι ἐλέγετο, ἃ δὴ ἐν μὲν τῷ παραυτίκα
to-have-given-signs was-said which indeed at indeed the moment
ἠμελήθη, ὕστερον δὲ ἡ μνήμη αὐτὰ ἐς λογισμὸν τοῦ ἐκ
were-neglected later and the memory them to reckoning of-the from
πάλαι ἐπὶ τοῖς ξυνενεχθεῖσιν προσημανθῆναι ἀνήνεγκεν.
long-ago for the having-happened to-have-been-foreshown referred

9.9 τοῖς δὲ μετασχοῦσι τοῦ ἔργου ξυμμάχοις, οἷς δὴ καὶ
to-the and having-shared-in of-the deed allies to-whom indeed also
ἐπέτρεψεν Ἀλέξανδρος τὰ κατὰ τὰς Θήβας διαθεῖναι,
entrusted Alexander the-things concerning — Thebes to-settle
τὴν μὲν Καδμείαν φρουρᾷ κατέχειν ἔδοξε, τὴν πόλιν
— indeed Cadmea with-a-garrison to-hold it-seemed-good the city
δὲ κατασκάψαι ἐς ἔδαφος καὶ τὴν χώραν κατανεῖμαι τοῖς
and to-raze to ground and the territory to-distribute to-the
ξυμμάχοις, ὅση μὴ ἱερὰ αὐτῆς· παῖδας δὲ καὶ γυναῖκας
allies as-much-as not sacred of-it children and and women
καὶ ὅσοι ὑπελείποντο Θηβαίων, πλὴν τῶν ἱερέων τε
and as-many-as were-left of-Thebans except the priests both
καὶ ἱερειῶν καὶ ὅσοι ξένοι Φιλίππου ἢ Ἀλεξάνδρου
and priestesses and as-many-as guest-friends of-Philip or of-Alexander
ἢ ὅσοι πρόξενοι Μακεδόνων ἐγένοντο, ἀνδραποδίσαι.
or as-many-as proxenoi of-Macedonians had-been to-enslave

καὶ τὴν Πινδάρου δὲ τοῦ ποιητοῦ οἰκίαν καὶ τοὺς ἀπογόνους 9.10
and the of-Pindar also the poet house and the descendants
τοῦ Πινδάρου λέγουσιν ὅτι διεφύλαξεν Ἀλέξανδρος αἰδοῖ
— of-Pindar they-say that preserved Alexander from-reverence
τῇ Πινδάρου. ἐπὶ τούτοις Ὀρχόμενόν τε καὶ Πλαταιὰς
— for-Pindar besides these Orchomenus both and Plataea
ἀναστῆσαί τε καὶ τειχίσαι οἱ ξύμμαχοι ἔγνωσαν.
to-restore both and to-fortify the allies decided
ἐς δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους Ἕλληνας ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη τῶν Θηβαίων 10.1
to and the other Greeks when was-reported of-the Thebans
τὸ πάθος, Ἀρκάδες μέν, ὅσοι βοηθήσοντες Θηβαίοις
the calamity Arcadians indeed as-many-as about-to-help Thebans
ἀπὸ τῆς οἰκείας ὡρμήθησαν, θάνατον κατεψηφίσαντο τῶν
from the home had-set-out death condemned of-the
ἐπαράντων σφᾶς ἐς τὴν βοήθειαν· Ἠλεῖοι δὲ τοὺς φυγάδας
having-roused them to the help Eleans and the exiles
σφῶν κατεδέξαντο, ὅτι ἐπιτήδειοι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἦσαν·
of-theirs received-back because friendly to-Alexander they-were
Αἰτωλοὶ δὲ πρεσβείας σφῶν κατὰ ἔθνη πέμψαντες 10.2
Aetolians and embassies of-theirs by tribes having-sent
ξυγγνώμης τυχεῖν ἐδέοντο, ὅτι καὶ αὐτοί τι πρὸς
pardon to-obtain asked because also they-themselves somewhat at
τὰ παρὰ τῶν Θηβαίων ἀπαγγελθέντα ἐνεωτέρισαν· Ἀθηναῖοι
the from the Thebans reported had-revolted Athenians
δέ, μυστηρίων τῶν μεγάλων ἀγομένων ὡς ἦκόν τινες τῶν
and mysteries the great being-celebrated when came some of-the
Θηβαίων ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἔργου, τὰ μὲν μυστήρια ἐκπλαγέντες
Thebans from itself the deed the indeed mysteries panic-struck
ἐξέλιπον, ἐκ δὲ τῶν ἀγρῶν ἐσκευαγώγουν ἐς τὴν πόλιν.
abandoned from and the fields carried-their-goods into the city

10.3 ὁ δῆμος δὲ ἐς ἐκκλησίαν συνελθὼν Δημάδου γράψαντος
the people and to assembly having-met Demades having-proposed
δέκα πρέσβεις ἐκ πάντων Ἀθηναίων ἐπιλεξάμενος πέμπει
ten envoys from all Athenians having-chosen sends
παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον, οὕστινας ἐπιτηδειοτάτους Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
to Alexander those-whom most-friendly to-Alexander
ἐγίγνωσκον, ὅτι τε σῶος ἐξ Ἰλλυριῶν καὶ Τριβαλλῶν
they-knew that both safe from Illyrians and Triballians
ἐπανῆλθε χαίρειν τὸν δῆμον τῶν Ἀθηναίων οὐκ ἐν
he-had-returned to-rejoice the people of-the Athenians not in
καιρῷ ἀπαγγελοῦντας καὶ ὅτι Θηβαίους τοῦ νεωτερισμοῦ
season about-to-report and that Thebans for-the revolution
ἐτιμωρήσατο.
he-had-punished

10.4 ὁ δὲ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα φιλανθρώπως πρὸς τὴν πρεσβείαν
he and the indeed other-things kindly to the embassy
ἀπεκρίνατο, ἐπιστολὴν δὲ γράψας πρὸς τὸν δῆμον ἐξῄτει
answered a-letter and having-written to the people demanded
τοὺς ἀμφὶ Δημοσθένην καὶ Λυκοῦργον· καὶ Ὑπερείδην δὲ
the around Demosthenes and Lycurgus and Hypereides and
ἐξῄτει καὶ Πολύευκτον καὶ Χάρητα καὶ Χαρίδημον καὶ
demanded and Polyeuctus and Chares and Charidemus and
Ἐφιάλτην καὶ Διότιμον καὶ Μοιροκλέα·
Ephialtes and Diotimus and Moerocles

10.5 τούτους γὰρ αἰτίους εἶναι τῆς τε ἐν Χαιρωνείᾳ ξυμφορᾶς
these for responsible to-be of-the both at Chaeronea disaster
τῇ πόλει γενομένης καὶ τῶν ὕστερον ἐπὶ τῇ Φιλίππου
to-the city having-happened and of-the later on the of-Philip
τελευτῇ πλημμεληθέντων ἔς τε αὐτὸν καὶ ἐς
death offenses-committed against both himself and against

Φίλιππον· καὶ Θηβαίοις δὲ τῆς ἀποστάσεως ἀπέφαινεν
Philip and for-Thebans and of-the revolt he-showed
αἰτίους οὐ μεῖον ἢ τοὺς αὐτῶν Θηβαίων νεωτερίσαντας.
responsible not less than the of-the-very Thebans having-revolted
Ἀθηναῖοι δὲ τοὺς μὲν ἄνδρας οὐκ ἐξέδοσαν, πρεσβεύονται 10.6
Athenians and the indeed men not surrendered send-envoys
δὲ αὖθις παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον, ἀφεῖναι δεόμενοι τὴν ὀργὴν
and again to Alexander to-remit asking the anger
τοῖς ἐξαιτηθεῖσι· καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἀφῆκε, τυχὸν μὲν
to-the demanded and Alexander remitted perhaps indeed
αἰδοῖ τῆς πόλεως, τυχὸν δὲ σπουδῇ τοῦ ἐς τὴν
from-reverence for-the city perhaps and from-zeal for-the to —
Ἀσίαν στόλου, οὐκ ἐθέλων οὐδὲν ὕποπτον ἐν τοῖς
Asia expedition not wishing anything suspect among the
Ἕλλησιν ὑπολείπεσθαι. Χαρίδημον μέντοι μόνον τῶν
Greeks to-leave-behind Charidemus however alone of-the
ἐξαιτηθέντων τε καὶ οὐ δοθέντων φεύγειν ἐκέλευσε· καὶ
demanded both and not given to-go-into-exile ordered and
φεύγει Χαρίδημος ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν παρὰ βασιλέα Δαρεῖον.
goes-into-exile Charidemus to — Asia to king Darius

V · ACROSS THE HELLESPONT

Alexander sacrifices to Olympian Zeus at Aegae, and a statue of Orpheus is said to sweat. In spring he leaves Antipater in Macedonia and marches to the Hellespont with some thirty thousand infantry and five thousand cavalry. He sacrifices at Protesilaus' tomb, steers his own ship across while Parmenion ferries the army, and at Troy honors Athena, Priam, and the tomb of Achilles, whom he counts happy in his herald Homer. No writer, Arrian complains, has done as much for Alexander, and he claims the task for himself. The Persian commanders meet at Zeleia, where Memnon advises scorching the land and Arsites, backed by Persians who distrust Memnon, refuses.

11.1 ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ἐπανῆλθεν εἰς Μακεδονίαν· καὶ
these-things and having-accomplished he-returned to Macedonia and
τῷ τε Διὶ τῷ Ὀλυμπίῳ τὴν θυσίαν τὴν ἀπ' Ἀρχελάου
— both to-Zeus the Olympian the sacrifice the from Archelaus
ἔτι καθεστῶσαν ἔθυσε καὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα ἐν Αἰγαῖς διέθηκε
still established sacrificed and the contest in Aegae held
τὰ Ὀλύμπια· οἱ δὲ καὶ ταῖς Μούσαις λέγουσιν ὅτι
the Olympic-games the-others and also to-the Muses say that
ἀγῶνα ἐποίησε.
a-contest he-made

11.2 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἀγγέλλεται τὸ Ὀρφέως τοῦ Οἰάγρου τοῦ
and in this is-reported the of-Orpheus the (son)-of-Oeagrus the
Θρᾳκὸς ἄγαλμα τὸ ἐν Πιερίδι ἱδρῶσαι ξυνεχῶς· καὶ
Thracian statue the in Pieria to-have-sweated continuously and
ἄλλοι ἄλλα ἐπεθείαζον τῶν μάντεων, Ἀρίστανδρος δέ,
others other-things divined of-the seers Aristander and
ἀνὴρ Τελμισσεύς, μάντις, θαρρεῖν ἐκέλευσεν Ἀλέξανδρον·
a-man Telmissian seer to-take-heart ordered Alexander
δηλοῦσθαι γάρ, ὅτι ποιηταῖς ἐπῶν τε καὶ μελῶν καὶ
to-be-shown for that for-poets of-epics both and of-lyrics and

ὅσοι ἀμφὶ ᾠδὴν ἔχουσι πολὺς πόνος ἔσται ποιεῖν
as-many-as about song are-occupied great toil will-be to-compose
τε καὶ ᾄδειν Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔργα.
both and to-sing Alexander and the of-Alexander deeds
ἅμα δὲ τῷ ἦρι ἀρχομένῳ ἐξελαύνει ἐφ᾽ Ἑλλησπόντου 11.3
together-with and the spring beginning he-marches to Hellespont
τὰ μὲν κατὰ Μακεδονίαν τε καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας
the-things indeed in Macedonia both and the Greeks
Ἀντιπάτρῳ ἐπιτρέψας, αὐτὸς δὲ ἄγων πεζοὺς μὲν
to-Antipater having-entrusted he-himself and leading infantry indeed
σὺν ψιλοῖς τε καὶ τοξόταις οὐ πολλῷ πλείους τῶν
with light-troops both and archers not by-much more than-the
τρισμυρίων, ἱππέας δὲ ὑπὲρ τοὺς πεντακισχιλίους. ἦν δὲ
thirty-thousand cavalry and over the five-thousand was and
αὐτῷ ὁ στόλος παρὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν Κερκινῖτιν ὡς ἐπ᾽
for-him the march along the lake — Cercinitis as to
Ἀμφίπολιν καὶ τοῦ Στρυμόνος ποταμοῦ τὰς ἐκβολάς.
Amphipolis and of-the Strymon river the mouths
διαβὰς δὲ τὸν Στρυμόνα παρήμειβε τὸ Πάγγαιον ὄρος 11.4
having-crossed and — Strymon he-passed — Pangaeus mountain
τὴν ὡς ἐπ᾽ Ἄβδηρα καὶ Μαρώνειαν, πόλεις Ἑλληνίδας
the as toward Abdera and Maroneia cities Greek
ἐπὶ θαλάσσῃ ᾠκισμένας. ἔνθεν δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἕβρον ποταμὸν
on sea settled thence and to the Hebrus river
ἀφικόμενος διαβαίνει καὶ τὸν Ἕβρον εὐπετῶς.
having-arrived he-crosses also — Hebrus easily
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ διὰ τῆς Παιτικῆς ἐπὶ τὸν Μέλανα ποταμὸν 11.5
thence and through — Paetice to the Melas river
ἔρχεται. διαβὰς δὲ καὶ τὸν Μέλανα ἐς Σηστὸν ἀφικνεῖται
he-comes having-crossed and also — Melas to Sestus arrives
ἐν εἴκοσι ταῖς πάσαις ἡμέραις ἀπὸ τῆς οἴκοθεν ἐξορμήσεως.
in twenty the all days from the from-home setting-out

ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐς Ἐλαιοῦντα θύει Πρωτεσιλάῳ ἐπὶ τῷ τάφῳ
having-come and to Elaeus he-sacrifices to-Protesilaus at the tomb
τοῦ Πρωτεσιλάου, ὅτι καὶ Πρωτεσίλαος πρῶτος ἐδόκει
— of-Protesilaus because also Protesilaus first seemed
ἐκβῆναι ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν τῶν Ἑλλήνων τῶν ἅμα Ἀγαμέμνονι
to-disembark to — Asia of-the Greeks the with Agamemnon
ἐς Ἴλιον στρατευσάντων. καὶ ὁ νοῦς τῆς θυσίας ἦν
to Ilium having-campaigned and the intent of-the sacrifice was
ἐπιτυχεστέραν οἱ γενέσθαι ἢ Πρωτεσιλάῳ τὴν ἀπόβασιν.
more-fortunate for-him to-be than for-Protesilaus the landing
11.6 Παρμενίων μὲν δὴ τῶν τε πεζῶν τοὺς πολλοὺς καὶ
Parmenion indeed indeed of-the both infantry the many and
τὴν ἵππον διαβιβάσαι ἐτάχθη ἐκ Σηστοῦ ἐς Ἄβυδον·
the horse to-carry-across was-assigned from Sestus to Abydos
καὶ διέβησαν τριήρεσι μὲν ἑκατὸν καὶ ἑξήκοντα, πλοίοις
and they-crossed in-triremes indeed hundred and sixty in-vessels
δὲ ἄλλοις πολλοῖς στρογγύλοις. Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ ἐξ
and other many merchant Alexander and from
Ἐλαιοῦντος ἐς τὸν Ἀχαιῶν λιμένα κατᾶραι ὁ πλείων
Elaeus to the of-the-Achaeans harbor to-put-in the greater
λόγος κατέχει, καὶ αὐτόν τε κυβερνῶντα τὴν στρατηγίδα
account holds and him both steering the flagship
ναῦν διαβάλλειν καί, ἐπειδὴ κατὰ μέσον τὸν πόρον τοῦ
ship to-cross and when at middle the strait —
Ἑλλησπόντου ἐγένετο, σφάξαντα ταῦρον τῷ Ποσειδῶνι
of-Hellespont he-was having-slaughtered a-bull — to-Poseidon
καὶ Νηρηίσι σπένδειν ἐκ χρυσῆς φιάλης ἐς τὸν πόντον.
and to-Nereids to-pour-libations from golden bowl into the sea
11.7 λέγουσι δὲ καὶ πρῶτον ἐκ τῆς νεὼς σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἐκβῆναι
they-say and also first from the ship with the arms to-disembark
αὐτὸν ἐς τὴν γῆν τὴν Ἀσίαν καὶ βωμοὺς ἱδρύσασθαι ὅθεν
him onto the land the Asian and altars to-set-up whence

τε ἐστάλη ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης καὶ ὅπου ἐξέβη τῆς Ἀσίας
both he-set-out from — Europe and where he-disembarked — of-Asia
Διὸς ἀποβατηρίου καὶ Ἀθηνᾶς καὶ Ἡρακλέους. ἀνελθόντα δὲ
of-Zeus of-landings and of-Athena and of-Heracles having-gone-up and
ἐς Ἴλιον τῇ τε Ἀθηνᾷ θῦσαι τῇ Ἰλιάδι, καὶ τὴν πανοπλίαν
to Ilium — both to-Athena to-sacrifice the Ilian and the panoply
τὴν αὑτοῦ ἀναθεῖναι ἐς τὸν νεών, καὶ καθελεῖν ἀντὶ ταύτης
the his-own to-dedicate in the temple and to-take-down in-place-of this
τῶν ἱερῶν τινα ὅπλων ἔτι ἐκ τοῦ Τρωικοῦ ἔργου σωζόμενα.
of-the sacred some arms still from the Trojan deed preserved
καὶ ταῦτα λέγουσιν ὅτι οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ ἔφερον πρὸ αὐτοῦ 11.8
and these they-say that the shield-bearers carried before him
ἐς τὰς μάχας. θῦσαι δὲ αὐτὸν καὶ Πριάμῳ ἐπὶ τοῦ
into the battles to-sacrifice and him also to-Priam at the
βωμοῦ τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Ἑρκείου λόγος κατέχει, μῆνιν
altar — of-Zeus the of-the-Household account holds wrath
Πριάμου παραιτούμενον τῷ Νεοπτολέμου γένει, ὃ δὴ
of-Priam deprecating for-the of-Neoptolemus race which indeed
ἐς αὐτὸν καθῆκεν.
to him descended
ἀνιόντα δ' αὐτὸν ἐς Ἴλιον Μενοίτιός τε ὁ κυβερνήτης 12.1
going-up and him to Ilium Menoetius both the helmsman
χρυσῷ στεφάνῳ ἐστεφάνωσε καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ Χάρης ὁ
with-a-golden crown crowned and after this Chares the
Ἀθηναῖος ἐκ Σιγείου ἐλθὼν καί τινες καὶ ἄλλοι, οἱ
Athenian from Sigeum having-come and some also others the-ones
μὲν Ἕλληνες, οἱ δὲ ἐπιχώριοι· *** οἱ δέ, ὅτι
indeed Greeks the-others and natives (lacuna) the-others and that
καὶ τὸν Ἀχιλλέως ἄρα τάφον ἐστεφάνωσεν· Ἡφαιστίωνα
also the of-Achilles then tomb he-crowned Hephaestion
δὲ λέγουσιν ὅτι τοῦ Πατρόκλου τὸν τάφον ἐστεφάνωσε·
and they-say that — of-Patroclus the tomb he-crowned

καὶ εὐδαιμόνισεν ἄρα, ὡς λόγος, Ἀλέξανδρος Ἀχιλλέα,
and called-blessed then as the-story-goes Alexander Achilles
ὅτι Ὁμήρου κήρυκος ἐς τὴν ἔπειτα μνήμην ἔτυχε.
because Homer as-herald for the after memory he-obtained
12.2 καὶ μέντοι καὶ ἦν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ οὐχ ἥκιστα τούτου ἕνεκα
and indeed also was for-Alexander not least of-this for-the-sake
εὐδαιμονιστέος Ἀχιλλεύς, ὅτι αὐτῷ γε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, οὐ
to-be-called-blessed Achilles because for-him at-least Alexander not
κατὰ τὴν ἄλλην ἐπιτυχίαν, τὸ χωρίον τοῦτο ἐκλιπὲς
in-keeping-with the other good-fortune the place this deficient
ξυνέβη οὐδὲ ἐξηνέχθη ἐς ἀνθρώπους τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου
happened nor were-brought-out to men the of-Alexander
ἔργα ἐπαξίως, οὔτ' οὖν καταλογάδην, οὔτε τις ἐν μέτρῳ
deeds worthily neither then in-prose nor anyone in meter
ἐποίησεν· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ ἐν μέλει ᾄσθη Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐν ὅτῳ
composed but not-even in lyric was-sung Alexander in which
Ἱέρων τε καὶ Γέλων καὶ Θήρων καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι οὐδέν
Hieron both and Gelon and Theron and many others in-no-way
τι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐπεοικότες, ὥστε πολὺ μεῖον γιγνώσκεται
at-all to-Alexander comparable so-that much less are-known
τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἢ τὰ φαυλότατα τῶν πάλαι ἔργων·
the-things of-Alexander than the meanest of-the old deeds
12.3 ὁπότε καὶ ἡ τῶν μυρίων ξὺν Κύρῳ ἄνοδος ἐπὶ βασιλέα
when also the of-the ten-thousand with Cyrus march-up against king
Ἀρτοξέρξην καὶ τὰ Κλεάρχου τε καὶ τῶν ἅμα αὐτῷ
Artaxerxes and the of-Clearchus both and of-the with him
ἁλόντων παθήματα καὶ ἡ κατάβασις αὐτῶν ἐκείνων, ἣν
captured sufferings and the march-down of-them those which
Ξενοφῶν αὐτοὺς κατήγαγε, πολύ τι ἐπιφανέστερα ἐς
Xenophon them led-down much somewhat more-famous among

ἀνθρώπους Ξενοφῶντος ἕνεκά ἐστιν ἢ Ἀλέξανδρός
men of-Xenophon on-account-of are than Alexander
τε καὶ τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔργα.
both and the of-Alexander deeds
καίτοι Ἀλέξανδρος οὔτε ξὺν ἄλλῳ ἐστράτευσεν, οὔτε 12.4
and-yet Alexander neither with another campaigned nor
φεύγων μέγαν βασιλέα τοὺς τῇ καθόδῳ ἐπὶ θάλασσαν
fleeing great king the on-the march-down to sea
ἐμποδὼν γιγνομένους ἐκράτησεν· ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἔστιν ὅστις
in-the-way being overcame but not there-is who
ἄλλος εἷς ἀνὴρ τοσαῦτα ἢ τηλικαῦτα ἔργα κατὰ πλῆθος
other one man so-many or such-great deeds in number
ἢ μέγεθος ἐν Ἕλλησιν ἢ βαρβάροις ἀπεδείξατο. ἔνθεν
or greatness among Greeks or barbarians displayed whence
καὶ αὐτὸς ὁρμηθῆναί φημι ἐς τήνδε τὴν ξυγγραφήν,
also I-myself to-have-been-moved I-say to this the history
οὐκ ἀπαξιώσας ἐμαυτὸν φανερὰ καταστήσειν ἐς
not having-thought-unworthy myself manifest to-make to
ἀνθρώπους τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔργα.
men the of-Alexander deeds
ὅστις δὲ ὢν ταῦτα ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτοῦ γινώσκω, τὸ μὲν ὄνομα 12.5
whoever and being these-things about myself I-know the indeed name
οὐδὲν δέομαι ἀναγράψαι, οὐδὲ γὰρ οὐδὲ ἄγνωστον ἐς
nothing I-need to-record not-even for even unknown among
ἀνθρώπους ἐστίν, οὐδὲ πατρίδα ἥτις μοί ἐστιν οὐδὲ γένος
men it-is nor fatherland which to-me is nor family
τὸ ἐμόν, οὐδὲ εἰ δή τινα ἀρχὴν ἐν τῇ ἐμαυτοῦ ἦρξα· ἀλλ᾽
the my nor if indeed any office in the my-own I-held but
ἐκεῖνο ἀναγράφω, ὅτι ἐμοὶ πατρίς τε καὶ γένος καὶ ἀρχαὶ
that I-record that to-me fatherland both and family and offices
οἵδε οἱ λόγοι εἰσί τε καὶ ἀπὸ νέου ἔτι ἐγένοντο. καὶ ἐπὶ
these the writings are both and from young still were and for

τῷδε οὐκ ἀπαξιῶ ἐμαυτὸν τῶν πρώτων ἐν τῇ φωνῇ
this not I-think-unworthy myself of-the first in the tongue
τῇ Ἑλλάδι, εἴπερ οὖν καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον τῶν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις.
the Greek if-indeed then also Alexander of-the in the arms
12.6 ἐξ Ἰλίου δὲ ἐς Ἀρίσβην ἦκεν, οὗ πᾶσα ἡ δύναμις
from Ilium and to Arisbe he-came where all the force
αὐτῷ διαβεβηκυῖα τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον ἐστρατοπεδεύκει, καὶ
for-him having-crossed — Hellespont had-encamped and
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐς Περκώτην· τῇ δὲ ἄλλῃ Λάμψακον
on-the next-day to Percote on-the and other Lampsacus
παραμείψας πρὸς τῷ Πρακτίῳ ποταμῷ ἐστρατοπέδευσεν,
having-passed by the Practius river he-encamped
ὃς ῥέων ἐκ τῶν ὀρῶν τῶν Ἰδαίων ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς θάλασσαν
which flowing from the mountains the Idaean discharges into sea
τὴν μεταξὺ τοῦ Ἑλλησπόντου τε καὶ τοῦ Εὐξείνου πόντου.
the between — Hellespont both and the Euxine sea
ἔνθεν δὲ ἐς Ἕρμωτον ἀφίκετο, Κολωνὰς πόλιν παραμείψας.
thence and to Hermotus he-arrived Colonae city having-passed
12.7 σκοποὶ δὲ αὐτῷ ἐπέμποντο πρὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος· καὶ
scouts and for-him were-sent ahead-of the army and
τούτων ἡγεμὼν ἦν Ἀμύντας ὁ Ἀρραβαίου, ἔχων τῶν τε
of-these leader was Amyntas the (son)-of-Arrhabaeus having of-the both
ἑταίρων τὴν ἴλην τὴν ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας, ἧς ἰλάρχης
companions the squadron the from Apollonia of-which squadron-leader
ἦν Σωκράτης ὁ Σάθωνος, καὶ τῶν προδρόμων καλουμένων
was Socrates the (son)-of-Sathon and of-the prodromoi called
ἴλας τέσσαρας. κατὰ δὲ τὴν πάροδον Πρίαπον πόλιν
squadrons four on and the way Priapus city
ἐνδοθεῖσαν πρὸς τῶν ἐνοικούντων τοὺς παραληψομένους
surrendered by the inhabitants the about-to-take-over
ἀπέστειλε σὺν Πανηγόρῳ τῷ Λυκαγόρου, ἑνὶ τῶν ἑταίρων.
he-sent with Panegorus the (son)-of-Lycagoras one of-the companions

Περσῶν δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἦσαν Ἀρσάμης καὶ Ῥεομίθρης καὶ 12.8
of-Persians and generals were Arsames and Rheomithres and
Πετήνης καὶ Νιφάτης καὶ ξὺν τούτοις Σπιθριδάτης ὁ
Petenes and Niphates and with these Spithridates the
Λυδίας καὶ Ἰωνίας σατράπης καὶ Ἀρσίτης ὁ τῆς πρὸς
of-Lydia and Ionia satrap and Arsites the of-the on
Ἑλλησπόντῳ Φρυγίας ὕπαρχος. οὗτοι δὲ πρὸς Ζελείᾳ
Hellespont Phrygia hyparch these and at Zeleia
πόλει κατεστρατοπεδευκότες ἦσαν ξὺν τῇ ἵππῳ τε τῇ
city encamped were with the horse both the
βαρβαρικῇ καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι τοῖς μισθοφόροις.
barbarian and the Greeks the mercenaries
βουλευομένοις δὲ αὐτοῖς ὑπὲρ τῶν παρόντων, ἐπειδὴ 12.9
deliberating and to-them about the present-situation when
Ἀλέξανδρος διαβεβηκὼς ἠγγέλλετο, Μέμνων ὁ Ῥόδιος
Alexander having-crossed was-reported Memnon the Rhodian
παρῄνει μὴ διὰ κινδύνου ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς Μακεδόνας,
advised not through danger to-go against the Macedonians
τῷ τε πεζῷ πολὺ περιόντας σφῶν καὶ αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου
in-the both infantry far superior to-them and himself Alexander
παρόντος, αὐτοῖς δὲ ἀπόντος Δαρείου· προϊόντας δὲ τόν
being-present for-them and being-absent Darius advancing and the
τε χιλὸν ἀφανίζειν καταπατοῦντας τῇ ἵππῳ καὶ τὸν
both fodder to-destroy trampling with-the horse and the
ἐν τῇ γῇ καρπὸν ἐμπιπράναι, μηδὲ τῶν πόλεων αὐτῶν
in the earth crop to-burn not-even the cities themselves
φειδομένους. οὐ γὰρ μενεῖν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Ἀλέξανδρον
sparing not for to-be-going-to-stay in the country Alexander
ἀπορίᾳ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.
for-lack of-the provisions

12.10 Ἀρσίτην δὲ λέγεται εἰπεῖν ἐν τῷ συλλόγῳ τῶν Περσῶν,
Arsites and is-said to-have-said in the council of-the Persians
ὅτι οὐκ ἂν περιίδοι μίαν οἰκίαν ἐμπρησθεῖσαν τῶν ὑπὸ οἱ
that not — he-would-permit one house burned of-the under him
τεταγμένων ἀνθρώπων· καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας Ἀρσίτῃ προσθέσθαι,
posted people and the Persians with-Arsites to-side
ὅτι καὶ ὕποπτόν τι αὐτοῖς ἦν ἐς τὸν Μέμνονα τριβὰς
because also suspect something to-them was toward — Memnon delays
ἐμποιεῖν ἑκόντα τῷ πολέμῳ τῆς ἐκ βασιλέως τιμῆς οὕνεκα.
to-cause willingly for-the war of-the from king honor for-the-sake

VI · THE GRANICUS

The Persian cavalry hold the high bank of the Granicus. Parmenion urges waiting for dawn, and Alexander answers that he would be ashamed to stop at a stream after crossing the Hellespont. He sends the prodromoi, the Paeonians, a battalion of infantry, and a squadron ahead, then leads the right wing slantwise into the current. A fierce cavalry fight follows on the bank. Alexander unhorses Mithridates and Rhoesaces, whose blow his helmet stops, and Cleitus cuts off Spithridates' shoulder as he raises his scimitar. The Persians break, and the Greek mercenaries are cut down. Alexander has Lysippus make statues of twenty-five fallen companions, sends the captured Greek mercenaries to labor in Macedonia, and dedicates three hundred panoplies at Athens.

13.1 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος προὐχώρει ἐπὶ τὸν Γράνικον
in this and Alexander advanced toward the Granicus
ποταμὸν συντεταγμένῳ τῷ στρατῷ, διπλῆν μὲν τὴν
river with-drawn-up the army double indeed the
φάλαγγα τῶν ὁπλιτῶν τάξας, τοὺς δὲ ἱππέας κατὰ τὰ
phalanx of-the hoplites having-formed the and cavalry on the
κέρατα ἄγων, τὰ σκευοφόρα δὲ κατόπιν ἐπιτάξας ἕπεσθαι·
wings leading the baggage and behind having-ordered to-follow

τοὺς δὲ προκατασκεψομένους τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἦγεν
the and about-to-reconnoiter the-things of-the enemy led
αὐτῷ Ἡγέλοχος, ἱππέας μὲν ἔχων τοὺς σαρισσοφόρους,
for-him Hegelochus cavalry indeed having the sarissa-bearers
τῶν δὲ ψιλῶν ἐς πεντακοσίους.
of-the and light-troops about five-hundred
καὶ Ἀλέξανδρός τε οὐ πολὺ ἀπεῖχε τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ 13.2
and Alexander both not far was-distant from-the river —
Γρανίκου καὶ οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν σκοπῶν σπουδῇ ἐλαύνοντες
Granicus and the from the scouts in-haste riding
ἀπήγγελλον ἐπὶ τῷ Γρανίκῳ πέραν τοὺς Πέρσας
reported on — Granicus across the Persians
ἐφεστάναι τεταγμένους ὡς ἐς μάχην. ἔνθα δὴ
to-have-taken-position drawn-up as for battle there indeed
Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν συνέταττεν ὡς
Alexander indeed the army whole drew-up as
μαχουμένους· Παρμενίων δὲ προσελθὼν λέγει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
about-to-fight Parmenion and having-come-up says to-Alexander
τάδε.
these-things
“ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ, βασιλεῦ, ἀγαθὸν εἶναι ἐν τῷ παρόντι 13.3
to-me it-seems king good to-be in the present
καταστρατοπεδεῦσαι ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῇ ὄχθῃ ὡς ἔχομεν.
to-encamp on the river's the bank as we-are
τοὺς γὰρ πολεμίους οὐ δοκῶ τολμήσειν πολὺ τῷ
the for enemy not I-think to-be-going-to-dare by-far in-the
πεζῷ λειπομένους πλησίον ἡμῶν αὐλισθῆναι, καὶ ταύτῃ
infantry falling-short near us to-bivouac and so
παρέξειν ἕωθεν εὐπετῶς τῷ στρατῷ διαβαλεῖν τὸν
to-be-going-to-allow at-dawn easily for-the army to-cross the

πόρον· ὑποφθάσομεν γὰρ αὐτοὶ περάσαντες πρὶν ἐκείνους
ford we-shall-anticipate for ourselves having-crossed before them
ἐς τάξιν καθίστασθαι.
into order to-be-drawn-up

13.4 νῦν δὲ οὐκ ἀκινδύνως μοι δοκοῦμεν ἐπιχειρήσειν τῷ ἔργῳ,
now but not without-danger to-me we-seem to-be-going-to-attempt the task
ὅτι οὐχ οἷόν τε ἐν μετώπῳ διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄγειν τὸν
because not possible — on a-front through the river to-lead the
στρατόν. πολλὰ μὲν γὰρ αὐτοῦ ὁρᾶται βαθέα, αἱ δὲ ὄχθαι
army many indeed for of-it are-seen deep the and banks
αὗται ὁρᾷς ὅτι ὑπερύψηλοι καὶ κρημνώδεις εἰσὶν αἳ αὐτῶν·
these you-see that very-high and precipitous are some of-them

13.5 ἀτάκτως τε οὖν καὶ κατὰ κέρας, ᾗπερ ἀσθενέστατον,
in-disorder both then and by column where weakest
ἐκβαίνουσιν ἐπικείσονται ἐς φάλαγγα ξυντεταγμένοι τῶν
on-us-coming-out they-will-press-on in phalanx drawn-up of-the
πολεμίων οἱ ἱππεῖς· καὶ τὸ πρῶτον σφάλμα ἔς τε τὰ
enemy the cavalry and the first slip to both the
παρόντα χαλεπὸν καὶ ἐς τὴν ὑπὲρ παντὸς τοῦ πολέμου
present grievous and for the over whole the war
κρίσιν σφαλερόν."
decision dangerous

13.6 Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, "ταῦτα μέν", ἔφη, "ὦ Παρμενίων,
Alexander and these-things indeed he-said O Parmenion
γιγνώσκω· αἰσχύνομαι δέ, εἰ τὸν μὲν Ἑλλήσποντον
I-know I-am-ashamed but if — indeed Hellespont
διέβην εὐπετῶς, τοῦτο δέ, σμικρὸν ῥεῦμα, — οὕτω τῷ
I-crossed easily this and small stream so with-the
ὀνόματι τὸν Γράνικον ἐκφαυλίσας — εἴρξει ἡμᾶς τὸ μὴ
name — Granicus having-made-light-of will-bar us the not
οὐ διαβῆναι ὡς ἔχομεν.
not to-cross as we-are

καὶ τοῦτο οὔτε πρὸς Μακεδόνων τῆς δόξης οὔτε 13.7
and this neither in-keeping-with of-Macedonians the reputation nor
πρὸς τῆς ἐμῆς ἐς τοὺς κινδύνους ὀξύτητος ποιοῦμαι·
in-keeping-with the my for the dangers swiftness I-consider
ἀναθαρρήσειν τε δοκῶ τοὺς Πέρσας ὡς ἀξιομάχους
to-be-going-to-take-heart both I-think the Persians as a-match
Μακεδόσιν ὄντας, ὅτι οὐδὲν ἄξιον τοῦ σφῶν δέους ἐν
for-Macedonians being because nothing worthy of-the their fear in
τῷ παραυτίκα ἔπαθον."
the immediate they-suffered
ταῦτα εἰπὼν Παρμενίωνα μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας 14.1
these-things having-said Parmenion indeed to the left wing
πέμπει ἡγησόμενον, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν παρῆγε.
sends about-to-lead he-himself and to the right led
προετάχθησαν δὲ αὐτῷ τοῦ μὲν δεξιοῦ Φιλώτας ὁ
were-posted-in-front and for-him of-the indeed right Philotas the
Παρμενίωνος, ἔχων τοὺς ἑταίρους τοὺς ἱππέας καὶ τοὺς
(son)-of-Parmenion having the companions the cavalry and the
τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας τοὺς ἀκοντιστάς· Ἀμύντας δὲ ὁ
archers and the Agrianians the javelin-men Amyntas and the
Ἀρραβαίου τούς τε σαρισσοφόρους ἱππέας ἔχων Φιλώτᾳ
(son)-of-Arrhabaeus the both sarissa-bearing cavalry having to-Philotas
ἐπετάχθη καὶ τοὺς Παίονας καὶ τὴν ἴλην τὴν Σωκράτους.
was-posted-next and the Paeonians and the squadron the of-Socrates
ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων ἐτάχθησαν οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ τῶν ἑταίρων, 14.2
adjoining and these were-posted the shield-bearers of-the companions
ὧν ἡγεῖτο Νικάνωρ ὁ Παρμενίωνος· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἡ
whom led Nicanor the (son)-of-Parmenion next and to-these the
Περδίκκου τοῦ Ὀρόντου φάλαγξ· ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ Κοίνου τοῦ
of-Perdiccas the (son)-of-Orontes phalanx next and the of-Coenus the

Πολεμοκράτους· ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ Ἀμύντου τοῦ Ἀνδρομένους· ἐπὶ
(son)-of-Polemocrates next and the of-Amyntas the (son)-of-Andromenes next
δὲ ὧν Φίλιππος ὁ Ἀμύντου ἦρχε.
and those-whom Philip the (son)-of-Amyntas commanded
14.3 τοῦ δὲ εὐωνύμου πρῶτοι μὲν οἱ Θετταλοὶ ἱππεῖς ἐτάχθησαν,
of-the and left first indeed the Thessalian cavalry were-posted
ὧν ἡγεῖτο Κάλας ὁ Ἀρπάλου· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις οἱ
whom led Calas the (son)-of-Harpalus next and to-these the
ξύμμαχοι ἱππεῖς, ὧν ἦρχε Φίλιππος ὁ Μενελάου· ἐπὶ
allied cavalry whom commanded Philip the (son)-of-Menelaus next
δὲ τούτοις οἱ Θρᾷκες, ὧν ἦρχεν Ἀγάθων· ἐχόμενοι δὲ
and to-these the Thracians whom commanded Agathon adjoining and
τούτων πεζοὶ ἥ τε Κρατεροῦ φάλαγξ καὶ ἡ Μελεάγρου
these infantry the both of-Craterus phalanx and the of-Meleager
καὶ ἡ Φιλίππου ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ μέσον τῆς ξυμπάσης τάξεως.
and the of-Philip as-far as the center of-the whole line
14.4 Περσῶν δὲ ἱππεῖς μὲν ἦσαν ἐς δισμυρίους, ξένοι δὲ
of-Persians and cavalry indeed were about twenty-thousand foreign and
πεζοὶ μισθοφόροι ὀλίγον ἀποδέοντες δισμυρίων· ἐτάχθησαν
infantry mercenaries little falling-short of-twenty-thousand they-were-posted
δὲ τὴν μὲν ἵππον παρατείναντες τῷ ποταμῷ κατὰ τὴν
and the indeed horse having-extended along-the river on the
ὄχθην ἐπὶ φάλαγγα μακράν, τοὺς δὲ πεζοὺς κατόπιν τῶν
bank in phalanx long the and infantry behind the
ἱππέων· καὶ γὰρ ὑπερδέξια ἦν τὰ ὑπὲρ τὴν ὄχθην χωρία.
cavalry and for commanding was the above the bank ground
ᾗ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρον αὐτὸν καθεώρων — δῆλος γὰρ ἦν
where and Alexander himself they-saw conspicuous for he-was
τῶν τε ὅπλων τῇ λαμπρότητι καὶ τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν τῇ
of-the both arms by-the brilliance and of-the around him by-the

σὺν ἐκπλήξει θεραπείᾳ — κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον σφῶν ἐπέχοντα,
with awe attendance on the left their facing
ταύτῃ πυκνὰς ἐπέταξαν τῇ ὄχθῃ τὰς ἴλας τῶν ἱππέων.
there dense they-posted on-the bank the squadrons of-the cavalry
χρόνον μὲν δὴ ἀμφότερα τὰ στρατεύματα ἐπ᾽ ἄκρου 14.5
for-a-time indeed indeed both the armies on edge
τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐφεστῶτες ὑπὸ τοῦ τὸ μέλλον ὀκνεῖν
of-the river standing from the the future to-shrink
ἡσυχίαν ἦγον καὶ σιγὴ ἦν πολλὴ ἀφ᾽ ἑκατέρων. οἱ γὰρ
quiet kept and silence was great from both-sides the for
Πέρσαι προσέμενον τοὺς Μακεδόνας, ὁπότε ἐσβήσονται
Persians waited-for the Macedonians when they-would-enter
ἐς τὸν πόρον, ὡς ἐπικεισόμενοι ἐκβαίνουσιν·
into the ford so-as about-to-press-on on-them-coming-out
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἀναπηδήσας ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ 14.6
Alexander and having-leapt onto the horse and to-the around
αὑτὸν ἐγκελευσάμενος ἕπεσθαί τε καὶ ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς
himself having-exhorted to-follow both and men good
γίγνεσθαι, τοὺς μὲν προδρόμους ἱππέας καὶ μὴν καὶ τοὺς
to-be the indeed prodromoi cavalry and indeed also the
Παίονας προεμβαλεῖν ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἔχοντα Ἀμύνταν
Paeonians to-charge-first into the river having Amyntas
τὸν Ἀρραβαίου ἔταξε καὶ τῶν πεζῶν μίαν τάξιν,
the (son)-of-Arrhabaeus he-ordered and of-the infantry one battalion
καὶ πρὸ τούτων τὴν Σωκράτους ἴλην Πτολεμαῖον τὸν
and before these the of-Socrates squadron Ptolemy the
Φιλίππου ἄγοντα, ἣ δὴ καὶ ἐτύγχανε τὴν ἡγεμονίαν
(son)-of-Philip leading which indeed also happened the leadership
τοῦ ἱππικοῦ παντὸς ἔχουσα ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ·
of-the cavalry whole having on-that the day

14.7 αὐτὸς δὲ ἄγων τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας ὑπὸ σαλπίγγων τε καὶ τῷ
he-himself and leading the right wing with trumpets both and —
Ἐνυαλίῳ ἀλαλάζοντας ἐμβαίνει ἐς τὸν πόρον, λοξὴν ἀεὶ
to-Enyalius raising-the-war-cry enters into the ford slanting always
παρατείνων τὴν τάξιν, ᾗ παρεῖλκε τὸ ῥεῦμα, ἵνα δὴ μὴ
extending the line where drew-aside the current so-that indeed not
ἐκβαίνοντι αὐτῷ οἱ Πέρσαι κατὰ κέρας προσπίπτοιεν, ἀλλὰ
coming-out on-him the Persians on flank might-fall-upon but
καὶ αὐτὸς ὡς ἀνυστὸν τῇ φάλαγγι προσμίξῃ αὐτοῖς.
also himself as far-as-possible with-the phalanx might-engage them

15.1 οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι, ᾗ πρῶτοι οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀμύνταν καὶ Σωκράτην
the and Persians where first the around Amyntas and Socrates
προσέσχον τῇ ὄχθῃ, ταύτῃ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄνωθεν ἔβαλλον,
put-in at-the bank there also themselves from-above shot
οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ὄχθης ἐξ ὑπερδεξίου ἐς τὸν
the-ones indeed of-them from the bank from commanding-ground into the
ποταμὸν ἐσακοντίζοντες, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὰ χθαμαλώτερα
river hurling-javelins the-others and along the lower-parts
αὐτῆς ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ ὕδωρ καταβαίνοντες.
of-it as-far to the water coming-down

15.2 καὶ ἦν τῶν τε ἱππέων ὠθισμός, τῶν μὲν ἐκβαίνειν ἐκ
and was of-the both cavalry a-shoving the-ones indeed to-come-out from
τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τῶν δ' εἴργειν τὴν ἔκβασιν, καὶ παλτῶν
the river the-others and to-bar the coming-out and of-javelins
ἀπὸ μὲν τῶν Περσῶν πολλὴ ἄφεσις, οἱ Μακεδόνες δὲ
from indeed the Persians great discharge the Macedonians and
ξὺν τοῖς δόρασιν ἐμάχοντο. ἀλλὰ τῷ τε πλήθει πολὺ
with the spears fought but in-the both number much
ἐλαττούμενοι οἱ Μακεδόνες ἐκακοπάθουν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ
being-outdone the Macedonians suffered in the first
προσβολῇ, καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐξ οὐ βεβαίου τε καὶ ἅμα
attack also themselves from not firm both and at-the-same-time

κάτωθεν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀμυνόμενοι, οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι
from-below from the river defending-themselves the and Persians
ἐξ ὑπερδεξίου τῆς ὄχθης· ἄλλως τε καὶ τὸ κράτιστον
from commanding-ground of-the bank especially both and the strongest
τῆς Περσικῆς ἵππου ταύτῃ ἐπετέτακτο, οἵ τε Μέμνονος
of-the Persian horse there had-been-posted the both of-Memnon
παῖδες καὶ αὐτὸς Μέμνων μετὰ τούτων ἐκινδύνευε.
sons and himself Memnon with these was-taking-risk
καὶ οἱ μὲν πρῶτοι τῶν Μακεδόνων ξυμμίξαντες τοῖς 15.3
and the indeed first of-the Macedonians having-engaged with-the
Πέρσαις κατεκόπησαν πρὸς αὐτῶν, ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ γενόμενοι
Persians were-cut-down by them men good having-proved
ὅσοι γε μὴ πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον πελάζοντα ἀπέκλιναν
as-many-as at-least not to Alexander approaching fell-back
αὐτῶν. Ἀλέξανδρος γὰρ ἤδη πλησίον ἦν, ἅμα οἷ
of-them Alexander for already near was together-with him
ἄγων τὸ κέρας τὸ δεξιόν, καὶ ἐμβάλλει ἐς τοὺς Πέρσας
leading the wing the right and charges into the Persians
πρῶτος, ἵνα τὸ πᾶν στῖφος τῆς ἵππου καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ
first where the whole mass of-the horse and themselves the
ἡγεμόνες τῶν Περσῶν τεταγμένοι ἦσαν· καὶ περὶ αὐτὸν
leaders of-the Persians posted were and around him
ξυνειστήκει μάχη καρτερά·
had-joined battle fierce
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἄλλαι ἐπ᾽ ἄλλαις τῶν τάξεων τοῖς 15.4
and in this others after others of-the battalions for-the
Μακεδόσι διέβαινον οὐ χαλεπῶς ἤδη. καὶ ἦν μὲν ἀπὸ
Macedonians crossed not with-difficulty now and was indeed from
τῶν ἵππων ἡ μάχη, πεζομαχίᾳ δὲ μᾶλλόν τι
the horses the battle to-an-infantry-battle and more somewhat
ἐῴκει. ξυνεχόμενοι γὰρ ἵπποι τε ἵπποις καὶ ἄνδρες
it-was-like locked-together for horses both with-horses and men

ἀνδράσιν ἠγωνίζοντο, οἱ μὲν ἐξῶσαι εἰς ἅπαν ἀπὸ
with-men contended the-ones indeed to-push-out into the-whole from
τῆς ὄχθης καὶ ἐς τὸ πεδίον βιάσασθαι τοὺς Πέρσας, οἱ
the bank and into the plain to-force the Persians the
Μακεδόνες, οἱ δὲ εἶρξαί τε αὐτῶν τὴν ἔκβασιν, οἱ
Macedonians the-others and to-bar both their the coming-out the
Πέρσαι, καὶ ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν αὖθις ἀπώσασθαι.
Persians and into the river again to-thrust-back

15.5 καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐπλεονέκτουν ἤδη οἱ σὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τῇ
and from this had-the-advantage now the with Alexander in-the
τε ἄλλῃ ῥώμῃ καὶ ἐμπειρίᾳ καὶ ὅτι ξυστοῖς κρανείνοις
both other strength and experience and because with-lances of-cornel
πρὸς παλτὰ ἐμάχοντο.
against javelins they-fought

15.6 ἔνθα δὴ καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ξυντρίβεται τὸ δόρυ ἐν τῇ
there indeed also for-Alexander is-shattered the spear in the
μάχῃ· ὁ δὲ Ἀρέτην ᾔτει δόρυ ἕτερον, ἀναβολέα τῶν
battle he and Aretis asked spear another groom of-the
βασιλικῶν· τῷ δὲ καὶ αὐτῷ πονουμένῳ συντετριμμένον
royal-ones to-him and also himself hard-pressed shattered
τὸ δόρυ ἦν, ὁ δὲ τῷ ἡμίσει κεκλασμένου τοῦ δόρατος
the spear was he and with-the half broken of-the spear
οὐκ ἀφανῶς ἐμάχετο, καὶ τοῦτο δείξας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
not ingloriously was-fighting and this having-shown to-Alexander
ἄλλον αἰτεῖν ἐκέλευεν· Δημάρατος δέ, ἀνὴρ Κορίνθιος,
another to-ask ordered Demaratus and a-man Corinthian
τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἑταίρων, δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τὸ αὑτοῦ δόρυ.
of-the around him companions gives him the his-own spear

15.7 καὶ ὃς ἀναλαβὼν καὶ ἰδὼν Μιθριδάτην τὸν Δαρείου
and he having-taken-it and having-seen Mithridates the of-Darius
γαμβρὸν πολὺ πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων προϊππεύοντα καὶ ἐπάγοντα
son-in-law far before the others riding-forward and leading-on

ἅμα οἷ ὥσπερ ἔμβολον τῶν ἱππέων ἐξελαύνει καὶ
together-with him as-it-were a-wedge of-the cavalry rides-out and
αὐτὸς πρὸ τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ παίσας ἐς τὸ πρόσωπον
himself before the others and having-struck into the face
τῷ δόρατι καταβάλλει τὸν Μιθριδάτην. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ
with-the spear throws-down — Mithridates in and this
Ῥοισάκης μὲν ἐπελαύνει τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ παίει
Rhoesaces indeed rides-at — Alexander and strikes
Ἀλεξάνδρου τὴν κεφαλὴν τῇ κοπίδι·
of-Alexander the head with-the scimitar
καὶ τοῦ μὲν κράνους τι ἀπέθρανσε, τὴν πληγὴν δὲ 15.8
and of-the indeed helmet some broke-off the blow but
ἔσχε τὸ κράνος. καὶ καταβάλλει καὶ τοῦτον Ἀλέξανδρος
held the helmet and throws-down also this-one Alexander
παίσας τῷ ξυστῷ διὰ τοῦ θώρακος ἐς τὸ στέρνον.
having-struck with-the lance through the breastplate into the chest
Σπιθριδάτης δὲ ἀνετέτατο μὲν ἤδη ἐπ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον
Spithridates and had-raised indeed already against Alexander
ὄπισθεν τὴν κοπίδα, ὑποφθάσας δὲ αὐτὸν Κλεῖτος ὁ
from-behind the scimitar having-anticipated and him Cleitus the
Δρωπίδου παίει κατὰ τοῦ ὤμου καὶ ἀποκόπτει τὸν
(son)-of-Dropides strikes on the shoulder and cuts-off the
ὦμον τοῦ Σπιθριδάτου ξὺν τῇ κοπίδι· καὶ ἐν τούτῳ
shoulder — of-Spithridates with the scimitar and in this
ἐπεκβαίνοντες ἀεὶ τῶν ἱππέων ὅσοις προὐχώρει κατὰ
coming-out-after always of-the cavalry for-as-many-as it-succeeded along
τὸν ποταμὸν προσεγίγνοντο τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον.
the river joined to-the around Alexander
καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι παιόμενοί τε πανταχόθεν ἤδη ἐς τὰ 16.1
and the Persians being-struck both from-every-side now in the
πρόσωπα αὐτοί τε καὶ ἵπποι τοῖς ξυστοῖς καὶ πρὸς
faces themselves both and horses with-the lances and by

τῶν ἱππέων ἐξωθούμενοι, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ πρὸς τῶν ψιλῶν
the cavalry being-pushed-out much and also by the light-troops
ἀναμεμιγμένων τοῖς ἱππεῦσι βλαπτόμενοι ἐγκλίνουσι
mingled with-the cavalry being-harmed give-way
ταύτῃ πρῶτον, ᾗ Ἀλέξανδρος προεκινδύνευεν. ὡς δὲ
there first where Alexander was-in-the-front-of-danger when and
τὸ μέσον ἐνεδεδώκει αὐτοῖς, παρερρήνυτο δὴ καὶ τὰ
the center had-given-way for-them were-broken-through indeed also the
ἐφ᾽ ἑκάτερα τῆς ἵππου, καὶ ἦν δὴ φυγὴ καρτερά. τῶν
on either-side of-the horse and was indeed flight strong of-the
μὲν δὴ ἱππέων τῶν Περσῶν ἀπέθανον εἰς χιλίους.
indeed indeed cavalry of-the Persians died about thousand
16.2 οὐ γὰρ πολλὴ ἡ δίωξις ἐγένετο, ὅτι ἐξετράπη Ἀλέξανδρος
not for long the pursuit became because turned Alexander
ἐπὶ τοὺς ξένους τοὺς μισθοφόρους· ὧν τὸ στῖφος,
against the foreign the mercenaries of-whom the mass
ᾗ τὸ πρῶτον ἐτάχθη, ἐκπλήξει μᾶλλόν τι τοῦ
where the first it-was-posted from-dismay more somewhat at-the
παραλόγου ἢ λογισμῷ βεβαίῳ ἔμενεν· καὶ τούτοις
unexpected than by-reasoning firm stood and on-these
τήν τε φάλαγγα ἐπαγαγὼν καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας πάντῃ
the both phalanx having-led-on and the cavalry on-every-side
προσπεσεῖν κελεύσας ἐν μέσῳ δι᾽ ὀλίγου κατακόπτει
to-fall-on having-ordered in middle in short-time cuts-down
αὐτούς, ὥστε διέφυγε μὲν οὐδείς, ὅτι μὴ διέλαθέ τις
them so-that escaped indeed no-one except — escaped-notice someone
ἐν τοῖς νεκροῖς, ἐζωγρήθησαν δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισχιλίους.
among the dead were-taken-alive and about the two-thousand
16.3 ἔπεσον δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνες τῶν Περσῶν Νιφάτης τε καὶ
fell and also leaders of-the Persians Niphates both and
Πετήνης καὶ Σπιθριδάτης ὁ Λυδίας σατράπης καὶ ὁ
Petenes and Spithridates the of-Lydia satrap and the

τῶν Καππαδοκῶν ὕπαρχος Μιθροβουζάνης καὶ Μιθριδάτης
of-the Cappadocians hyparch Mithrobuzanes and Mithridates
ὁ Δαρείου γαμβρὸς καὶ Ἀρβουπάλης ὁ Δαρείου τοῦ
the of-Darius son-in-law and Arbupales the of-Darius the
Ἀρτοξέρξου παῖς καὶ Φαρνάκης, ἀδελφὸς οὗτος τῆς
(son)-of-Artaxerxes son and Pharnaces brother this of-the
Δαρείου γυναικός, καὶ ὁ τῶν ξένων ἡγεμὼν Ὠμάρης.
of-Darius wife and the of-the mercenaries leader Omares
Ἀρσίτης δὲ ἐκ μὲν τῆς μάχης φεύγει ἐς Φρυγίαν, ἐκεῖ
Arsites and from indeed the battle flees to Phrygia there
δὲ ἀποθνήσκει αὐτὸς πρὸς αὑτοῦ, ὡς λόγος, ὅτι αἴτιος
and dies himself by himself as the-story-goes because responsible
ἐδόκει Πέρσαις γενέσθαι τοῦ ἐν τῷ τότε πταίσματος.
he-seemed to-Persians to-have-been of-the in the then reverse
Μακεδόνων δὲ τῶν μὲν ἑταίρων ἀμφὶ τοὺς εἴκοσι 16.4
of-Macedonians and of-the indeed companions about the twenty
καὶ πέντε ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ προσβολῇ ἀπέθανον· καὶ
and five in the first attack died and
τούτων χαλκαῖ εἰκόνες ἐν Δίῳ ἑστᾶσιν, Ἀλεξάνδρου
of-these bronze statues in Dium stand Alexander
κελεύσαντος Λύσιππον ποιῆσαι, ὅσπερ καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον
having-ordered Lysippus to-make who also Alexander
μόνος προκριθεὶς ἐποίει· τῶν δὲ ἄλλων ἱππέων ὑπὲρ
alone having-been-preferred made of-the and other cavalry over
τοὺς ἑξήκοντα, πεζοὶ δὲ ἐς τοὺς τριάκοντα.
the sixty infantry and about the thirty
καὶ τούτους τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔθαψεν Ἀλέξανδρος ξὺν τοῖς 16.5
and these on-the next-day buried Alexander with the
ὅπλοις τε καὶ ἄλλῳ κόσμῳ· γονεῦσι δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ παισὶ
arms both and other adornment to-parents and of-them and children
τῶν τε κατὰ τὴν χώραν ἀτέλειαν ἔδωκε καὶ ὅσαι
of-the both in the country exemption he-gave and as-many-as

ἄλλαι ἢ τῷ σώματι λειτουργίαι ἢ κατὰ τὰς
other-things either with-the body services or according-to the
κτήσεις ἑκάστων εἰσφοραί. καὶ τῶν τετρωμένων δὲ πολλὴν
possessions of-each contributions and of-the wounded and great
πρόνοιαν ἔσχεν, ἐπελθών τε αὐτὸς ἑκάστους καὶ τὰ
care he-took having-visited both himself each and the
τραύματα ἰδὼν καὶ ὅπως τις ἐτρώθη ἐρόμενος καὶ ὅ
wounds having-seen and how each was-wounded having-asked and what
τι πράττων εἰπεῖν τε καὶ ἀλαζονεύσασθαί οἱ παρασχών.
ever doing to-tell both and to-boast to-him having-allowed
16.6 ὁ δὲ καὶ τῶν Περσῶν τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ἔθαψεν· ἔθαψε δὲ
he and also of-the Persians the leaders buried buried and
καὶ τοὺς μισθοφόρους Ἕλληνας, οἳ ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις
also the mercenaries Greeks who with the enemy
στρατεύοντες ἀπέθανον· ὅσους δὲ αὐτῶν αἰχμαλώτους
campaigning died as-many-as and of-them prisoners
ἔλαβε, τούτους δὲ δήσας ἐν πέδαις εἰς Μακεδονίαν
he-took these and having-bound in fetters to Macedonia
ἀπέπεμψεν ἐργάζεσθαι, ὅτι παρὰ τὰ κοινῇ δόξαντα
sent-off to-labor because contrary-to the in-common resolved
τοῖς Ἕλλησιν Ἕλληνες ὄντες ἐναντία τῇ Ἑλλάδι ὑπὲρ
by-the Greeks Greeks being against — Greece on-behalf-of
τῶν βαρβάρων ἐμάχοντο.
the barbarians they-fought
16.7 ἀποπέμπει δὲ καὶ εἰς Ἀθήνας τριακοσίας πανοπλίας
sends-off and also to Athens three-hundred panoplies
Περσικὰς ἀνάθημα εἶναι τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ ἐν πόλει· καὶ ἐπίγραμμα
Persian an-offering to-be — to-Athena on Acropolis and an-inscription
ἐπιγραφῆναι ἐκέλευσε τόδε· Ἀλέξανδρος Φιλίππου καὶ οἱ
to-be-inscribed he-ordered this Alexander (son)-of-Philip and the

Ἕλληνες πλὴν Λακεδαιμονίων ἀπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων τῶν
Greeks except Lacedaemonians from the barbarians the
τὴν Ἀσίαν κατοικούντων.
— Asia inhabiting

VII · SARDIS, EPHESUS, AND MILETUS

Calas is made satrap of the province Arsites ruled, and Sardis surrenders its citadel without a blow; a storm marks the site for a temple of Zeus. Alexander restores Ephesus' democracy, gives its tribute to Artemis, restrains the people's vengeance on the oligarchs, and orders democracies in the Ionian and Aeolian cities. Hegesistratus will not yield Miletus, and Nicanor's fleet anchors at Lade before the larger Persian fleet arrives. Parmenion urges a sea battle on the omen of an eagle on the shore; Alexander reads it as victory from the land. He takes the city and spares three hundred mercenaries on an islet, and the Persian fleet, short of water and beaten off in a skirmish, sails away.

καταστήσας δὲ Κάλαν σατραπεύειν ἧς Ἀρσίτης ἦρχε 17.1
having-appointed and Calas to-be-satrap over-which Arsites ruled
καὶ τοὺς φόρους τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἀποφέρειν τάξας, οὕσπερ
and the tributes the same to-pay having-ordered which-very
Δαρείῳ ἔφερον, ὅσοι μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων κατιόντες ἐκ
to-Darius they-paid as-many-as indeed of-the barbarians coming-down from
τῶν ὀρῶν ἐνεχείριζον σφᾶς, τούτους μὲν ἀπαλλάττεσθαι
the mountains surrendered themselves these indeed to-depart
ἐπὶ τὰ αὑτῶν ἑκάστους ἐκέλευεν,
to the their-own each ordered
Ζελείτας δὲ ἀφῆκε τῆς αἰτίας, ὅτι πρὸς βίαν 17.2
Zeleians and he-acquitted of-the charge because by force
ἔγνω συστρατεῦσαι τοῖς βαρβάροις· Δασκύλιον δὲ
he-knew-them to-have-campaigned-with the barbarians Dascylium and
παραληψόμενον Παρμενίωνα ἐκπέμπει· καὶ παραλαμβάνει
about-to-take-over Parmenion sends-out and takes-over

Δασκύλιον Παρμενίων ἐκλιπόντων τῶν φρουρῶν. Αὐτὸς
Dascylium Parmenion having-abandoned-it the guards he-himself
δὲ ἐπὶ Σάρδεων προὐχώρει·
and toward Sardis advanced
17.3 καὶ ἀπέχοντος αὐτοῦ ὅσον ἑβδομήκοντα σταδίους
and being-distant him about seventy stades
Σάρδεων ἦκον παρ᾽ αὐτὸν Μιθρήνης τε ὁ φρούραρχος
from-Sardis came to him Mithrenes both the garrison-commander
τῆς ἀκροπόλεως τῆς ἐν Σάρδεσι καὶ Σαρδιανῶν οἱ
of-the citadel the in Sardis and of-Sardians the
δυνατώτατοι, ἐνδιδόντες οἱ μὲν τὴν πόλιν, ὁ δὲ
most-powerful surrendering the-ones indeed the city — and
Μιθρήνης τὴν ἄκραν καὶ τὰ χρήματα.
Mithrenes the citadel and the money
17.4 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ αὐτὸς μὲν κατεστρατοπέδευσεν ἐπὶ τῷ
Alexander and himself indeed encamped on the
Ἕρμῳ ποταμῷ· ἀπέχει δὲ ὁ Ἕρμος ἀπὸ Σάρδεων
Hermus river is-distant and — Hermus from Sardis
σταδίους ὅσον εἴκοσιν· Ἀμύνταν δὲ τὸν Ἀνδρομένους τὴν
stades about twenty Amyntas and the (son)-of-Andromenes the
ἄκραν παραληψόμενον ἐκπέμπει ἐς Σάρδεις· καὶ Μιθρήνην
citadel about-to-take-over sends-out to Sardis and Mithrenes
μὲν ἐν τιμῇ ἅμα οἷ ἦγεν, Σαρδιανοὺς δὲ καὶ
indeed in honor together-with himself led Sardians and and
τοὺς ἄλλους Λυδοὺς τοῖς νόμοις τε τοῖς πάλαι Λυδῶν
the other Lydians the laws both the old of-Lydians
χρῆσθαι ἔδωκεν καὶ ἐλευθέρους εἶναι ἀφῆκεν.
to-use he-granted and free to-be he-allowed
17.5 ἀνῆλθε δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς εἰς τὴν ἄκραν, ἵνα τὸ φρούριον
he-went-up and also himself into the citadel where the fort
ἦν τῶν Περσῶν· καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὀχυρὸν τὸ χωρίον·
was of-the Persians and it-seemed to-him strong the place

ὑπερύψηλόν τε γὰρ ἦν καὶ ἀπότομον πάντῃ καὶ τριπλῷ
very-high both for it-was and sheer on-every-side and with-a-triple
τείχει πεφραγμένον· αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ ἄκρᾳ ναόν τε
wall fenced he-himself and on the citadel a-temple both
οἰκοδομῆσαι Διὸς Ὀλυμπίου ἐπενόει καὶ βωμὸν ἱδρύσασθαι.
to-build of-Zeus Olympian intended and an-altar to-set-up
σκοποῦντι δὲ αὐτῷ τῆς ἄκρας ὅπερ ἐπιτηδειότατον 17.6
while-considering and to-him of-the citadel which most-suitable
χωρίον ὥρᾳ ἔτους ἐξαίφνης χειμὼν ἐπιγίγνεται καὶ
place in-the-season of-year suddenly a-storm comes-on and
βρονταὶ σκληραὶ καὶ ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ πίπτει, οὗ τὰ
thunders harsh and water from heaven falls where the
τῶν Λυδῶν βασίλεια· Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ ἔδοξεν ἐκ θεοῦ
of-the Lydians palace to-Alexander and it-seemed from god
σημανθῆναι, ἵνα χρὴ οἰκοδομεῖσθαι τῷ Διὶ τὸν
to-have-been-signified where it-is-necessary to-be-built — for-Zeus the
νεών, καὶ οὕτως ἐκέλευσε.
temple and so he-ordered
κατέλιπε δὲ τῆς μὲν ἄκρας τῆς Σάρδεων ἐπιμελητὴν 17.7
he-left and of-the indeed citadel — of-Sardis overseer
Παυσανίαν τῶν ἑταίρων, τῶν δὲ φόρων τῆς συντάξεώς τε
Pausanias of-the companions of-the and tributes of-the assessment both
καὶ ἀποφορᾶς Νικίαν, Ἄσανδρον δὲ τὸν Φιλώτα Λυδίας
and payment Nicias Asander and the (son)-of-Philotas of-Lydia
καὶ τῆς ἄλλης τῆς Σπιθριδάτου ἀρχῆς, δοὺς αὐτῷ ἱππέας
and of-the other of-the of-Spithridates rule having-given to-him cavalry
τε καὶ ψιλοὺς ὅσοι ἱκανοὶ πρὸς τὰ παρόντα ἐδόκουν.
both and light-troops as-many-as sufficient for the present-needs seemed
Κάλαν δὲ καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Ἀερόπου ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν 17.8
Calas and and Alexander the (son)-of-Aeropus to the country
τὴν Μέμνονος ἐκπέμπει, ἄγοντας τούς τε Πελοποννησίους
the of-Memnon sends-out leading the both Peloponnesians

καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ξυμμάχων τοὺς πολλοὺς πλὴν Ἀργείων·
and of-the other allies the many except Argives
οὗτοι δὲ ἐν Σάρδεσι κατελείφθησαν τὴν ἄκραν φυλάττειν.
these and in Sardis were-left the citadel to-guard

17.9 ἐν τούτῳ δέ, ὡς τὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἱππομαχίας ἐξηγγέλθη,
in this and when the-things about the cavalry-battle were-reported
οἵ τε τὴν Ἔφεσον φρουροῦντες μισθοφόροι ᾤχοντο
the both — Ephesus garrisoning mercenaries went-off
φεύγοντες, δύο τριήρεις τῶν Ἐφεσίων λαβόντες, καὶ ξὺν
fleeing two triremes of-the Ephesians having-taken and with
αὐτοῖς Ἀμύντας ὁ Ἀντιόχου, ὃς ἔφυγεν ἐκ Μακεδονίας
them Amyntas the (son)-of-Antiochus who fled from Macedonia
Ἀλέξανδρον, παθὼν μὲν οὐδὲν πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου,
Alexander having-suffered indeed nothing from Alexander
δυσνοίᾳ δὲ τῇ πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπαξιώσας
from-ill-will but the toward Alexander and himself having-thought-fit
τι παθεῖν πρὸς αὐτοῦ ἄχαρι.
something to-suffer from him unpleasant

17.10 τετάρτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἐς Ἔφεσον ἀφικόμενος τούς τε
on-the-fourth and day to Ephesus having-arrived the both
φυγάδας, ὅσοι δι' αὐτὸν ἐξέπεσον τῆς πόλεως,
exiles as-many-as on-account-of him had-been-banished from-the city
κατήγαγε καὶ τὴν ὀλιγαρχίαν καταλύσας δημοκρατίαν
he-restored and the oligarchy having-dissolved a-democracy
κατέστησε· τοὺς δὲ φόρους, ὅσους τοῖς βαρβάροις
established the and tributes as-many-as to-the barbarians
ἀπέφερον, τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ξυντελεῖν ἐκέλευσεν.
they-paid — to-Artemis to-contribute he-ordered

17.11 ὁ δὲ δῆμος ὁ τῶν Ἐφεσίων, ὡς ἀφῃρέθη αὐτοῖς ὁ ἀπὸ
the and people the of-the Ephesians when was-removed from-them the from
τῶν ὀλίγων φόβος, τούς τε Μέμνονα ἐπαγομένους καὶ
the few fear those both Memnon bringing-in and

τοὺς τὸ ἱερὸν συλήσαντας τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος καὶ τοὺς τὴν
the the temple having-plundered — of-Artemis and the the
εἰκόνα τὴν Φιλίππου τὴν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ καταβαλόντας καὶ
statue the of-Philip the in the temple having-thrown-down and
τὸν τάφον ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἀνορύξαντας τὸν Ἡροπύθου
the tomb from the market-place having-dug-up the of-Heropythus
τοῦ ἐλευθερώσαντος τὴν πόλιν ὥρμησαν ἀποκτεῖναι.
the having-freed the city rushed to-kill
καὶ Σύρφακα μὲν καὶ τὸν παῖδα αὐτοῦ Πελάγοντα 17.12
and Syrphax indeed and the son his Pelagon
καὶ τοὺς τῶν ἀδελφῶν τοῦ Σύρφακος παῖδας ἐκ τοῦ
and the of-the brothers — of-Syrphax sons from the
ἱεροῦ ἐξαγαγόντες κατέλευσαν· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους διεκώλυσεν
temple having-led-out they-stoned the and others prevented
Ἀλέξανδρος προσωτέρω ἐπιζητεῖν καὶ τιμωρεῖσθαι,
Alexander further to-seek-out and to-punish
γνοὺς ὅτι ὁμοῦ τοῖς αἰτίοις καὶ οὐ ξὺν δίκῃ
having-recognized that together with-the guilty also not with justice
τινάς, τοὺς μὲν κατ᾽ ἔχθραν, τοὺς δὲ κατὰ ἁρπαγὴν
some the-ones indeed from enmity the-others and for plunder
χρημάτων ἀποκτενεῖ, ξυγχωρηθὲν αὐτῷ, ὁ δῆμος. καὶ
of-money will-kill having-been-allowed for-him the people and
εἰ δή τῳ ἄλλῳ, καὶ τοῖς ἐν Ἐφέσῳ πραχθεῖσιν
if indeed in-any other also for-the-things in Ephesus done
Ἀλέξανδρος ἐν τῷ τότε εὐδοκίμει.
Alexander in the then was-well-thought-of
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἐκ Μαγνησίας τε καὶ Τράλλεων παρ᾽ αὐτὸν 18.1
in this and from Magnesia both and Tralles to him
ἦκον ἐνδιδόντες τὰς πόλεις· καὶ ὃς πέμπει Παρμενίωνα,
came surrendering the cities and he sends Parmenion
δοὺς αὐτῷ δισχιλίους καὶ πεντακοσίους πεζοὺς τῶν
having-given him two-thousand and five-hundred infantry of-the

ξένων καὶ Μακεδόνας παραπλησίους, ἱππέας δὲ τῶν
mercenaries and Macedonians about-the-same cavalry and of-the
ἑταίρων ἐς διακοσίους. Ἀλκίμαχον δὲ τὸν Ἀγαθοκλέους
companions about two-hundred Alcimachus and the (son)-of-Agathocles
ἐπὶ τὰς Αἰολίδας τε πόλεις ξὺν δυνάμει οὐκ ἐλάττονι
to the Aeolian both cities with a-force not smaller
ἐξέπεμψε καὶ ὅσαι Ἰωνικαὶ ὑπὸ τοῖς βαρβάροις ἔτι ἦσαν.
sent-out and as-many-as Ionian under the barbarians still were
18.2 καὶ τὰς μὲν ὀλιγαρχίας πανταχοῦ καταλύειν ἐκέλευσεν,
and the indeed oligarchies everywhere to-dissolve he-ordered
δημοκρατίας δὲ ἐγκαθιστάναι καὶ τοὺς νόμους τοὺς σφῶν
democracies and to-establish and the laws the their-own
ἑκάστοις ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ τοὺς φόρους ἀνεῖναι, ὅσους τοῖς
to-each to-restore and the tributes to-remit as-many-as to-the
βαρβάροις ἀπέφερον. αὐτὸς δὲ ὑπομείνας ἐν Ἐφέσῳ θυσίαν
barbarians they-paid he-himself and having-remained in Ephesus a-sacrifice
τε ἔθυσε τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι καὶ πομπὴν ἔπεμψε ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ
both sacrificed — to-Artemis and a-procession he-led with the army
πάσῃ ὡπλισμένῃ τε καὶ ὡς ἐς μάχην ξυντεταγμένῃ.
whole armed both and as for battle drawn-up
18.3 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναλαβὼν τῶν τε πεζῶν τοὺς
on-the and next-day having-taken of-the both infantry the
λοιποὺς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς
rest and the archers and the Agrianians and the
Θρᾷκας ἱππέας καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων τήν τε βασιλικὴν
Thracian cavalry and of-the companions the both royal
ἴλην καὶ πρὸς ταύτῃ τρεῖς ἄλλας ἐπὶ Μιλήτου
squadron and in-addition-to this three others toward Miletus
ἐστέλλετο· καὶ τὴν μὲν ἔξω καλουμένην πόλιν ἐξ
set-out and the indeed outer called city at-the

ἐφόδου ἔλαβεν ἐκλιπούσης τῆς φυλακῆς· ἐνταῦθα δὲ
first-assault he-took having-abandoned-it the garrison there and
καταστρατοπεδεύσας ἔγνω ἀποτειχίζειν τὴν εἴσω πόλιν.
having-encamped he-decided to-wall-off the inner city
Ἡγησίστρατος γάρ, ὅτῳ ἡ φρουρὰ ἡ Μιλησίων 18.4
Hegesistratus for to-whom the garrison the of-Milesians
ἐκ βασιλέως ἐπετέτραπτο, πρόσθεν γράμματα παρ᾽
by king had-been-entrusted before letters to
Ἀλέξανδρον ἔπεμπεν ἐνδιδοὺς τὴν Μίλητον· τότε δὲ
Alexander sent surrendering — Miletus then but
ἀναθαρρήσας ἐπὶ τῷ Περσῶν στρατῷ οὐ μακρὰν ὄντι
having-taken-heart at the of-Persians army not far being
διασώζειν τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐπενόει τὴν πόλιν. Νικάνωρ δὲ τὸ
to-preserve for-the Persians intended the city Nicanor and the
Ἑλληνικὸν ναυτικὸν ἄγων ὑποφθάνει τοὺς Πέρσας τρισὶν
Greek fleet leading anticipates the Persians by-three
ἡμέραις πρότερος καταπλεύσας ἢ τοὺς Πέρσας Μιλήτῳ
days earlier having-sailed-in than the Persians at-Miletus
προσχεῖν, καὶ ὁρμίζεται ναυσὶν ἑξήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν ἐν
to-put-in and anchors with-ships sixty and hundred at
τῇ νήσῳ τῇ Λάδῃ· κεῖται δὲ αὕτη ἐπὶ τῇ Μιλήτῳ.
the island — Lade lies and this off — Miletus
αἱ δὲ τῶν Περσῶν νῆες ὑστερήσασαι, ἐπειδὴ ἔμαθον 18.5
the and of-the Persians ships having-come-too-late when learned
οἱ ναύαρχοι τῶν ἀμφὶ Νικάνορα τὴν ἐν τῇ Λάδῃ
the admirals of-the around Nicanor the at — Lade
προκαταγωγήν, πρὸς τῇ Μυκάλῃ τῷ ὄρει ὡρμίσθησαν.
prior-putting-in by — Mycale the mountain anchored
τὴν γὰρ Λάδην τὴν νῆσον προκατειλήφει Ἀλέξανδρος,
— for Lade the island had-seized-beforehand Alexander
οὐ τῶν νεῶν μόνον τῇ ἐγκαθορμίσει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς
not of-the ships only with-the mooring but also the

Θρᾳ̂κας καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ξένων ἐς τετρακισχιλίους
Thracians and of-the other mercenaries about four-thousand
διαβιβάσας ἐς αὐτήν. ἦσαν δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων αἱ νῆες
having-carried-across to it were and of-the barbarians the ships
ἀμφὶ τὰς τετρακοσίας.
about the four-hundred

18.6 Παρμενίων μὲν δὴ καὶ ὡς παρῄνει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ναυμαχεῖν,
Parmenion indeed indeed even so advised Alexander to-fight-at-sea
τά τε ἄλλα κρατήσειν τῷ ναυτικῷ τοὺς Ἕλληνας
the both other-things to-be-going-to-prevail with-the fleet the Greeks
ἐπελπίζων καί τι καὶ θεῖον ἀνέπειθεν αὐτόν, ὅτι
hoping and something also divine persuaded him because
ἀετὸς ὤφθη καθήμενος ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ κατὰ πρύμναν
an-eagle was-seen sitting on the beach by stern
τῶν Ἀλεξάνδρου νεῶν. καὶ γὰρ δὴ νικήσαντας μὲν
of-the of-Alexander ships and for indeed having-won indeed
μεγάλα ὠφεληθήσεσθαι ἐς τὰ ὅλα, νικηθεῖσι δὲ οὐ
greatly to-be-going-to-be-benefited for the whole having-been-defeated but not
παρὰ μέγα ἔσεσθαι τὸ πταῖσμα· καὶ ὡς γὰρ
of great-consequence to-be-going-to-be the reverse even so for
θαλασσοκρατεῖν τοὺς Πέρσας. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφη ἐπιβῆναι
to-rule-the-sea the Persians and himself and he-said to-embark
ἐθέλειν τῶν νεῶν καὶ τοῦ κινδύνου μετέχειν.
to-be-willing on-the ships and of-the danger to-share

18.7 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τῇ τε γνώμῃ ἁμαρτάνειν ἔφη Παρμενίωνα
Alexander and in-the both judgment to-err he-said Parmenion
καὶ τοῦ σημείου τῇ οὐ κατὰ τὸ εἰκὸς ξυμβλήσει· ὀλίγαις
and of-the sign in-the not according-to the likely interpretation with-few
τε γὰρ ναυσὶ πρὸς πολλῷ πλείους ξὺν οὐδενὶ λογισμῷ
both for ships against far more with no reasoning

ναυμαχήσειν καὶ οὐ μεμελετηκότι τῷ σφῶν ναυτικῷ
to-be-going-to-fight-at-sea and with-not having-practiced the their fleet
πρὸς προησκημένον τὸ τῶν Κυπρίων τε καὶ Φοινίκων·
against trained the of-the Cyprians both and Phoenicians
τήν τε ἐμπειρίαν τῶν Μακεδόνων καὶ τὴν τόλμαν ἐν 18.8
the both experience of-the Macedonians and the daring in
ἀβεβαίῳ χωρίῳ οὐκ ἐθέλειν παραδοῦναι τοῖς βαρβάροις·
unstable place not to-be-willing to-hand-over to-the barbarians
καὶ ἡττηθεῖσι τῇ ναυμαχίᾳ οὐ μικρὰν τὴν βλάβην
and to-them-defeated in-the sea-battle not small the harm
ἔσεσθαι ἐς τοῦ πολέμου τὴν πρώτην δόξαν, τά τε
to-be-going-to-be for of-the war the first reputation the both
ἄλλα καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας νεωτεριεῖν πρὸς τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
other-things and the Greeks to-be-going-to-revolt at the naval
πταίσματος τὴν ἐξαγγελίαν ἐπαρθέντας.
reverse the report elated
ταῦτα μὲν τῷ λογισμῷ ξυντιθεὶς οὐκ ἐν καιρῷ 18.9
these-things indeed by-the reasoning putting-together not in season
ἀπέφαινε ναυμαχεῖν· τὸ θεῖον δὲ αὐτὸς ἄλλῃ ἐξηγεῖσθαι·
he-showed to-fight-at-sea the divine and he-himself otherwise to-interpret
εἶναι μὲν γὰρ πρὸς αὑτοῦ τὸν ἀετόν, ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι
to-be indeed for on-the-side-of himself the eagle but because
ἐπὶ γῇ καθήμενος ἐφαίνετο, δοκεῖν οἱ μᾶλλόν τι
on land sitting it-appeared to-seem to-him more somewhat
σημαίνειν, ὅτι ἐκ γῆς κρατήσει τοῦ Περσῶν ναυτικοῦ.
to-signify that from land he-will-prevail-over the of-Persians fleet
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Γλαύκιππος, ἀνὴρ τῶν δοκίμων ἐν Μιλήτῳ, 19.1
and in this Glaucippus a-man of-the reputable in Miletus
ἐκπεμφθεὶς παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον παρὰ τοῦ δήμου τε καὶ
sent to Alexander from the people both and
τῶν ξένων τῶν μισθοφόρων, οἷς μᾶλλόν τι
the mercenaries the hired to-whom more somewhat

ἐπετέτραπτο ἡ πόλις τά τε τείχη ἔφη ἐθέλειν τοὺς
had-been-entrusted the city the both walls he-said to-be-willing the
Μιλησίους καὶ τοὺς λιμένας παρέχειν κοινοὺς Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
Milesians and the harbors to-offer common to-Alexander
καὶ Πέρσαις καὶ τὴν πολιορκίαν ἐπὶ τούτοις λύειν ἠξίου.
and to-Persians and the siege on these to-lift he-asked
19.2 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ Γλαυκίππῳ μὲν προστάσσει ἀπαλλάττεσθαι
Alexander and to-Glaucippus indeed orders to-depart
κατὰ τάχος ἐς τὴν πόλιν καὶ Μιλησίοις ἀπαγγέλλειν
with speed into the city and to-Milesians to-announce
παρασκευάζεσθαι ὡς μαχουμένους ἕωθεν. αὐτὸς δ'
to-prepare-themselves as about-to-fight at-dawn he-himself and
ἐπιστήσας τῷ τείχει μηχανάς, καὶ τὰ μὲν
having-set-up against-the wall engines and the-parts indeed
καταβαλὼν δι' ὀλίγου τῶν τειχῶν, τὰ δὲ κατασείσας
having-thrown-down in short-time of-the walls the-others and having-shaken
ἐπὶ πολὺ προσῆγε τὴν στρατιὰν ὡς ἐπιβησομένους ᾗ
over much led-up the army as about-to-mount where
κατερήριπτο ἢ ἐσεσάλευτο τὸ τεῖχος, ἐφομαρτούντων καὶ
had-fallen or had-been-shaken the wall following-close and
μόνον οὐ θεωμένων τῶν Περσῶν ἀπὸ τῆς Μυκάλης.
only not watching the Persians from — Mycale
πολιορκουμένους τοὺς φίλους σφῶν καὶ ξυμμάχους.
besieged the friends of-theirs and allies
19.3 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Νικάνορα ἀπὸ τῆς Λάδης
in this and also the around Nicanor from — Lade
τὴν ὁρμὴν τῶν ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ κατιδόντες ἐς τὸν
the movement of-the with Alexander having-seen into the
λιμένα ἐπέπλεον τῶν Μιλησίων παρὰ γῆν τὴν εἰρεσίαν
harbor sailed of-the Milesians along land the rowing
ποιούμενοι, καὶ κατὰ τὸ στόμα τοῦ λιμένος, ᾗπερ
making and at the mouth of-the harbor where

τὸ στενότατον ἦν, ἀντιπρώρους βύζην τὰς τριήρεις
the narrowest was prow-on close-packed the triremes
ὁρμίσαντες ἀποκεκλείκεσαν τῷ μὲν Περσικῷ ναυτικῷ τὸν
having-moored had-shut-off for-the indeed Persian fleet the
λιμένα, τοῖς Μιλησίοις δὲ τὴν ἐκ τῶν Περσῶν ὠφέλειαν.
harbor for-the Milesians and the from the Persians help
ἔνθα οἱ Μιλήσιοί τε καὶ οἱ μισθοφόροι πανταχόθεν 19.4
there the Milesians both and the mercenaries from-every-side
ἤδη προσκειμένων σφίσι τῶν Μακεδόνων οἱ μὲν
already pressing on-them the Macedonians the-ones indeed
αὐτῶν ῥιπτοῦντες σφᾶς ἐν τῇ θαλάσσῃ ἐπὶ τῶν
of-them throwing themselves into the sea on the
ἀσπίδων ὑπτίων ἐς νησῖδά τινα ἀνώνυμον τῇ πόλει
shields upturned to islet a-certain nameless to-the city
ἐπικειμένην διενήχοντο, οἱ δὲ ἐς κελήτια ἐμβαίνοντες
lying-off swam-across the-others and into skiffs embarking
καὶ ἐπειγόμενοι ὑποφθάσαι τὰς τριήρεις τῶν Μακεδόνων
and hurrying to-outstrip the triremes of-the Macedonians
ἐγκατελήφθησαν ἐν τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος πρὸς τῶν
were-caught at the mouth of-the harbor by the
τριήρων· οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ ἐν αὐτῇ τῇ πόλει ἀπώλοντο.
triremes the and many in itself the city perished
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐχομένης ἤδη τῆς πόλεως ἐπὶ τοὺς 19.5
Alexander and being-held already the city against the
ἐς τὴν νῆσον καταπεφευγότας ἐπέπλει αὐτός, κλίμακας
to the island having-fled sailed himself ladders
φέρειν ἐπὶ τὰς πρώρας τῶν τριήρων κελεύσας, ὡς κατὰ
to-carry on the prows of-the triremes having-ordered as along
τὰ ἀπότομα τῆς νήσου, καθάπερ πρὸς τεῖχος, ἐκ τῶν
the sheer-parts of-the island as-if against a-wall from the
νεῶν τὴν ἀπόβασιν ποιησόμενος.
ships the landing about-to-make

19.6 ὡς δὲ διακινδυνεύειν ἐθέλοντας τοὺς ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἑώρα,
when and to-risk-all willing the on the island he-saw
οἶκτος λαμβάνει αὐτὸν τῶν ἀνδρῶν, ὅτι γενναῖοί τε καὶ
pity seizes him for-the men because noble both and
πιστοὶ αὐτῷ ἐφαίνοντο, καὶ σπένδεται πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ
faithful to-him they-appeared and makes-a-truce with them on
τῷδε ὡς αὑτῷ ξυστρατεύειν· ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι μισθοφόροι
this that with-himself to-campaign were and these mercenaries
Ἕλληνες ἐς τριακοσίους. αὐτοὺς δὲ Μιλησίους, ὅσοι
Greeks about three-hundred themselves and Milesians as-many-as
μὴ ἐν τῇ καταλήψει τῆς πόλεως ἔπεσον, ἀφῆκεν καὶ
not in the capture of-the city fell he-released and
ἐλευθέρους εἶναι ἔδωκεν.
free to-be he-granted

19.7 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀπὸ τῆς Μυκάλης ὁρμώμενοι τὰς μὲν
the and barbarians from — Mycale setting-out the indeed
ἡμέρας ἐπέπλεον τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ ναυτικῷ, προκαλέσεσθαι ἐς
days sailed-against the Greek fleet to-be-going-to-challenge to
ναυμαχίαν ἐλπίζοντες· τὰς δὲ νύκτας πρὸς τῇ Μυκάλῃ οὐκ
sea-battle hoping the and nights by — Mycale not
ἐν καλῷ ὡρμίζοντο, ὅτι ὑδρεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ Μαιάνδρου
in good anchored because to-draw-water from the Maeander
ποταμοῦ τῶν ἐκβολῶν διὰ μακροῦ ἠναγκάζοντο.
river of-the mouths at long-distance they-were-compelled

19.8 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ταῖς μὲν ναυσὶ τὸν λιμένα ἐφύλαττε τῶν
Alexander and with-the indeed ships the harbor guarded of-the
Μιλησίων, ὡς μὴ βιάσαιντο οἱ βάρβαροι τὸν ἔσπλουν,
Milesians so-that not might-force the barbarians the entrance
ἐκπέμπει δ᾽ ἐς τὴν Μυκάλην Φιλώταν, ἄγοντα τούς τε
sends-out and to — Mycale Philotas leading the both
ἱππέας καὶ τῶν πεζῶν τάξεις τρεῖς, παραγγείλας εἴργειν
cavalry and of-the infantry battalions three having-ordered to-bar

τῆς ἀποβάσεως τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν νεῶν. οἱ δέ, ὕδατός
from-the landing the from the ships they and of-water
τε σπάνει καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἐπιτηδείων οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὅτι
both by-scarcity and of-the other provisions nothing else except
μὴ πολιορκούμενοι ἐν ταῖς ναυσίν, ἐς Σάμον ἀπέπλευσαν.
— being-besieged in the ships to Samos sailed-off
ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ἐπισιτισάμενοι αὖθις ἐπέπλεον τῇ Μιλήτῳ·
thence and having-provisioned again sailed-against — Miletus
καὶ τὰς μὲν πολλὰς τῶν νεῶν πρὸ τοῦ λιμένος ἐν μετεώρῳ 19.9
and the indeed many of-the ships before the harbor in open-water
παρέταξαν, εἴ πῃ ἐκκαλέσαιντο ἐς τὸ πέλαγος τοὺς
drew-up if somehow they-might-draw-out into the open-sea the
Μακεδόνας, πέντε δὲ αὐτῶν εἰσέπλευσαν ἐς τὸν μεταξὺ τῆς
Macedonians five and of-them sailed-in into the between —
τε Λάδης νήσου καὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου λιμένα, ἐλπίσαντες
both of-Lade island and the camp harbor having-hoped
κενὰς καταλήψεσθαι τὰς Ἀλεξάνδρου ναῦς, ὅτι τοὺς
empty to-be-going-to-catch the of-Alexander ships because the
ναύτας ἀποσκεδάννυσθαι τὸ πολὺ ἀπὸ τῶν νεῶν τοὺς μὲν
sailors to-be-dispersed the most-part from the ships the-ones indeed
ἐπὶ φρυγανισμῷ, τοὺς δὲ ἐπὶ ξυγκομιδῇ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων,
for gathering-firewood the-others and for collecting of-the provisions
τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἐς προνομὰς ταττομένους, πεπυσμένοι ἦσαν.
the-others and also for forays being-posted having-learned they-had
ἀλλὰ μέρος μέν τι ἀπῆν τῶν ναυτῶν, ἐκ δὲ τῶν 19.10
but part indeed some was-absent of-the sailors from and the
παρόντων ξυμπληρώσας Ἀλέξανδρος δέκα ναῦς, ὡς
present having-manned Alexander ten ships when
προσπλεούσας τὰς πέντε τῶν Περσῶν κατεῖδε, πέμπει ἐπ᾽
sailing-up the five of-the Persians he-saw sends against
αὐτὰς κατὰ σπουδήν, ἐμβάλλειν ἀντιπρώρους κελεύσας.
them in haste to-ram prow-on having-ordered

οἱ δὲ ἐν ταῖς πέντε ναυσὶ τῶν Περσῶν, ὡς παρ᾽
the and in the five ships of-the Persians when contrary-to
ἐλπίδα ἀναγομένους τοὺς Μακεδόνας ἐπὶ σφᾶς εἶδον,
expectation putting-out the Macedonians against them they-saw
ὑποστρέψαντες ἐκ πολλοῦ ἔφευγον πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο ναυτικόν.
having-turned-about from far fled to the other fleet
19.11 καὶ ἡ μὲν Ἰασσέων ναῦς ἁλίσκεται αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν
and the indeed of-Iassians ship is-captured with-its-very men
ἐν τῇ φυγῇ, οὐ ταχυναυτοῦσα· αἱ δὲ τέσσαρες ἔφθασαν
in the flight not being-fast-sailing the and four got-in-time
καταφυγεῖν ἐς τὰς οἰκείας τριήρεις. οὕτω μὲν δὴ
to-escape to the own triremes so indeed indeed
ἀπέπλευσαν ἄπρακτοι ἐκ Μιλήτου οἱ Πέρσαι.
sailed-off unsuccessful from Miletus the Persians

VIII · HALICARNASSUS

Alexander disbands his fleet, short of money and judging that holding the coast will defeat the Persian navy. Halicarnassus is held by Memnon with a strong force and fleet. A night attempt on Myndus fails. Alexander fills the ditch and brings up towers, and a night sally to burn them is driven back. Two drunken hoplites of Perdiccas' battalion start a fight that nearly takes the city, whose wall has partly fallen; the defenders build a crescent wall within, and a sally burns some screens and a wooden tower. A last sally in full force is routed with about a thousand dead. Memnon and Orontobates fire the city and retire to the citadels, and Alexander razes it and gives Caria to Ada, who has adopted him.

20.1 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ καταλῦσαι ἔγνω τὸ ναυτικὸν χρημάτων τε ἐν
Alexander and to-disband decided the fleet of-money both in
τῷ τότε ἀπορίᾳ καὶ ἅμα οὐκ ἀξιόμαχον ὁρῶν τὸ αὑτοῦ
the then lack and at-the-same-time not a-match seeing the his-own
ναυτικὸν τῷ Περσικῷ, οὔκουν ἐθέλων οὐδὲ μέρει τινὶ τῆς
fleet for-the Persian not-therefore wishing even with-part any of-the

στρατιᾶς κινδυνεύειν. ἄλλως τε ἐπενόει, κατέχων ἤδη τῷ
army to-run-risk besides both he-reflected holding already with-the
πεζῷ τὴν Ἀσίαν, ὅτι οὔτε ναυτικοῦ ἔτι δέοιτο, τάς τε
infantry — Asia that neither of-a-fleet any-longer he-would-need the both
παραλίους πόλεις λαβὼν καταλύσει τὸ Περσῶν ναυτικόν,
coastal cities having-taken he-will-break-up the of-Persians fleet
οὔτε ὁπόθεν τὰς ὑπηρεσίας συμπληρώσουσιν οὔτε ὅποι τῆς
neither whence the crews they-will-fill-up nor where —
Ἀσίας προσέξουσιν ἔχοντας. καὶ τὸν ἀετὸν ταύτῃ συνέβαλλεν,
of-Asia they-will-put-in having and the eagle so he-interpreted
ὅτι ἐσήμηνεν αὐτῷ ἐκ τῆς γῆς κρατήσειν τῶν νεῶν.
that it-signified to-him from the land to-be-going-to-prevail-over the ships
ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ἐπὶ Καρίας ἐστέλλετο, ὅτι 20.2
these-things and having-accomplished toward Caria he-set-out because
ἐν Ἁλικαρνασσῷ συνεστηκέναι οὐ φαύλην δύναμιν τῶν
in Halicarnassus to-have-gathered not slight a-force of-the
τε βαρβάρων καὶ ξένων ἐξηγγέλλετο. ὅσαι δὲ ἐν
both barbarians and mercenaries was-reported as-many-as and in
μέσῳ πόλεις Μιλήτου τε καὶ Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ, ταύτας ἐξ
middle cities of-Miletus both and of-Halicarnassus these at
ἐφόδου λαβὼν καταστρατοπεδεύει πρὸς Ἁλικαρνασσῷ,
first-assault having-taken he-encamps by Halicarnassus
ἀπέχων τῆς πόλεως ἐς πέντε μάλιστα σταδίους, ὡς
being-distant from-the city about five about stades as
ἐπὶ χρονίῳ πολιορκίᾳ.
for long siege
ἥ τε γὰρ φύσις τοῦ χωρίου ὀχυρὸν ἐποίει αὐτὸ καὶ ὅπῃ 20.3
the both for nature of-the place strong made it and wherever
τι ἐνδεῖν ὡς πρὸς ἀσφάλειαν ἐφαίνετο, ξύμπαντα
anything to-be-lacking as for security appeared all
ταῦτα Μέμνων τε αὐτὸς παρών, ἤδη ἀποδεδειγμένος
these-things Memnon both himself present already appointed

πρὸς Δαρείου τῆς τε κάτω Ἀσίας καὶ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ
by Darius of-the both lower Asia and of-the fleet
παντὸς ἡγεμών, ἐκ πολλοῦ παρεσκευάκει, καὶ στρατιῶται
whole commander from long had-prepared and soldiers
πολλοὶ μὲν ξένοι μισθοφόροι ἐν τῇ πόλει ἐγκατελείφθησαν,
many indeed foreign mercenaries in the city had-been-left
πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ Περσῶν αὐτῶν, αἵ τε τριήρεις ἐφώρμουν
many and also of-Persians themselves the both triremes lay-at-anchor-off
τῷ λιμένι, ὡς καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ναυτῶν πολλὴν ὠφέλειαν
the harbor so-that also from the sailors much help
γίγνεσθαι ἐς τὰ ἔργα.
to-be for the works

20.4 τῇ μὲν δὴ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ προσάγοντος Ἀλεξάνδρου τῷ
on-the indeed indeed first day approaching Alexander the
τείχει κατὰ τὰς ἐπὶ Μύλασα φερούσας πύλας ἐκδρομή
wall by the to Mylasa leading gates a-sally
τε γίγνεται τῶν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως καὶ ἀκροβολισμός· καὶ
both takes-place of-the from the city and skirmishing and
τούτους οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀνέστειλάν τε οἱ παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου
these not with-difficulty checked both the from Alexander
ἀντεκδραμόντες καὶ ἐς τὴν πόλιν κατέκλεισαν.
having-run-out-against-them and into the city shut-in

20.5 οὐ πολλαῖς δὲ ὕστερον ἡμέραις Ἀλέξανδρος ἀναλαβὼν τούς
not many and later days Alexander having-taken the
τε ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τὴν τῶν ἑταίρων ἵππον καὶ τὴν Ἀμύντου
both shield-bearers and the of-the companions cavalry and the of-Amyntas
τε καὶ Περδίκκου καὶ Μελεάγρου τάξιν τὴν πεζικὴν καὶ
both and of-Perdiccas and of-Meleager battalion the infantry and
πρὸς τούτοις τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας περιῆλθε
in-addition-to these the archers and the Agrianians went-around
τῆς πόλεως ἐς τὸ πρὸς Μύνδου μέρος, τό τε τεῖχος
the city to the toward Myndus part the both wall

κατοψόμενος, εἰ ταύτῃ ἐπιμαχώτερον τυγχάνει ὂν ἐς τὴν
about-to-inspect if there more-assailable happens being for the
προσβολήν, καὶ ἅμα εἰ τὴν Μύνδον ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς
attack and at-the-same-time if — Myndus by a-raid
δύναιτο λαθὼν κατασχεῖν· ἔσεσθαι γὰρ οὐ σμικρὰν
he-could unnoticed to-seize to-be-going-to-be for not small
τὴν ὠφέλειαν ἐς τὴν τῆς Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ πολιορκίαν τὴν
the help for the — of-Halicarnassus siege —
Μύνδον οἰκείαν γενομένην· καί τι καὶ ἐνεδίδοτο αὐτῷ
Myndus his-own having-become and something also was-being-offered to-him
ἐκ τῶν Μυνδίων, εἰ λάθοι νυκτὸς προσελθών.
from the Myndians if he-should-escape-notice by-night having-approached
αὐτὸς μὲν δὴ κατὰ τὰ ξυγκείμενα ἀμφὶ μέσας 20.6
he-himself indeed indeed according-to the agreed about middle
νύκτας προσῆλθε τῷ τείχει· ὡς δὲ οὐδὲν ἐνεδίδοτο ἀπὸ
night approached the wall when and nothing was-surrendered from
τῶν ἔνδον, αἵ τε μηχαναὶ καὶ αἱ κλίμακες αὐτῷ οὐ
the inside the both engines and the ladders for-him not
παρῆσαν, οἷα δὴ οὐκ ἐπὶ πολιορκίαν σταλέντα, ἀλλ᾽
were-present as indeed not for siege having-set-out but
ὡς ἐπὶ προδοσίᾳ ἐνδιδομένης τῆς πόλεως, προσήγαγε καὶ
as for betrayal being-surrendered the city he-led-up even
ὣς τῶν Μακεδόνων τὴν φάλαγγα, ὑπορύττειν κελεύσας
so of-the Macedonians the phalanx to-undermine having-ordered
τὸ τεῖχος. καὶ ἕνα γε πύργον κατέβαλον οἱ Μακεδόνες.
the wall and one at-least tower threw-down the Macedonians
οὐ μέντοι ἐγύμνωσέ γε τὸ τεῖχος πεσών·
not however laid-bare at-least the wall having-fallen
καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἅμα εὐρώστως ἀμυνόμενοι 20.7
and the from the city at-the-same-time stoutly defending-themselves
καὶ ἐκ τῆς Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ κατὰ θάλασσαν πολλοὶ
and from — Halicarnassus by sea many

ἤδη παραβεβοηθηκότες ἄπορον ἐποίησαν τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
already having-come-to-help impossible made — for-Alexander
τὴν αὐτοσχέδιόν τε καὶ ἐξ ἐπιδρομῆς κατάληψιν τῆς
the improvised both and by raid seizure —
Μύνδου. οὕτω μὲν δὴ ἐπανέρχεται Ἀλέξανδρος οὐδὲν
of-Myndus so indeed indeed returns Alexander nothing
πράξας, ὧν ἕνεκα ὡρμήθη, καὶ τῇ πολιορκίᾳ τῆς
having-done of-what for-the-sake he-had-set-out and to-the siege —
Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ αὖθις προσεῖχε.
of-Halicarnassus again applied-himself

20.8 καὶ πρῶτα μὲν τὴν τάφρον, ἣ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως
and first indeed the ditch which before the city
ὀρώρυκτο αὐτοῖς, πλάτος μὲν τριάκοντα μάλιστα πηχῶν,
had-been-dug by-them in-breadth indeed thirty about cubits
τὸ δὲ βάθος ἐς πεντεκαίδεκα, ἐχώννυε, τοῦ ῥᾳδίαν
the and depth about fifteen he-filled-up for-the easy
εἶναι τὴν προσαγωγὴν τῶν τε πύργων, ἀφ' ὧν ἔμελλε
to-be the approach of-the both towers from which he-intended
τοὺς ἀκροβολισμοὺς ἐς τοὺς προμαχομένους τοῦ τείχους
the skirmishings at the defenders of-the wall
ποιεῖσθαι, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων μηχανῶν, αἷς κατασείειν
to-make and of-the other engines with-which to-shake-down
ἐπενόει τὸ τεῖχος.
he-intended the wall

20.9 καὶ ἥ τε τάφρος αὐτῷ ἐχώσθη οὐ χαλεπῶς καὶ οἱ
and the both ditch for-him was-filled not with-difficulty and the
πύργοι προσήγοντο ἤδη. οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῆς Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ
towers were-being-brought-up already the and from — Halicarnassus
νυκτὸς ἐκδραμόντες, ὡς ἐμπρῆσαι τούς τε πύργους καὶ
by-night having-run-out so-as to-set-fire-to the both towers and
ὅσαι ἄλλαι μηχαναὶ προσηγμέναι ἢ οὐ πόρρω τοῦ
as-many-as other engines brought-up or not far from-the

προσάγεσθαι ἦσαν, ὑπὸ τῶν φυλακῶν τε τῶν Μακεδόνων
being-brought-up were by the guards both of-the Macedonians
καὶ ὅσοι ἐν αὐτῷ ἔργῳ ἐξεγερθέντες παρεβοήθησαν οὐ
and as-many-as in the-very work having-been-roused came-to-help not
χαλεπῶς κατεκλείσθησαν ἐς τὰ τείχη αὖθις.
with-difficulty were-shut-in into the walls again
καὶ ἀπέθανον αὐτῶν ἄλλοι τε ἐς ἑβδομήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν 20.10
and died of-them others both about seventy and hundred
καὶ Νεοπτόλεμος ὁ Ἀρραβαίου, τοῦ Ἀμύντου ἀδελφός,
and Neoptolemus the (son)-of-Arrhabaeus — of-Amyntas brother
τῶν παρὰ Δαρεῖον αὐτομολησάντων· τῶν δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου
of-the to Darius having-deserted of-the and of-Alexander
στρατιωτῶν ἀπέθανον μὲν ἐς ἑκκαίδεκα, τραυματίαι δὲ
soldiers died indeed about sixteen wounded and
ἐγένοντο ἐς τριακοσίους, ὅτι ἐν νυκτὶ γενομένης τῆς
became about three-hundred because at night having-taken-place the
ἐκδρομῆς ἀφυλακτότεροι ἐς τὸ τιτρώσκεσθαι ἦσαν.
sally less-on-guard for the being-wounded they-were
οὐ πολλαῖς δὲ ἡμέραις ὕστερον δύο τῶν Μακεδόνων 21.1
not many and days later two of-the Macedonian
ὁπλῖται ἐκ τῆς Περδίκκου τάξεως ξυσκηνοῦντές τε καὶ
hoplites from — of-Perdiccas battalion sharing-a-tent both and
ἅμα ξυμπίνοντες αὐτόν τε καὶ τὰ αὐτοῦ ἑκάτερος
at-the-same-time drinking-together himself both and the his-own each
ἐπὶ μέγα τῷ λόγῳ ἦγεν. ἔνθα δὴ φιλοτιμία τε ἐσπίπτει
to great in-the talk brought there indeed emulation both falls-upon
αὐτοῖς, καί τι καὶ ὁ οἶνος ὑπεθέρμαινεν, ὥστε
them and somewhat also the wine heated so-that
ὁπλισάμενοι αὐτοὶ ἐπὶ σφῶν προσβάλλουσι τῷ τείχει
having-armed-themselves themselves by themselves attack the wall
κατὰ τὴν ἄκραν τὴν πρὸς Μύλασα μάλιστα τετραμμένην,
at the height the toward Mylasa most turned

ὡς ἐπίδειξιν τῆς σφῶν ῥώμης μᾶλλόν τι ἢ πρὸς
as a-display of-the their strength more somewhat than against
πολεμίους μετὰ κινδύνου τὸν ἀγῶνα ποιησόμενοι.
enemies with danger the contest about-to-make

21.2 καὶ τούτους κατιδόντες τινὲς τῶν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως δύο
and these having-seen some of-the from the city two
τε ὄντας καὶ οὐ ξὺν λογισμῷ προσφερομένους τῷ
both being and not with reasoning advancing to-the
τείχει ἐπεκθέουσιν. οἱ δὲ τοὺς μὲν ἐγγὺς πελάσαντας
wall run-out-against-them they and the-ones indeed near having-approached
ἀπέκτειναν, πρὸς δὲ τοὺς ἀφεστηκότας ἠκροβολίζοντο,
killed against and the standing-off skirmished
πλεονεκτούμενοι τῷ τε πλήθει καὶ τοῦ χωρίου τῇ
being-outmatched by-the both number and of-the place by-the
χαλεπότητι, ὅτι ἐξ ὑπερδεξίου τοῖς πολεμίοις ἡ
difficulty because from commanding-ground for-the enemy the
ἐπιδρομή τε καὶ ὁ ἀκροβολισμὸς ἐγίνετο.
charge both and the skirmishing took-place

21.3 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἀντεκθέουσί τινες καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν τοῦ Περδίκκου
and in this run-out-against some also others of-the — of-Perdiccas
στρατιωτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ ἄλλοι καὶ ξυμπίπτει
soldiers and from — Halicarnassus others and breaks-out
μάχη καρτερὰ πρὸς τῷ τείχει· καὶ κατακλείονται αὖθις
battle fierce by the wall and are-shut-in again
πρὸς τῶν Μακεδόνων εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν οἱ ἐπεκδραμόντες.
by the Macedonians within the gates the having-run-out-against
παρ᾽ ὀλίγον δὲ ἥλθε καὶ ἁλῶναι ἡ πόλις.
to little and came also to-be-captured the city

21.4 τά τε γὰρ τείχη ἐν τῷ τότε οὐκ ἐν ἀκριβεῖ φυλακῇ ἦν
the both for walls in the then not in exact guard was
καὶ δύο πύργοι καὶ μεσοπύργιον ἐς ἔδαφος καταπεπτωκότα
and two towers and curtain to ground having-fallen

οὐ χαλεπὴν ἂν τῷ στρατεύματι, εἰ ἅπαν προσήψατο
not difficult — to-the army if whole it-had-applied-itself-to
τοῦ ἔργου, τὴν ἐς τὸ τεῖχος πάροδον παρέσχε, καὶ
the work the to the wall approach would-have-provided and
ὁ τρίτος πύργος κατασεσεισμένος οὐδὲ οὗτος χαλεπῶς
the third tower having-been-shaken not-even this with-difficulty
ἂν ἠρίφθη ὑπορυσσόμενος· ἀλλὰ ἔφθησαν
— would-have-been-thrown-down being-undermined but they-had-anticipated
γὰρ ἀντὶ τοῦ πεπτωκότος τείχους ἔσωθεν πλίνθινον
for in-place-of the fallen wall from-within brick
μηνοειδὲς ἀντοικοδομησάμενοι οὐ χαλεπῶς ὑπὸ πολυχειρίας.
crescent-shaped having-built-in-its-place not with-difficulty by many-hands
καὶ τούτῳ ἐπῆγε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τὰς μηχανὰς Ἀλέξανδρος· 21.5
and to-this led-up on-the next-day the engines Alexander
καὶ ἐκδρομὴ αὖθις γίγνεται τῶν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐπὶ τῷ
and a-sally again takes-place of-the from the city for the
ἐμπρῆσαι τὰς μηχανάς. καὶ μέρος μέν τι τῶν πλησίον
to-set-fire-to the engines and part indeed some of-the near
τοῦ τείχους γέρρων καὶ ἑνὸς τῶν πύργων τῶν ξυλίνων
the wall wicker-screens and of-one of-the towers the wooden
κατεκαύθη, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα διεφύλαξαν οἱ περὶ Φιλώταν τε
was-burned the and rest preserved the around Philotas both
καὶ Ἑλλάνικον, οἷς ἡ φυλακὴ αὐτῶν ἐπετέτραπτο· ὡς
and Hellanicus to-whom the guarding of-them had-been-entrusted when
δὲ καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπεφάνη ἐν τῇ ἐκδρομῇ, τάς τε δᾷδας,
and also Alexander appeared in the sally the both torches
ὅσας ἔχοντες ἐκβεβοηθήκεσαν, ἀφέντες καὶ τὰ ὅπλα
as-many-as having they-had-run-out letting-go and the arms
οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν ῥίψαντες εἴσω τοῦ τείχους ἔφευγον.
the many of-them having-thrown-away within the wall fled

21.6 καίτοι τά γε πρῶτα τῇ φύσει τε τοῦ χωρίου,
and-yet the at-least first by-the nature both of-the place
ὑπερδεξίου ὄντος, ἐπεκράτουν καὶ οὐ κατὰ μέτωπον μόνον
commanding being they-prevailed and not on front only
ἠκροβολίζοντο ἐς τοὺς προμαχομένους τῶν μηχανῶν,
skirmished at the defenders of-the engines
ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκ τῶν πύργων, οἳ δὴ ἑκατέρωθεν τοῦ
but also from the towers which indeed on-either-side of-the
ἐρηριμμένου τείχους αὐτοὶ ὑπολελειμμένοι ἐκ πλαγίου
fallen wall themselves left from flank
τε καὶ μόνον οὐ κατὰ νώτου παρεῖχον ἀκροβολίζεσθαι
both and only not from rear they-allowed to-skirmish
ἐς τούς τῷ ἀντῳκοδομημένῳ τείχει προσάγοντας.
at the the counter-built wall approaching

22.1 οὐ πολλαῖς δὲ ὕστερον ἡμέραις ἐπάγοντος αὖθις Ἀλεξάνδρου
not many and later days leading-up again Alexander
τὰς μηχανὰς τῷ πλινθίνῳ τῷ ἐντὸς τείχει καὶ αὐτοῦ
the engines to-the brick the inner wall and himself
ἐφεστηκότος τῷ ἔργῳ, ἐκδρομὴ γίνεται πανδημεὶ ἐκ τῆς
standing-over the work a-sally takes-place in-full-force from the
πόλεως, τῶν μὲν κατὰ τὸ ἐρηριμμένον τεῖχος, ᾗ αὐτὸς
city of-the-ones indeed by the fallen wall where himself
Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπετέτακτο, τῶν δὲ κατὰ τὸ Τρίπυλον,
Alexander had-taken-post of-the-others and by — Tripylon
ᾗ οὐδὲ πάνυ τι προσδεχομένοις τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ἦν.
where not at-all in-any-way expecting-it the Macedonians it-was

22.2 καὶ οἱ μὲν δᾳδάς τε ταῖς μηχαναῖς ἐνέβαλλον καὶ
and the-ones indeed torches both onto-the engines threw and
ὅσα ἄλλα ἐς τὸ ἐξάψαι τε φλόγα καὶ ἐπὶ μέγα
as-many-as other-things for the to-kindle both a-flame and to great
προκαλέσασθαι, τῶν δὲ ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον αὐτῶν τε
to-call-forth of-the and around Alexander themselves both

ἐμβαλλόντων ἐς αὐτοὺς ἐρρωμένως καὶ ταῖς μηχαναῖς
charging at them vigorously and with-the engines
ἀπὸ τῶν πύργων λίθων τε μεγάλων ἀφιεμένων καὶ
from the towers stones both great being-hurled and
βελῶν ἐξακοντιζομένων οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀπεστράφησάν τε
missiles being-shot not with-difficulty were-turned-back both
καὶ ἔφυγον ἐς τὴν πόλιν.
and fled into the city
καὶ φόνος ταύτῃ οὐκ ὀλίγος ἐγένετο, ὅσῳ πλείονές 22.3
and slaughter there not little took-place in-as-much-as more
τε καὶ ξὺν μείζονι τῇ τόλμῃ ἐξέδραμον. οἱ μὲν γὰρ εἰς
both and with greater the daring they-ran-out the-ones indeed for into
χεῖρας ἐλθόντες τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ἀπέθανον, οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ
hands having-come with-the Macedonians died the-others and about
τῷ τείχει τῷ καταπεπτωκότι, στενοτέρας τε ἢ κατὰ τὸ
the wall the fallen narrower both than for the
πλῆθος αὐτῶν τῆς παρόδου οὔσης καὶ τῶν κατερηριμμένων
multitude of-them the passage being and of-the thrown-down-parts
τοῦ τείχους χαλεπὴν τὴν ὑπέρβασιν αὐτοῖς παρεχόντων.
of-the wall difficult the crossing for-them making
τοῖς δὲ κατὰ τὸ Τρίπυλον ἐκδραμοῦσιν ἀπήντα Πτολεμαῖος 22.4
the and by — Tripylon having-run-out met Ptolemy
ὁ σωματοφύλαξ ὁ βασιλικός, τήν τε Ἀδαίου καὶ Τιμάνδρου
the bodyguard the royal the both of-Adaeus and of-Timander
ἅμα οἱ τάξιν ἄγων καὶ ἔστιν οὓς τῶν ψιλῶν· καὶ
together-with himself battalion leading and there-are whom of-the light-troops and
οὗτοι οὐδὲ αὐτοὶ χαλεπῶς ἐτρέψαντο τοὺς ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.
these not-even themselves with-difficulty turned the from the city
ξυνέβη δὲ καὶ τούτοις ἐν τῇ ἀποχωρήσει κατὰ στενὴν 22.5
it-happened and also to-these in the withdrawal along narrow
γέφυραν τὴν ἐπὶ τῆς τάφρου πεποιημένην φεύγουσι τήν
bridge the over the ditch made fleeing the

τε γέφυραν αὐτὴν ὑπὸ πλήθους ξυντρῖψαι καὶ πολλοὺς
both bridge itself by multitude to-break and many
αὐτῶν ἐς τὴν τάφρον ἐμπεσόντας τοὺς μὲν ὑπὸ σφῶν
of-them into the ditch having-fallen the-ones indeed by themselves
καταπατηθέντας διαφθαρῆναι, τοὺς δὲ καὶ ἄνωθεν ὑπὸ
trampled to-perish the-others and also from-above by
τῶν Μακεδόνων βαλλομένους.
the Macedonians being-shot

22.6 ὁ πλεῖστος δὲ φόνος περὶ ταῖς πύλαις αὐταῖς ξυνέβη,
the greatest and slaughter about the gates themselves happened
ὅτι ἡ ξύγκλεισις τῶν πυλῶν φοβερά τε καὶ πρὸ
because the shutting of-the gates fearful both and before
τοῦ καιροῦ γενομένη, δεισάντων μὴ συνεισπέσοιεν τοῖς
the time having-taken-place having-feared lest they-burst-in-with the
φεύγουσιν ἐχόμενοι αὐτῶν οἱ Μακεδόνες, πολλοὺς καὶ
fleeing keeping-close-to them the Macedonians many also
τῶν φιλίων τῆς εἰσόδου ἀπέκλεισεν, οὓς πρὸς αὐτοῖς
of-the friendly-ones from-the entrance shut-out whom by the-very
τοῖς τείχεσιν οἱ Μακεδόνες διέφθειραν.
the walls the Macedonians destroyed

22.7 καὶ παρ᾽ ὀλίγον ἦκεν ἁλῶναι ἡ πόλις, εἰ μὴ
and to little came to-be-captured the city if not
Ἀλέξανδρος ἀνεκαλέσατο τὸ στράτευμα, ἔτι διασῶσαι
Alexander had-called-back the army still to-save
ἐθέλων τὴν Ἁλικαρνασσόν, εἴ τι φίλιον ἐνδοθείη
wishing — Halicarnassus if anything friendly should-be-offered
ἐκ τῶν Ἁλικαρνασσέων. ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν ἐκ
from the Halicarnassians died and of-the indeed from
τῆς πόλεως ἐς χιλίους, τῶν δὲ ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀμφὶ
the city about thousand of-the and with Alexander about
τοὺς τεσσαράκοντα, καὶ ἐν τούτοις Πτολεμαῖός τε ὁ
the forty and among these Ptolemy both the

σωματοφύλαξ καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ τοξάρχης καὶ Ἀδαῖος ὁ
bodyguard and Clearchus the archer-commander and Adaeus the
χιλιάρχης, οὗτοι καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν οὐκ ἠμελημένων Μακεδόνων.
chiliarch these and others of-the not insignificant Macedonians
ἔνθα δὴ ξυνελθόντες οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῶν Περσῶν, 23.1
there indeed having-met the leaders of-the Persians
Ὀροντοβάτης τε καὶ Μέμνων, καὶ ἐκ τῶν παρόντων
Orontobates both and Memnon and from the present-circumstances
γνόντες σφᾶς τε οὐ δυναμένους ἐπὶ πολὺ ἀντέχειν
having-recognized themselves both not being-able for long to-hold-out
τῇ πολιορκίᾳ καὶ τοῦ τείχους τὸ μέν τι καταπεπτωκὸς
against-the siege and of-the wall the indeed part fallen
ἤδη ὁρῶντες, τὸ δὲ καὶ κατασεσεισμένον, πολλοὺς δὲ τῶν
already seeing the and also shaken many and of-the
στρατιωτῶν ἐν ταῖς ἐκδρομαῖς τοὺς μὲν διεφθαρμένους,
soldiers in the sallies the-ones indeed destroyed
τοὺς δὲ καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ τετρῶσθαι ἀπομάχους ὄντας,
the-others and also from the to-have-been-wounded unfit-for-battle being
ταῦτα ἐν νῷ λαβόντες ἀμφὶ δευτέραν φυλακὴν τῆς νυκτὸς 23.2
these-things in mind having-taken about second watch of-the night
τόν τε ξύλινον πύργον, ὃν αὐτοὶ ἀντῳκοδόμησαν
the both wooden tower which they-themselves had-built-against
ταῖς μηχαναῖς τῶν πολεμίων, ἐμπιπρᾶσι καὶ τὰς στοάς,
the engines of-the enemy set-fire-to and the colonnades
ἐν αἷς τὰ βέλη αὐτοῖς ἀπέκειτο. ἐνέβαλον δὲ καὶ ταῖς
in which the missiles for-them were-stored threw and also onto-the
οἰκίαις πῦρ ταῖς πλησίον τοῦ τείχους·
houses fire the near the wall
τῶν δὲ καὶ προσήψατο ἡ φλὸξ ἀπό τε τῶν στοῶν 23.3
of-these and also caught the flame from both the colonnades
καὶ τοῦ πύργου πολλὴ ἀπενεχθεῖσα καί τι καὶ τοῦ
and the tower much carried-off and somewhat also the

ἀνέμου ταύτῃ ἐπιφέροντος· αὐτῶν δὲ οἱ μὲν ἐς τὴν
wind there bearing-it of-them and the-ones indeed to the
ἄκραν τὴν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἀπεχώρησαν, οἱ δὲ ἐς τὴν
citadel the in the island withdrew the-others and to the
Σαλμακίδα, ἄκραν οὕτω καλουμένην.
Salmacis citadel so called

23.4 Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη ταῦτα πρός τινων
to-Alexander and when were-reported these-things by some
αὐτομολησάντων ἐκ τοῦ ἔργου καὶ τὸ πῦρ πολὺ καθεώρα
having-deserted from the action and the fire great he-saw
αὐτός, καίτοι ἀμφὶ μέσας που νύκτας ἦν τὸ γιγνόμενον,
himself and-yet about middle perhaps night was the happening
ὁ δὲ καὶ ὡς ἐξαγαγὼν τοὺς Μακεδόνας τοὺς μὲν
he and even so having-led-out the Macedonians the-ones indeed
ἔτι ἐμπιπράντας τὴν πόλιν ἔκτεινεν, ὅσοι δὲ ἐν ταῖς
still setting-fire-to the city killed as-many-as and in the
οἰκίαις καταλαμβάνοιντο τῶν Ἁλικαρνασσέων, τούτους δὲ
houses should-be-caught of-the Halicarnassians these and
σώζειν παρήγγειλεν. ἤδη τε ἠὼς ὑπέφαινε καὶ κατιδὼν
to-save he-ordered already both dawn was-appearing and having-observed
τὰς ἄκρας,
the citadels

23.5 ἃς οἵ τε Πέρσαι καὶ οἱ μισθοφόροι κατειλήφεσαν, ταύτας
which the both Persians and the mercenaries had-seized these
μὲν ἀπέγνω πολιορκεῖν, τριβήν τε ἐπινοῶν οὐκ ὀλίγην
indeed he-gave-up to-besiege delay both reflecting not little
ἔσεσθαί οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτὰς τῇ φύσει τῶν χωρίων καὶ οὐ
to-be-going-to-be for-him around them by-the nature of-the places and not
παρὰ μέγα εἶναι ἐξελόντι οἱ τὴν πόλιν ἤδη πᾶσαν.
of great-consequence to-be having-taken for-him the city already whole

θάψας δὲ τοὺς ἀποθανόντας ἐν τῇ νυκτὶ τὰς μὲν μηχανὰς 23.6
having-buried and the having-died in the night the indeed engines
ἐς Τράλλεις ἀπαγαγεῖν ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἐπ᾽ αὐταῖς τεταγμένους,
to Tralles to-take-away he-ordered the over them posted
αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν πόλιν ἐς ἔδαφος κατασκάψας αὐτῆς τε
he-himself and the city to ground having-razed of-it both
ταύτης καὶ τῆς ἄλλης Καρίας φυλακὴν ἐγκαταλιπὼν
this and of-the other Caria a-garrison having-left
ξένους μὲν πεζοὺς τρισχιλίους, ἱππέας δὲ ἐς διακοσίους
mercenaries indeed infantry three-thousand cavalry and about two-hundred
καὶ Πτολεμαῖον ἡγεμόνα αὐτῶν ἐπὶ Φρυγίας ἐστέλλετο.
and Ptolemy commander of-them toward Phrygia set-out
τῆς δὲ Καρίας ξυμπάσης σατραπεύειν ἔταξεν Ἄδαν, 23.7
— and of-Caria whole to-be-satrap he-appointed Ada
θυγατέρα μὲν Ἑκατόμνω, γυναῖκα δὲ Ἰδριέως, ὃς καὶ
daughter indeed of-Hecatomnus wife and of-Hidrieus who also
ἀδελφὸς αὐτῇ ὢν κατὰ νόμον τῶν Καρῶν ξυνῴκει. καὶ
brother to-her being according-to custom of-the Carians lived-with-her and
ὁ μὲν Ἰδριεὺς τελευτῶν ταύτῃ ἐπέτρεψε τὰ πράγματα,
— indeed Hidrieus dying to-her entrusted the affairs
νενομισμένον ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ ἔτι ἀπὸ Σεμιράμεως καὶ γυναῖκας
being-customary in — Asia still from Semiramis also women
ἄρχειν ἀνδρῶν. Πιξώδαρος δὲ τὴν μὲν ἐκβάλλει τῆς
to-rule men Pixodarus and her indeed expels from-the
ἀρχῆς, αὐτὸς δὲ κατεῖχε τὰ πράγματα.
rule he-himself and held the affairs
τελευτήσαντος δὲ Πιξωδάρου Ὀροντοβάτης τὴν Καρῶν 23.8
having-died and Pixodarus Orontobates the of-Carians
ἀρχὴν ἐκ βασιλέως πεμφθεὶς εἶχε, γαμβρὸς ὢν Πιξωδάρου.
rule from king sent held son-in-law being of-Pixodarus
Ἄδα δὲ Ἄλινδα μόνον κατεῖχε, χωρίον τῆς Καρίας
Ada and Alinda only held place — of-Caria

ἐν τοῖς ὀχυρώτατον, καὶ ἐσβαλόντι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐς
among the strongest and to-him-having-invaded Alexander into
Καρίαν ἀπήντα, τά τε Ἄλινδα ἐνδιδοῦσα καὶ παῖδά οἱ
Caria she-met — both Alinda surrendering and as-son for-herself
τιθεμένη Ἀλέξανδρον. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος τά τε Ἄλινδα αὐτῇ
making Alexander and Alexander — both Alinda to-her
ἐπέτρεψε καὶ τὸ ὄνομα τοῦ παιδὸς οὐκ ἀπηξίωσε, καὶ
entrusted and the name of-the son not refused and
ἐπειδὴ Ἁλικαρνασσόν τε ἐξεῖλε καὶ τῆς ἄλλης Καρίας
when Halicarnassus both he-took and of-the other Caria
ἐπεκράτησεν, αὐτῇ ἄρχειν ἁπάσης ἔδωκε.
became-master to-her to-rule whole he-gave

IX · LYCIA, PAMPHYLIA, AND A PLOT

The newly married Macedonians are sent home for the winter. Parmenion goes to Sardis, and Alexander takes the Lycian cities and Phaselis. There he learns that Darius has offered Alexander son of Aeropus, commander of the Thessalian cavalry, the throne of Macedonia to kill the king. A captive envoy and a swallow's warning confirm the plot, and the man is arrested. A north wind lets the army pass along the beach, which his men call divine favor. Aspendus agrees to terms, Side, whose settlers forgot their Greek, takes a garrison, and Syllium holds out; then Aspendus reneges.

24.1 τῶν Μακεδόνων δὲ ἔστιν οἳ συνεστρατευμένοι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
of-the Macedonians and there-are who having-campaigned-with Alexander
ἦσαν νεωστὶ πρὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς γεγαμηκότες· καὶ τούτων
were recently before the expedition having-married and of-these
ἔγνω οὐκ ἀμελητέα εἶναί οἱ Ἀλέξανδρος, ἀλλ' ἐκπέμπει
he-judged not to-be-neglected to-be for-him Alexander but sends-out
γὰρ αὐτοὺς ἐκ Καρίας διαχειμάσοντας ἐν Μακεδονίᾳ
for them from Caria about-to-winter in Macedonia

ἅμα ταῖς γυναιξίν, ἐπιτάξας αὐτοῖς Πτολεμαῖόν τε τὸν
together-with the wives having-put-over them Ptolemy both the
Σελεύκου, ἕνα τῶν σωματοφυλάκων τῶν βασιλικῶν, καὶ τῶν
(son)-of-Seleucus one of-the bodyguards the royal and of-the
στρατηγῶν Κοῖνόν τε τὸν Πολεμοκράτους καὶ Μελέαγρον
generals Coenus both the (son)-of-Polemocrates and Meleager
τὸν Νεοπτολέμου, ὅτι καὶ αὐτοὶ τῶν νεογάμων ἦσαν,
the (son)-of-Neoptolemus because also themselves of-the newly-married were
προστάξας, ἐπειδὰν αὐτοί τε ἐπανίωσι καὶ τοὺς μετὰ 24.2
having-ordered whenever they-themselves both return and the with
σφῶν ἐκπεμφθέντας ἐπαναγάγωσι, καταλέξαι ἱππέας τε
them sent-out bring-back to-enroll cavalry both
καὶ πεζοὺς ἐκ τῆς χώρας ὅσους πλείστους. καὶ τῷ
and infantry from the country as-many-as most and by-the
ἔργῳ τῷδε, εἴπερ τινὶ ἄλλῳ, εὐδοκίμησε παρὰ Μακεδόσιν
deed this if-indeed by-any other won-good-repute among Macedonians
Ἀλέξανδρος. ἔπεμψε δὲ καὶ Κλέανδρον τὸν Πολεμοκράτους
Alexander he-sent and also Cleander the (son)-of-Polemocrates
ἐπὶ ξυλλογῇ στρατιωτῶν εἰς Πελοπόννησον.
for levying of-soldiers to Peloponnese
Παρμενίωνα δὲ πέμπει ἐπὶ Σάρδεων, δοὺς αὐτῷ τῶν 24.3
Parmenion and he-sends toward Sardis having-given him of-the
τε ἑταίρων ἱππαρχίαν καὶ τοὺς Θετταλοὺς ἱππέας καὶ
both companions a-hipparchy and the Thessalian cavalry and
τοὺς ἄλλους ξυμμάχους καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας ἄγειν· καὶ κελεύει
the other allies and the wagons to-lead and orders
προϊέναι ἀπὸ Σάρδεων ἐπὶ Φρυγίαν. αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ Λυκίας
to-advance from Sardis toward Phrygia he-himself and toward Lycia
τε καὶ Παμφυλίας ᾖει, ὡς τῆς παραλίου κρατήσας
both and Pamphylia went so-that of-the coast having-become-master
ἀχρεῖον καταστῆσαι τοῖς πολεμίοις τὸ ναυτικόν.
useless to-render for-the enemy the fleet

24.4 καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐν παρόδῳ Ὕπαρνα, χωρίον ὀχυρόν,
and first indeed on the-way Hyparna a-place strong
φυλακὴν ἔχον ξένους μισθοφόρους, ἐξ ἐφόδου ἔλαβεν·
garrison having mercenary hirelings at first-assault he-took
οἱ δ' ἐκ τῆς ἄκρας ξένοι ὑπόσπονδοι ἐξῆλθον.
the and from the citadel mercenaries under-truce came-out
ἔπειτα εἰσβαλὼν εἰς Λυκίαν Τελμισσέας μὲν ὁμολογίᾳ
then having-invaded into Lycia Telmissians indeed by-agreement
προσηγάγετο, περάσας δὲ τὸν Ξάνθον ποταμὸν Πίναρα
he-brought-over having-crossed and the Xanthus river Pinara
καὶ Ξάνθον τὴν πόλιν καὶ Πάταρα ἐνδοθέντα ἔλαβε καὶ
and Xanthus the city and Patara surrendered he-took and
ἄλλα ἐλάττω πολίσματα ἐς τριάκοντα.
others smaller towns about thirty

24.5 ταῦτα καταπράξας ἐν ἀκμῇ ἤδη τοῦ χειμῶνος ἐς
these-things having-accomplished in height already of-the winter into
τὴν Μιλυάδα καλουμένην χώραν ἐσβάλλει, ἥ ἐστι μὲν
the Milyas called country he-invades which is indeed
τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας, ξυνετέλει δὲ ἐς τὴν Λυκίαν τότε,
of-the great Phrygia was-assessed but with — Lycia then
οὕτως ἐκ βασιλέως μεγάλου τεταγμένον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα
so by king great arranged and there
Φασηλιτῶν πρέσβεις ἦκον περὶ φιλίας τε καὶ χρυσῷ
of-Phaselites envoys came about friendship both and with-a-golden
στεφάνῳ στεφανῶσαι Ἀλέξανδρον· καὶ ὑπὲρ τῶν αὐτῶν
crown to-crown Alexander and about the same-things
ἐπικηρυκευόμενοι ἐπρέσβευον Λυκίων τῶν κάτω οἱ πολλοί.
negotiating-by-herald sent-envoys of-Lycians the lower the many

24.6 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ Φασηλίτας τε καὶ Λυκίους παραδοῦναι
Alexander and Phaselites both and Lycians to-hand-over
τὰς πόλεις τοῖς ἐπὶ τοῦτο στελλομένοις ἐκέλευσε· καὶ
the cities to-the for this being-sent ordered and

παρεδόθησαν ξύμπασαι. αὐτὸς δὲ ὀλίγον ὕστερον ἐς
they-were-handed-over all he-himself and little later to
τὴν Φασηλίδα παραγενόμενος συνεξαιρεῖ αὐτοῖς φρούριον
— Phaselis having-come helps-destroy with-them a-fort
ὀχυρόν, ἐπιτετειχισμένον τῇ χώρᾳ πρὸς Πισιδῶν, ὅθεν
strong built-against the country by Pisidians whence
ὁρμώμενοι οἱ βάρβαροι πολλὰ ἔβλαπτον τῶν Φασηλιτῶν
setting-out the barbarians much harmed of-the Phaselites
τοὺς τὴν γῆν ἐργαζομένους.
the the land working

ἔτι δὲ αὐτῷ περὶ τὴν Φασηλίδα ὄντι ἐξαγγέλλεται 25.1
still and for-him around — Phaselis being is-reported
Ἀλέξανδρον τὸν Ἀερόπου ἐπιβουλεύειν, τά τε ἄλλα τῶν
Alexander the (son)-of-Aeropus to-be-plotting the both other-things of-the
ἑταίρων ὄντα καὶ ἐν τῷ τότε Θεσσαλῶν τῆς ἵππου ἄρχοντα.
companions being and in the then of-Thessalians of-the horse commanding
ἦν μὲν δὴ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος οὗτος ἀδελφὸς Ἡρομένους τε καὶ
was indeed indeed — Alexander this brother of-Heromenes both and
Ἀρραβαίου τῶν ξυνεπιλαβόντων τῆς σφαγῆς τῆς Φιλίππου·
of-Arrhabaeus of-the having-taken-part-in the murder — of-Philip
καὶ τότε αἰτίαν σχόντα αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρος ἀφῆκεν, ὅτι 25.2
and then charge having-incurred him Alexander released because
ἐν πρώτοις τε ἀφίκετο τῶν φίλων παρ᾽ αὐτόν, ἐπειδὴ
among first both he-came of-the friends to him when
Φίλιππος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ τὸν θώρακα συνενδὺς
Philip died and the breastplate having-put-on-with-him
συνηκολούθησεν αὐτῷ εἰς τὰ βασίλεια· ὕστερον δὲ καὶ
followed him into the palace later and also
ἐν τιμῇ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν εἶχε, στρατηγόν τε ἐπὶ Θρᾴκης
in honor around himself he-held general both to Thrace
στείλας καὶ ἐπειδὴ Κάλας ὁ τῶν Θετταλῶν ἵππαρχος
having-sent and when Calas the of-the Thessalians cavalry-commander

ἐπὶ σατραπείᾳ ἐξεπέμφθη, αὐτὸν ἀπέδειξεν ἄρχειν τῆς
for satrapy was-sent-out him he-appointed to-command the
Θεσσαλικῆς ἵππου. τὰ δὲ τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς ἐξηγγέλθη ὧδε.
Thessalian horse the-things and of-the plot were-reported thus
25.3 Δαρεῖος, ἐπειδὴ Ἀμύντας αὐτομολήσας παρ᾽ αὐτὸν λόγους
Darius when Amyntas having-deserted to him words
τέ τινας καὶ γράμματα παρὰ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου τούτου
both some and letters from — Alexander this
ἐκόμισε, καταπέμπει ἐπὶ θάλασσαν Σισίνην, ἄνδρα Πέρσην
brought sends-down to sea Sisines a-man Persian
τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν πιστῶν, πρόφασιν μὲν παρὰ Ἀτιζύην τὸν
of-the around himself trusted pretext indeed to Atizyes the
Φρυγίας σατράπην, τῇ δὲ ἀληθείᾳ τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τούτῳ
of-Phrygia satrap in-the but truth — with-Alexander this
συνεσόμενον καὶ πίστεις δώσοντα, εἰ ἀποκτείνειε βασιλέα
about-to-meet and pledges about-to-give if he-should-kill king
Ἀλέξανδρον, αὐτὸν βασιλέα καταστήσειν Μακεδονίας καὶ
Alexander him king to-be-going-to-establish of-Macedonia and
χρυσίου τάλαντα πρὸς τῇ βασιλείᾳ ἐπιδώσειν χίλια.
of-gold talents in-addition-to the kingship to-be-going-to-give thousand
25.4 ὁ δὲ Σισίνης ἁλοὺς πρὸς Παρμενίωνος λέγει πρὸς
— and Sisines captured by Parmenion tells to
Παρμενίωνα ὧν ἕνεκα ἀπεστάλη· καὶ τοῦτον ἐν φυλακῇ
Parmenion of-what for-the-sake he-had-been-sent and him in custody
πέμπει Παρμενίων παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον, καὶ πυνθάνεται
sends Parmenion to Alexander and learns
ταὐτὰ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ Ἀλέξανδρος. ξυναγαγὼν δὲ τοὺς φίλους
the-same-things from him Alexander having-assembled and the friends
βουλὴν προὐτίθει ὅ τι χρὴ ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου γνῶναι.
a-deliberation proposed what ever it-is-necessary about Alexander to-decide

καὶ ἐδόκει τοῖς ἑταίροις μήτε πάλαι εὖ βεβουλεῦσθαι τὸ 25.5
and it-seemed to-the companions neither long-ago well to-have-planned the
κράτιστον τοῦ ἱππικοῦ ἀνδρὶ οὐ πιστῷ ἐπιτρέψας, νῦν
strongest of-the cavalry to-a-man not trustworthy having-entrusted now
τε χρῆναι αὐτὸν κατὰ τάχος ἐκποδὼν ποιεῖσθαι, πρὶν
both it-to-be-necessary him with speed out-of-the-way to-make before
καὶ ἐπιτηδειότερον γενόμενον τοῖς Θετταλοῖς ξὺν αὐτοῖς
also more-attached having-become to-the Thessalians with them
τι νεωτερίσαι. καί τι καὶ θεῖον ἐφόβει αὐτούς.
something to-start-a-revolt and something also divine frightened them
ἔτι γὰρ πολιορκοῦντος αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου Ἁλικαρνασσὸν 25.6
still for besieging him Alexander Halicarnassus
ἀναπαύεσθαι μὲν ἐν μεσημβρίᾳ, χελιδόνα δὲ περιπέτεσθαι
to-be-resting indeed at noon a-swallow and to-fly-around
ὑπὲρ τῆς κεφαλῆς τρύζουσαν μεγάλα καὶ τῆς εὐνῆς ἄλλῃ
over the head twittering loudly and of-the bed here
καὶ ἄλλῃ ἐπικαθίζειν, θορυβωδέστερον ἢ κατὰ τὸ
and there to-perch more-noisily than according-to the
εἰωθὸς ᾄδουσαν·
customary singing
τὸν δὲ ὑπὸ καμάτου ἐγερθῆναι μὲν ἀδυνάτως ἔχειν ἐκ 25.7
him and from fatigue to-be-awakened indeed unable to-be from
τοῦ ὕπνου, ἐνοχλούμενον δὲ πρὸς τῆς φωνῆς τῇ χειρὶ
the sleep being-troubled but by the voice with-the hand
οὐ βαρέως ἀποσοβῆσαι τὴν χελιδόνα· τὴν δὲ τοσούτου
not heavily to-shoo-away the swallow she and so-far
ἄρα δεῆσαι ἀποφυγεῖν πληγεῖσαν, ὥστε ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς
then to-fall-short to-fly-off having-been-struck that on the head
αὐτῆς τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου καθημένην μὴ πρόσθεν ἀνεῖναι
itself — of-Alexander sitting not before to-let-go
πρὶν παντελῶς ἐξεγερθῆναι Ἀλέξανδρον.
until completely to-be-awakened Alexander

25.8 καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος οὐ φαῦλον ποιησάμενος τὸ τῆς χελιδόνος
and Alexander not slight having-considered the of-the swallow
ἀνεκοίνωσεν Ἀριστάνδρῳ τῷ Τελμισσεῖ, μάντει· Ἀρίστανδρον
communicated to-Aristander the Telmissian seer Aristander
δὲ ἐπιβουλὴν μὲν ἔκ του τῶν φίλων σημαίνεσθαι
and a-plot indeed from some-one of-the friends to-be-signified
αὐτῷ εἰπεῖν, σημαίνεσθαι δὲ καί, ὅτι καταφανὴς ἔσται.
to-him to-have-said to-be-signified and also that discovered it-will-be
τὴν γὰρ χελιδόνα σύντροφόν τε εἶναι ὄρνιθα καὶ εὔνουν
the for swallow reared-with-man both to-be a-bird and well-disposed
ἀνθρώποις καὶ λάλον μᾶλλον ἢ ἄλλην ὄρνιθα.
to-men and talkative more than other bird

25.9 ταῦτά τε οὖν καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ τοῦ Πέρσου ξυνθεὶς
these-things both then and the-things from the Persian having-put-together
πέμπει ὡς Παρμενίωνα Ἀμφοτερὸν τὸν Ἀλεξάνδρου μὲν
he-sends to Parmenion Amphoterus the of-Alexander indeed
παῖδα, ἀδελφὸν δὲ Κρατεροῦ. καὶ ξυμπέμπει αὐτῷ τῶν
son brother and of-Craterus and sends-with him of-the
Περγαίων τινὰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἡγησομένους. καὶ ὁ Ἀμφοτερὸς
Pergaeans some the road about-to-guide and — Amphoterus
στολὴν ἐνδὺς ἐπιχώριον, ὡς μὴ γνώριμος εἶναι κατὰ
dress having-put-on native so-that not known to-be on
τὴν ὁδόν, λανθάνει ἐφικόμενος παρὰ Παρμενίωνα·
the road escapes-notice having-arrived at Parmenion

25.10 καὶ γράμματα μὲν οὐ κομίζει παρὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου· οὐ γὰρ
and letters indeed not he-brings from Alexander not for
ἔδοξε γράφειν ὑπὲρ οὐδενὸς τοιούτου ἐς τὸ ἐμφανές·
it-seemed-good to-write about anything such into the open
τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ γλώσσης οἱ ἐντεταλμένα ἐξήγγειλεν, καὶ
the-things but by tongue to-him enjoined he-reported and
οὕτω ξυλλαμβάνεται ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος οὗτος καὶ ἐν φυλακῇ ἦν.
so is-arrested — Alexander this and in custody was

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἄρας ἐκ Φασηλίδος μέρος μέν τι 26.1
Alexander and having-set-out from Phaselis part indeed some
τῆς στρατιᾶς διὰ τῶν ὀρῶν πέμπει ἐπὶ Πέργης,
of-the army through the mountains sends toward Perga
ᾗ ὡδοποιήκεσαν αὐτῷ οἱ Θρᾷκες χαλεπὴν ἄλλως
where had-made-a-road for-him the Thracians difficult otherwise
καὶ μακρὰν οὖσαν τὴν πάροδον· αὐτὸς δὲ παρὰ τὴν
and long being the passage he-himself and along the
θάλασσαν διὰ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ἦγε τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν. ἔστι
sea through the beach led the around himself is
δὲ ταύτῃ ἡ ὁδὸς οὐκ ἄλλως ὅτι μὴ τῶν ἀπ᾽ ἄρκτου
and there the road not otherwise except — the from north
ἀνέμων πνεόντων· εἰ δὲ νότοι κατέχοιεν, ἀπόρως ἔχει
winds blowing if and south-winds should-prevail impassably it-is
διὰ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ ὁδοιπορεῖν.
through the beach to-travel
τῷ δὲ ἐκ νότων σκληροὶ βορραῖ ἐπιπνεύσαντες, 26.2
for-him and from south-winds hard north-winds having-blown
οὐκ ἄνευ τοῦ θείου, ὡς αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν
not without the divine as he-himself both and the around him
ἐξηγοῦντο, εὐμαρῆ καὶ ταχεῖαν τὴν πάροδον παρέσχον.
interpreted easy and swift the passage provided
ἐκ Πέργης δὲ ὡς προῄει, ἐντυγχάνουσιν αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν
from Perga and as he-advanced meet him on the
ὁδὸν πρέσβεις Ἀσπενδίων αὐτοκράτορες, τὴν μὲν πόλιν
road envoys of-Aspendians with-full-powers the indeed city
ἐνδιδόντες, φρουρὰν δὲ μὴ εἰσάγειν δεόμενοι.
surrendering a-garrison but not to-bring-in asking
καὶ περὶ μὲν τῆς φρουρᾶς πράξαντες ἀπῆλθον, ὅσα 26.3
and about indeed the garrison having-obtained they-went-away as-much-as
ἠξίουν· πεντήκοντα δὲ τάλαντα κελεύει τῇ στρατιᾷ
they-asked fifty and talents he-orders for-the army

δοῦναι αὐτοῖς ἐς μισθὸν καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, οὓς δασμὸν
to-give them for pay and the horses which as-tribute
βασιλεῖ ἔτρεφον. οἱ δὲ ὑπέρ τε τοῦ ἀργυρίου καὶ τοὺς
to-the-king they-reared they and about both the silver and the
ἵππους παραδώσειν ξυνθέμενοι ἀπῆλθον. Ἀλέξανδρος
horses to-be-going-to-hand-over having-agreed went-away Alexander
δὲ ἐπὶ Σίδης ἦει.
and toward Side went

26.4 εἰσὶ δὲ οἱ Σιδῆται Κυμαῖοι ἐκ Κύμης τῆς Αἰολίδος·
are and the Sidetans Cymaeans from Cyme the Aeolian
καὶ οὗτοι λέγουσιν ὑπὲρ σφῶν τόνδε τὸν λόγον, ὅτι,
and these say about themselves this the account that
ὡς κατῆράν τε ἐς τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην οἱ πρῶτοι ἐκ
when they-put-in both to the land that the first from
Κύμης σταλέντες καὶ ἐπὶ οἰκισμᾷ ἐξέβησαν, αὐτίκα τὴν
Cyme having-set-out and for settlement disembarked at-once the
μὲν Ἑλλάδα γλῶσσαν ἐξελάθοντο, εὐθὺς δὲ βάρβαρον
indeed Greek tongue they-forgot immediately and barbarian
φωνὴν ἵεσαν, οὐδὲ τῶν προσχώρων βαρβάρων, ἀλλὰ
speech uttered not-even of-the neighboring barbarians but
ἰδίαν σφῶν οὔπω πρόσθεν οὖσαν τὴν φωνήν· καὶ ἔκτοτε
own their not-yet before being the speech and from-then
οὐ κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους προσχώρους Σιδῆται ἐβαρβάριζον.
not according-to the other neighbors Sidetans spoke-barbarously

26.5 καταλιπὼν δὲ φρουρὰν ἐν Σίδῃ προῄει ἐπὶ Σύλλιον,
having-left and a-garrison in Side he-advanced toward Syllium
χωρίον ὀχυρὸν καὶ φρουρὰν ἔχον ξένων μισθοφόρων καὶ
a-place strong and a-garrison having of-foreign mercenaries and
αὐτῶν τῶν ἐπιχωρίων βαρβάρων. ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε τὸ Σύλλιον ἐξ
of-the-very the native barbarians but neither — Syllium by
ἐφόδου αὐτοσχεδίου ἠδυνήθη λαβεῖν, ἐπεί τ᾽ ἠγγέλθη αὐτῷ
assault improvised he-was-able to-take since and was-reported to-him

κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τοὺς Ἀσπενδίους ὅτι οὐδὲν τῶν ξυγκειμένων
on the road the Aspendians that nothing of-the agreed
πρᾶξαι ἐθέλοιεν, οὔτε τοὺς ἵππους παραδοῦναι τοῖς
to-do they-were-willing neither the horses to-hand-over to-those
πεμφθεῖσιν οὔτε ἀπαριθμῆσαι τὰ χρήματα, καὶ τὰ
sent nor to-pay the money and the-things
ἐκ τῆς χώρας ὅτι ἀνασκευασάμενοι ἐς τὴν πόλιν τάς
from the country that having-packed-up into the city the
τε πύλας ἀποκεκλείκασι τοῖς παρὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ
both gates they-have-shut against-the from Alexander and
τὰ τείχη, ὅπῃ πεπονηκότα ἦν, ἐπισκευάζουσι, ταῦτα
the walls where damaged they-were they-are-repairing these-things
πυθόμενος ἐπὶ Ἀσπένδου ἀνεζεύγνυεν.
having-learned toward Aspendus he-broke-camp

X · ASPENDUS, THE PISIDIANS, AND GORDIUM

The Aspendians abandon their lower town to Alexander and, when he camps around their height, ask for their first terms; he doubles the price, takes hostages, and makes them subjects paying yearly tribute. He forces the pass at Telmissus, makes a treaty with the Selgians, defeats the Pisidians on the hill before Sagalassus, takes the city, and wins their forts. Celaenae's garrison agrees to surrender if no relief comes, and Antigonus is made satrap of Phrygia. At Gordium Parmenion, the newly married men, and reinforcements join him. Athenian envoys ask for the prisoners from the Granicus, and he refuses them for now.

Ὤικισται δὲ τῆς Ἀσπένδου τὰ μὲν πολλὰ ἐπὶ ἄκρᾳ 27.1
is-settled and — of-Aspendus the indeed most on a-height
ὀχυρᾷ καὶ ἀποτόμῳ καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν ἄκραν ὁ
strong and sheer and along itself the height the
Εὐρυμέδων ποταμὸς ῥεῖ· ἦσαν δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ περὶ τῇ
Eurymedon river flows were and for-them also around the

ἄκρᾳ ἐν τῷ χθαμαλῷ οὐκ ὀλίγαι οἰκήσεις καὶ τεῖχος
height in the low-ground not few dwellings and a-wall
περιεβέβλητο αὐταῖς οὐ μέγα.
had-been-thrown-around them not great

27.2 τὸ μὲν δὴ τεῖχος εὐθύς. ὡς προσάγοντα Ἀλέξανδρον
the indeed indeed wall at-once as approaching Alexander
ἔγνωσαν, ἐκλείπουσιν ὅσοι ἐπῴκουν καὶ τὰς οἰκίας,
they-learned abandon as-many-as dwelt-there and the houses
ὅσας ἐν τῷ χθαμαλῷ ᾠκισμένας οὐκ ἐδόκουν διαφυλάξαι
as-many-as in the low-ground situated not they-thought to-defend
ἂν δύνασθαι· αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐς τὴν ἄκραν ξυμφεύγουσιν.
— to-be-able they-themselves and to the height flee-together
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἀφίκετο ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει, εἴσω τοῦ
Alexander and when he-arrived with the force within the
ἐρήμου τείχους παρελθὼν κατεστρατοπέδευσεν ἐν ταῖς
deserted wall having-passed encamped in the
οἰκίαις ταῖς καταλελειμμέναις πρὸς τῶν Ἀσπενδίων.
houses the left-behind by the Aspendians

27.3 οἱ δὲ Ἀσπένδιοι ὡς εἶδον αὐτόν τε Ἀλέξανδρον παρ᾽
the and Aspendians when they-saw himself both Alexander contrary-to
ἐλπίδα ἥκοντα καὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον ἐν κύκλῳ σφῶν πάντῃ,
expectation having-come and the camp in circle of-them on-every-side
πέμψαντες πρέσβεις ἐδέοντο ἐφ᾽ οἷσπερ τὸ πρότερον
having-sent envoys asked on the-terms-on-which the before
ξυμβῆναι. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος τό τε χωρίον ἰσχυρὸν ἰδὼν
to-come-to-terms and Alexander the both place strong having-seen
καὶ αὐτὸς ὡς οὐκ ἐπὶ χρόνιον πολιορκίαν παρεσκευασμένος
and himself as not for long siege prepared
ἐπὶ τοῖς αὐτοῖς μὲν οὐδὲ ὣς ξυνέβη πρὸς αὐτούς·
on the same-terms indeed not-even so came-to-terms with them

ὁμήρους δὲ δοῦναι σφῶν τοὺς δυνατωτάτους ἐκέλευσεν 27.4
hostages and to-give of-them the most-powerful he-ordered
καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, οὓς πρόσθεν ὡμολόγησαν, καὶ ἑκατὸν
and the horses which before they-had-agreed and hundred
τάλαντα ἀντὶ τῶν πεντήκοντα, καὶ πείθεσθαι τῷ
talents instead-of the fifty and to-obey the
σατράπῃ τῷ ὑπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου ταχθέντι καὶ φόρους
satrap the by Alexander appointed and tributes
ἀποφέρειν ὅσα ἔτη Μακεδόσι, καὶ ὑπὲρ τῆς χώρας
to-pay each year to-Macedonians and about the land
διακριθῆναι, ἣν τῶν προσχώρων οὖσαν βίᾳ κατέχειν
to-submit-to-arbitration which of-the neighbors being by-force to-hold
ἐν αἰτίᾳ ἦσαν. ὡς δὲ πάντα οἱ ἐπεχώρησαν, ἀνέζευξεν
in charge they-were when and all-things to-him they-conceded he-broke-camp
ἐς Πέργην, κἀκεῖθεν ἐς Φρυγίαν ὥρμητο·
to Perga and-thence to Phrygia set-out
ἦν δὲ αὐτῷ ἡ πορεία παρὰ Τελμισσὸν πόλιν. οἱ δὲ 27.5
was and for-him the march by Telmissus city the and
ἄνθρωποι οὗτοι τὸ μὲν γένος Πισίδαι εἰσὶ βάρβαροι,
people these the indeed race Pisidians are barbarians
χωρίον δὲ οἰκοῦσιν ὑπερύψηλον καὶ πάντῃ ἀπότομον,
a-place and they-inhabit very-high and on-every-side sheer
καὶ ἡ ὁδὸς παρὰ τὴν πόλιν χαλεπή.
and the road past the city difficult
καθήκει γὰρ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ὄρος ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ὁδόν, 27.6
comes-down for from the city a-mountain as-far to the road
καὶ τοῦτο μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἀποπαύεται, ἀντίπορον
and this indeed there at the road stops opposite
δὲ αὐτῷ ἄλλο ὄρος ἐστὶν οὐ μεῖον ἀπότομον. καὶ ταῦτα
and to-it another mountain is not less sheer and these
τὰ ὄρη ὥσπερ πύλας ποιεῖ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ἔστιν
the mountains as-it-were gates make on the road and it-is-possible

ὀλίγῃ φυλακῇ κατέχοντας τὰ ὄρη ταῦτα ἄπορον
with-small guard holding the mountains these impassable
ποιεῖν τὴν πάροδον. καὶ τότε οἱ Τελμισσεῖς πανδημεὶ
to-make the passage and then the Telmissians in-full-force
ἐκβεβοηθηκότες ἀμφότερα τὰ ὄρη κατεῖχον.
having-come-out both the mountains held

27.7 ταῦτα δὴ ἰδὼν Ἀλέξανδρος στρατοπεδεύεσθαι αὐτοῦ,
these-things indeed having-seen Alexander to-encamp there
ὅπως εἶχον, ἐκέλευε τοὺς Μακεδόνας, γνούς, ὅτι οὐ
as they-were ordered the Macedonians having-judged that not
μενοῦσι πανδημεὶ οἱ Τελμισσεῖς αὐλιζομένους σφᾶς ἰδόντες,
will-remain in-full-force the Telmissians bivouacking them seeing
ἀλλ' ἀποχωρήσουσιν ἐς τὴν πόλιν πλησίον οὖσαν οἱ
but will-withdraw to the city near being the
πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, ὅσον φυλακὴν καταλιπόντες ἐπὶ τοῖς
many of-them only-so-much-as a-guard having-left on the
ὄρεσι. καὶ ξυνέβη, ὅπως εἴκαζεν· οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολλοὶ
mountains and it-happened as he-conjectured the indeed for many
αὐτῶν ἀπῆλθον, αἱ φυλακαὶ δὲ ἐγκατέμειναν.
of-them went-off the guards and remained-behind

27.8 καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους εὐθὺς ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε τοξότας καὶ
and against these at-once having-taken the both archers and
τὰς τῶν ἀκοντιστῶν τάξεις καὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ὅσοι
the of-the javelin-men battalions and of-the hoplites as-many-as
κουφότεροι ἐπήγαγεν. οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἔμειναν βαλλόμενοι,
lighter led-on they and not stood-firm being-shot
ἀλλὰ ἔλιπον τὸ χωρίον· καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ὑπερβαλὼν τὰ
but left the position and Alexander having-crossed the
στενὰ πρὸς τῇ πόλει κατεστρατοπέδευσε.
narrows by the city encamped

καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνοῦνται παρ᾽ αὐτὸν Σελγέων πρέσβεις. 28.1
and there arrive to him of-Selgians envoys
οἱ δέ εἰσι καὶ αὐτοὶ Πισίδαι βάρβαροι καὶ πόλιν
they and are also themselves Pisidians barbarians and city
μεγάλην οἰκοῦσιν καὶ αὐτοὶ μάχιμοί εἰσιν· ὅτι δὲ
large inhabit and themselves warlike are because and
πολέμιοι τοῖς Τελμισσεῦσιν ἐκ παλαιοῦ ἐτύγχανον, ὑπὲρ
enemies to-the Telmissians from of-old they-happened-to-be for
φιλίας πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον πεπρεσβευμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ πρὸς
friendship to Alexander having-sent-envoys they-were and with
τούτους σπένδεται Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ ἐκ τούτου πιστοῖς
these makes-a-truce Alexander and from this as-trustworthy
ἐς ἅπαντα ἐχρήσατο.
for all-things he-used-them
τὴν Τελμισσὸν δὲ ἀπέγνω ἑλεῖν ἂν ἐν ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, ἀλλ᾽ 28.2
— Telmissus but he-despaired to-take — in short time but
ἐπὶ Σαγαλασσοῦ ἐστέλλετο. ἦν δὲ καὶ αὕτη οὐ μικρὰ
toward Sagalassus set-out was and also this not small
πόλις· Πισίδαι καὶ ταύτην ᾤκουν, καὶ ἐδόκουν πάντων
city Pisidians also this inhabited and they-seemed of-all
Πισιδῶν μαχίμων ὄντων αὐτοὶ εἶναι μαχιμώτατοι· καὶ
Pisidians warlike being themselves to-be most-warlike and
τότε τὸν λόφον τὸν πρὸ τῆς πόλεως, ὅτι καὶ οὗτος
then the hill the before the city because also this
οὐ μεῖον τοῦ τείχους ὀχυρὸς ἐς τὸ ἀπομάχεσθαι ἦν,
not less than-the wall strong for the to-fight-from was
κατειληφότες προσέμενον.
having-seized they-awaited-him
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τὴν μὲν φάλαγγα τῶν Μακεδόνων τάττει 28.3
Alexander and the indeed phalanx of-the Macedonians draws-up
ὧδε· ἐπὶ μὲν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως, ἵνα καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπετέτακτο,
thus on indeed the right wing where also himself had-taken-post

τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς εἶχεν, ἐχομένους δὲ τούτων τοὺς
the shield-bearers he-had adjoining and these the
πεζεταίρους ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον παρατείνας, ὡς ἑκάστοις
foot-companions as-far to the left having-extended as to-each
τῶν στρατηγῶν ἡ ἡγεμονία τῆς τάξεως ἐν τῇ τότε ἡμέρᾳ ἦν.
of-the generals the leadership of-the battalion in the then day was
28.4 ἐπὶ δὲ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ ἐπέταξεν ἡγεμόνα Ἀμύνταν τὸν
on and the left he-posted as-commander Amyntas the
Ἀρραβαίου. προετάχθησαν δὲ αὐτῷ τοῦ μὲν δεξιοῦ
(son)-of-Arrhabaeus were-posted-in-front and of-him of-the indeed right
κέρως οἵ τε τοξόται καὶ οἱ Ἀγριᾶνες, τοῦ δὲ εὐωνύμου
wing the both archers and the Agrianians of-the and left
οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ οἱ Θρᾷκες, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Σιτάλκης· οἱ γὰρ
the javelin-men the Thracians whom led Sitalces the for
ἱππεῖς αὐτῷ οὐκ ὠφέλιμοι ἐν τῇ δυσχωρίᾳ ἦσαν. τοῖς
cavalry for-him not useful in the difficult-ground were with-the
Πισίδαις δὲ καὶ Τελμισσεῖς προσβεβοηθηκότες ξυνετάξαντο.
Pisidians and also Telmissians having-come-to-help were-drawn-up
28.5 ἤδη τε οἱ ἀμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον προσβεβληκότες τῷ ὄρει, ὅπερ
already both the around Alexander having-attacked the mountain which
κατεῖχον οἱ Πισίδαι, κατ' αὐτὸ τὸ ἀποτομώτατον τῆς ἀνόδου
held the Pisidians at itself the steepest of-the ascent
ἦσαν, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἐπιτίθενται αὐτοῖς οἱ βάρβαροι λόχοις
were and in this attack them the barbarians in-ambushes
κατὰ κέρας ἑκάτερον, ᾗ σφίσι μὲν εὐπροσοδώτατον ἦν,
on wing each where for-them indeed most-accessible it-was
τοῖς πολεμίοις δὲ χαλεπωτάτη ἡ πρόσβασις. καὶ τοὺς
for-the enemy and most-difficult the approach and the
μὲν τοξότας, οἷα δὴ οὔτε ἀκριβῶς ὡπλισμένους καὶ
indeed archers as indeed neither fully armed and
πρώτους πελάσαντας, ἐτρέψαντο, οἱ δὲ Ἀγριᾶνες ἔμειναν.
first having-approached they-routed the and Agrianians stood-firm

ἐγγὺς γὰρ ἤδη καὶ ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν Μακεδόνων προσῆγε 28.6
near for already also the phalanx of-the Macedonians was-approaching
καὶ πρὸ αὐτῆς Ἀλέξανδρος ἐφαίνετο. ὡς δὲ ἐν χερσὶν
and before it Alexander appeared when and in hands
ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, γυμνοί τε οἱ βάρβαροι ὄντες ὁπλίταις
the battle came unarmored both the barbarians being against-hoplites
προσεφέροντο καὶ πάντῃ κατατιτρωσκόμενοι ἔπιπτον,
they-advanced and on-every-side being-wounded fell
ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγκλίνουσιν·
there indeed they-give-way
καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν αὐτῶν ἐς πεντακοσίους, *** 28.7
and died indeed of-them about five-hundred (lacuna)
κοῦφοι γὰρ ὄντες καὶ ἔμπειροι τῶν χωρίων οὐ χαλεπῶς
light for being and experienced of-the places not with-difficulty
ἀπεχώρουν· καὶ οἱ Μακεδόνες διὰ βαρύτητα τῶν ὅπλων
withdrew and the Macedonians because-of weight of-the arms
καὶ ἀπειρίαν τῶν ὁδῶν οὐ θαρραλέοι ἐς τὸ διώκειν ἦσαν.
and inexperience of-the roads not bold for the to-pursue were
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐχόμενος τῶν φευγόντων τὴν πόλιν αὐτῶν 28.8
Alexander and keeping-close-to the fleeing the city of-them
αἱρεῖ κατὰ κράτος. τῶν δὲ ξὺν αὐτῷ Κλέανδρός τε ὁ
takes by force of-the and with him Cleander both the
στρατηγὸς τῶν τοξοτῶν ἀποθνήσκει καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἀμφὶ
general of-the archers dies and of-the others about
τοὺς εἴκοσιν. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄλλους Πισίδας
the twenty Alexander and against the other Pisidians
ἦγε· καὶ τὰ μέν τινα τῶν φρουρίων βίᾳ ἐξεῖλε, τὰ
led and the indeed some of-the forts by-force he-took the-others
δὲ ὁμολογίᾳ προσηγάγετο.
and by-agreement brought-over

29.1 ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ᾔει ἐπὶ Φρυγίας παρὰ τὴν λίμνην, ἣ
thence and he-went toward Phrygia past the lake to-which
ὄνομα Ἀσκανία, ἐν ᾗ ἅλες πήγνυνται αὐτόματοι, καὶ
name Ascania in which salts congeal of-themselves and
τούτοις χρῶνται οἱ ἐπιχώριοι οὐδὲ θαλάσσης τι ἐπὶ
these use the natives not-even of-sea anything for
τούτῳ δέονται· καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Κελαινὰς πεμπταῖος.
this they-need and he-arrives at Celaenae on-the-fifth-day
ἐν δὲ ταῖς Κελαιναῖς ἄκρα ἦν πάντῃ ἀπότομος, καὶ
in and — Celaenae a-citadel was on-every-side sheer and
ταύτην φυλακὴ κατεῖχεν ἐκ τοῦ σατράπου τῆς Φρυγίας
this a-garrison held from the satrap — of-Phrygia
Κᾶρες μὲν χίλιοι, Ἕλληνες δὲ μισθοφόροι ἑκατόν.
Carians indeed thousand Greeks and mercenaries hundred
29.2 καὶ οὗτοι πρεσβεύονται παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον, ἐπαγγελλόμενοι,
and these send-envoys to Alexander announcing
εἰ μὴ ἀφίκοιτό σφισι βοήθεια ἐν ἡμέρᾳ ᾗ ξυνέκειτο,
if not should-come to-them help on day which was-agreed
φράσαντες τὴν ἡμέραν, ὅτι παραδώσουσι τὸ χωρίον. καὶ
having-named the day that they-will-hand-over the place and
ἔδοξε ταῦτα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὠφελιμώτερα ἢ πολιορκεῖν
it-seemed these-things to-Alexander more-advantageous than to-besiege
ἄπορον πάντῃ προσφέρεσθαι τὴν ἄκραν.
impregnable on-every-side to-assault the citadel
29.3 πρὸς μὲν δὴ ταῖς Κελαιναῖς φυλακὴν καταλείπει
by indeed indeed — Celaenae a-garrison he-leaves
στρατιώτας ἐς χιλίους καὶ πεντακοσίους. μείνας δὲ
soldiers about thousand and five-hundred having-remained and
αὐτοῦ ἡμέρας δέκα καὶ σατράπην ἀποδείξας Φρυγίας
there days ten and satrap having-appointed of-Phrygia
Ἀντίγονον τὸν Φιλίππου, ἐπὶ δὲ τοὺς συμμάχους ἀντ᾽
Antigonus the (son)-of-Philip over and the allies in-place-of

ἐκείνου στρατηγὸν Βάλακρον τὸν Ἀμύντου ἐπιτάξας,
him general Balacrus the (son)-of-Amyntas having-put
αὐτὸς ἐπὶ Γορδίου ἐστέλλετο. καὶ Παρμενίωνι ἐπέστειλεν,
he-himself toward Gordium set-out and to-Parmenion sent-word
ἄγοντα ἅμα οἱ τὴν δύναμιν ἐκεῖσε ἀπαντᾶν· καὶ ἀπήντα
leading with him the force there to-meet-him and met-him
ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει Παρμενίων.
with the force Parmenion
καὶ οἱ νεόγαμοι δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ Μακεδονίας σταλέντες εἰς 29.4
also the newly-married and the to Macedonia sent to
Γόρδιον ἦκον καὶ ξὺν αὐτοῖς ἄλλη στρατιὰ καταλεχθεῖσα,
Gordium came and with them other army enrolled
ἣν ἦγε Πτολεμαῖός τε ὁ Σελεύκου καὶ Κοῖνος ὁ
which led Ptolemy both the (son)-of-Seleucus and Coenus the
Πολεμοκράτους καὶ Μελέαγρος ὁ Νεοπτολέμου, πεζοὶ
(son)-of-Polemocrates and Meleager the (son)-of-Neoptolemus infantry
μὲν Μακεδόνες τρισχίλιοι, ἱππεῖς δὲ ἐς τριακοσίους
indeed Macedonian three-thousand cavalry and about three-hundred
καὶ Θεσσαλῶν ἱππεῖς διακόσιοι, Ἠλείων δὲ ἑκατὸν καὶ
and of-Thessalians cavalry two-hundred of-Eleans and hundred and
πεντήκοντα, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Ἀλκίας Ἠλεῖος.
fifty whom led Alcias an-Elean
τὸ δὲ Γόρδιον ἔστι μὲν τῆς Φρυγίας τῆς ἐφ' Ἑλλησπόντου, 29.5
— and Gordium is indeed — of-Phrygia the on Hellespont
κεῖται δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ Σαγγαρίου ποταμοῦ· τοῦ δὲ Σαγγαρίου αἱ
lies and on the Sangarius river — and of-Sangarius the
μὲν πηγαὶ ἐκ Φρυγίας εἰσίν, αὐτὸς δὲ διὰ τῆς Θρᾳκῶν
indeed springs from Phrygia are it-itself and through the of-Thracians
τῶν Βιθυνῶν χώρας ἐξίησιν ἐς τὸν Εὔξεινον πόντον. ἐνταῦθα
the Bithynians country issues into the Euxine sea there
καὶ Ἀθηναίων πρεσβεία παρ' Ἀλέξανδρον ἀφίκετο, δεόμενοι
also of-Athenians an-embassy to Alexander arrived asking

Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀφεῖναί σφισι τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους, οἳ ἐπὶ Γρανίκῳ
Alexander to-release to-them the prisoners who at Granicus
ποταμῷ ἐλήφθησαν Ἀθηναίων ξυστρατευόμενοι τοῖς Πέρσαις
river were-taken of-Athenians campaigning-with the Persians
καὶ τότε ἐν Μακεδονίᾳ ξὺν τοῖς δισχιλίοις δεδεμένοι ἦσαν·
and then in Macedonia with the two-thousand bound were
29.6 καὶ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν ἄπρακτοι ἐν τῷ τότε ἀπῆλθον. οὐ
and about them unsuccessful in the then they-went-away not
γὰρ ἐδόκει ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἔτι ξυνεστῶτος τοῦ
for it-seemed safe to-be to-Alexander still standing the
πρὸς τὸν Πέρσην πολέμου ἀνεῖναί τι τοῦ φόβου τοῖς
against the Persian war to-relax anything of-the fear for-the
Ἕλλησιν, ὅσοι ἐναντία τῇ Ἑλλάδι στρατεύεσθαι ὑπὲρ
Greeks as-many-as against — Greece to-campaign on-behalf-of
τῶν βαρβάρων οὐκ ἀπηξίωσαν· ἀλλ᾽ ἀποκρίνεται,
the barbarians not had-thought-it-unworthy but he-answers
ἐπειδὰν τὰ παρόντα καλῶς γένηται, τότε ἥκειν ὑπὲρ
when the present-things well become then to-come on-behalf-of
τῶν αὐτῶν πρεσβευομένους.
the same sending-envoys

BOOK II

I · MEMNON AT SEA, AND THE GORDIAN KNOT

Memnon takes Chios and besieges Mytilene, then dies, and Pharnabazus and Autophradates bring the city to terms and install a garrison and a tyrant. They force Tenedos to the Persian side, and Proteas surprises Datames' ships at Siphnos. At Gordium Alexander climbs to the citadel to see the wagon of Gordius. An eagle's omen had sent the poor farmer Gordius to a seeress who became his wife, and an oracle made their son Midas king of Phrygia when he came in this wagon. Whoever loosed its knot was to rule Asia. Some say Alexander cut it with his sword; Aristobulus says he drew out the pin. Thunder that night was taken as the sign.

ἐκ δὲ τούτου Μέμνων τοῦ τε ναυτικοῦ παντὸς ἡγεμὼν ἐκ 1.1
from and this Memnon of-the both fleet whole commander by
βασιλέως Δαρείου καθεστηκὼς καὶ τῆς παραλίου ξυμπάσης,
king Darius appointed and of-the coast whole
ὡς ἐς Μακεδονίαν τε καὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀποστρέψων
as to Macedonia both and — Greece about-to-turn
τὸν πόλεμον, Χίον μὲν λαμβάνει προδοσίᾳ ἐνδοθεῖσαν,
the war Chios indeed takes by-betrayal surrendered
ἔνθεν δὲ ἐπὶ Λέσβου πλεύσας, ὡς οὐ προσεῖχον αὐτῷ οἱ
thence and to Lesbos having-sailed when not attended to-him the
Μιτυληναῖοι, τὰς ἄλλας πόλεις τῆς Λέσβου προσηγάγετο.
Mytilenaeans the other cities — of-Lesbos brought-over
ταύτας δὲ παραστησάμενος καὶ προσχὼν τῇ Μιτυλήνῃ τὴν 1.2
these and having-won-over and having-put-in — at-Mytilene the
μὲν πόλιν χάρακι διπλῷ ἐκ θαλάσσης ἐς θάλασσαν
indeed city with-a-palisade double from sea to sea
ἀπετείχισε, στρατόπεδα δὲ πέντε ἐποικοδομησάμενος τῆς
walled-off camps and five having-built-on of-the
γῆς ἐκράτει οὐ χαλεπῶς. καὶ μέρος μέν τι τῶν νεῶν τὸν
land was-master not with-difficulty and part indeed some of-the ships the

λιμένα αὐτῶν ἐφύλασσε, τὰς δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν τῆς
harbor of-them guarded the-others and to the promontory —
Λέσβου τὸ Σίγριον, ἵνα ἡ προσβολὴ μάλιστά ἐστι ταῖς
of-Lesbos — Sigrium where the landing most is for-the
ἀπό τε Χίου καὶ ἀπὸ Γεραιστοῦ καὶ Μαλέας ὁλκάσιν,
from both Chios and from Geraestus and Malea merchant-ships
ἀποστείλας τὸν παράπλουν ἐν φυλακῇ εἶχεν, ὡς μή τινα
having-sent-off the coasting-passage in guard he-held so-that not any
ὠφέλειαν κατὰ θάλασσαν γίγνεσθαι τοῖς Μιτυληναίοις.
help by sea to-be for-the Mytilenaeans
1.3 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ αὐτὸς μὲν νόσῳ τελευτᾷ, καὶ εἴπερ τι
and in this himself indeed by-disease dies and if-indeed anything
ἄλλο καὶ τοῦτο ἐν τῷ τότε ἔβλαψε τὰ βασιλέως πράγματα.
else also this in the then harmed the king's affairs
Αὐτοφραδάτης δὲ καὶ Φαρνάβαζος ὁ Ἀρταβάζου, ὅτῳ
Autophradates and and Pharnabazus the (son)-of-Artabazus to-whom
καὶ ἐπέτρεψε τελευτῶν ὁ Μέμνων τὴν αὑτοῦ ἀρχὴν ἔστε
also entrusted dying — Memnon the his-own command until
Δαρεῖόν τι ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς γνῶναι, ἀδελφιδῷ αὑτοῦ ὄντι,
Darius something about it to-decide nephew his being
οὗτοι τῇ πολιορκίᾳ οὐκ ἀρρώστως προσέκειντο.
these the siege not feebly pressed
1.4 καὶ οἱ Μιτυληναῖοι τῆς τε γῆς εἰργόμενοι καὶ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης
and the Mytilenaeans of-the both land being-shut-off and from sea
πολλαῖς ναυσὶν ἐφορμούσαις φρουρούμενοι πέμψαντες
by-many ships lying-at-anchor being-blockaded having-sent
παρὰ τὸν Φαρνάβαζον ὁμολογίας ἐποιήσαντο, τοὺς μὲν
to — Pharnabazus agreements made the indeed
ξένους τοὺς παρ' Ἀλεξάνδρου σφίσι κατὰ συμμαχίαν
mercenaries the from Alexander to-them by alliance
ἥκοντας ἀπελθεῖν, Μιτυληναίους δὲ καθελεῖν μὲν τὰς πρὸς
having-come to-depart Mytilenaeans and to-take-down indeed the with

Ἀλέξανδρόν σφισι γενομένας στήλας, ξυμμάχους δὲ εἶναι
Alexander for-them made pillars allies and to-be
Δαρείου κατὰ τὴν εἰρήνην τὴν ἐπ᾽ Ἀνταλκίδου
of-Darius according-to the peace the in-the-time-of Antalcidas
γενομένην πρὸς βασιλέα Δαρεῖον, τοὺς φυγάδας δὲ αὐτῶν
made with king Darius the exiles and of-them
κατιέναι ἐπὶ τοῖς ἡμίσεσι τῶν τότε ὄντων, ὅτε ἔφευγον.
to-return on the halves of-the then existing when they-were-banished
ἐπὶ τούτοις μὲν δὴ ἡ ξύμβασις τοῖς Μιτυληναίοις πρὸς 1.5
on these-terms indeed indeed the agreement for-the Mytilenaeans with
τοὺς Πέρσας ξυνέβη. Φαρνάβαζος δὲ καὶ Αὐτοφραδάτης,
the Persians was-concluded Pharnabazus and and Autophradates
ὡς παρῆλθον ἅπαξ εἴσω τῆς πόλεως, φρουράν τε ἐς
when they-had-come once within the city a-garrison both into
αὐτὴν εἰσήγαγον καὶ φρούραρχον ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ Λυκομήδην
it brought-in and garrison-commander over it Lycomedes
Ῥόδιον, καὶ τύραννον ἐγκατέστησαν τῇ πόλει Διογένην,
a-Rhodian and tyrant installed in-the city Diogenes
ἕνα τῶν φυγάδων, χρήματά τε εἰσέπραξαν τοὺς
one of-the exiles money both they-exacted-from the
Μιτυληναίους τὰ μὲν βίᾳ ἀφελόμενοι τοὺς ἔχοντας,
Mytilenaeans the-part indeed by-force having-taken-from the having
τὰ δὲ ἐς τὸ κοινὸν ἐπιβαλόντες.
the-other and on the public having-levied
ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενοι Φαρνάβαζος μὲν ἔπλει ἐπὶ 2.1
these-things and having-accomplished Pharnabazus indeed sailed toward
Λυκίας ἄγων τοὺς ξένους τοὺς μισθοφόρους, Αὐτοφραδάτης
Lycia leading the foreign the mercenaries Autophradates
δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς ἄλλας νήσους. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ καταπέμπει Δαρεῖος
and toward the other islands and in this sends-down Darius
Θυμώνδαν τὸν Μέντορος, αὐτὸν μὲν τοὺς ξένους παρὰ
Thymondas the (son)-of-Mentor him indeed the mercenaries from

Φαρναβάζου παραληψόμενον καὶ ἀνάξοντα παρὰ βασιλέα,
Pharnabazus about-to-take-over and about-to-lead-up to king
Φαρναβάζῳ δὲ ἐροῦντα ἄρχειν ὅσων Μέμνων ἦρχεν·
to-Pharnabazus and about-to-tell to-command as-much-as Memnon commanded
2.2 καὶ παραδοὺς τούτῳ τοὺς ξένους Φαρνάβαζος ἔπλει
and having-handed-over to-him the mercenaries Pharnabazus sailed
παρ' Αὐτοφραδάτην ἐπὶ τὰς ναῦς. ὡς δὲ ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο,
to Autophradates to the ships when and together they-were
δέκα μὲν ναῦς στέλλουσιν ἐπὶ τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους
ten indeed ships they-send to — Cyclades islands
Δατάμην ἄνδρα Πέρσην ἄγοντα, αὐτοὶ δὲ ναυσὶν
Datames a-man Persian leading they-themselves and with-ships
ἑκατὸν ἐπὶ Τενέδου ἔπλευσαν· κατακομισθέντες δὲ τῆς
hundred toward Tenedos sailed having-been-brought-in and —
Τενέδου εἰς τὸν Βόρειον καλούμενον λιμένα πέμπουσι
of-Tenedos into the Northern called harbor they-send
παρὰ τοὺς Τενεδίους καὶ κελεύουσι τὰς στήλας τὰς πρὸς
to the Tenedians and order the pillars the with
Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τοὺς Ἕλληνας γενομένας σφίσι, ταύτας
Alexander and the Greeks made by-them these
μὲν καθελεῖν, πρὸς Δαρεῖον δὲ ἄγειν τὴν εἰρήνην, ἣν
indeed to-take-down with Darius and to-keep the peace which
ἐπὶ Ἀνταλκίδου Δαρείῳ συνέθεντο.
in-the-time-of Antalcidas with-Darius they-made
2.3 Τενεδίοις δὲ τὰ μὲν τῆς εὐνοίας ἐς Ἀλέξανδρόν τε καὶ
for-Tenedians and the indeed of-the goodwill toward Alexander both and
τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐποίει μᾶλλον, ἐν δὲ τῷ παρόντι ἄπορον
the Greeks inclined more in but the present impossible
ἄλλως ἐδόκει ὅτι μὴ προσχωρήσαντας τοῖς Πέρσαις
otherwise it-seemed except — having-gone-over to-the Persians
σώζεσθαι· ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ Ἡγελόχῳ, ὅτῳ προσετέτακτο ὑπ'
to-be-saved since not-even Hegelochus to-whom had-been-assigned by

Ἀλεξάνδρου αὖθις ξυναγαγεῖν δύναμιν ναυτικήν, τοσαύτη
Alexander again to-collect a-force naval so-great
ξυνηγμένη ἦν ὡς δι᾽ ὀλίγου προσδοκᾶν ἔσεσθαι ἄν
collected was so-that within short-time to-expect to-be-going-to-be —
σφισι παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ τινα ὠφέλειαν. οὕτω μὲν δὴ οἱ ἀμφὶ
to-them from him any help so indeed indeed the around
Φαρνάβαζον τοὺς Τενεδίους φόβῳ μᾶλλον ἢ ἐθελοντὰς
Pharnabazus the Tenedians by-fear rather than willing
παρεστήσαντο.
won-over

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Πρωτέας ὁ Ἀνδρονίκου ἐτύγχανε μὲν 2.4
in and this Proteas the (son)-of-Andronicus happened indeed
ξυναγαγὼν ἐξ Εὐβοίας τε καὶ Πελοποννήσου ναῦς μακρὰς
having-collected from Euboea both and Peloponnese ships long
ὑπὸ Ἀντιπάτρου τεταγμένος, ὡς εἶναί τινα ταῖς τε νήσοις
by Antipater appointed so-that to-be some for-the both islands
φυλακὴν καὶ αὐτῇ τῇ Ἑλλάδι, εἰ, καθάπερ ἐξηγγέλλετο,
guard and for-itself — Greece if as was-reported
ἐπιπλέοιεν οἱ βάρβαροι· πυθόμενος δὲ Δατάμην περὶ
should-sail-against the barbarians having-learned and Datames about
Σίφνον ὁρμεῖν δέκα ναυσίν, αὐτὸς ἔχων πεντεκαίδεκα
Siphnos to-be-at-anchor with-ten ships he-himself having fifteen
νυκτὸς ἀνάγεται ἀπὸ Χαλκίδος τῆς ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐρίπῳ·
by-night puts-out from Chalcis the on — Euripus
καὶ προσχὼν ἕωθεν Κύθνῳ τῇ νήσῳ τὴν μὲν ἡμέραν αὐτοῦ 2.5
and having-put-in at-dawn at-Cythnus the island the indeed day there
αὐλίζεται, ὡς σαφέστερόν τε διαπυθέσθαι τὰ περὶ τῶν
bivouacs so-that more-clearly both to-learn the-things about the
δέκα νεῶν καὶ ἅμα ἐν νυκτὶ φοβερώτερον προσπεσεῖν
ten ships and at-the-same-time at night more-frighteningly to-fall-upon
τοῖς Φοίνιξιν· ὡς δὲ ἔμαθε σαφῶς τὸν Δατάμην ξὺν
the Phoenicians when and he-learned clearly — Datames with

ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐν Σίφνῳ ὁρμοῦντα, ἐπιπλεύσας ἔτι νυκτὸς
the ships at Siphnos lying-at-anchor having-sailed-against still by-night
ὑπ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν ἕω καὶ ἀπροσδοκήτοις ἐπιπεσὼν ὀκτὼ
at itself the dawn and unexpecting having-fallen-on eight
μὲν ναῦς αὐτοῖς ἀνδράσιν ἔλαβε, Δατάμης δὲ μετὰ
indeed ships with-their-very men he-took Datames and with
δυοῖν τριήροιν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ προσμίξει τῶν ἅμα Πρωτέᾳ
two triremes in the first encounter of-the with Proteas
νεῶν ὑπεκφυγὼν ἀπεσώθη πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο ναυτικόν.
ships having-slipped-away got-safe to the other fleet

3.1 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἐς Γόρδιον παρῆλθε, πόθος λαμβάνει
Alexander and when to Gordium he-came longing seizes
αὐτὸν ἀνελθόντα ἐς τὴν ἄκραν, ἵνα καὶ τὰ βασίλεια ἦν
him having-gone-up to the citadel where also the palace was
τὰ Γορδίου καὶ τοῦ παιδὸς αὐτοῦ Μίδου, τὴν ἅμαξαν
the of-Gordius and of-the son his Midas the wagon
ἰδεῖν τὴν Γορδίου καὶ τοῦ ζυγοῦ τῆς ἁμάξης τὸν δεσμόν.
to-see the of-Gordius and of-the yoke of-the wagon the knot

3.2 λόγος δὲ περὶ τῆς ἁμάξης ἐκείνης παρὰ τοῖς προσχώροις
a-story and about the wagon that among the neighbors
πολὺς κατεῖχε, Γόρδιον εἶναι τῶν πάλαι Φρυγῶν ἄνδρα
great prevailed Gordius to-be of-the old Phrygians a-man
πένητα καὶ ὀλίγην εἶναι αὐτῷ γῆν ἐργάζεσθαι καὶ ζεύγη
poor and little to-be for-him land to-work and yokes
βοῶν δύο· καὶ τῷ μὲν ἀροτριᾶν, τῷ δὲ ἁμαξεύειν
of-oxen two and with-the one to-plow with-the other to-drive-a-wagon
τὸν Γόρδιον.
— *Gordius*

3.3 καί ποτε ἀροῦντος αὐτοῦ ἐπιστῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ζυγὸν ἀετὸν
and once plowing him to-have-settled on the yoke an-eagle
καὶ ἐπιμεῖναι ἕστε ἐπὶ βουλυτὸν καθήμενον· τὸν δὲ
and to-have-stayed until toward unyoking-time sitting him and

ἐκπλαγέντα τῇ ὄψει ἰέναι κοινώσοντα ὑπὲρ τοῦ θείου παρὰ
astonished at-the sight to-go about-to-consult about the divine to
τοὺς Τελμισσέας τοὺς μάντεις· εἶναι γὰρ τοὺς Τελμισσέας
the Telmissians the seers to-be for the Telmissians
σοφοὺς τὰ θεῖα ἐξηγεῖσθαι καί σφισιν ἀπὸ γένους
skilled the divine-things to-interpret and to-them from birth
δεδόσθαι αὐτοῖς καὶ γυναιξὶν καὶ παισὶ τὴν μαντείαν.
to-have-been-given to-them and to-women and children the prophecy
προσάγοντα δὲ κώμῃ τινὶ τῶν Τελμισσέων ἐντυχεῖν παρθένῳ 3.4
approaching and village some of-the Telmissians to-have-met a-maiden
ὑδρευομένῃ καὶ πρὸς ταύτην εἰπεῖν ὅπως οἱ τὸ τοῦ
drawing-water and to her to-have-told how to-him the of-the
ἀετοῦ ἔσχε· τὴν δέ, εἶναι γὰρ καὶ αὐτὴν τοῦ μαντικοῦ
eagle had-happened her and to-be for also herself of-the prophetic
γένους, θύειν κελεῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ἐπανελθόντα
race to-sacrifice to-have-bidden — to-Zeus the king having-returned
ἐς τὸν τόπον αὐτόν. καί, δεηθῆναι γὰρ αὐτῆς Γόρδιον τὴν
to the place itself and to-have-begged for her Gordius the
θυσίαν ξυνεπισπομένην οἱ αὐτὴν ἐξηγήσασθαι, θῦσαί
sacrifice accompanying him herself to-direct to-have-sacrificed
τε ὅπως ἐκείνη ὑπετίθετο τὸν Γόρδιον καὶ ξυγγενέσθαι ἐπὶ
both as she suggested — Gordius and to-have-been-joined in
γάμῳ τῇ παιδὶ καὶ γενέσθαι αὐτοῖν παῖδα Μίδαν ὄνομα.
marriage to-the girl and to-have-been-born to-the-two a-son Midas by-name
ἤδη τε ἄνδρα εἶναι τὸν Μίδαν καλὸν καὶ γενναῖον καὶ 3.5
already both a-man to-be — Midas handsome and noble and
ἐν τούτῳ στάσει πιέζεσθαι ἐν σφίσι τοὺς Φρύγας,
in this by-faction to-be-oppressed among themselves the Phrygians
καὶ γενέσθαι αὐτοῖς χρησμόν, ὅτι ἅμαξα ἄξει αὐτοῖς
and to-have-come to-them an-oracle that a-wagon will-bring them
βασιλέα καὶ ὅτι οὗτος αὐτοῖς καταπαύσει τὴν στάσιν.
a-king and that this-one for-them will-stop the faction

ἔτι δὲ περὶ αὐτῶν τούτων βουλευομένοις ἐλθεῖν τὸν
still and about very these-things deliberating to-have-come —
Μίδαν ὁμοῦ τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῇ μητρὶ καὶ ἐπιστῆναι
Midas together-with the father and the mother and to-have-stopped
τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ αὐτῇ ἁμάξῃ.
by-the assembly with-the-very wagon

3.6 τοὺς δὲ ξυμβαλόντας τὸ μαντεῖον τοῦτον ἐκεῖνον γνῶναι
they and having-interpreted the oracle this that-one to-have-recognized
ὄντα, ὅντινα ὁ θεὸς αὐτοῖς ἔφραζεν, ὅτι ἄξει ἡ ἅμαξα·
being whom the god to-them indicated that will-bring the wagon
καὶ καταστῆσαι μὲν αὐτοὺς βασιλέα τὸν Μίδαν, Μίδαν δὲ
and to-have-made indeed them king — Midas Midas and
αὐτοῖς τὴν στάσιν καταπαῦσαι, καὶ τὴν ἅμαξαν τοῦ πατρὸς
for-them the faction to-have-stopped and the wagon of-the father
ἐν τῇ ἄκρᾳ ἀναθεῖναι χαριστήρια τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ
in the citadel to-have-dedicated as-thank-offering — to-Zeus the king
ἐπὶ τοῦ ἀετοῦ τῇ πομπῇ. πρὸς δὲ δὴ τούτοις καὶ
for the eagle the sending in-addition and indeed to-these also
τόδε περὶ τῆς ἁμάξης ἐμυθεύετο, ὅστις λύσειε τοῦ ζυγοῦ
this about the wagon was-told whoever should-untie of-the yoke
τῆς ἁμάξης τὸν δεσμόν, τοῦτον χρῆναι ἄρξαι τῆς Ἀσίας.
of-the wagon the knot this-one it-was-fated to-rule — Asia

3.7 ἦν δὲ ὁ δεσμὸς ἐκ φλοιοῦ κρανίας καὶ τούτου οὔτε
was and the knot of bark of-cornel and of-it neither
τέλος οὔτε ἀρχὴ ἐφαίνετο. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἀπόρως
end nor beginning appeared Alexander and as at-a-loss
μὲν εἶχεν ἐξευρεῖν λύσιν τοῦ δεσμοῦ, ἄλυτον δὲ περιδεῖν
indeed he-was to-find-out a-loosing of-the knot unloosed but to-leave
οὐκ ἤθελε, μή τινα καὶ τοῦτο ἐς τοὺς πολλοὺς κίνησιν
not he-wished lest some also this among the many disturbance
ἐργάσηται. οἱ μὲν λέγουσιν, ὅτι παίσας τῷ ξίφει
should-cause the-ones indeed say that having-struck with-the sword

διέκοψε τὸν δεσμὸν καὶ λελύσθαι ἔφη· Ἀριστόβουλος
he-cut-through the knot and to-have-been-untied said Aristobulus
δὲ λέγει ἐξελόντα τὸν ἔστορα τοῦ ῥυμοῦ, ὃς ἦν τύλος
but says having-taken-out the peg of-the pole which was a-bolt
διαβεβλημένος διὰ τοῦ ῥυμοῦ διαμπάξ, ξυνέχων τὸν
driven-through through the pole right-through holding-together the
δεσμόν, ἐξελκύσαι ἔξω τοῦ ῥυμοῦ τὸν ζυγόν.
knot to-have-drawn-off out of-the pole the yoke
ὅπως μὲν δὴ ἐπράχθη τὰ ἀμφὶ τῷ δεσμῷ τούτῳ 3.8
how indeed indeed was-done the-things about the knot this
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ οὐκ ἔχω ἰσχυρίσασθαι. ἀπηλλάγη δ' οὖν
by-Alexander not I-can to-affirm he-departed at-any-rate then
ἀπὸ τῆς ἁμάξης αὐτός τε καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ὡς τοῦ
from the wagon himself both and the around him as the
λογίου τοῦ ἐπὶ τῇ λύσει τοῦ δεσμοῦ ξυμβεβηκότος. καὶ γὰρ
oracle the about the untying of-the knot having-been-fulfilled and for
καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκείνης βρονταί τε καὶ σέλας ἐξ οὐρανοῦ
also of-the night that thunders both and lightning from heaven
ἐπεσήμηναν· καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἔθυε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Ἀλέξανδρος
signaled and for these sacrificed on-the next-day Alexander
τοῖς φήνασι θεοῖς τά τε σημεῖα καὶ τοῦ δεσμοῦ τὴν λύσιν.
to-the having-revealed gods the both signs and of-the knot the untying

The Paphlagonians submit, and Cappadocia is won to the Halys and beyond. Alexander nears the Cilician Gates by night, their guards flee, and he hurries to save Tarsus, which Arsames abandons. He falls gravely ill, from fatigue or a swim in the cold Cydnus. Parmenion writes that the doctor Philip has been bribed to poison him. Alexander drinks the medicine as Philip reads the letter, and recovers. At Anchialus he sees the tomb of Sardanapalus, whose epitaph says eat, drink, and play. He fines Soli, subdues the hill Cilicians, hears that Ptolemy and Asander have won in Caria, holds games at Soli, and settles the faction at Mallus.

4.1 αὐτὸς δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπ᾽ Ἀγκύρας τῆς Γαλατικῆς
he-himself and on-the next-day toward Ancyra the Galatian
ἐστέλλετο· κἀκεῖ αὐτῷ πρεσβεία ἀφικνεῖται Παφλαγόνων,
set-out and-there to-him an-embassy arrives of-Paphlagonians
τό τε ἔθνος ἐνδιδόντων καὶ ἐς ὁμολογίαν ξυμβαινόντων·
the both nation surrendering and to agreement coming
ἐς δὲ τὴν χώραν ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει μὴ ἐσβαλεῖν ἐδέοντο.
into but the country with the force not to-invade they-asked
4.2 τούτοις μὲν δὴ προστάσσει Ἀλέξανδρος ὑπακούειν
these indeed indeed orders Alexander to-obey
Κάλᾳ τῷ σατράπῃ τῷ Φρυγίας. αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ
Calas the satrap the of-Phrygia he-himself and toward
Καππαδοκίας ἐλάσας ξύμπασαν τὴν ἐντὸς Ἅλυος
Cappadocia having-marched all the within Halys
ποταμοῦ προσηγάγετο καὶ ἔτι ὑπὲρ τὸν Ἅλυν πολλήν·
river brought-over and still beyond — Halys much
καταστήσας δὲ Καππαδοκῶν Σαβίκταν σατράπην αὐτὸς
having-appointed and of-Cappadocians Sabictas satrap he-himself
προῆγεν ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας τὰς Κιλικίας.
advanced to the gates the Cilician

καὶ ἀφικόμενος ἐπὶ τὸ Κύρου τοῦ ξὺν Ξενοφῶντι 4.3
and having-arrived at the of-Cyrus the with Xenophon
στρατόπεδον, ὡς κατεχομένας τὰς πύλας φυλακαῖς ἰσχυραῖς
camp when held the gates by-guards strong
εἶδε, Παρμενίωνα μὲν αὐτοῦ καταλείπει σὺν ταῖς τάξεσι
he-saw Parmenion indeed there leaves with the battalions
τῶν πεζῶν, ὅσοι βαρύτερον ὡπλισμένοι ἦσαν. αὐτὸς δὲ
of-the infantry as-many-as more-heavily armed were he-himself and
ἀμφὶ πρώτην φυλακὴν ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ
about first watch having-taken the both shield-bearers and
τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας προῆγε τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ
the archers and the Agrianians advanced by-the night toward
τὰς πύλας, ὡς οὐ προσδεχομένοις τοῖς φύλαξιν ἐπιπεσεῖν.
the gates so-as not expecting the guards to-fall-upon
καὶ προσάγων μὲν οὐκ ἔλαθεν, ἐς ἴσον δὲ αὐτῷ 4.4
and approaching indeed not he-escaped-notice to equal but for-him
κατέστη ἡ τόλμα. οἱ γὰρ φύλακες αἰσθόμενοι Ἀλέξανδρον
came the daring the for guards having-perceived Alexander
αὐτὸν προσάγοντα λιπόντες τὴν φυλακὴν ᾤχοντο
himself approaching having-left the post went-off
φεύγοντες. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἅμα τῇ ἕῳ ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει
fleeing on-the and next-day with the dawn with the force
πάσῃ ὑπερβαλὼν τὰς πύλας κατέβαινεν ἐς τὴν Κιλικίαν.
whole having-crossed the gates he-went-down into — Cilicia
καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀγγέλλεται αὐτῷ Ἀρσάμης ὅτι πρόσθεν 4.5
and there is-reported to-him Arsames that before
μὲν ἐπενόει διασώζειν Πέρσαις τὴν Ταρσόν, ὡς δὲ
indeed he-intended to-preserve for-Persians — Tarsus when and
ὑπερβεβληκότα ἤδη τὰς πύλας ἐπύθετο Ἀλέξανδρον
having-crossed already the gates he-learned Alexander
ἐκλιπεῖν ἐν νῷ ἔχειν τὴν πόλιν· δεδιέναι οὖν τοὺς
to-abandon in mind to-have the city to-fear then the

Ταρσέας μὴ ἐφ᾽ ἁρπαγὴν τραπεὶς οὕτω τὴν ἀπόλειψιν
Tarsians lest to plunder having-turned so the abandonment
τῆς Ταρσοῦ ποιήσηται.
— of-Tarsus he-should-make

4.6 ταῦτα ἀκούσας δρόμῳ ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ταρσὸν τούς τε
these-things having-heard at-a-run he-led toward — Tarsus the both
ἱππέας καὶ τῶν ψιλῶν ὅσοι κουφότατοι, ὥστε ὁ
cavalry and of-the light-troops as-many-as lightest so-that —
Ἀρσάμης μαθὼν αὐτοῦ τὴν ὁρμὴν σπουδῇ φεύγει ἐκ τῆς
Arsames having-learned his the movement in-haste flees from —
Ταρσοῦ παρὰ βασιλέα Δαρεῖον οὐδὲν βλάψας τὴν πόλιν.
Tarsus to king Darius nothing having-harmed the city

4.7 Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὡς μὲν Ἀριστοβούλῳ λέλεκται, ὑπὸ
Alexander and as indeed by-Aristobulus it-has-been-said from
καμάτου ἐνόσησεν, οἱ δὲ ἐς τὸν Κύδνον ποταμὸν
fatigue fell-ill the-others and into the Cydnus river
λέγουσι ῥίψαντα νήξασθαι, ἐπιθυμήσαντα τοῦ ὕδατος,
say having-thrown-himself to-have-swum having-desired the water
ἱδρῶντα καὶ καύματι ἐχόμενον. ὁ δὲ Κύδνος ῥέει διὰ
sweating and by-heat oppressed — and Cydnus flows through
μέσης τῆς πόλεως· οἷα δὲ ἐκ τοῦ Ταύρου ὄρους τῶν
middle the city as and from — Taurus mountain the
πηγῶν οἱ ἀνισχουσῶν καὶ διὰ χώρου καθαροῦ ῥέων,
springs for-it rising and through ground clean flowing
ψυχρός τέ ἐστι καὶ τὸ ὕδωρ καθαρός·
cold both is and the water clear

4.8 σπασμῷ τε οὖν ἔχεσθαι Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ θέρμαις ἰσχυραῖς
by-cramp both then to-be-seized Alexander and by-fevers violent
καὶ ἀγρυπνίᾳ ξυνεχεῖ· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἰατροὺς οὐκ
and by-sleeplessness continuous and the indeed other physicians not
οἴεσθαι εἶναι βιώσιμον, Φίλιππον δὲ Ἀκαρνᾶνα, ἰατρόν,
to-think to-be likely-to-live Philip but an-Acarnanian physician

ξυνόντα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ τά τε ἀμφὶ ἰατρικὴν ἐς τὰ
being-with Alexander and the both about medicine to the
μάλιστα πιστευόμενον καὶ τὰ ἄλλα οὐκ ἀδόκιμον ἐν
most trusted and the other-things not undistinguished in
τῷ στρατῷ ὄντα, καθῆραι ἐθέλειν Ἀλέξανδρον φαρμάκῳ·
the army being to-purge to-wish Alexander with-a-drug
καὶ τὸν κελεύειν καθῆραι.
and him to-bid to-purge
τὸν μὲν δὴ παρασκευάζειν τὴν κύλικα, ἐν τούτῳ 4.9
him indeed indeed to-prepare the cup in this
δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δοθῆναι ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ Παρμενίωνος
and to-Alexander to-be-given a-letter from Parmenion
φυλάξασθαι Φίλιππον· ἀκούειν γὰρ διεφθάρθαι ὑπὸ
to-beware-of Philip to-hear for to-have-been-corrupted by
Δαρείου χρήμασιν ὥστε φαρμάκῳ ἀποκτεῖναι Ἀλέξανδρον.
Darius with-money so-as with-poison to-kill Alexander
τὸν δὲ ἀναγνόντα τὴν ἐπιστολὴν καὶ ἔτι μετὰ χεῖρας ἔχοντα
him and having-read the letter and still in hands holding
αὐτὸν μὲν λαβεῖν τὴν κύλικα ἐν ᾗ ἦν τὸ φάρμακον,
himself indeed to-take the cup in which was the drug
τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δὲ τῷ Φιλίππῳ δοῦναι ἀναγνῶναι.
the letter and — to-Philip to-give to-read
καὶ ὁμοῦ τόν τε Ἀλέξανδρον πίνειν καὶ τὸν Φίλιππον 4.10
and together — both Alexander to-drink and — Philip
ἀναγινώσκειν τὰ παρὰ τοῦ Παρμενίωνος. Φίλιππον
to-read the-things from — Parmenion Philip
δὲ εὐθὺς ἔνδηλον γενέσθαι, ὅτι καλῶς οἱ ἔχει τὰ
and at-once evident to-become that well for-him are the-things
τοῦ φαρμάκου· οὐ γὰρ ἐκπλαγῆναι πρὸς τὴν ἐπιστολήν,
of-the drug not for to-be-alarmed at the letter
ἀλλὰ τοσόνδε μόνον παρακαλέσαι Ἀλέξανδρον, καὶ ἐς τὰ
but so-much only to-urge Alexander also for the

ἄλλα οἱ πείθεσθαι ὅσα ἐπαγγέλλοιτο· σωθήσεσθαι
other-things him to-obey as-many-as he-should-prescribe to-be-going-to-be-saved
γὰρ πειθόμενον.
for obeying

4.11 καὶ τὸν μὲν καθαρθῆναί τε καὶ ῥαΐσαι αὐτῷ τὸ νόσημα,
and him indeed to-be-purged both and to-be-eased for-him the illness
Φιλίππῳ δὲ ἐπιδεῖξαι, ὅτι πιστός ἐστιν αὐτῷ φίλος, καὶ
to-Philip and to-show that trusty he-is to-him friend and
τοῖς ἄλλοις δὲ τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν, ὅτι αὐτοῖς τε τοῖς
to-the others and the around him that to-the-very both the
φίλοις βέβαιος εἰς τὸ ἀνύποπτον τυγχάνει ὢν καὶ πρὸς
friends steadfast for the unsuspecting he-happens being and toward
τὸ ἀποθανεῖν ἐρρωμένος.
the to-die strong

5.1 ἐκ δὲ τούτου Παρμενίωνα μὲν πέμπει ἐπὶ τὰς ἄλλας
from and this Parmenion indeed he-sends to the other
πύλας, αἳ δὴ ὁρίζουσι τὴν Κιλίκων τε καὶ Ἀσσυρίων
gates which indeed divide the of-Cilicians both and of-Assyrians
χώραν, προκαταλαβεῖν καὶ φυλάσσειν τὴν πάροδον,
country to-seize-first and to-guard the passage
δοὺς αὐτῷ τῶν τε ξυμμάχων τοὺς πεζοὺς καὶ
having-given him of-the both allies the infantry and
τοὺς Ἕλληνας τοὺς μισθοφόρους καὶ τοὺς Θρᾷκας, ὧν
the Greeks the mercenaries and the Thracians whom
Σιτάλκης ἡγεῖτο, καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας δὲ τοὺς Θεσσαλούς.
Sitalces led and the cavalry and the Thessalian

5.2 αὐτὸς δὲ ὕστερος ἄρας ἐκ Ταρσοῦ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ
he-himself and later having-set-out from Tarsus on-the indeed first-(day)
ἐς Ἀγχίαλον πόλιν ἀφικνεῖται. ταύτην δὲ Σαρδανάπαλον
to Anchialus city arrives this and Sardanapalus
κτίσαι τὸν Ἀσσύριον λόγος· καὶ τῷ περιβόλῳ δὲ
to-have-founded the Assyrian the-story-goes and by-the circuit and

καὶ τοῖς θεμελίοις τῶν τειχῶν δήλη ἐστὶ μεγάλη τε
and by-the foundations of-the walls evident it-is great both
πόλις κτισθεῖσα καὶ ἐπὶ μέγα ἐλθοῦσα δυνάμεως.
a-city founded and to great having-come of-power
καὶ τὸ μνῆμα τοῦ Σαρδαναπάλου ἐγγὺς ἦν τῶν τειχῶν τῆς 5.3
and the monument — of-Sardanapalus near was the walls —
Ἀγχιάλου· καὶ αὐτὸς ἐφειστήκει ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ Σαρδανάπαλος
of-Anchialus and himself stood on it Sardanapalus
συμβεβληκὼς τὰς χεῖρας ἀλλήλαις ὡς μάλιστα ἐς
having-put-together the hands with-one-another as most for
κρότον συμβάλλονται, καὶ ἐπίγραμμα ἐπεγέγραπτο αὐτῷ
clapping they-are-put-together and an-inscription had-been-inscribed on-it
Ἀσσύρια γράμματα·
Assyrian letters
οἱ μὲν Ἀσσύριοι καὶ μέτρον ἔφασκον ἐπεῖναι τῷ 5.4
the indeed Assyrians also meter said to-be-in the
ἐπιγράμματι, ὁ δὲ νοῦς ἦν αὐτῷ ὃν ἔφραζε τὰ ἔπη, ὅτι
inscription the and sense was to-it which declared the verses that
Σαρδανάπαλος ὁ Ἀνακυνδαράξου παῖς Ἀγχίαλον καὶ Ταρσὸν
Sardanapalus the of-Anacyndaraxes son Anchialus and Tarsus
ἐν ἡμέρᾳ μιᾷ ἐδείματο. σὺ δέ, ὦ ξένε, ἔσθιε καὶ πῖνε καὶ
in day one built you but O stranger eat and drink and
παῖζε, ὡς τἆλλα τὰ ἀνθρώπινα οὐκ ὄντα τούτου ἄξια· τὸν
play as the-other-things the human not being of-this worth the
ψόφον αἰνισσόμενος, ὅπερ αἱ χεῖρες ἐπὶ τῷ κρότῳ ποιοῦσι·
noise hinting-at which the hands in the clapping make
καὶ τὸ παῖζε ῥᾳδιουργότερον ἐγγεγράφθαι ἔφασαν τῷ
and the play more-wantonly to-have-been-written they-said in-the
Ἀσσυρίῳ ὀνόματι. ἐκ δὲ τῆς Ἀγχιάλου ἐς Σόλους ἀφίκετο·
Assyrian word from and — Anchialus to Soli he-arrived

5.5 καὶ φρουρὰν ἐσήγαγεν ἐς Σόλους καὶ ἐπέβαλεν αὐτοῖς
and a-garrison brought-in to Soli and imposed-on them
τάλαντα διακόσια ἀργυρίου ζημίαν, ὅτι πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας
talents two-hundred of-silver as-a-fine because toward the Persians
μᾶλλόν τι τὸν νοῦν εἶχον.
more somewhat the mind they-had

5.6 ἔνθεν δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τῶν μὲν πεζῶν τῶν Μακεδόνων
thence and having-taken of-the indeed infantry of-the Macedonians
τρεῖς τάξεις, τοὺς τοξότας δὲ πάντας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας
three battalions the archers and all and the Agrianians
ἐξελαύνει ἐπὶ τοὺς τὰ ὄρη κατέχοντας Κίλικας. καὶ ἐν
he-marches against the the mountains holding Cilicians and in
ἑπτὰ ταῖς πάσαις ἡμέραις τοὺς μὲν βίᾳ ἐξελών, τοὺς
seven the all days the-ones indeed by-force having-taken the-others
δὲ ὁμολογίᾳ παραστησάμενος ἐπανῆκεν ἐς τοὺς Σόλους.
and by-agreement having-won-over he-returned to — Soli

5.7 καὶ ἐνταῦθα μανθάνει Πτολεμαῖον καὶ Ἄσανδρον ὅτι
and there he-learns Ptolemy and Asander that
ἐκράτησαν Ὀροντοβάτου τοῦ Πέρσου, ὃς τήν τε ἄκραν τῆς
prevailed-over Orontobates the Persian who the both citadel —
Ἁλικαρνασσοῦ ἐφύλασσε καὶ Μύνδον καὶ Καῦνον καὶ Θήραν
of-Halicarnassus guarded and Myndus and Caunus and Thera
καὶ Καλλίπολιν κατεῖχε· προσῆκτο δὲ καὶ Κῶ καὶ Τριόπιον.
and Callipolis held had-brought-over and also Cos and Triopium
τοῦτον ἡττῆσθαι ἔγραφον μάχῃ μεγάλῃ· καὶ ἀποθανεῖν
him to-have-been-defeated they-wrote in-battle great and to-have-died
μὲν τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν πεζοὺς ἐς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ ἱππέας ἐς
indeed of-the around him infantry about seven-hundred and cavalry about
πεντήκοντα, ἁλῶναι δὲ οὐκ ἐλάττους τῶν χιλίων.
fifty to-have-been-captured and not fewer than-the thousand

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐν Σόλοις θύσας τε τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ καὶ 5.8
Alexander and in Soli having-sacrificed both — to-Asclepius and
πομπεύσας αὐτός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ πᾶσα καὶ λαμπάδα
having-led-a-procession himself both and the army all and a-torch-race
ἐπιτελέσας καὶ ἀγῶνα διαθεὶς γυμνικὸν καὶ μουσικὸν Σολεῦσι
having-completed and a-contest having-held gymnastic and musical to-Solians
μὲν δημοκρατεῖσθαι ἔδωκεν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναζεύξας ἐς
indeed to-be-democratically-governed he-granted he-himself and having-broken-camp to
Ταρσὸν τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας ἀπέστειλεν Φιλώτᾳ δοὺς
Tarsus the indeed cavalry sent-off to-Philotas having-given-them
ἄγειν διὰ τοῦ Ἀληίου πεδίου ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Πύραμον,
to-lead through the Aleian plain to the river — Pyramus
αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς πεζοῖς καὶ τῇ ἴλῃ τῇ βασιλικῇ 5.9
he-himself and with the infantry and the squadron the royal
ἐς Μάγαρσον ἦκεν καὶ τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ τῇ Μαγαρσίδι ἔθυσεν.
to Magarsus came and — to-Athena the Magarsian sacrificed
ἔνθεν δὲ ἐς Μαλλὸν ἀφίκετο καὶ Ἀμφιλόχῳ ὅσα ἥρωι
thence and to Mallus he-arrived and to-Amphilochus as to-a-hero
ἐνήγισε· καὶ στασιάζοντας καταλαβὼν τὴν στάσιν
made-offerings and in-faction having-found-them the faction
αὐτοῖς κατέπαυσε· καὶ τοὺς φόρους, οὓς βασιλεῖ Δαρείῳ
for-them he-stopped and the tributes which to-king Darius
ἀπέφερον, ἀνῆκεν, ὅτι Ἀργείων μὲν Μαλλωταὶ ἄποικοι
they-paid he-remitted because of-Argives indeed Mallotes colonists
ἦσαν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπ᾽ Ἄργους τῶν Ἡρακλειδῶν εἶναι ἠξίου.
were he-himself and from Argos of-the Heracleidae to-be claimed

At Mallus Alexander hears that Darius is camped at Sochi, crosses the pass to Myriandrus, and is held there by a storm. Darius waits on an open plain that suits his numbers, as the deserter Amyntas urges, until Alexander's delays in Cilicia and his courtiers' flattery persuade him that Alexander is afraid. He crosses the Amanus to Issus, behind Alexander, and kills the sick left there. Alexander confirms the report by ship, tells his officers that the god has led Darius into narrows that suit the phalanx, recalls Xenophon's Ten Thousand, and retakes the pass by night. At dawn he deploys, Parmenion on the left by the sea. Darius forms behind the Pinarus, his Greek mercenaries facing the phalanx and himself in the center.

6.1 ἔτι δὲ ἐν Μαλλῷ ὄντι αὐτῷ ἀγγέλλεται Δαρεῖον ἐν
still and in Mallus being to-him is-reported Darius in
Σώχοις ξὺν τῇ πάσῃ δυνάμει στρατοπεδεύειν. ὁ δὲ
Sochi with the whole force to-be-encamped the and
χῶρος οὗτός ἐστι μὲν τῆς Ἀσσυρίας γῆς, ἀπέχει δὲ
place this is indeed of-the Assyrian land is-distant and
τῶν πυλῶν τῶν Ἀσσυρίων ἐς δύο μάλιστα σταθμούς.
from-the gates the Assyrian about two roughly stages
ἔνθα δὴ ξυναγαγὼν τοὺς ἑταίρους φράζει αὐτοῖς τὰ
there indeed having-assembled the companions he-tells them the-things
ἐξηγγελμένα ὑπὲρ Δαρείου τε καὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς τῆς
reported about Darius both and the army —
Δαρείου. οἱ δὲ αὐτόθεν ὡς εἶχεν ἄγειν ἐκέλευον.
of-Darius they and from-there as he-was to-lead bade

6.2 ὁ δὲ τότε μὲν ἐπαινέσας αὐτοὺς διέλυσε τὸν ξύλλογον, τῇ
he and then indeed having-praised them dismissed the meeting on-the
δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ προῆγεν ὡς ἐπὶ Δαρεῖόν τε καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας.
and next-day advanced as against Darius both and the Persians
δευτεραῖος δὲ ὑπερβαλὼν τὰς πύλας ἐστρατοπέδευσε πρὸς
on-the-second-day and having-crossed the gates he-encamped by

Μυριάνδρῳ πόλει· καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς χειμὼν ἐπιγίγνεται
Myriandrus city and in-the night a-storm comes-on
σκληρὸς καὶ ὕδωρ τε ἐξ οὐρανοῦ καὶ πνεῦμα βίαιον·
harsh and water both from heaven and wind violent
τοῦτο κατέσχεν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ Ἀλέξανδρον.
this held-back in the camp Alexander
Δαρεῖος δὲ τέως μὲν ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ διέτριβεν, 6.3
Darius and meanwhile indeed with the army was-staying
ἐπιλεξάμενος τῆς Ἀσσυρίας γῆς πεδίον πάντῃ
having-chosen of-the Assyrian land a-plain on-every-side
ἀναπεπταμένον καὶ τῷ τε πλήθει τῆς στρατιᾶς
open and for-the both multitude of-the army
ἐπιτήδειον καὶ ἐνιππάσασθαι τῇ ἵππῳ ξύμφορον. καὶ
suitable and to-ride for-the horse convenient and
τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον ξυνεβούλευεν αὐτῷ μὴ ἀπολείπειν
this the place advised him not to-abandon
Ἀμύντας ὁ Ἀντιόχου, ὁ παρὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου αὐτόμολος·
Amyntas the (son)-of-Antiochus the from Alexander deserter
εἶναι γὰρ τὴν εὐρυχωρίαν πρὸς τοῦ πλήθους τε καὶ
to-be for the spaciousness in-favor-of the multitude both and
τῆς σκευῆς τῶν Περσῶν. καὶ ἔμενε Δαρεῖος.
the equipment of-the Persians and remained Darius
ὡς δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πολλὴ μὲν ἐν Ταρσῷ τριβὴ ἐπὶ 6.4
when and for-Alexander much indeed in Tarsus delay on-account-of
τῇ νόσῳ ἐγίνετο, οὐκ ὀλίγη δὲ ἐν Σόλοις, ἵνα ἔθυέ τε
the illness took-place not little and in Soli where he-sacrificed both
καὶ ἐπόμπευε, καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς ὀρεινοὺς Κίλικας διέτριψεν
and held-a-procession and against the mountain Cilicians he-spent-time
ἐξελάσας, τοῦτο ἔσφηλεν Δαρεῖον τῆς γνώμης· καὶ
having-marched-out this misled Darius in-the judgment and
αὐτός τε, ὅ τί περ ἥδιστον ἦν δοξασθέν, ἐς τοῦτο
himself both what ever indeed pleasantest was having-been-thought to this

οὐκ ἀκουσίως ὑπήχθη καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν καθ' ἡδονὴν ξυνόντων
not unwillingly was-led-on and by the for pleasure being-with
τε καὶ ξυνεσομένων ἐπὶ κακῷ τοῖς ἀεὶ βασιλεύουσιν
both and about-to-be-with to harm for-the always reigning
ἐπαιρόμενος ἔγνω μηκέτι Ἀλέξανδρον ἐθέλειν προϊέναι τοῦ
being-elated he-judged no-longer Alexander to-wish to-advance to-the
πρόσω, ἀλλ' ὀκνεῖν γὰρ πυνθανόμενον ὅτι αὐτὸς προσάγοι·
forward but to-shrink for learning that he-himself was-approaching
6.5 καταπατήσειν τε τῇ ἵππῳ τῶν Μακεδόνων τὴν
to-be-going-to-trample both with-the horse of-the Macedonians the
στρατιὰν ἄλλος ἄλλοθεν αὐτῷ ἐπαίροντες ἔλεγον·
army one from-another-side him elating they-said
6.6 καίτοι γε Ἀμύντας ἥξειν τε Ἀλέξανδρον
and-yet at-least Amyntas to-be-going-to-come both Alexander
ἰσχυρίζετο, ὅπου ἂν πύθηται Δαρεῖον ὄντα, καὶ αὐτοῦ
insisted wherever — he-learns Darius being and there
προσμένειν ἐκέλευεν. ἀλλὰ τὰ χείρω μᾶλλον, ὅτι καὶ
to-wait bade but the worse rather because also
ἐν τῷ παραυτίκα ἡδίω ἀκοῦσαι ἦν, ἔπειθε· καί τι
in the moment pleasanter to-hear it-was persuaded and some
καὶ δαιμόνιον τυχὸν ἦγεν αὐτὸν εἰς ἐκεῖνον τὸν χῶρον,
also divine-power perhaps led him into that the place
οὗ μήτε ἐκ τῆς ἵππου πολλὴ ὠφέλεια αὐτῷ ἐγένετο,
where neither from the horse much benefit to-him came
μήτε ἐκ τοῦ πλήθους αὐτοῦ τῶν τε ἀνθρώπων καὶ
nor from the multitude itself of-the both men and
τῶν ἀκοντίων τε καὶ τοξευμάτων, μηδὲ τὴν λαμπρότητα
of-the javelins both and arrows nor the splendor
αὐτὴν τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐπιδεῖξαι ἠδυνήθη, ἀλλὰ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
itself of-the army to-display he-was-able but to-Alexander
τε καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εὐμαρῶς τὴν νίκην παρέδωκεν.
both and to-the around him easily the victory handed-over

ἐχρῆν γὰρ ἤδη καὶ Πέρσας πρὸς Μακεδόνων 6.7
it-was-necessary for already also Persians by Macedonians
ἀφαιρεθῆναι τῆς Ἀσίας τὴν ἀρχήν, καθάπερ οὖν Μῆδοι
to-be-deprived — of-Asia the rule just-as then Medes
μὲν πρὸς Περσῶν ἀφῃρέθησαν, πρὸς Μήδων δὲ ἔτι
indeed by Persians were-deprived by Medes and still
ἔμπροσθεν Ἀσσύριοι.
before Assyrians
ὑπερβαλὼν δὴ τὸ ὄρος Δαρεῖος τὸ κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς 7.1
having-crossed indeed the mountain Darius the by the gates the
Ἀμανικὰς καλουμένας ὡς ἐπὶ Ἰσσὸν προῆγε· καὶ ἐγένετο
Amanian called as toward Issus advanced and came
κατόπιν Ἀλεξάνδρου λαθών. τὴν δὲ Ἰσσὸν κατασχών,
behind Alexander unnoticed — and Issus having-taken
ὅσους διὰ νόσον ὑπολελειμμένους αὐτοῦ τῶν Μακεδόνων
as-many-as because-of illness left-behind there of-the Macedonians
κατέλαβε, τούτους χαλεπῶς αἰκισάμενος ἀπέκτεινεν· ἐς δὲ
he-found these cruelly having-maltreated killed to and
τὴν ὑστεραίαν προὐχώρει ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Πίναρον.
the next-day he-advanced to the river — Pinarus
καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ὡς ἤκουσεν ἐν τῷ ὄπισθεν αὐτοῦ 7.2
and Alexander when he-heard in the behind of-himself
ὄντα Δαρεῖον, ἐπεὶ οὐ πιστὸς αὐτῷ ὁ λόγος ἐφαίνετο,
being Darius since not credible to-him the report appeared
ἀναβιβάσας εἰς τριακόντορον τῶν ἑταίρων τινὰς ἀποπέμπει
having-embarked into a-thirty-oared-ship of-the companions some sends-off
ὀπίσω ἐπὶ Ἰσσόν, κατασκεψομένους εἰ τὰ ὄντα
back toward Issus about-to-spy-out if the truth
ἐξαγγέλλεται. οἱ δὲ ἀναπλεύσαντες τῇ τριακοντόρῳ,
is-reported they and having-sailed-up in-the thirty-oared-ship
ὅτι κολπώδης ἦν ἡ ταύτῃ θάλασσα, μᾶλλόν τι
because bay-shaped was the there sea more somewhat

εὐπετῶς κατέμαθον αὐτοῦ στρατοπεδεύοντας τοὺς Πέρσας·
easily learned there encamped the Persians
καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσιν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐν χερσὶν εἶναι Δαρεῖον.
and they-report to-Alexander in hands to-be Darius
7.3 ὁ δὲ συγκαλέσας στρατηγούς τε καὶ ἰλάρχας καὶ
he and having-called-together generals both and squadron-leaders and
τῶν ξυμμάχων τοὺς ἡγεμόνας παρεκάλει θαρρεῖν μὲν
of-the allies the leaders urged to-take-heart indeed
ἐκ τῶν ἤδη σφίσι καλῶς κεκινδυνευμένων καὶ ὅτι πρὸς
from the already by-them well ventured and that against
νενικημένους ὁ ἀγὼν νενικηκόσιν αὐτοῖς ἔσται καὶ ὅτι
defeated the contest for-victors for-them will-be and that
ὁ θεὸς ὑπὲρ σφῶν στρατηγεῖ ἄμεινον, ἐπὶ νοῦν Δαρείῳ
the god for them is-general better into mind for-Darius
ἀγαγὼν καθεῖρξαι τὴν δύναμιν ἐκ τῆς εὐρυχωρίας ἐς τὰ
having-put to-shut-in the force from the open-space into the
στενόπορα, ἵνα σφίσι μὲν ξύμμετρον τὸ χωρίον ἀναπτύξαι
narrow-passages where for-them indeed sufficient the place to-deploy
τὴν φάλαγγα, τοῖς δὲ ἀχρεῖον τὸ πλῆθος ἔσται τῇ
the phalanx for-the-others and useless the multitude will-be in-the
μάχῃ, οὔτε τὰ σώματα οὔτε τὰς γνώμας παραπλησίοις.
battle neither the bodies nor the spirits being-like-(them)
7.4 Μακεδόνας τε γὰρ Πέρσαις καὶ Μήδοις, ἐκ πάνυ πολλοῦ
Macedonians both for to-Persians and Medes from very long
τρυφῶσιν, αὐτοὺς ἐν τοῖς πόνοις τοῖς πολεμικοῖς πάλαι
being-luxurious themselves in the toils the warlike long
ἤδη μετὰ κινδύνων ἀσκουμένους, ἄλλως τε καὶ δούλοις
already with dangers trained especially both and to-slaves
ἀνθρώποις ἐλευθέρους, εἰς χεῖρας ἥξειν· ὅσοι
men free into hands to-be-going-to-come as-many-as
τε Ἕλληνες Ἕλλησιν, οὐχ ὑπὲρ τῶν αὐτῶν μαχεῖσθαι,
both Greeks with-Greeks not for the same to-be-going-to-fight

ἀλλὰ τοὺς μὲν ξὺν Δαρείῳ ἐπὶ μισθῷ καὶ οὐδὲ τούτῳ
but the-ones indeed with Darius for pay and not-even for-this
πολλῷ κινδυνεύοντας, τοὺς δὲ ξὺν σφίσιν ὑπὲρ τῆς
much running-risk the-others and with them for —
Ἑλλάδος ἑκόντας ἀμυνομένους·
Greece willingly defending
βαρβάρων τε αὖ Θρᾳκας καὶ Παίονας καὶ Ἰλλυριοὺς 7.5
of-barbarians both again Thracians and Paeonians and Illyrians
καὶ Ἀγριᾶνας τοὺς εὐρωστοτάτους τε τῶν κατὰ τὴν
and Agrianians the most-robust both of-the in —
Εὐρώπην καὶ μαχιμωτάτους πρὸς τὰ ἀπονώτατά τε καὶ
Europe and most-warlike against the most-sluggish both and
μαλακώτατα τῆς Ἀσίας γένη ἀντιτάξεσθαι· ἐπὶ
softest — of-Asia races to-be-going-to-be-ranged-against besides
δὲ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀντιστρατηγεῖν Δαρείῳ.
and Alexander to-be-opposing-general to-Darius
ταῦτα μὲν οὖν ἐς πλεονεξίαν τοῦ ἀγῶνος ἐπεξῄει. τὰ δὲ 7.6
these-things indeed then for advantage of-the contest he-went-through the and
ἆθλα ὅτι μεγάλα ἔσται σφίσι τοῦ κινδύνου ἐπεδείκνυεν. οὐ
prizes that great will-be to-them of-the danger he-showed not
γὰρ τοὺς σατράπας τοὺς Δαρείου ἐν τῷ τότε κρατήσειν,
for the satraps the of-Darius in the then to-be-going-to-conquer
οὐδὲ τὴν ἵππον τὴν ἐπὶ Γρανίκῳ ταχθεῖσαν, οὐδὲ τοὺς
nor the horse the on Granicus posted nor the
δισμυρίους ξένους τοὺς μισθοφόρους, ἀλλὰ Περσῶν τε
twenty-thousand mercenaries the hired but of-Persians both
ὅ τι περ ὄφελος καὶ Μήδων καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἔθνη
what ever indeed worth-anything and of-Medes and as-many-as other nations
Πέρσαις καὶ Μήδοις ὑπήκοα ἐποικεῖ τὴν Ἀσίαν καὶ αὐτὸν
to-Persians and Medes subject inhabit — Asia and himself
μέγαν βασιλέα παρόντα, καὶ ὡς οὐδὲν ὑπολειφθήσεταί
great king present and that nothing will-be-left

σφισιν ἐπὶ τῷδε τῷ ἀγῶνι ὅτι μὴ κρατεῖν τῆς Ἀσίας
to-them after this the contest except — to-rule — of-Asia
ξυμπάσης καὶ πέρας τοῖς πολλοῖς πόνοις ἐπιθεῖναι.
whole and an-end to-the many toils to-put
7.7 ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ τῶν τε ἐς τὸ κοινὸν ξὺν λαμπρότητι
in-addition-to these and of-the both for the common with splendor
ἤδη πεπραγμένων ὑπεμίμνησκεν καὶ εἰ δή τῳ
already achieved he-reminded and if indeed by-anyone
ἰδίᾳ τι διαπρεπὲς ἐς κάλλος τετολμημένον, ὀνομαστὶ
privately anything distinguished for glory dared by-name
ἕκαστον ἐπὶ τῷ ἔργῳ ἀνακαλῶν. καὶ τὸ αὑτοῦ οὐκ
each for the deed calling-out and the his-own not
ἀκίνδυνον ἐν ταῖς μάχαις ὡς ἀνεπαχθέστατα ἐπεξῄει.
without-danger in the battles as least-offensively he-went-through
7.8 λέγεται δὲ καὶ Ξενοφῶντος καὶ τῶν ἅμα Ξενοφῶντι
it-is-said and also Xenophon and of-the with Xenophon
μυρίων ἐς μνήμην ἐλθεῖν, ὡς οὐδέν τι οὔτε κατὰ
ten-thousand to memory to-have-come as nothing at-all neither in
πλῆθος οὔτε κατὰ τὴν ἄλλην ἀξίωσιν σφίσιν ἐπεοικότες,
number nor in the other worth to-them comparable
οὐδὲ ἱππέων αὐτοῖς παρόντων Θεσσαλῶν, οὐδὲ Βοιωτῶν
not-even cavalry for-them being-present Thessalian nor Boeotian
ἢ Πελοποννησίων, οὐδὲ Μακεδόνων ἢ Θρᾳκῶν, οὐδὲ
or Peloponnesian nor Macedonian or Thracian nor
ὅση ἄλλη σφίσιν ἵππος ξυντέτακται, οὐδὲ τοξοτῶν ἢ
as-much other for-them horse has-been-drawn-up nor archers or
σφενδονητῶν, ὅτι μὴ Κρητῶν ἢ Ῥοδίων ὀλίγων, καὶ
slingers except — Cretans or Rhodians few and
τούτων ἐν τῷ κινδύνῳ ὑπὸ Ξενοφῶντος αὐτοσχεδιασθέντων,
these in the danger by Xenophon improvised

οἱ δὲ βασιλέα τε ξὺν πάσῃ τῇ δυνάμει πρὸς Βαβυλῶνι αὐτῇ 7.9
they and king both with whole the force near Babylon itself
ἐτρέψαντο καὶ ἔθνη ὅσα κατιόντων ἐς τὸν Εὔξεινον
routed and nations as-many-as (them)-going-down to the Euxine
πόντον καθ' ὁδόν σφισιν ἐπεγένετο νικῶντες ἐπῆλθον·
sea on the-way them came-upon conquering they-went-through
ὅσα τε ἄλλα ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε πρὸ τῶν κινδύνων
as-many-as both other-things in the such before the dangers
ἐς παράκλησιν ἀνδράσιν ἀγαθοῖς ἐξ ἀγαθοῦ ἡγεμόνος
for encouragement for-men good from a-good leader
παραινεῖσθαι εἰκός. οἱ δὲ ἄλλος ἄλλοθεν δεξιούμενοί τε
to-be-urged is-likely they and one from-another-side clasping both
τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τῷ λόγῳ ἐπαίροντες ἄγειν ἤδη ἐκέλευον.
the king and with-the word elating to-lead now bade
ὁ δὲ τότε μὲν δειπνοποιεῖσθαι παραγγέλλει, προπέμπει 8.1
he and then indeed to-take-supper orders sends-ahead
δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας τῶν τε ἱππέων ὀλίγους καὶ τῶν
and as toward the gates of-the both cavalry few and of-the
τοξοτῶν προκατασκεψομένους τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν ὀπίσω· καὶ
archers about-to-reconnoiter the road the behind and
αὐτὸς τῆς νυκτὸς ἀναλαβὼν τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν ᾔει,
himself in-the night having-taken the army whole went
ὡς κατασχεῖν αὖθις τὰς πύλας.
so-as to-occupy again the gates
ὡς δὲ ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας ἐκράτησεν αὖθις τῶν παρόδων, 8.2
when and about middle night he-had-mastered again the passes
ἀνέπαυε τὴν στρατιὰν τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς νυκτὸς αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῶν
he-rested the army the rest of-the night there on the
πετρῶν, προφυλακὰς ἀκριβεῖς καταστησάμενος. ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν
rocks outposts careful having-set toward and the
ἕω κατήει ἀπὸ τῶν πυλῶν κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν· καὶ ἕως μὲν
dawn he-went-down from the gates along the road and while indeed

πάντῃ στενόπορα ἦν τὰ χωρία, ἐπὶ κέρως ἦγεν, ὡς δὲ
on-every-side narrow was the ground in column he-led when and
διεχώρει ἐς πλάτος, ἀνέπτυσσεν ἀεὶ τὸ κέρας ἐς φάλαγγα,
it-opened-out to breadth he-deployed always the column into phalanx
ἄλλην καὶ ἄλλην τῶν ὁπλιτῶν τάξιν παράγων, τῇ μὲν
one and another of-the hoplites battalion bringing-up on-one-side indeed
ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν θάλασσαν.
as toward the mountain on left and as toward the sea

8.3 οἱ δὲ ἱππεῖς αὐτῷ τέως μὲν κατόπιν τῶν πεζῶν
the and cavalry for-him meanwhile indeed behind the infantry
τεταγμένοι ἦσαν, ὡς δὲ ἐς τὴν εὐρυχωρίαν προῆσαν,
posted were when and into the open-space they-advanced
συνέτασσεν ἤδη τὴν στρατιὰν ὡς ἐς μάχην, πρώτους
he-drew-up now the army as for battle first
μὲν ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως πρὸς τῷ ὄρει τῶν πεζῶν τό
indeed on the right wing by the mountain of-the infantry the
τε ἄγημα καὶ τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Νικάνωρ ὁ
both agema and the shield-bearers whom led Nicanor the
Παρμενίωνος, ἐχομένην δὲ τούτων τὴν Κοίνου τάξιν, ἐπὶ
(son)-of-Parmenion adjoining and these the of-Coenus battalion next
δὲ τούτοις τὴν Περδίκκου. οὗτοι μὲν ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ μέσον
and to-these the of-Perdiccas these indeed as-far to the center
τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἀρξαμένῳ τεταγμένοι ἦσαν.
of-the hoplites from the right for-one-beginning posted were

8.4 ἐπὶ δὲ τοῦ εὐωνύμου πρώτη μὲν ἡ Ἀμύντου τάξις ἦν,
on and the left first indeed the of-Amyntas battalion was
ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ Πτολεμαίου, ἐχομένη δὲ ταύτης ἡ Μελεάγρου.
next and the of-Ptolemy adjoining and this the of-Meleager
τοῦ δὲ εὐωνύμου τοῖς πεζοῖς μὲν Κρατερὸς ἐπετέτακτο
of-the and left for-the infantry indeed Craterus had-been-assigned
ἄρχειν, τοῦ δὲ ξύμπαντος εὐωνύμου Παρμενίων ἡγεῖτο·
to-command of-the and whole left Parmenion led

καὶ παρήγγελτο αὐτῷ μὴ ἀπολείπειν τὴν θάλασσαν,
and it-had-been-ordered him not to-leave the sea
ὡς μὴ κυκλωθεῖεν ἐκ τῶν βαρβάρων, ὅτι πάντῃ
so-that not they-be-surrounded by the barbarians because on-every-side
ὑπερφαλαγγήσειν αὐτῶν διὰ πλῆθος ἤμελλον.
to-outflank them because-of multitude they-were-likely
Δαρεῖος δέ, ἐπειδὴ ἐξηγγέλθη αὐτῷ προσάγων ἤδη 8.5
Darius and when it-was-reported to-him approaching already
Ἀλέξανδρος ὡς ἐς μάχην, τῶν μὲν ἱππέων διαβιβάζει
Alexander as for battle of-the indeed cavalry carries-across
πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ Πινάρου ἐς τρισμυρίους μάλιστα
beyond the river — Pinarus about thirty-thousand roughly
τὸν ἀριθμὸν καὶ μετὰ τούτων τῶν ψιλῶν ἐς δισμυρίους,
the number and with these of-the light-troops about twenty-thousand
ὅπως τὴν λοιπὴν δύναμιν καθ' ἡσυχίαν συντάξειε.
so-that the remaining force at leisure he-might-draw-up
καὶ πρώτους μὲν τοῦ ὁπλιτικοῦ τοὺς Ἕλληνας τοὺς 8.6
and first indeed of-the hoplite-force the Greeks the
μισθοφόρους ἔταξεν ἐς τρισμυρίους κατὰ τὴν φάλαγγα
mercenaries he-posted about thirty-thousand opposite the phalanx
τῶν Μακεδόνων· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις τῶν Καρδάκων
of-the Macedonians next and to-these of-the Cardaces
καλουμένων ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν ἐς ἑξακισμυρίους· ὁπλῖται
called on-this-side and on-that about sixty-thousand hoplites
δὲ ἦσαν καὶ οὗτοι. τοσούτους γὰρ ἐπὶ φάλαγγος ἁπλῆς
and were also these so-many for in phalanx single
ἐδέχετο τὸ χωρίον, ἵνα ἐτάσσοντο.
received the place where they-were-posted
ἐπέταξε δὲ καὶ τῷ ὄρει τῷ ἐν ἀριστερᾷ σφῶν κατὰ τὸ 8.7
he-posted and also on-the mountain the on left of-them opposite the
Ἀλεξάνδρου δεξιὸν ἐς δισμυρίους· καὶ τούτων ἔστιν οἳ
of-Alexander right about twenty-thousand and of-these there-are who

κατὰ νώτου ἐγένοντο τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιᾶς. τὸ γὰρ
at rear became of-the of-Alexander army the for
ὄρος ἵνα ἐπετάχθησαν πῇ μὲν διεχώρει ἐς βάθος καὶ
mountain where they-were-posted in-part indeed opened-out to depth and
κολπῶδές τι αὐτοῦ ὥσπερ ἐν θαλάσσῃ ἐγίγνετο, ἔπειτα
bay-like somewhat of-it as-it-were in sea became then
ἐς ἐπικαμπὴν προϊὸν τοὺς ἐπὶ ταῖς ὑπωρείαις τεταγμένους
to a-bend advancing the on the foothills posted
κατόπιν τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐποίει.
behind the right wing — of-Alexander made
8.8 τὸ δὲ ἄλλο πλῆθος αὐτοῦ ψιλῶν τε καὶ ὁπλιτῶν,
the and other multitude his of-light-troops both and hoplites
κατὰ ἔθνη συντεταγμένον ἐς βάθος οὐκ ὠφέλιμον, ὄπισθεν
by nations drawn-up in depth not useful behind
ἦν τῶν Ἑλλήνων τῶν μισθοφόρων καὶ τοῦ ἐπὶ φάλαγγος
was the Greeks the mercenaries and the in phalanx
τεταγμένου βαρβαρικοῦ. ἐλέγετο γὰρ ἡ πᾶσα ξὺν Δαρείῳ
posted barbarian was-said for the whole with Darius
στρατιὰ μάλιστα ἐς ἑξήκοντα μυριάδας μαχίμους εἶναι.
army roughly about sixty myriads fighting-men to-be
8.9 Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὡς αὐτῷ πρόσω ἰόντι τὸ χωρίον διέσχεν
Alexander and as for-him forward going the ground opened-out
ὀλίγον ἐς πλάτος, παρήγαγε τοὺς ἱππέας, τούς τε
little to breadth brought-up the cavalry the both
ἑταίρους καλουμένους καὶ τοὺς Θεσσαλοὺς καὶ τοὺς
companions called and the Thessalians and the
Μακεδόνας. καὶ τούτους μὲν ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρᾳ ἅμα
Macedonians and these indeed on the right wing together-with
οἱ ἔταξε, τοὺς δὲ ἐκ Πελοποννήσου καὶ τὸ ἄλλο τὸ
himself posted the and from Peloponnese and the other the
συμμαχικὸν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον πέμπει ὡς Παρμενίωνα.
allied to the left sends to Parmenion

Δαρεῖος δέ, ὡς συντεταγμένη ἤδη ἦν αὐτῷ ἡ φάλαγξ, τοὺς 8.10
Darius and when drawn-up already was for-him the phalanx the
ἱππέας, οὕστινας πρὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐπὶ τῷδε προτετάχει
cavalry whom before the river for this he-had-posted-in-front
ὅπως ἀσφαλῶς αὐτῷ ἡ ἔκταξις τῆς στρατιᾶς γένοιτο,
that safely for-him the deployment of-the army might-be
ἀνεκάλεσεν ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος. καὶ τούτων τοὺς μὲν πολλοὺς
called-back by signal and of-these the indeed many
ἐπὶ τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι πρὸς τῇ θαλάσσῃ κατὰ Παρμενίωνα
on the right wing by the sea opposite Parmenion
ἔταξεν, ὅτι ταύτῃ μᾶλλόν τι ἱππάσιμα ἦν, μέρος δέ
he-posted because there more somewhat fit-for-riding it-was part and
τι αὐτῶν καὶ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον πρὸς τὰ ὄρη παρήγαγεν.
some of-them also to the left toward the mountains he-brought-across
ὡς δὲ ἀχρεῖοι ἐνταῦθα διὰ στενότητα τῶν χωρίων 8.11
when and useless there because-of narrowness of-the ground
ἐφαίνοντο, καὶ τούτων τοὺς πολλοὺς παριππεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ
they-appeared also of-these the many to-ride-across to the
δεξιὸν κέρας σφῶν ἐκέλευσεν. αὐτὸς δὲ Δαρεῖος τὸ μέσον
right wing of-theirs he-ordered himself and Darius the center
τῆς πάσης τάξεως ἐπεῖχεν, καθάπερ νόμος τοῖς Περσῶν
of-the whole line held as custom for-the of-Persians
βασιλεῦσι τετάχθαι· καὶ τὸν νοῦν τῆς τάξεως ταύτης
kings to-be-posted and the purpose of-the arrangement this
Ξενοφῶν ὁ τοῦ Γρύλου ἀναγέγραφεν.
Xenophon the (son) of-Gryllus has-recorded

Alexander shifts the Thessalian cavalry to the left, drives the troops on the hills to the summit, and extends his right beyond the Persian wing. He leads at a walk, then charges into the river, and the Persian left breaks at once. In the center the Greek mercenaries strike where the phalanx has gapped on the steep banks, and Ptolemy son of Seleucus falls. The right wing wheels in and cuts them down, while the Thessalians hold the Persian cavalry until Darius' flight. Darius flees, leaving chariot, bow, shield, and cloak. Some hundred thousand Persians fall, and Ptolemy son of Lagus tells of crossing a ravine on the dead. Darius' mother, sister-wife, and children are taken in the camp, and his treasure later at Damascus.

9.1 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος κατιδὼν ὀλίγου πᾶσαν τὴν
in this and Alexander having-observed almost all the
τῶν Περσῶν ἵππον μετακεχωρηκυῖαν ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον
of-the Persians horse having-shifted to the left
τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ὡς πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν, αὐτῷ δὲ τοὺς
the his-own as toward the sea for-him and the
Πελοποννησίους μόνους καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους τῶν ξυμμάχων
Peloponnesians only and the other of-the allies
ἱππέας ταύτῃ τεταγμένους, πέμπει κατὰ τάχος τοὺς
cavalry there posted he-sends with speed the
Θεσσαλοὺς ἱππέας ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον, κελεύσας μὴ πρὸ
Thessalian cavalry to the left having-ordered not before
τοῦ μετώπου τῆς πάσης τάξεως παριππεῦσαι, τοῦ μὴ
the front of-the whole line to-ride-across for-the not
καταφανεῖς τοῖς πολεμίοις γενέσθαι μεταχωροῦντας, ἀλλὰ
visible to-the enemy to-become shifting but
κατόπιν τῆς φάλαγγος ἀφανῶς διελθεῖν.
behind the phalanx unseen to-pass-through

προέταξε δὲ τῶν μὲν ἱππέων κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν τοὺς 9.2
he-posted-in-front and of-the indeed cavalry on the right the
προδρόμους, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Πρωτόμαχος, καὶ τοὺς Παίονας,
prodromoi whom led Protomachus and the Paeonians
ὧν ἡγεῖτο Ἀρίστων, τῶν δὲ πεζῶν τοὺς τοξότας, ὧν
whom led Ariston of-the and infantry the archers whom
ἦρχεν Ἀντίοχος· τοὺς δὲ Ἀγριᾶνας, ὧν ἦρχεν Ἄτταλος,
commanded Antiochus the and Agrianians whom commanded Attalus
καὶ τῶν ἱππέων τινὰς καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν ἐς ἐπικαμπὴν
and of-the cavalry some and of-the archers at an-angle
πρὸς τὸ ὄρος τὸ κατὰ νώτου ἔταξεν, ὥστε κατὰ τὸ
toward the mountain the at rear he-posted so-that on the
δεξιὸν αὐτῷ τὴν φάλαγγα ἐς δύο κέρατα διέχουσαν
right for-him the phalanx into two wings parting
τετάχθαι, τὸ μὲν ὡς πρὸς Δαρεῖόν τε καὶ τοὺς πέραν
to-be-posted the-one indeed as against Darius both and the across
τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοὺς πάντας Πέρσας, τὸ δὲ ὡς πρὸς
the river the all Persians the-other and as against
τοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ ὄρει κατὰ νώτου σφῶν τεταγμένους.
the on the mountain at rear of-them posted
τοῦ δὲ εὐωνύμου προετάχθησαν τῶν μὲν πεζῶν οἵ τε 9.3
of-the and left were-posted-in-front of-the indeed infantry the both
Κρῆτες τοξόται καὶ οἱ Θρᾷκες, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Σιτάλκης,
Cretan archers and the Thracians whom led Sitalces
πρὸ τούτων δὲ ἡ ἵππος ἡ κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον. οἱ δὲ
before these and the horse the on the left the and
μισθοφόροι ξένοι πᾶσιν ἐπετάχθησαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε πυκνὴ
mercenaries foreign all were-posted-behind since and neither dense
αὐτῷ ἡ φάλαγξ κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν τὸ ἑαυτοῦ ἐφαίνετο,
for-him the phalanx on the right the his-own appeared
πολύ τε ταύτῃ ὑπερφαλαγγήσειν οἱ Πέρσαι ἐδόκουν, ἐκ
far both there to-be-going-to-outflank the Persians seemed from

τοῦ μέσου ἐκέλευσε δύο ἴλας τῶν ἑταίρων, τήν τε
the center he-ordered two squadrons of-the companions the both
Ἀνθεμουσίαν, ἧς ἰλάρχης ἦν Περοίδας ὁ Μενεσθέως,
Anthemusian of-which squadron-leader was Peroedas the (son)-of-Menestheus
καὶ τὴν Λευγαίαν καλουμένην, ἧς ἡγεῖτο Παντόρδανος
and the Leugaean called of-which led Pantordanus
ὁ Κλεάνδρου, ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν ἀφανῶς παρελθεῖν.
the (son)-of-Cleander to the right unseen to-pass

9.4 καὶ τοὺς τοξότας δὲ καὶ μέρος τῶν Ἀγριάνων καὶ τῶν
and the archers and and part of-the Agrianians and of-the
Ἑλλήνων μισθοφόρων ἔστιν οὓς κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν τὸ αὑτοῦ
Greek mercenaries there-are whom on the right the his-own
ἐπὶ μετώπου παραγαγὼν ἐξέτεινεν ὑπὲρ τὸ τῶν Περσῶν
on front having-brought-up he-extended beyond the of-the Persians
κέρας τὴν φάλαγγα. ἐπεὶ γὰρ οἱ ὑπὲρ τοῦ ὄρους τεταγμένοι
wing the phalanx since for the above the mountain posted
οὔτε κατήεσαν, ἐκδρομῆς τε ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς τῶν Ἀγριάνων
neither came-down a-sally both against them of-the Agrianians
καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν ὀλίγων κατὰ πρόσταξιν Ἀλεξάνδρου
and of-the archers few by order of-Alexander
γενομένης ῥᾳδίως ἀπὸ τῆς ὑπωρείας ἀνασταλέντες ἐς τὸ
having-been-made easily from the foothill driven-back to the
ἄκρον ἀνέφυγον, ἔγνω καὶ τοῖς κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς τεταγμένοις
summit fled-up he-perceived also the opposite them posted
δυνατὸς ὢν χρήσασθαι ἐς ἀναπλήρωσιν τῆς φάλαγγος·
able being to-use for filling-up of-the phalanx
ἐκείνοις δὲ ἱππέας τριακοσίους ἐπιτάξαι ἐξήρκεσεν.
against-those and cavalry three-hundred to-post-over sufficed

10.1 οὕτω δὴ τεταγμένους χρόνον μέν τινα προῆγεν
so indeed drawn-up for-a-time indeed some he-led-on
ἀναπαύων, ὥστε καὶ πάνυ ἔδοξε σχολαία γενέσθαι αὐτῷ
resting so-that also very it-seemed leisurely to-be for-him

ἡ πρόσοδος· τοὺς γὰρ βαρβάρους, ὅπως τὰ πρῶτα
the approach the for barbarians as at-the first
ἐτάχθησαν, οὐκέτι ἀντεπῆγε Δαρεῖος, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
they-were-posted no-longer led-against Darius but on the river's
ταῖς ὄχθαις, πολλαχῇ μὲν ἀποκρήμνοις οὔσαις, ἔστι δὲ
the banks in-many-places indeed precipitous being there-is and
ὅπου καὶ χάρακα παρατείνας αὐταῖς ἵνα εὐεφοδώτερα
where also a-palisade having-extended along-them where more-accessible
ἐφαίνετο, οὕτως ἔμενεν· καὶ ταύτῃ εὐθὺς δῆλος ἐγένετο
it-appeared so he-remained and thereby at-once evident became
τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον τῇ γνώμῃ δεδουλωμένος.
to-the around Alexander in-the spirit enslaved
ὡς δὲ ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἦν τὰ στρατόπεδα, ἐνταῦθα παριππεύων 10.2
when and close already were the armies there riding-along
πάντῃ Ἀλέξανδρος παρεκάλει ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς γίγνεσθαι, οὐ
everywhere Alexander exhorted men good to-be not
τῶν ἡγεμόνων μόνον τὰ ὀνόματα ξὺν τῷ πρέποντι κόσμῳ
of-the commanders only the names with the fitting distinction
ἀνακαλῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἰλάρχας καὶ λοχαγοὺς ὀνομαστὶ
calling-out but also squadron-leaders and captains by-name
καὶ τῶν ξένων τῶν μισθοφόρων, ὅσοι κατ᾽ ἀξίωσιν
and of-the mercenaries the hired as-many-as by rank
ἤ τινα ἀρετὴν γνωριμώτεροι ἦσαν· καὶ πανταχόθεν βοὴ
or some valor more-known were and from-every-side a-shout
ἐγίνετο μὴ διατρίβειν, ἀλλὰ ἐσβάλλειν ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους.
arose not to-delay but to-charge into the enemy
ὁ δὲ ἦγεν ἐν τάξει ἔτι, τὰ μὲν πρῶτα, καίπερ ἐν 10.3
he and led in order still the indeed first although in
ἀπόπτῳ ἤδη ἔχων τὴν Δαρείου δύναμιν, βάδην, τοῦ μὴ
view already having the of-Darius force at-a-walk for-the not
διασπασθῆναί τι ἐν τῇ ξυντονωτέρᾳ πορείᾳ κυμῆναν
to-be-broken anything in the more-strained march billowing-out

τῆς φάλαγγος· ὡς δὲ ἐντὸς βέλους ἐγίγνοντο, πρῶτοι
of-the phalanx when and within missile-range they-came first
δὴ οἱ κατὰ Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπὶ τοῦ
indeed the around Alexander and himself Alexander on the
δεξιοῦ τεταγμένος δρόμῳ ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἐνέβαλον, ὡς
right posted at-a-run into the river charged so-as
τῇ τε ὀξύτητι τῆς ἐφόδου ἐκπλῆξαι τοὺς Πέρσας καὶ
by-the both swiftness of-the onset to-strike-with-panic the Persians and
τοῦ θᾶσσον ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθόντας ὀλίγα πρὸς τῶν τοξοτῶν
by-the more-quickly to hands having-come little by the archers
βλάπτεσθαι. καὶ ξυνέβη ὅπως εἴκασεν Ἀλέξανδρος.
to-be-harmed and it-happened as conjectured Alexander

10.4 εὐθὺς γὰρ ὡς ἐν χερσὶν ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, τρέπονται
at-once for when in hands the battle came are-routed
τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος οἱ τῷ ἀριστερῷ κέρᾳ
of-the Persian army the on-the left wing
ἐπιτεταγμένοι· καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν λαμπρῶς ἐνίκα
posted and there indeed brilliantly was-winning
Ἀλέξανδρός τε καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες οἱ
Alexander both and the around him the and Greeks the
μισθοφόροι οἱ ξὺν Δαρείῳ, ᾗ διέσχε τῶν Μακεδόνων
mercenaries the with Darius where parted of-the Macedonians
ἡ φάλαγξ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας παραρραγεῖσα,
the phalanx as toward the right wing broken-through

10.5 ὅτι Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν σπουδῇ ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἐμβαλὼν
because Alexander indeed with-haste into the river having-charged
καὶ ἐν χερσὶ τὴν μάχην ποιήσας ἐξώθει ἤδη τοὺς
and in hands the battle having-made was-pushing-out already the
ταύτῃ τεταγμένους τῶν Περσῶν, οἱ δὲ κατὰ μέσον τῶν
there posted of-the Persians the and at center of-the
Μακεδόνων οὔτε τῇ ἴσῃ σπουδῇ ἥψαντο τοῦ ἔργου
Macedonians neither with-the equal haste laid-hold-of the work

καὶ πολλαχῇ κρημνώδεσι ταῖς ὄχθαις ἐντυγχάνοντες τὸ
and in-many-places with-precipitous the banks meeting the
μέτωπον τῆς φάλαγγος οὐ δυνατοὶ ἐγένοντο ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ
front of-the phalanx not able were in the same
τάξει διασώσασθαι, — ταύτῃ ἐμβάλλουσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες
order to-preserve there charge the Greeks
τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ᾗ μάλιστα διεσπασμένην αὐτοῖς τὴν
on-the Macedonians where most torn-apart for-them the
φάλαγγα κατεῖδον.
phalanx they-saw
καὶ τὸ ἔργον ἐνταῦθα καρτερὸν ἦν, τῶν μὲν ἐς τὸν 10.6
and the action there fierce was of-the-ones indeed into the
ποταμὸν ἀπώσασθαι τοὺς Μακεδόνας καὶ τὴν νίκην τοῖς
river to-push-back the Macedonians and the victory for-the
ἤδη φεύγουσι σφῶν ἀνασώσασθαι, τῶν Μακεδόνων
already fleeing of-their-own to-recover of-the Macedonians
δὲ τῆς τε Ἀλεξάνδρου ἤδη φαινομένης εὐπραγίας μὴ
and of-the both of-Alexander already appearing success not
λειφθῆναι καὶ τὴν δόξαν τῆς φάλαγγος, ὡς ἀμάχου
to-fall-short and the reputation of-the phalanx as invincible
δὴ ἐς τὸ τότε διαβεβοημένης, μὴ ἀφανίσαι. καί τι
indeed to the then noised-abroad not to-obliterate and something
καὶ τοῖς γένεσι τῷ τε Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ Μακεδονικῷ
also to-the races the both Greek and the Macedonian
φιλοτιμίας ἐνέπεσεν ἐς ἀλλήλους.
of-rivalry fell-upon toward one-another
καὶ ἐνταῦθα πίπτει Πτολεμαῖός τε ὁ Σελεύκου, ἀνὴρ 10.7
and there falls Ptolemy both the (son)-of-Seleucus a-man
ἀγαθὸς γενόμενος, καὶ ἄλλοι ἐς εἴκοσι μάλιστα καὶ
good having-proved and others about twenty roughly and
ἑκατὸν τῶν οὐκ ἠμελημένων Μακεδόνων.
hundred of-the not insignificant Macedonians

11.1 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ αἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως τάξεις, τετραμμένους
in this and the from the right wing battalions routed
ἤδη τοὺς κατὰ σφᾶς τῶν Περσῶν ὁρῶντες, ἐπὶ
already the opposite them of-the Persians seeing against
τοὺς ξένους τε τοὺς μισθοφόρους τοὺς Δαρείου καὶ
the mercenaries both the hired the of-Darius and
τὸ πονούμενον σφῶν ἐπικάμψαντες ἀπό τε τοῦ
the hard-pressed of-their-own having-wheeled from both the
ποταμοῦ ἀπώσαντο αὐτούς, καὶ κατὰ τὸ παρερρωγὸς
river pushed-back them and at the broken-part
τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος ὑπερφαλαγγήσαντες ἐς τὰ
of-the Persian army having-outflanked into the
πλάγια ἐμβεβληκότες ἤδη ἔκοπτον τοὺς ξένους·
flanks having-charged already cut-down the mercenaries
11.2 καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς δὲ οἱ τῶν Περσῶν κατὰ τοὺς Θεσσαλοὺς
and the cavalry and the of-the Persians opposite the Thessalians
τεταγμένοι οὐκ ἔμειναν ἐντὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐν αὐτῷ
posted not stayed within the river in itself
τῷ ἔργῳ, ἀλλ' ἐπιδιαβάντες εὐρώστως ἐνέβαλον ἐς τὰς
the action but having-crossed-over stoutly charged into the
ἴλας τῶν Θετταλῶν. καὶ ταύτῃ ξυνέστη ἱππομαχία
squadrons of-the Thessalians and there joined cavalry-battle
καρτερά, οὐδὲ πρόσθεν ἐνέκλιναν οἱ Πέρσαι πρὶν Δαρεῖόν
fierce nor before gave-way the Persians until Darius
τε πεφευγότα ᾔσθοντο καὶ πρὶν ἀπορραγῆναι σφῶν
both having-fled they-perceived and until to-be-cut-off from-them
τοὺς μισθοφόρους συγκοπέντας ὑπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος.
the mercenaries cut-to-pieces by the phalanx
11.3 τότε δὲ ἤδη λαμπρά τε καὶ ἐκ πάντων ἡ φυγὴ
then and now brilliant both and from all-sides the flight
ἐγίγνετο· καὶ οἵ τε τῶν Περσῶν ἵπποι ἐν τῇ ἀναχωρήσει
became and the both of-the Persians horses in the retreat

ἐκακοπάθουν βαρέως ὡπλισμένους τοὺς ἀμβάτας σφῶν
suffered heavily armed the riders of-them
φέροντες, καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς κατὰ στενὰς ὁδοὺς πλήθει
carrying and themselves the cavalry along narrow roads in-number
τε πολλοὶ καὶ πεφοβημένως ξὺν ἀταξίᾳ ἀποχωροῦντες
both many and in-panic with disorder withdrawing
οὐ μεῖον ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων καταπατούμενοι ἢ πρὸς τῶν
not less by one-another being-trampled than by the
διωκόντων πολεμίων ἐβλάπτοντο. καὶ οἱ Θεσσαλοὶ
pursuing enemy were-harmed and the Thessalians
εὐρώστως αὐτοῖς ἐπέκειντο, ὥστε οὐ μείων ἢ τῶν
stoutly them pressed so-that not less than of-the
πεζῶν φόνος ἐν τῇ φυγῇ τῶν ἱππέων ἐγίγνετο.
infantry slaughter in the flight of-the cavalry took-place
Δαρεῖος δέ, ὡς αὐτῷ τὸ πρῶτον ὑπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐφοβήθη 11.4
Darius and when for-him the first by Alexander was-put-to-flight
τὸ κέρας τὸ εὐώνυμον καὶ ταύτῃ ἀπορρηγνύμενον κατεῖδε
the wing the left and there broken-off he-saw
τοῦ ἄλλου στρατοπέδου, εὐθὺς ὡς εἶχεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος
from-the other army at-once as he-was on the chariot
ξὺν τοῖς πρώτοις ἔφευγε.
among the first fled
καὶ ἔστε μὲν ὁμαλοῖς χωρίοις ἐν τῇ φυγῇ ἐπετύγχανεν, 11.5
and while indeed level ground in the flight he-met
ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος διεσώζετο, ὡς δὲ φάραγξί τε καὶ
on the chariot he-was-saving-himself when and with-ravines both and
ἄλλαις δυσχωρίαις ἐνέκυρσε, τὸ μὲν ἅρμα ἀπολείπει
other difficult-places he-met the indeed chariot leaves
αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα καὶ τὸν κάνδυν ἐκδύς· ὁ δὲ
there and the shield and the kandys having-taken-off he and
καὶ τὸ τόξον ἀπολείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος· αὐτὸς δὲ ἵππου
also the bow leaves on the chariot himself and a-horse

ἐπιβὰς ἔφευγε· καὶ ἡ νὺξ οὐ διὰ μακροῦ ἐπιγενομένη
having-mounted fled and the night not after long having-come-on
ἀφείλετο αὐτὸν τὸ πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἁλῶναι.
took-away him the by Alexander to-be-captured

11.6 Ἀλέξανδρος γὰρ ἔστε μὲν φάος ἦν ἀνὰ κράτος ἐδίωκεν,
Alexander for while indeed light was with all-his-might pursued
ὡς δὲ συνεσκόταζέ τε ἤδη καὶ τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν
when and it-was-growing-dark both already and the-things before feet
ἀφανῆ ἦν, εἰς τὸ ἔμπαλιν ἀπετρέπετο ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
invisible were to the back he-turned as toward the
στρατόπεδον· τὸ μέντοι ἅρμα τοῦ Δαρείου ἔλαβε καὶ τὴν
camp the however chariot — of-Darius he-took and the
ἀσπίδα ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ τὸν κάνδυν καὶ τὸ τόξον.
shield on it and the kandys and the bow

11.7 καὶ γὰρ καὶ ἡ δίωξις βραδυτέρα αὐτῷ ἐγεγόνει, ὅτι
and for also the pursuit slower for-him had-been because
ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ παραρρήξει τῆς φάλαγγος ἐπιστρέψας καὶ
in the first breaking of-the phalanx having-wheeled also
αὐτὸς οὐ πρόσθεν ἐς τὸ διώκειν ἐτράπετο πρὶν τούς τε
himself not before to the pursuing turned until the both
μισθοφόρους τοὺς ξένους καὶ τὸ τῶν Περσῶν ἱππικὸν
mercenaries the foreign and the of-the Persians cavalry
ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀπωσθέντας κατεῖδε.
from the river pushed-back he-saw

11.8 τῶν δὲ Περσῶν ἀπέθανον Ἀρσάμης μὲν καὶ Ῥεομίθρης
of-the and Persians died Arsames indeed and Rheomithres
καὶ Ἀτιζύης τῶν ἐπὶ Γρανίκῳ ἡγησαμένων τοῦ ἱππικοῦ·
and Atizyes of-the at Granicus having-commanded the cavalry
ἀποθνήσκει δὲ καὶ Σαυάκης ὁ Αἰγύπτου σατράπης
dies and also Sauaces the of-Egypt satrap
καὶ Βουβάκης τῶν ἐντίμων Περσῶν· τὸ δὲ ἄλλο

πλῆθος εἰς δέκα μάλιστα μυριάδας καὶ ἐν τούτοις
multitude about ten roughly myriads and among these
ἱππεῖς ὑπὲρ τοὺς μυρίους, ὥστε λέγει Πτολεμαῖος ὁ
cavalry over the ten-thousand so-that says Ptolemy the
Λάγου ξυνεπισπόμενος τότε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τοὺς μετὰ
(son)-of-Lagus having-followed then Alexander the with
σφῶν διώκοντας Δαρεῖον, ὡς ἐπὶ φάραγγί τινι ἐν τῇ
them pursuing Darius when at ravine some in the
διώξει ἐγένοντο, ἐπὶ τῶν νεκρῶν διαβῆναι τὴν φάραγγα.
pursuit they-came on the corpses to-have-crossed the ravine
τό τε στρατόπεδον τὸ Δαρείου εὐθὺς ἐξ ἐφόδου ἑάλω 11.9
the both camp the of-Darius at-once at first-assault was-captured
καὶ ἡ μήτηρ καὶ ἡ γυνή, αὐτὴ δὲ καὶ ἀδελφὴ Δαρείου,
and the mother and the wife herself and also sister of-Darius
καὶ υἱὸς Δαρείου νήπιος· καὶ θυγατέρες δύο ἑάλωσαν καὶ
and son of-Darius infant and daughters two were-captured and
ἄλλαι ἀμφ' αὐτὰς Περσῶν τῶν ὁμοτίμων γυναῖκες οὐ
others around them of-Persians of-the peers wives not
πολλαί. οἱ γὰρ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι τὰς γυναῖκας σφῶν ξὺν
many the for other Persians the wives of-them with
τῇ ἄλλῃ κατασκευῇ ἐς Δαμασκὸν ἔτυχον ἐσταλκότες·
the other equipment to Damascus happened having-sent
ἐπεὶ καὶ Δαρεῖος τῶν τε χρημάτων τὰ πολλὰ καὶ 11.10
since also Darius of-the both money the most and
ὅσα ἄλλα μεγάλῳ βασιλεῖ ἐς πολυτελῆ δίαιταν καὶ
as-many-as other-things for-a-great king for costly living even
στρατευομένῳ ὅμως συνέπεται πεπόμφει ἐς Δαμασκόν,
on-campaign nevertheless accompany had-sent to Damascus
ὥστε ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι οὐ πλείονα ἢ τρισχίλια
so-that in the army not more than three-thousand
τάλαντα ἑάλω. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἐν Δαμασκῷ χρήματα
talents was-captured but also the in Damascus money

ὀλίγον ὕστερον ἑάλω ὑπὸ Παρμενίωνος ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸ τοῦτο
little later was-captured by Parmenion for itself this
σταλέντος. τοῦτο τὸ τέλος τῇ μάχῃ ἐκείνῃ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ
sent this the end to-the battle that came under
ἄρχοντος Ἀθηναίοις Νικοκράτους μηνὸς Μαιμακτηρῶνος.
archon at-Athens Nicocrates in-the-month Maemacterion

V · THE PERSIAN QUEENS, AND DARIUS' LETTER

Alexander visits the wounded, buries the dead, and rewards the brave; he makes Balacrus satrap of Cilicia and remits Soli's fine. Hearing the captive women lament Darius as dead, he sends Leonnatus to tell them he lives and that they keep their royal state. It is told that Darius' mother bowed to Hephaestion, taking him for the king, and that Alexander said he too was Alexander. Darius flees toward the Euphrates, the Greek deserters escape by sea to Egypt, Agis of Sparta seeks Persian money at Siphnos, and Straton surrenders Aradus and Marathus. At Marathus Darius' envoys bring a letter blaming Philip for the war and ask for his family and an alliance. Alexander replies that the Persians began the wrongs, and that Darius must come to him as lord of Asia or stand and fight.

12.1 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ, καίπερ τετρωμένος τὸν μηρὸν ξίφει
on-the and next-day although wounded in-the thigh by-a-sword
Ἀλέξανδρος, ὁ δὲ τοὺς τραυματίας ἐπῆλθε, καὶ τοὺς νεκροὺς
Alexander he and the wounded visited and the dead
ξυναγαγὼν ἔθαψε μεγαλοπρεπῶς ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει πάσῃ
having-collected buried magnificently with the force whole
ἐκτεταγμένῃ ὡς λαμπρότατα ἐς πόλεμον· καὶ λόγῳ τε
drawn-up as most-brilliantly for war and in-speech both
ἐπεκόσμησεν ὅσοις τι διαπρεπὲς ἔργον ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἢ
he-honored as-many-as some distinguished deed in the battle either

αὐτὸς ξυνέγνω εἰργασμένον ἢ ἀκοῇ συμφωνούμενον ἔμαθεν,
he-himself knew-of done or by-report agreed-upon learned
καὶ χρημάτων ἐπιδόσει ὡς ἑκάστους ξὺν τῇ ἀξίᾳ ἐτίμησεν.
and of-money by-bestowal as each with the worth he-honored
καὶ Κιλικίας μὲν ἀποδεικνύει σατράπην Βάλακρον τὸν 12.2
and of-Cilicia indeed appoints satrap Balacrus the
Νικάνορος, ἕνα τῶν σωματοφυλάκων τῶν βασιλικῶν,
(son)-of-Nicanor one of-the bodyguards the royal
ἀντὶ δὲ τούτου ἐς τοὺς σωματοφύλακας κατέλεξε Μένητα
in-place-of and him to the bodyguards he-enrolled Menes
τὸν Διονυσίου· ἀντὶ δὲ Πτολεμαίου τοῦ Σελεύκου τοῦ
the (son)-of-Dionysius in-place-of and Ptolemy the (son)-of-Seleucus the
ἀποθανόντος ἐν τῇ μάχῃ Πολυπέρχοντα τὸν Σιμμίου
having-died in the battle Polyperchon the (son)-of-Simmias
ἄρχειν ἀπέδειξε τῆς ἐκείνου τάξεως. καὶ Σολεῦσι τά τε
to-command he-appointed the his battalion and to-Solians the both
πεντήκοντα τάλαντα, ἃ ἔτι ἐνδεᾶ ἦν ἐκ τῶν ἐπιβληθέντων
fifty talents which still owing were from the imposed
σφίσι χρημάτων, ἀνῆκεν καὶ τοὺς ὁμήρους ἀπέδωκεν.
on-them money he-remitted and the hostages gave-back
ὁ δὲ οὐδὲ τῆς μητρὸς τῆς Δαρείου οὐδὲ τῆς γυναικὸς ἢ τῶν 12.3
he and not-even of-the mother — of-Darius nor of-the wife or of-the
παίδων ἠμέλησεν. ἀλλὰ λέγουσί τινες τῶν τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου
children neglected but say some of-the the-things of-Alexander
γραψάντων τῆς νυκτὸς αὐτῆς, ᾗ ἀπὸ τῆς διώξεως τῆς
having-written in-the night itself in-which from the pursuit —
Δαρείου ἐπανῆκεν, ἐς τὴν σκηνὴν παρελθόντα αὐτὸν τὴν
of-Darius he-returned to the tent having-gone-in him the
Δαρείου, ἥτις αὐτῷ ἐξῃρημένη ἦν, ἀκοῦσαι γυναικῶν
(tent)-of-Darius which for-him set-apart was to-have-heard of-women
οἰμωγὴν καὶ ἄλλον τοιοῦτον θόρυβον οὐ πόρρω τῆς σκηνῆς·
wailing and other such uproar not far from-the tent

12.4 πυθέσθαι οὖν αἵτινες γυναῖκες καὶ ἀνθ' ὅτου οὕτως
to-have-inquired then what women and for what so
ἐγγὺς παρασκηνοῦσι· καί τινα ἐξαγγεῖλαι, ὅτι· ὦ βασιλεῦ,
near are-encamped and someone to-have-reported that O king
ἡ μήτηρ τε καὶ ἡ γυνὴ Δαρείου καὶ οἱ παῖδες, ὡς
the mother both and the wife of-Darius and the children when
ἐξηγγέλθη αὐταῖς ὅτι τὸ τόξον τε τοῦ Δαρείου ἔχεις καὶ
it-was-reported to-them that the bow both — of-Darius you-have and
τὸν κάνδυν τὸν βασιλικὸν καὶ ἡ ἀσπὶς ὅτι κεκόμισται
the kandys the royal and the shield that has-been-brought
ὀπίσω ἡ Δαρείου, ὡς ἐπὶ τεθνεῶτι Δαρείῳ ἀνοιμώζουσιν.
back the of-Darius as for dead Darius they-wail
12.5 ταῦτα ἀκούσαντα Ἀλέξανδρον πέμψαι πρὸς αὐτὰς
these-things having-heard Alexander to-have-sent to them
Λεοννάτον, ἕνα τῶν ἑταίρων, ἐντειλάμενον φράσαι ὅτι ζῇ
Leonnatus one of-the companions having-instructed to-tell that lives
Δαρεῖος, τὰ δὲ ὅπλα καὶ τὸν κάνδυν ὅτι φεύγων ἀπέλιπεν
Darius the and arms and the kandys that fleeing he-left
ἐπὶ τῷ ἅρματι καὶ ταῦτα ὅτι μόνα ἔχει Ἀλέξανδρος. καὶ
on the chariot and these that only has Alexander and
Λεοννάτον παρελθόντα ἐς τὴν σκηνὴν τά τε περὶ
Leonnatus having-entered into the tent the-things both about
Δαρείου εἰπεῖν καὶ ὅτι τὴν θεραπείαν αὐταῖς ξυγχωρεῖ
Darius to-have-said and that the attendance to-them allows
Ἀλέξανδρος τὴν βασιλικὴν καὶ τὸν ἄλλον κόσμον καὶ
Alexander the royal and the other adornment and
καλεῖσθαι βασιλίσσας, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ κατὰ ἔχθραν οἱ
to-be-called queens since not-even from enmity for-him
γενέσθαι τὸν πόλεμον πρὸς Δαρεῖον, ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ τῆς ἀρχῆς
to-have-been the war against Darius but for the rule
τῆς Ἀσίας διαπεπολεμῆσθαι ἐννόμως.
— of-Asia to-have-been-fought lawfully

ταῦτα μὲν Πτολεμαῖος καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος λέγουσι· λόγος δὲ 12.6
these-things indeed Ptolemy and Aristobulus say a-story but
ἔχει καὶ αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐλθεῖν εἴσω ξὺν
has also himself Alexander on-the next-day to-have-come inside with
Ἡφαιστίωνι μόνῳ τῶν ἑταίρων· καὶ τὴν μητέρα τὴν Δαρείου
Hephaestion alone of-the companions and the mother the of-Darius
ἀμφιγνοήσασαν ὅστις ὁ βασιλεὺς εἴη αὐτοῖν, ἐστάλθαι
not-knowing which the king might-be of-the-two to-have-been-dressed
γὰρ ἄμφω τῷ αὐτῷ κόσμῳ, τὴν δὲ Ἡφαιστίωνι προσελθεῖν
for both in-the same attire her and to-Hephaestion to-have-approached
καὶ προσκυνῆσαι, ὅτι μείζων ἐφάνη ἐκεῖνος.
and to-have-done-obeisance because taller appeared he
ὡς δὲ ὁ Ἡφαιστίων τε ὀπίσω ὑπεχώρησε καί τις 12.7
when and — Hephaestion both back drew-back and one
τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτήν, τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον δείξας, ἐκεῖνον ἔφη
of-the around her — Alexander having-pointed-to that-one said
εἶναι Ἀλέξανδρον, τὴν μὲν καταιδεσθεῖσαν τῇ διαμαρτίᾳ
to-be Alexander her indeed abashed at-the mistake
ὑποχωρεῖν, Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ οὐ φάναι αὐτὴν ἁμαρτεῖν· καὶ
to-draw-back Alexander but not to-say her to-have-erred also
γὰρ ἐκεῖνον εἶναι Ἀλέξανδρον.
for that-one to-be Alexander
καὶ ταῦτα ἐγὼ οὔθ' ὡς ἀληθῆ οὔτε ὡς πάντῃ ἄπιστα 12.8
and these-things I neither as true nor as wholly untrustworthy
ἀνέγραψα. ἀλλ' εἴτε οὕτως ἐπράχθη, ἐπαινῶ Ἀλέξανδρον
have-recorded but whether so it-was-done I-praise Alexander
τῆς τε ἐς τὰς γυναῖκας κατοικτίσεως καὶ τῆς ἐς
for-the both toward the women compassion and for-the toward
τὸν ἑταῖρον πίστεως καὶ τιμῆς· εἴτε πιθανὸς δοκεῖ τοῖς
the companion trust and honor or credible seems to-the

συγγράψασιν Ἀλέξανδρος ὡς καὶ ταῦτα ἂν πράξας καὶ
having-written Alexander as also these-things — having-done and
εἰπών, καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐπαινῶ Ἀλέξανδρον.
having-said also for this I-praise Alexander

13.1 Δαρεῖος δὲ τὴν μὲν νύκτα ξὺν ὀλίγοις τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν
Darius and the indeed night with few the around him
ἔφυγε, τῇ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀναλαμβάνων ἀεὶ τῶν τε
fled on-the and day picking-up continually of-the both
Περσῶν τοὺς διασωθέντας ἐκ τῆς μάχης καὶ τῶν ξένων
Persians the having-escaped from the battle and of-the mercenaries
τῶν μισθοφόρων, ἐς τετρακισχιλίους ἔχων τοὺς πάντας,
the hired about four-thousand having the all
ὡς ἐπὶ Θάψακόν τε πόλιν καὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν
as toward Thapsacus both city and the Euphrates river
σπουδῇ ἤλαυνεν, ὡς τάχιστα μέσον αὑτοῦ τε καὶ
in-haste rode as quickly-as-possible between himself both and
Ἀλεξάνδρου τὸν Εὐφράτην ποιῆσαι.
Alexander — Euphrates to-make

13.2 Ἀμύντας δὲ ὁ Ἀντιόχου καὶ Θυμώνδας ὁ Μέντορος καὶ
Amyntas and the (son)-of-Antiochus and Thymondas the (son)-of-Mentor and
Ἀριστομήδης ὁ Φεραῖος καὶ Βιάνωρ ὁ Ἀκαρνάν, ξυμπάντες
Aristomedes the Pheraean and Bianor the Acarnanian all
οὗτοι αὐτόμολοι, μετὰ τῶν ἀμφ' αὐτοὺς στρατιωτῶν ὡς
these deserters with the around them soldiers about
ὀκτακισχιλίων εὐθὺς ὡς τεταγμένοι ἦσαν κατὰ τὰ ὄρη
eight-thousand at-once as posted they-were along the mountains
φεύγοντες ἀφίκοντο ἐς Τρίπολιν τῆς Φοινίκης·
fleeing arrived at Tripolis — of-Phoenicia

13.3 καὶ ἐνταῦθα καταλαβόντες τὰς ναῦς νενεωλκημένας ἐφ'
and there having-found the ships drawn-up on
ὧν πρόσθεν ἐκ Λέσβου διακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν, τούτων
which before from Lesbos carried-over they-had-been of-these

ὅσαι μὲν ἱκαναί σφισιν ἐς τὴν κομιδὴν ἐδόκουν, ταύτας
as-many-as indeed sufficient for-them for the transport seemed these
καθελκύσαντες, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας αὐτοῦ ἐν τοῖς νεωρίοις
having-launched the and others there in the dockyards
κατακαύσαντες, ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν ταχεῖαν σφῶν τὴν
having-burned so-as not to-allow swift of-them the
δίωξιν, ἐπὶ Κύπρου ἔφευγον καὶ ἐκεῖθεν εἰς Αἴγυπτον,
pursuit to Cyprus fled and thence to Egypt
ἵναπερ ὀλίγον ὕστερον πολυπραγμονῶν τι Ἀμύντας
where little later meddling somewhat Amyntas
ἀποθνήσκει ὑπὸ τῶν ἐγχωρίων.
dies by the natives
Φαρνάβαζος δὲ καὶ Αὐτοφραδάτης τέως μὲν περὶ τὴν 13.4
Pharnabazus and and Autophradates meanwhile indeed about —
Χίον διέτριβον· καταστήσαντες δὲ φρουρὰν τῆς Χίου
Chios stayed having-established and a-garrison — of-Chios
τὰς μέν τινας τῶν νεῶν ἐς Κῶν καὶ Ἁλικαρνασσὸν
the indeed some of-the ships to Cos and Halicarnassus
ἔστειλαν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἑκατὸν ναυσὶ ταῖς ἄριστα πλεούσαις
sent themselves and with-a-hundred ships the best sailing
ἀναγαγόμενοι ἐς Σίφνον κατέσχον. καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοὺς
having-put-to-sea at Siphnos put-in and to them
ἀφικνεῖται Ἄγις ὁ Λακεδαιμονίων βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ μιᾶς
arrives Agis the of-Lacedaemonians king on one
τριήρους, χρήματά τε αἰτήσων ἐς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ
trireme money both about-to-ask for the war and
δύναμιν ναυτικήν τε καὶ πεζικὴν ὅσην πλείστην
a-force naval both and infantry as-much-as greatest
ἀξιώσων συμπέμψαι οἱ ἐς τὴν Πελοπόννησον.
about-to-request to-send-with to-him to — Peloponnese

13.5 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἀγγελία αὐτοῖς ἔρχεται τῆς μάχης τῆς πρὸς
and in this news to-them comes of-the battle the at
Ἰσσῷ γενομένης. ἐκπλαγέντες δὲ πρὸς τὰ ἐξαγγελθέντα
Issus having-been-fought panic-struck and at the reported
Φαρνάβαζος μὲν σὺν δώδεκα τριήρεσι καὶ τῶν μισθοφόρων
Pharnabazus indeed with twelve triremes and of-the mercenaries
ξένων ξὺν χιλίοις καὶ πεντακοσίοις ἐπὶ Χίου ἐστάλη,
foreign with thousand and five-hundred toward Chios set-out
δείσας μή τι πρὸς τὴν ἀγγελίαν τῆς ἥττης οἱ
having-feared lest something at the news of-the defeat the
Χῖοι νεωτερίσωσιν.
Chians should-revolt

13.6 Ἆγις δὲ παρ᾽ Αὐτοφραδάτου τάλαντα ἀργυρίου λαβὼν
Agis and from Autophradates talents of-silver having-received
τριάκοντα καὶ τριήρεις δέκα, ταύτας μὲν Ἱππίαν ἄξοντα
thirty and triremes ten these indeed Hippias about-to-lead
ἀποστέλλει παρὰ τὸν ἀδελφὸν τὸν αὑτοῦ Ἀγησίλαον ἐπὶ
sends-off to the brother the his-own Agesilaus to
Ταίναρον· καὶ παραγγέλλειν ἐκέλευσεν Ἀγησιλάῳ, διδόντα
Taenarum and to-command bade Agesilaus giving
τοῖς ναύταις ἐντελῆ τὸν μισθὸν πλεῖν τὴν ταχίστην ἐπὶ
to-the sailors full the pay to-sail the fastest to
Κρήτης, ὡς τὰ ἐκεῖ καταστησόμενον. αὐτὸς δὲ τότε
Crete as the-affairs there about-to-settle he-himself and then
μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐν ταῖς νήσοις ὑπέμενεν, ὕστερον δὲ εἰς
indeed there in the islands remained later and to
Ἁλικαρνασσὸν παρ᾽ Αὐτοφραδάτην ἀφίκετο.
Halicarnassus to Autophradates he-came

13.7 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ σατράπην μὲν Συρίᾳ τῇ κοιλῇ Μένωνα τὸν
Alexander and satrap indeed for-Syria the Hollow Menon the
Κερδίμμα ἐπέταξε δοὺς αὐτῷ εἰς φυλακὴν τῆς χώρας
(son)-of-Cerdimmas set-over having-given him for guard of-the country

τοὺς τῶν ξυμμάχων ἱππέας, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ Φοινίκης ᾔει.
the of-the allies cavalry he-himself and toward Phoenicia went
καὶ ἀπαντᾷ αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν Στράτων ὁ Γηροστράτου
and meets him on the road Straton the of-Gerostratus
παῖς τοῦ Ἀραδίων τε καὶ τῶν Ἀράδῳ προσοίκων βασιλέως·
son of-the of-Aradians both and of-the by-Aradus near-dwellers king
ὁ δὲ Γηρόστρατος αὐτὸς μετ᾽ Αὐτοφραδάτου ἔπλει ἐπὶ
— and Gerostratus himself with Autophradates was-sailing on
τῶν νεῶν, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἵ τε τῶν Φοινίκων καὶ οἱ τῶν
the ships and the other the both of-the Phoenicians and the of-the
Κυπρίων βασιλεῖς καὶ αὐτοὶ Αὐτοφραδάτῃ ξυνέπλεον.
Cyprians kings and themselves with-Autophradates sailed-together
Στράτων δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐντυχὼν στεφανοῖ χρυσῷ 13.8
Straton and Alexander having-met crowns with-a-golden
στεφάνῳ αὐτὸν καὶ τήν τε Ἄραδον αὐτῷ τὴν νῆσον καὶ
crown him and — both Aradus to-him the island and
τὴν Μάραθον τὴν καταντικρὺ τῆς Ἀράδου ἐν τῇ ἠπείρῳ
— Marathus the opposite — of-Aradus on the mainland
ᾠκισμένην, πόλιν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, καὶ Σιγῶνα
situated city large and prosperous and Sigon
καὶ Μαριάμμην πόλιν καὶ τἆλλα ὅσα τῆς σφῶν
and Mariamme city and the-other-things as-many-as of-the their
ἐπικρατείας ἐνδίδωσιν.
dominion surrenders
ἔτι δὲ ἐν Μαράθῳ Ἀλεξάνδρου ὄντος ἀφίκοντο παρὰ 14.1
still and in Marathus Alexander being arrived from
Δαρείου πρέσβεις, ἐπιστολήν τε κομίζοντες Δαρείου καὶ
Darius envoys a-letter both bringing of-Darius and
αὐτοὶ ἀπὸ γλώσσης δεησόμενοι ἀφεῖναι Δαρείῳ τὴν
themselves by word-of-mouth about-to-ask to-release to-Darius the
μητέρα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας.
mother and the wife and the children

14.2 ἐδήλου δὲ ἡ ἐπιστολή, ὅτι Φιλίππῳ τε πρὸς Ἀρτοξέρξην
showed and the letter that for-Philip both with Artaxerxes
φιλία καὶ ξυμμαχία ἐγένετο καί, ἐπειδὴ Ἄρσης ὁ υἱὸς
friendship and alliance had-been and when Arses the son
Ἀρτοξέρξου ἐβασίλευσεν, ὅτι Φίλιππος ἀδικίας πρῶτος ἐς
of-Artaxerxes became-king that Philip of-wrong first against
βασιλέα Ἄρσην ἦρξεν οὐδὲν ἄχαρι ἐκ Περσῶν παθών.
king Arses began nothing unpleasant from Persians having-suffered
ἐξ οὗ δὲ αὐτὸς βασιλεύει Περσῶν, οὔτε πέμψαι τινὰ
from when and he-himself reigns of-Persians neither to-have-sent anyone
Ἀλέξανδρον παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐς βεβαίωσιν τῆς πάλαι οὔσης
Alexander to him for confirmation of-the long existing
φιλίας τε καὶ ξυμμαχίας, διαβῆναί τε ξὺν στρατιᾷ ἐς
friendship both and alliance to-have-crossed both with army to
τὴν Ἀσίαν καὶ πολλὰ κακὰ ἐργάσασθαι Πέρσας.
— Asia and many evils to-have-done Persians

14.3 τούτου ἕνεκα καταβῆναι αὐτὸς τῇ χώρᾳ ἀμυνῶν καὶ
of-this for-the-sake to-have-come-down himself for-the country about-to-defend and
τὴν ἀρχὴν τὴν πατρῴαν ἀνασώσων. τὴν μὲν δὴ μάχην ὡς
the rule the ancestral about-to-recover the indeed indeed battle as
θεῶν τῳ ἔδοξεν οὕτω κριθῆναι, αὐτὸς δὲ βασιλεὺς
of-gods to-some it-seemed-good so to-have-been-decided he-himself and a-king
παρὰ βασιλέως γυναῖκά τε τὴν αὑτοῦ αἰτεῖν καὶ μητέρα
from a-king wife both the his-own to-ask and mother
καὶ παῖδας τοὺς ἁλόντας, καὶ φιλίαν ἐθέλειν ποιήσασθαι
and children the captured and friendship to-wish to-make
πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ ξύμμαχος εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ· καὶ ὑπὲρ
with Alexander and ally to-be to-Alexander and about
τούτων πέμπειν ἠξίου Ἀλέξανδρον παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ξὺν Μενίσκῳ
these to-send he-asked Alexander to himself with Meniscus

τε καὶ Ἀρσίμᾳ τοῖς ἀγγέλοις τοῖς ἐκ Περσῶν ἥκουσι τοὺς
both and Arsimas the messengers the from Persians having-come the
τὰ πιστὰ ληψομένους τε καὶ ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου δώσοντας.
the pledges about-to-receive both and on-behalf-of Alexander about-to-give
πρὸς ταῦτα ἀντιγράφει Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ ξυμπέμπει τοῖς 14.4
to these-things writes-back Alexander and sends-with the
παρὰ Δαρείου ἐλθοῦσι Θέρσιππον, παραγγείλας τὴν
from Darius having-come Thersippus having-ordered the
ἐπιστολὴν δοῦναι Δαρείῳ, αὐτὸν δὲ μὴ διαλέγεσθαι ὑπὲρ
letter to-give to-Darius himself but not to-converse about
μηδενός. ἡ δὲ ἐπιστολὴ ἡ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔχει ὧδε· οἱ ὑμέτεροι
anything the and letter the of-Alexander runs thus the your
πρόγονοι ἐλθόντες εἰς Μακεδονίαν καὶ εἰς τὴν ἄλλην
ancestors having-come into Macedonia and into the other
Ἑλλάδα κακῶς ἐποίησαν ἡμᾶς οὐδὲν προηδικημένοι· ἐγὼ
Greece badly did us not-at-all having-been-wronged-first I
δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἡγεμὼν κατασταθεὶς καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι
and of-the Greeks leader appointed and to-punish
βουλόμενος Πέρσας διέβην ἐς τὴν Ἀσίαν, ὑπαρξάντων ὑμῶν.
wishing Persians crossed into — Asia having-begun you
καὶ γὰρ Περινθίοις ἐβοηθήσατε, οἳ τὸν ἐμὸν πατέρα ἠδίκουν, 14.5
and for Perinthians you-helped who the my father wronged
καὶ εἰς Θρᾴκην, ἧς ἡμεῖς ἤρχομεν, δύναμιν ἔπεμψεν Ὦχος.
and into Thrace which we ruled a-force sent Ochus
τοῦ δὲ πατρὸς ἀποθανόντος ὑπὸ τῶν ἐπιβουλευσάντων, οὓς
of-the and father having-died by the having-plotted whom
ὑμεῖς συνετάξατε, ὡς αὐτοὶ ἐν ταῖς ἐπιστολαῖς πρὸς ἅπαντας
you arranged as yourselves in the letters to all
ἐκομπάσατε, καὶ Ἀρσῆν ἀποκτείναντός σου μετὰ Βαγώου,
boasted and Arses having-killed you with Bagoas
καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν κατασχόντος οὐ δικαίως οὐδὲ κατὰ τὸν
and the rule having-seized not justly nor according-to the

Περσῶν νόμον, ἀλλὰ ἀδικοῦντος Πέρσας, καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ
of-Persians law but wronging Persians and about me
πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας γράμματα οὐκ ἐπιτήδεια διαπέμποντος,
to the Greeks letters not friendly sending-around
14.6 ὅπως πρός με πολεμῶσι, καὶ χρήματα ἀποστέλλοντος
so-that against me they-may-make-war and money sending
πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ ἄλλους τινὰς τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
to Lacedaemonians and others some of-the Greeks
καὶ τῶν μὲν ἄλλων πόλεων οὐδεμιᾶς δεχομένης,
and of-the indeed other cities none receiving
Λακεδαιμονίων δὲ λαβόντων, καὶ παρὰ σοῦ πεμφθέντων
Lacedaemonians and having-taken and by you sent-ones
τοὺς ἐμοὺς φίλους διαφθειράντων καὶ τὴν εἰρήνην, ἣν
the my friends having-corrupted and the peace which
τοῖς Ἕλλησι κατεσκεύασα, διαλύειν ἐπιχειρούντων —
for-the Greeks I-established to-dissolve attempting
ἐστράτευσα ἐπὶ σὲ ὑπάρξαντος σοῦ τῆς ἔχθρας.
I-marched against you having-begun you the enmity
14.7 ἐπεὶ δὲ μάχῃ νενίκηκα πρότερον μὲν τοὺς σοὺς
since and in-battle I-have-conquered first indeed the your
στρατηγοὺς καὶ σατράπας, νῦν δὲ σὲ καὶ τὴν μετὰ σοῦ
generals and satraps now and you and the with you
δύναμιν, καὶ τὴν χώραν ἔχω τῶν θεῶν μοι δόντων,
force and the country I-hold the gods to-me having-given
ὅσοι τῶν μετὰ σοῦ παραταξαμένων μὴ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
as-many-as of-the with you having-been-drawn-up not in the battle
ἀπέθανον, ἀλλὰ παρ᾽ ἐμὲ κατέφυγον, τούτων ἐπιμέλομαι
died but to me fled-for-refuge these I-take-care-of
καὶ οὐκ ἄκοντες παρ᾽ ἐμοί εἰσιν, ἀλλὰ αὐτοὶ ἑκόντες
and not unwilling with me are but themselves willing
ξυστρατεύονται μετ᾽ ἐμοῦ.
they-campaign with me

ὡς οὖν ἐμοῦ τῆς Ἀσίας ἁπάσης κυρίου ὄντος ἦκε πρὸς 14.8
as then of-me — of-Asia whole lord being come to
ἐμέ. εἰ δὲ φοβῇ μὴ ἐλθὼν πάθῃς τι ἐξ ἐμοῦ ἄχαρι,
me if and you-fear lest having-come you-suffer anything from me unpleasant
πέμπε τινὰς τῶν φίλων τὰ πιστὰ ληψομένους. ἐλθὼν
send some of-the friends the pledges about-to-receive having-come
δὲ πρός με τὴν μητέρα καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας
and to me the mother and the wife and the children
καὶ εἰ ἄλλο τι θέλεις αἴτει καὶ λάμβανε. ὅ τι γὰρ
and if other anything you-wish ask and receive what for ever
ἂν πείθῃς ἐμὲ ἔσται σοι.
— you-persuade me will-be for-you
καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ ὅταν πέμπῃς παρ᾽ ἐμέ, ὡς πρὸς βασιλέα 14.9
and for-the future whenever you-send to me as to king
τῆς Ἀσίας πέμπε, μηδὲ ἐξ ἴσου ἐπίστελλε, ἀλλ᾽ ὡς κυρίῳ
— of-Asia send nor on equal-terms write but as to-lord
ὄντι πάντων τῶν σῶν φράζε εἴ του δέῃ· εἰ δὲ μή,
being of-all the your-things say if anything you-need if and not
ἐγὼ βουλεύσομαι περὶ σοῦ ὡς ἀδικοῦντος. εἰ δ᾽ ἀντιλέγεις
I will-deliberate about you as wrongdoing if and you-dispute
περὶ τῆς βασιλείας, ὑπομείνας ἔτι ἀγώνισαι περὶ αὐτῆς
about the kingship standing-your-ground still fight about it
καὶ μὴ φεῦγε, ὡς ἐγὼ ἐπὶ σὲ πορεύσομαι οὗ ἂν ᾖς.
and not flee as I against you will-march wherever — you-may-be

Parmenion secures the treasure at Damascus. Of the Greek envoys captured there, Alexander frees the two Thebans at once, keeps the Athenian Iphicrates in honor beside him, and later frees the Spartan. Byblus and Sidon submit, and Tyre offers obedience but will not let him enter to sacrifice to its Heracles. Arrian explains that this Tyrian Heracles is older than the Argive and distinct from the Egyptian, that the Heracles of Tartessus is the Tyrian, and that Geryones, as Hecataeus says, was a king in Epirus. Angered, Alexander tells his officers that Egypt and Greece are not safe while Persia rules the sea, and that Tyre's fall will bring him the Phoenician fleet.

15.1 πρὸς μὲν Δαρεῖον ταῦτ' ἐπέστειλεν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμαθεν τά τε
to indeed Darius these-things he-wrote when and he-learned the both
χρήματα ὅσα σὺν Κωφῆνι τῷ Ἀρταβάζου ἀποπεπόμφει
money as-much-as with Cophen the (son)-of-Artabazus had-sent-off
εἰς Δαμασκὸν Δαρεῖος ὅτι ἑάλωκε, καὶ ὅσοι
to Damascus Darius that it-had-been-captured and as-many-as
Περσῶν ἀμφ' αὐτὰ ἐγκατελείφθησαν ξὺν τῇ ἄλλῃ βασιλικῇ
of-Persians about it were-left-behind with the other royal
κατασκευῇ ὅτι καὶ οὗτοι ἑάλωσαν, ταῦτα μὲν ὀπίσω
equipment that also these had-been-captured these-things indeed back
κομίσαντα ἐς Δαμασκὸν Παρμενίωνα φυλάσσειν ἐκέλευε.
having-brought to Damascus Parmenion to-guard he-ordered
15.2 τοὺς δὲ πρέσβεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων οἳ πρὸς Δαρεῖον
the and envoys of-the Greeks who to Darius
πρὸ τῆς μάχης ἀφιγμένοι ἦσαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ τούτους
before the battle having-arrived were since also these
ἑαλωκέναι ἔμαθεν, παρ' αὑτὸν πέμπειν ἐκέλευεν. ἦσαν
to-have-been-captured he-learned to himself to-send he-ordered were
δὲ Εὐθυκλῆς μὲν Σπαρτιάτης, Θεσσαλίσκος δὲ Ἰσμηνίου
and Euthycles indeed a-Spartiate Thessaliscus and (son)-of-Ismenias

καὶ Διονυσόδωρος Ὀλυμπιονίκης Θηβαῖοι, Ἰφικράτης δὲ
and Dionysodorus Olympic-victor Thebans Iphicrates and
ὁ Ἰφικράτους τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Ἀθηναῖος.
the (son)-of-Iphicrates the general an-Athenian
καὶ οὗτοι ὡς ἦκον παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον, Θεσσαλίσκον μὲν 15.3
and these when they-came to Alexander Thessaliscus indeed
καὶ Διονυσόδωρον καίπερ Θηβαίους ὄντας εὐθὺς ἀφῆκεν, τὸ
and Dionysodorus although Thebans being at-once he-released partly
μέν τι κατοικτίσει τῶν Θηβῶν, τὸ δὲ ὅτι συγγνωστὰ
indeed some from-pity — of-Thebes partly and because pardonable-things
δεδρακέναι ἐφαίνοντο, ἠνδραποδισμένης ὑπὸ Μακεδόνων τῆς
to-have-done they-appeared enslaved by Macedonians the
πατρίδος σφίσιν τε ἥντινα ἠδύναντο ὠφέλειαν εὑρισκόμενοι
fatherland for-themselves both whatever they-could help finding
καὶ εἰ δή τινα καὶ τῇ πατρίδι ἐκ Περσῶν καὶ Δαρείου·
and if indeed any also for-the fatherland from Persians and Darius
ταῦτα μὲν ὑπὲρ ἀμφοῖν ἐπιεικῆ ἐνθυμηθείς, ἰδίᾳ δὲ 15.4
these-things indeed about both reasonable having-considered privately and
Θεσσαλίσκον μὲν αἰδοῖ τοῦ γένους ἀφιέναι εἶπεν, ὅτι
Thessaliscus indeed from-reverence for-the family to-release he-said because
τῶν ἐπιφανῶν Θηβαίων ἦν, Διονυσόδωρον δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ νίκῃ
of-the distinguished Thebans he-was Dionysodorus and for the victory
τῶν Ὀλυμπίων. Ἰφικράτην δὲ φιλίᾳ τε τῆς Ἀθηναίων
of-the Olympic-games Iphicrates and from-friendship both for-the of-Athenians
πόλεως καὶ μνήμῃ τῆς δόξης τοῦ πατρὸς ζῶντά τε ἀμφ᾽
city and from-memory of-the glory of-the father living both around
αὑτὸν ἔχων ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ἐτίμησε καὶ νόσῳ τελευτήσαντος
himself keeping to the most he-honored and by-disease having-died
τὰ ὀστᾶ ἐς τὰς Ἀθήνας τοῖς πρὸς γένους ἀπέπεμψεν.
the bones to — Athens to-the-(kin) by birth he-sent-off

15.5 Εὐθυκλέα δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιόν τε ὄντα, πόλεως περιφανῶς
Euthycles and a-Lacedaemonian both being of-a-city conspicuously
ἐχθρᾶς ἐν τῷ τότε, καὶ αὐτὸν οὐδὲν ἰδίᾳ εὑρισκόμενον
hostile in the then and himself nothing privately finding
ἐς ξυγγνώμην ὅ τι καὶ λόγου ἄξιον, τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἐν
for pardon what ever even of-account worthy the indeed first in
φυλακῇ ἀδέσμῳ εἶχεν, ὕστερον δέ, ὡς ἐπὶ μέγα εὐτύχει,
custody unfettered he-held later and as to great he-prospered
καὶ τοῦτον ἀφῆκεν.
also this-one he-released

15.6 ἐκ Μαράθου δὲ ὁρμηθεὶς Βύβλον τε λαμβάνει ὁμολογίᾳ
from Marathus and having-set-out Byblus both takes by-agreement
ἐνδοθεῖσαν καὶ Σιδῶνα αὐτῶν Σιδωνίων ἐπικαλεσαμένων
surrendered and Sidon the-very Sidonians having-called-him-in
κατὰ ἔχθος τὸ Περσῶν καὶ Δαρείου. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ
from hatred the of-Persians and of-Darius thence and
προὐχώρει ὡς ἐπὶ Τύρον· καὶ ἐντυγχάνουσιν αὐτῷ κατὰ
he-advanced as toward Tyre and meet him on
τὴν ὁδὸν πρέσβεις Τυρίων ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ ἐσταλμένοι
the road envoys of-Tyrians from the commonwealth sent
ὡς ἐγνωκότων Τυρίων πράσσειν ὅ τι ἂν ἐπαγγέλλῃ
as having-resolved Tyrians to-do what ever — should-command
Ἀλέξανδρος.
Alexander

15.7 ὁ δὲ τήν τε πόλιν ἐπαινέσας καὶ τοὺς πρέσβεις
he and the both city having-praised and the envoys
καὶ γὰρ ἦσαν τῶν ἐπιφανῶν ἐν Τύρῳ οἵ τε ἄλλοι
and for they-were of-the distinguished in Tyre the both others
καὶ ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Τυρίων παῖς. αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ
and the of-the king of-the Tyrians son himself and the
βασιλεὺς Ἀζέμιλκος μετ᾽ Αὐτοφραδάτου ἔπλει ἐκέλευσεν
king Azemilcus with Autophradates was-sailing he-ordered

ἐπανελθόντας φράσαι Τυρίοις, ὅτι ἐθέλοι παρελθὼν ἐς
having-returned to-tell to-Tyrians that he-wished having-come into
τὴν πόλιν θῦσαι τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ.
the city to-sacrifice — to-Heracles
ἔστι γὰρ ἐν Τύρῳ ἱερὸν Ἡρακλέους παλαιότατον ὧν 16.1
is for in Tyre a-temple of-Heracles most-ancient of-which
μνήμη ἀνθρωπίνη διασώζεται, οὐ τοῦ Ἀργείου Ἡρακλέους
memory human is-preserved not of-the Argive Heracles
τοῦ Ἀλκμήνης· πολλαῖς γὰρ γενεαῖς πρότερον τιμᾶται
the (son)-of-Alcmene by-many for generations earlier is-honored
ἐν Τύρῳ Ἡρακλῆς ἢ Κάδμον ἐκ Φοινίκης ὁρμηθέντα
in Tyre Heracles than Cadmus from Phoenicia having-set-out
Θήβας κατασχεῖν καὶ τὴν παῖδα Κάδμῳ τὴν Σεμέλην
Thebes to-occupy and the daughter to-Cadmus — Semele
γενέσθαι, ἐξ ἧς καὶ ὁ τοῦ Διὸς Διόνυσος γίγνεται.
to-be-born from whom also the (son) of-Zeus Dionysus is-born
Διόνυσος μὲν δὴ τρίτος ἂν ἀπὸ Κάδμου εἴη, κατὰ 16.2
Dionysus indeed indeed third — from Cadmus would-be in-the-time-of
Λάβδακον τὸν Πολυδώρου τοῦ Κάδμου παῖδα, Ἡρακλῆς
Labdacus the of-Polydorus — of-Cadmus son Heracles
δὲ ὁ Ἀργεῖος κατ᾽ Οἰδίποδα μάλιστα τὸν Λαΐου.
and the Argive in-the-time-of Oedipus about the (son)-of-Laius
σέβουσι δὲ καὶ Αἰγύπτιοι ἄλλον Ἡρακλέα, οὐχ ὅνπερ
revere and also Egyptians another Heracles not whom-indeed
Τύριοι ἢ Ἕλληνες, ἀλλὰ λέγει Ἡρόδοτος,
Tyrians or Greeks but says Herodotus
ὅτι τῶν δώδεκα θεῶν Ἡρακλέα ἄγουσιν Αἰγύπτιοι, 16.3
that of-the twelve gods Heracles count Egyptians
καθάπερ καὶ Ἀθηναῖοι Διόνυσον τὸν Διὸς καὶ Κόρης
just-as also Athenians Dionysus the (son)-of-Zeus and Kore

σέβουσιν, ἄλλον τοῦτον Διόνυσον· καὶ ὁ Ἴακχος ὁ
revere another this Dionysus and the Iacchus-(hymn) the
μυστικὸς τούτῳ Διονύσῳ, οὐχὶ τῷ Θηβαίῳ, ἐπᾴδεται.
mystic to-this Dionysus not to-the Theban is-chanted
16.4 ὡς τόν γε ἐν Ταρτησσῷ πρὸς Ἰβήρων τιμώμενον
so the at-least in Tartessus by Iberians honored
Ἡρακλέα, ἵνα καὶ στῆλαί τινες Ἡρακλέους ὠνομασμέναι
Heracles where also pillars some of-Heracles named
εἰσι, δοκῶ ἐγὼ τὸν Τύριον εἶναι Ἡρακλέα, ὅτι Φοινίκων
are think I the Tyrian to-be Heracles because of-Phoenicians
κτίσμα ἡ Ταρτησσὸς καὶ τῷ Φοινίκων νόμῳ ὅ τε νεὼς
a-foundation — Tartessus and by-the of-Phoenicians custom the both temple
πεποίηται τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ ἐκεῖ καὶ αἱ θυσίαι θύονται.
has-been-made — for-Heracles the there and the sacrifices are-sacrificed
16.5 Γηρυόνην δέ, ἐφ' ὅντινα ὁ Ἀργεῖος Ἡρακλῆς ἐστάλη πρὸς
Geryones and against whom the Argive Heracles was-sent by
Εὐρυσθέως τὰς βοῦς ἀπελάσαι τὰς Γηρυόνου καὶ ἀγαγεῖν ἐς
Eurystheus the cattle to-drive-off the of-Geryones and to-bring to
Μυκήνας, οὐδέν τι προσήκειν τῇ γῇ τῇ Ἰβήρων Ἑκαταῖος
Mycenae not at-all to-belong to-the land the of-Iberians Hecataeus
ὁ λογοποιὸς λέγει, οὐδὲ ἐπὶ νῆσόν τινα Ἐρύθειαν τῆς ἔξω
the chronicler says nor to island some Erytheia of-the outside
τῆς μεγάλης θαλάσσης σταλῆναι Ἡρακλέα, ἀλλὰ τῆς
the great sea to-have-been-sent Heracles but of-the
ἠπείρου τῆς περὶ Ἀμπρακίαν τε καὶ Ἀμφιλόχους βασιλέα
mainland the around Ambracia both and Amphilochians king
γενέσθαι Γηρυόνην καὶ ἐκ τῆς ἠπείρου ταύτης ἀπελάσαι
to-have-been Geryones and from the mainland this to-have-driven-off
Ἡρακλέα τὰς βοῦς, οὐδὲ τοῦτο φαῦλον ἆθλον τιθέμενον.
Heracles the cattle nor this slight labor reckoning

οἶδα δὲ ἐγὼ καὶ εἰς τοῦτο ἔτι εὔβοτον τὴν ἤπειρον ταύτην 16.6
I-know and I also to this still well-pastured the mainland this
καὶ βοῦς τρέφουσαν καλλίστας· καὶ ἐς Εὐρυσθέα τῶν μὲν ἐξ
and cattle rearing finest and to Eurystheus of-the indeed from
Ἠπείρου βοῶν κλέος ἀφῖχθαι καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως τῆς Ἠπείρου
Epirus cattle fame to-have-come and of-the king — of-Epirus
τὸ ὄνομα τὸν Γηρυόνην οὐκ ἔξω τοῦ εἰκότος τίθεμαι· τῶν
the name — Geryones not outside the likely I-consider of-the
δὲ ἐσχάτων τῆς Εὐρώπης Ἰβήρων οὔτ' ἂν τοῦ βασιλέως
and farthest — of-Europe Iberians neither — of-the king
τὸ ὄνομα γιγνώσκειν Εὐρυσθέα, οὔτε εἰ βοῦς καλαὶ ἐν τῇ
the name to-know Eurystheus nor whether cattle fine in the
χώρᾳ ταύτῃ νέμονται, εἰ μή τις τὴν Ἥραν τούτοις ἐπάγων,
country this graze if not someone — Hera on-these bringing-in
ὡς αὐτὴν ταῦτα Ἡρακλεῖ δι' Εὐρυσθέως ἐπαγγέλλουσαν,
as she these-things to-Heracles through Eurystheus enjoining
τὸ οὐ πιστὸν τοῦ λόγου ἀποκρύπτειν ἐθέλοι τῷ μύθῳ.
the not credible of-the story to-hide should-wish by-the myth
τούτῳ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ Τυρίῳ ἔφη ἐθέλειν θῦσαι 16.7
to-this — Heracles the Tyrian he-said to-wish to-sacrifice
Ἀλέξανδρος. ὡς δὲ ἀπηγγέλθη ταῦτα πρὸς τῶν πρέσβεων
Alexander when and were-reported these-things by the envoys
εἰς τὴν Τύρον, τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἔδοξέ σφισι ποιεῖν
to — Tyre the indeed other-things it-seemed-good to-them to-do
ὅ τι περ ἐπαγγέλλοι Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐς δὲ τὴν πόλιν
what ever indeed should-command Alexander into but the city
μήτε τινὰ Περσῶν μήτε Μακεδόνων δέχεσθαι, ὡς τοῦτο
neither anyone of-Persians nor of-Macedonians to-admit as this
ἔς τε τὰ παρόντα τῷ λόγῳ εὐπρεπέστατον καὶ ἐς
for both the present-circumstances in-the word most-seemly and for

τοῦ πολέμου τὴν κρίσιν, ἄδηλον ἔτι οὖσαν, ἀσφαλέστατόν
of-the war the decision unclear still being safest
σφισι γνωσόμενοι.
for-them about-to-judge

16.8 ὡς δὲ ἐξηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὰ ἐκ τῆς Τύρου, τοὺς
when and was-reported to-Alexander the-things from — Tyre the
μὲν πρέσβεις πρὸς ὀργὴν ὀπίσω ἀπέπεμψεν, αὐτὸς δὲ
indeed envoys in anger back sent-away himself and
συναγαγὼν τούς τε ἑταίρους καὶ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῆς
having-assembled the both companions and the commanders of-the
στρατιᾶς καὶ ταξιάρχας καὶ ἰλάρχας ἔλεξεν ὧδε.
army and taxiarchs and squadron-leaders spoke thus

17.1 ἄνδρες φίλοι καὶ ξύμμαχοι, ἡμῖν οὔτε τὴν ἐπ᾽ Αἰγύπτου
men friends and allies for-us neither the to Egypt
πορείαν ἀσφαλῆ ὁρῶ θαλασσοκρατούντων Περσῶν, Δαρεῖόν
march safe I-see ruling-the-sea Persians Darius
τε διώκειν ὑπολειπομένους αὐτήν τε ὀπίσω τὴν τῶν
both to-pursue leaving-behind itself both behind the of-the
Τυρίων πόλιν ἀμφίβολον καὶ Αἴγυπτον καὶ Κύπρον
Tyrians city doubtful and Egypt and Cyprus
ἐχομένας πρὸς Περσῶν, οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἀσφαλὲς ἔς τε τὰ
held by Persians nor this safe for both the
ἄλλα καὶ μάλιστα δὴ ἐς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ πράγματα,
other-things and most indeed for the Greek affairs

17.2 μή ποτε ἄρα ἐπικρατήσαντες αὖθις τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάσσῃ
lest perhaps then having-become-masters again of-the on sea
χωρίων οἱ Πέρσαι, προχωρησάντων ἡμῶν ξὺν τῇ
places the Persians having-advanced we with the
δυνάμει ὡς ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνά τε καὶ Δαρεῖον, αὐτοὶ ξὺν
force as toward Babylon both and Darius themselves with
πλείονι στόλῳ μετάγοιεν τὸν πόλεμον ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
greater armament should-shift the war into — Greece

Λακεδαιμονίων μὲν ἐκ τοῦ εὐθέος ἡμῖν πολεμούντων,
Lacedaemonians indeed from the outright us making-war
τῆς δὲ Ἀθηναίων πόλεως φόβῳ μᾶλλόν τι ἢ εὐνοίᾳ
the and of-Athenians city by-fear more somewhat than by-goodwill
τῇ πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὸς τὸ παρὸν κατεχομένης.
the toward us for the present being-held-back
ἐξαιρεθείσης δὲ Τύρου ἥ τε Φοινίκη ἔχοιτο ἂν πᾶσα 17.3
having-been-taken and Tyre the both Phoenicia would-be-held — all
καὶ τὸ ναυτικὸν ὅπερ πλεῖστόν τε καὶ κράτιστον τοῦ
and the fleet which largest both and strongest of-the
Περσικοῦ, τὸ Φοινίκων, παρ᾽ ἡμᾶς μεταχωρήσειν εἰκός·
Persian the of-Phoenicians to us to-be-going-to-come-over it-is-likely
οὐ γὰρ ἀνέξονται οὔτε οἱ ἐρέται οὔθ᾽ οἱ ἐπιβάται Φοίνικες
not for will-endure neither the rowers nor the marines Phoenicians
ἐχομένων σφίσι τῶν πόλεων αὐτοὶ ὑπὲρ ἄλλων πλέοντες
being-held for-them the cities they-themselves for others sailing
κινδυνεύειν· Κύπρος δὲ ἐπὶ τῷδε ἢ οὐ χαλεπῶς
to-run-risks Cyprus and in-addition-to this either not with-difficulty
ἡμῖν προσχωρήσει ἢ ἐξ ἐπίπλου εὐμαρῶς ληφθήσεται.
to-us will-come-over or by naval-attack easily will-be-taken
καὶ ταῖς τε ἐκ Μακεδονίας ναυσὶ καὶ ταῖς Φοινίσσαις 17.4
and with-the both from Macedonia ships and with-the Phoenician
πλεόντων ἡμῶν τὴν θάλασσαν καὶ Κύπρου ἅμα
sailing we the sea and Cyprus at-the-same-time
προσγενομένης θαλασσοκρατοῖμέν τε ἂν βεβαίως καὶ ὁ
having-been-added we-would-rule-the-sea both — securely and the
ἐς Αἴγυπτον στόλος εὐμαρῶς ἡμῖν ἐν ταὐτῷ γίγνεται.
to Egypt expedition easily for-us at the-same-time becomes
Αἴγυπτον δὲ παραστησαμένοις ὑπέρ τε τῆς Ἑλλάδος
Egypt and having-won-over about both — Greece
καὶ τῆς οἰκείας οὐδὲν ἔτι ὕποπτον ὑπολείπεται, τόν
and the home nothing any-longer suspect is-left the

τε ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος στόλον μετὰ τοῦ ἐς τὰ οἴκοι
both toward Babylon expedition with the for the-things at-home
ἀσφαλοῦς καὶ ξὺν μείζονι ἅμα ἀξιώσει ποιησόμεθα
safe and with greater at-the-same-time prestige we-shall-make
ἀποτετμημένοι τήν τε θάλασσαν Περσῶν ξύμπασαν καὶ
having-cut-off the both sea from-Persians whole and
τὴν ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Εὐφράτου γῆν.
the on this-side — of-Euphrates land

VII · THE MOLE AND THE FLEET

A dream of Heracles leading him into Tyre spurs Alexander on. He builds a mole across the strait, and Tyrian triremes harass the builders until towers protect them. The Tyrians send a fire ship against the towers and burn them. Alexander widens the mole and gathers ships. The Phoenician kings, the Cypriots, and others bring him over two hundred ships, and after ten days in the Antilebanon he finds Cleander at Sidon with four thousand Greek mercenaries. The Tyrians will not fight at sea and block their harbors. Engines are brought against the walls, Tyrian divers cut the anchor cables until chains replace them, the stones dumped before the walls are hauled out, and at midday the Tyrians attack the Cypriot squadron.

18.1 ταῦτα λέγων οὐ χαλεπῶς ἔπειθεν ἐπιχειρεῖν τῇ Τύρῳ·
these-things saying not with-difficulty he-persuaded to-attack — Tyre
καί τι καὶ θεῖον ἀνέπειθεν αὐτόν, ὅτι ἐνύπνιον
and somewhat also divine persuaded him because a-dream
αὐτῆς ἐκείνης τῆς νυκτὸς ἐδόκει αὐτὸς μὲν τῷ τείχει
in-the-very that the night he-seemed himself indeed to-the wall
προσάγειν τῶν Τυρίων, τὸν δὲ Ἡρακλέα δεξιοῦσθαί τε
to-approach of-the Tyrians — and Heracles to-greet both
αὐτὸν καὶ ἀνάγειν ἐς τὴν πόλιν. καὶ τοῦτο ἐξηγεῖτο
him and to-lead-up into the city and this interpreted
Ἀρίστανδρος ὡς ξὺν πόνῳ ἁλωσομένην τὴν Τύρον, ὅτι
Aristander as with toil about-to-be-captured — Tyre because

καὶ τὰ τοῦ Ἡρακλέους ἔργα ξὺν πόνῳ ἐγένετο. καὶ γὰρ
also the — of-Heracles labors with toil were and for
καὶ μέγα ἔργον τῆς Τύρου ἡ πολιορκία ἐφαίνετο.
also great work — of-Tyre the siege appeared
νῆσός τε γὰρ αὐτοῖς ἡ πόλις ἦν καὶ τείχεσιν ὑψηλοῖς 18.2
an-island both for for-them the city was and with-walls high
πάντῃ ὠχύρωτο καὶ τὰ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης πρὸς
on-every-side was-fortified and the-things from sea on-the-side-of
τῶν Τυρίων μᾶλλόν τι ἐν τῷ τότε ἐφαίνετο, τῶν τε
the Tyrians more somewhat in the then appeared of-the both
Περσῶν ἔτι θαλασσοκρατούντων καὶ αὐτοῖς τοῖς Τυρίοις
Persians still ruling-the-sea and for-them the Tyrians
νεῶν ἔτι πολλῶν περιουσῶν.
of-ships still many remaining
ὡς δὲ ταῦτα ὅμως ἐκράτησε, χῶμα ἔγνω χωννύναι 18.3
when and these-things nevertheless prevailed a-mole he-decided to-build
ἐκ τῆς ἠπείρου ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν. ἔστι δὲ πορθμὸς
from the mainland as toward the city is and a-strait
τεναγώδης τὸ χωρίον καὶ τὰ μὲν πρὸς τῇ ἠπείρῳ τῆς
shoaly the place and the-parts indeed toward the mainland of-the
θαλάσσης βραχέα καὶ πηλώδη αὐτοῦ, τὰ δὲ πρὸς αὐτῇ
sea shallow and muddy of-it the-parts and by itself
τῇ πόλει, ἵνα τὸ βαθύτατον τοῦ διάπλου, τριῶν μάλιστα
the city where the deepest of-the channel three about
ὀργυιῶν τὸ βάθος. ἀλλὰ λίθων τε πολλῶν ἀφθονία ἦν
fathoms the depth but of-stones both many abundance there-was
καὶ ὕλης, ἥντινα τοῖς λίθοις ἄνωθεν ἐπεφόρουν, χάρακές
and of-wood which on-the stones from-above they-heaped stakes
τε οὐ χαλεπῶς κατεπήγνυντο ἐν τῷ πηλῷ καὶ αὐτὸς
both not with-difficulty were-fixed in the mud and itself
ὁ πηλὸς ξύνδεσμος τοῖς λίθοις ἐς τὸ ἐπιμένειν ἐγίγνετο.
the mud a-binding for-the stones for the to-hold-fast became

18.4 καὶ προθυμία τῶν τε Μακεδόνων ἐς τὸ ἔργον καὶ
and eagerness of-the both Macedonians for the work and
Ἀλεξάνδρου πολλὴ ἦν παρόντος τε καὶ αὐτοῦ ἕκαστα
of-Alexander great was being-present both and himself each-thing
ἐξηγουμένου καὶ τὰ μὲν λόγῳ ἐπαίροντος, τὰ δὲ
directing and partly indeed by-word encouraging partly and
καὶ χρήμασι τούς τι ἐκπρεπέστερον κατ᾽ ἀρετὴν
also with-money the somewhat more-outstandingly in excellence
πονουμένους ἐπικουφίζοντος. ἀλλ᾽ ἔστε μὲν τὸ πρὸς
laboring relieving but while indeed the-part near
τῇ ἠπείρῳ ἐχώννυτο, οὐ χαλεπῶς προὐχώρει τὸ ἔργον,
the mainland was-being-built not with-difficulty advanced the work
ἐπὶ βάθος τε ὀλίγον χωννύμενον καὶ οὐδενὸς ἐξείργοντος.
to depth both small being-built and nobody hindering
18.5 ὡς δὲ τῷ τε βαθυτέρῳ ἤδη ἐπέλαζον καὶ ἅμα τῇ
when and the both deeper already they-approached and at-the-same-time to-the
πόλει αὐτῇ ἐγγὺς ἐγίγνοντο, ἀπό τε τῶν τειχῶν ὑψηλῶν
city itself near came from both the walls high
ὄντων βαλλόμενοι ἐκακοπάθουν, ἅτε καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἐργασίᾳ
being being-struck they-suffered inasmuch-as also for work
μᾶλλόν τι ἢ ὡς ἐς μάχην ἀκριβῶς ἐσταλμένοι, καὶ
more somewhat than as for battle properly equipped and
ταῖς τριήρεσιν ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τοῦ χώματος ἐπιπλέοντες
with-the triremes here and there of-the mole sailing-at
οἱ Τύριοι, ἅτε δὴ θαλασσοκρατοῦντες ἔτι, ἄπορον
the Tyrians as indeed ruling-the-sea still impossible
πολλαχῇ τὴν πρόσχωσιν τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ἐποίουν.
in-many-places the building for-the Macedonians made
18.6 καὶ οἱ Μακεδόνες πύργους ἐπ᾽ ἄκρου τοῦ χώματος, ὅ τι
and the Macedonians towers on top of-the mole what ever
περ προκεχωρήκει αὐτοῖς ἐπὶ πολὺ τῆς θαλάσσης, ἐπέστησαν
indeed had-advanced for-them for far of-the sea set-up

δύο καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπὶ τοῖς πύργοις. προκαλύμματα δὲ δέρρεις
two and engines on the towers screens and hides
καὶ διφθέραι αὐτοῖς ἦσαν, ὡς μήτε πυρφόροις βέλεσιν ἀπὸ
and skins for-them were so-as neither with-fire-bearing missiles from
τείχους βάλλεσθαι, τοῖς τε ἐργαζομένοις προβολὴν ἐν τῷ
wall to-be-struck for-the and working a-shelter at the
αὐτῷ εἶναι πρὸς τὰ τοξεύματα· ἅμα τε ὅσοι
same-(time) to-be against the arrows at-the-same-time both as-many-as
προσπλέοντες τῶν Τυρίων ἔβλαπτον τοὺς χωννύντας, ἀπὸ
sailing-up of-the Tyrians harmed the builders from
τῶν πύργων βαλλόμενοι οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀνασταλήσεσθαι
the towers being-shot not with-difficulty to-be-checked
ἔμελλον. οἱ δὲ Τύριοι πρὸς ταῦτα ἀντιμηχανῶνται τοιόνδε.
were-likely the and Tyrians against these-things devise-in-return the-following
ναῦν ἱππαγωγὸν κλημάτων τε ξηρῶν καὶ ἄλλης 19.1
a-ship horse-transport with-vine-branches both dry and other
ὕλης εὐφλέκτου ἐμπλήσαντες δύο ἱστοὺς ἐπὶ τῇ πρώρᾳ
wood inflammable having-filled two masts on the prow
καταπηγνύουσι καὶ ἐν κύκλῳ περιφράσσουσιν ἐς ὅσον
fix and in a-circle fence-around to as-much-as
μακρότατον ὡς φορυτόν τε ταύτῃ καὶ δᾷδας ὅσας
greatest so-as chips both by-this and torches as-many-as
πλείστας δέξασθαι· πρὸς δὲ πίσσαν τε καὶ θεῖον καὶ
most to-hold in-addition and pitch both and sulfur and
ὅσα ἄλλα ἐς τὸ παρακαλέσαι μεγάλην φλόγα ἐπὶ
as-many-as other-things for the to-call-forth great flame on
ταύτῃ ἐπεφόρησαν.
this they-heaped
παρέτειναν δὲ καὶ κεραίαν διπλῆν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἱστοῖς 19.2
they-extended and also a-yard double on the masts
ἀμφοτέροις, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἐξήρτησαν ἐν λέβησιν ὅσα
both and from this they-hung in cauldrons as-much-as

ἐπιχυθέντα ἢ ἐπιβληθέντα ἐπὶ μέγα τὴν φλόγα ἐξάψειν
poured-on or thrown-on to great the flame to-kindle
ἔμελλεν, ἔρματά τε ἐς τὴν πρύμναν ἐνέθεσαν, τοῦ ἐξᾶραι
was-likely ballast both into the stern they-put for-the to-raise
ἐς ὕψος τὴν πρῶραν πιεζομένης κατὰ πρύμναν τῆς νεώς.
to height the prow being-pressed-down at stern of-the ship
19.3 ἔπειτα ἄνεμον τηρήσαντες ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ χῶμα ἐπιφέροντα
then a-wind having-watched as toward the mole carrying
ἐξάψαντες τριήρεσι τὴν ναῦν κατ᾽ οὐρὰν εἵλκον. ὡς
having-made-fast to-triremes the ship by stern they-towed when
δὲ ἐπέλαζον ἤδη τῷ τε χώματι καὶ τοῖς πύργοις πῦρ
and they-approached already the both mole and the towers fire
ἐμβαλόντες ἐς τὴν ὕλην καὶ ὡς βιαιότατα ἅμα ταῖς
having-thrown into the wood and as most-violently together-with the
τριήρεσιν ἐπανελκύσαντες τὴν ναῦν ἐνσείουσιν ἄκρῳ τῷ
triremes having-hauled the ship they-drive-onto the-edge-of the
χώματι· αὐτοὶ δὲ οἱ ἐν τῇ νηῒ καιομένῃ ἤδη ἐξενήξαντο
mole themselves and the in the ship burning already swam-out
οὐ χαλεπῶς.
not with-difficulty
19.4 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἥ τε φλὸξ πολλὴ ἐνέπιπτε τοῖς πύργοις
and in this the both flame great fell-on the towers
καὶ αἱ κεραῖαι περικλασθεῖσαι ἐξέχεαν ἐς τὸ πῦρ ὅσα
and the yards broken-around poured into the fire as-much-as
ἐς ἔξαψιν τῆς φλογὸς παρεσκευασμένα ἦν. οἱ δ᾽ ἀπὸ τῶν
for kindling of-the flame prepared was the and from the
τριήρων πλησίον τοῦ χώματος ἀνακωχεύοντες ἐτόξευον ἐς
triremes near the mole lying-to shot at
τοὺς πύργους, ὡς μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι πελάσαι ὅσοι
the towers so-that not safe to-be to-approach for-as-many-as
σβεστήριόν τι τῇ φλογὶ ἐπέφερον.
quencher anything to-the flame brought

καὶ ἐν τούτῳ κατεχομένων ἤδη ἐκ τοῦ πυρὸς τῶν 19.5
and in this being-held already by the fire the
πύργων ἐκδραμόντες ἐκ τῆς πόλεως πολλοὶ καὶ ἐς
towers having-run-out from the city many and into
κελήτια ἐμβάντες ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ ἐποκείλαντες τοῦ
skiffs having-embarked here and there having-run-aground of-the
χώματος τόν τε χάρακα οὐ χαλεπῶς διέσπασαν τὸν
mole the both palisade not with-difficulty tore-apart the
πρὸ αὐτοῦ προβεβλημένον καὶ τὰς μηχανὰς ξυμπάσας
before it set and the engines all
κατέφλεξαν, ὅσας μὴ τὸ ἀπὸ τῆς νεὼς πῦρ ἐπέσχεν.
burned-down as-many-as not the from the ship fire caught
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τό τε χῶμα ἀπὸ τῆς ἠπείρου ἀρξαμένους 19.6
Alexander and the both mole from the mainland beginning
πλατύτερον χωννύναι, ὡς πλείονας δέξασθαι πύργους,
wider to-build so-as more to-hold towers
καὶ τοὺς μηχανοποιοὺς μηχανὰς ἄλλας κατασκευάζειν
and the engineers engines other to-build
ἐκέλευσεν. ὡς δὲ ταῦτα παρεσκευάζετο, αὐτὸς τούς τε
ordered when and these-things were-being-prepared he-himself the both
ὑπασπιστὰς ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας ἐπὶ Σιδῶνος
shield-bearers having-taken and the Agrianians toward Sidon
ἐστάλη, ὡς ἀθροίσων ἐκεῖ ὅσαι ἤδη ἦσαν αὐτῷ
set-out as about-to-collect there as-many-as already were for-him
τριήρεις, ὅτι ἀπορώτερα τὰ τῆς πολιορκίας ἐφαίνετο
triremes because more-difficult the-things of-the siege appeared
θαλασσοκρατούντων τῶν Τυρίων.
ruling-the-sea the Tyrians
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Γηρόστρατός τε ὁ Ἀράδου βασιλεὺς καὶ 20.1
in this and Gerostratus both the of-Aradus king and
Ἔνυλος ὁ Βύβλου ὡς ἔμαθον τὰς πόλεις σφῶν ὑπ᾽
Enylus the of-Byblus when they-learned the cities their by

Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐχομένας, ἀπολιπόντες Αὐτοφραδάτην τε καὶ
Alexander held having-left Autophradates both and
τὰς ξὺν αὐτῷ νέας παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ξὺν τῷ ναυτικῷ
the with him ships to Alexander with the fleet
τῷ σφετέρῳ ἀφίκοντο καὶ αἱ τῶν Σιδωνίων τριήρεις σὺν
the their-own came and the of-the Sidonians triremes with
αὐτοῖς, ὥστε Φοινίκων μὲν νῆες ὀγδοήκοντα μάλιστα
them so-that of-Phoenicians indeed ships eighty about
αὐτῷ παρεγένοντο.
to-him came

20.2 ἦκον δὲ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς ἡμέραις καὶ ἐκ Ῥόδου τριήρεις ἥ
came and in the same days also from Rhodes triremes the
τε περίπολος καλουμένη καὶ ξὺν ταύτῃ ἄλλαι ἐννέα, καὶ ἐκ
both patrol-ship called and with it others nine and from
Σόλων καὶ Μαλλοῦ τρεῖς καὶ Λύκιαι δέκα, ἐκ Μακεδονίας
Soli and Mallus three and Lycian ten from Macedonia
δὲ πεντηκόντορος, ἐφ᾽ ἧς Πρωτέας ὁ Ἀνδρονίκου ἐπέπλει.
and a-penteconter on which Proteas the (son)-of-Andronicus sailed

20.3 οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον καὶ οἱ τῆς Κύπρου βασιλεῖς ἐς τὴν
not much and later also the — of-Cyprus kings to —
Σιδῶνα κατέσχον ναυσὶν ἑκατὸν μάλιστα καὶ εἴκοσιν, ἐπειδὴ
Sidon put-in with-ships hundred about and twenty since
τήν τε ἧσσαν τὴν κατ᾽ Ἰσσὸν Δαρείου ἐπύθοντο καὶ ἡ
the both defeat the at Issus of-Darius they-learned and —
Φοινίκη πᾶσα ἐχομένη ἤδη ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐφόβει αὐτούς.
Phoenicia whole held already by Alexander frightened them
καὶ τούτοις πᾶσιν ἔδωκεν Ἀλέξανδρος ἄδειαν τῶν πρόσθεν,
and to-these all gave Alexander amnesty for-the before
ὅτι ὑπ᾽ ἀνάγκης μᾶλλόν τι ἢ κατὰ γνώμην τὴν
because by compulsion more somewhat than by judgment the
σφῶν ἐδόκουν ξυνταχθῆναι τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐς τὸ ναυτικόν.
their they-seemed to-have-been-ranged with-the Persians for the fleet

ἐν ᾧ δὲ αἵ τε μηχαναὶ αὐτῷ ξυνεπήγνυντο καὶ 20.4
in which and the both engines for-him were-being-fixed-together and
αἱ νῆες ὡς εἰς ἐπίπλουν τε καὶ ναυμαχίας ἀπόπειραν
the ships as for attack both and of-sea-battle trial
ἐξηρτύοντο, ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τῶν τε ἱππέων
were-being-equipped in this and having-taken of-the both cavalry
ἴλας ἔστιν ἃς καὶ τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνάς
squadrons there-are which and the shield-bearers and the Agrianians
τε καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπ᾽ Ἀραβίας στέλλεται εἰς τὸν
both and the archers toward Arabia sets-out to the
Ἀντιλίβανον καλούμενον τὸ ὄρος·
Antilebanon called the mountain
καὶ τὰ μὲν βίᾳ τῶν ταύτῃ ἐξελών, τὰ δὲ 20.5
and the-parts indeed by-force of-the there having-taken the-others and
ὁμολογίᾳ παραστησάμενος ἐν δέκα ἡμέραις ἐπανῆγεν
by-agreement having-won-over in ten days he-returned
ἐς τὴν Σιδῶνα, καὶ καταλαμβάνει Κλέανδρον τὸν
to — Sidon and finds Cleander the
Πολεμοκράτους ἐκ Πελοποννήσου ἥκοντα καὶ ξὺν αὐτῷ
(son)-of-Polemocrates from Peloponnese having-come and with him
μισθοφόρους Ἕλληνας ἐς τετρακισχιλίους.
mercenaries Greek about four-thousand
ὡς δὲ συνετέτακτο αὐτῷ τὸ ναυτικόν, ἐπιβιβάσας τοῖς 20.6
when and had-been-organized for-him the fleet having-embarked on-the
καταστρώμασι τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ὅσοι ἱκανοὶ ἐδόκουν ἐς
decks of-the shield-bearers as-many-as sufficient seemed for
τὸ ἔργον, εἰ μὴ διέκπλοις μᾶλλόν τι ἢ ἐν χερσὶν
the work if not by-breakings-through more somewhat than in hands
ἡ ναυμαχία γίγνοιτο, ἄρας ἐκ τῆς Σιδῶνος ἐπέπλει
the sea-battle should-be having-set-out from — Sidon sailed-against
τῇ Τύρῳ ξυντεταγμέναις ταῖς ναυσίν, αὐτὸς μὲν κατὰ τὸ
— Tyre with-drawn-up the ships himself indeed on the

δεξιὸν κέρας, ὃ δὴ ἐς τὸ πέλαγος αὐτῷ ἀνεῖχε, καὶ
right wing which indeed to the open-sea for-him stretched and
ξὺν αὐτῷ οἵ τε Κυπρίων βασιλεῖς καὶ ὅσοι Φοινίκων,
with him the both of-Cyprians kings and as-many-as of-Phoenicians
πλὴν Πνυταγόρου. οὗτος δὲ καὶ Κρατερὸς τὸ εὐώνυμον
except Pnytagoras this-one but and Craterus the left
κέρας εἶχον τῆς πάσης τάξεως.
wing held of-the whole line

20.7 τοῖς δὲ Τυρίοις πρότερον μὲν ναυμαχεῖν ἐγνωσμένον ἦν,
for-the and Tyrians before indeed to-fight-at-sea resolved it-was
εἰ κατὰ θάλασσαν ἐπιπλέοι σφίσιν Ἀλέξανδρος, τότε
if by sea should-sail-against them Alexander then
δὲ πλῆθος νεῶν πολὺ ἀπροσδοκήτως κατιδόντες οὐ γάρ
but a-multitude of-ships great unexpectedly having-seen not for
πω πεπυσμένοι ἦσαν τάς τε Κυπρίων ναῦς καὶ τὰς
yet having-learned they-were the both of-Cyprians ships and the
Φοινίκων ξυμπάσας Ἀλέξανδρον ἔχοντα

of-Phoenicians all Alexander having

20.8 καὶ ἅμα ξυντεταγμένως τοῦ ἐπίπλου γιγνομένου
and at-the-same-time in-order the approach being-made
ὀλίγον γὰρ πρὶν προσχεῖν τῇ πόλει ἀνεκώχευσαν ἔτι
a-little for before to-put-in at-the city lay-to still
πελάγιαι αἱ ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ νῆες, εἴ πως ἄρα ἐς ναυμαχίαν
in-the-open-sea the with Alexander ships if somehow then to sea-battle
τοὺς Τυρίους προκαλέσαιντο, ἔπειτα οὕτως ξυνταξάμενοι,
the Tyrians they-might-challenge then so having-drawn-up
ὡς οὐκ ἀντανήγοντο, πολλῷ τῷ ῥοθίῳ ἐπέπλεον — ταῦτα
when not they-put-out with-much the dash they-sailed-at these-things
ὁρῶντες οἱ Τύριοι ναυμαχεῖν μὲν ἀπέγνωσαν, τριήρεσι δὲ
seeing the Tyrians to-fight-at-sea indeed gave-up with-triremes and
ὅσας τῶν λιμένων τὰ στόματα ἐδέχοντο βύζην τὸν
as-many-as of-the harbors the mouths admitted close-packed the

ἔσπλουν φραξάμενοι ἐφύλασσον, ὡς μὴ ἐς τῶν λιμένων
entrance having-blocked guarded so-that not in of-the harbors
τινὰ ἐγκαθορμισθῆναι τῶν πολεμίων τὸν στόλον.
any to-anchor of-the enemy the fleet
Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὡς οὐκ ἀντανήγοντο οἱ Τύριοι, ἐπέπλει τῇ 20.9
Alexander and when not put-out the Tyrians sailed-against the
πόλει· καὶ ἐς μὲν τὸν λιμένα τὸν πρὸς Σιδῶνος βιάζεσθαι
city and into indeed the harbor the toward Sidon to-force
ἀπέγνω διὰ στενότητα τοῦ στόματος καὶ ἅμα
gave-up because-of narrowness of-the mouth and at-the-same-time
ἀντιπρώροις τριήρεσι πολλαῖς ὁρῶν πεφραγμένον τὸν
with-prow-on triremes many seeing blocked the
ἔσπλουν, τρεῖς δὲ τὰς ἐξωτάτω ἐφορμούσας τῷ στόματι
entrance three and the outermost lying-at-anchor at-the mouth
τριήρεις προσπεσόντες οἱ Φοίνικες καὶ ἀντίπρωροι
triremes having-fallen-on the Phoenicians and prow-on
ἐμβαλόντες καταδύουσιν· οἱ δὲ ἐν ταῖς ναυσὶν οὐ χαλεπῶς
having-rammed sink the and in the ships not with-difficulty
ἀπενήξαντο ἐς τὴν γῆν φιλίαν οὖσαν.
swam-off to the land friendly being
τότε μὲν δὴ οὐ πόρρω τοῦ ποιητοῦ χώματος κατὰ 20.10
then indeed indeed not far from-the made mole along
τὸν αἰγιαλόν, ἵνα σκέπη τῶν ἀνέμων ἐφαίνετο, οἱ σὺν
the beach where shelter from-the winds appeared the with
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὡρμίσαντο· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ τοὺς μὲν Κυπρίους
Alexander anchored on-the and next-day the indeed Cyprians
ξὺν ταῖς σφετέραις ναυσὶ καὶ Ἀνδρομάχῳ τῷ ναυάρχῳ κατὰ
with the their-own ships and Andromachus the admiral at
τὸν λιμένα τὸν ἐκ Σιδῶνος φέροντα ἐκέλευσεν ἐφορμεῖν τῇ
the harbor the from Sidon leading he-ordered to-blockade the

πόλει, τοὺς δὲ Φοίνικας κατὰ τὸν ἐπέκεινα τοῦ χώματος
city the and Phoenicians at the beyond the mole
τὸν πρὸς Αἴγυπτον ἀνέχοντα, ἵνα καὶ αὐτῷ ἡ σκηνὴ ἦν.
the toward Egypt facing where also for-him the tent was

21.1 ἤδη δὲ καὶ μηχανοποιῶν αὐτῷ πολλῶν ἔκ τε Κύπρου
already and also engineers for-him many from both Cyprus
καὶ Φοινίκης ἁπάσης συλλελεγμένων μηχαναὶ πολλαὶ
and Phoenicia whole having-been-collected engines many
συμπεπηγμέναι ἦσαν, αἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τοῦ χώματος, αἱ
having-been-fixed-together were the-ones indeed on the mole the-others
δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἱππαγωγῶν νεῶν, ἃς ἐκ Σιδῶνος ἅμα
and on the horse-transport ships which from Sidon together-with
οἱ ἐκόμισεν, αἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων ὅσαι αὐτῶν
him he-brought the-others and on the triremes as-many-as of-them
οὐ ταχυναυτοῦσαι ἦσαν.
not fast-sailing were

21.2 ὡς δὲ παρεσκεύαστο ἤδη ξύμπαντα, προσῆγον τὰς
when and had-been-prepared already all-things they-brought-up the
μηχανὰς κατά τε τὸ ποιητὸν χῶμα καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν νεῶν
engines along both the made mole and from the ships
ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τοῦ τείχους προσορμιζομένων τε καὶ
here and there to-the wall anchoring both and
ἀποπειρωμένων τοῦ τείχους.
trying-out the wall

21.3 οἱ δὲ Τύριοι ἐπί τε τῶν ἐπάλξεων τῶν κατὰ τὸ χῶμα
the and Tyrians on both the battlements the along the mole
πύργους ξυλίνους ἐπέστησαν, ὡς ἀπομάχεσθαι ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν,
towers wooden set-up so-as to-fight-back from them
καὶ εἴ πῃ ἄλλῃ αἱ μηχαναὶ προσήγοντο, βέλεσί
and if somewhere elsewhere the engines were-being-brought-up with-missiles
τε ἠμύνοντο καὶ πυρφόροις οἰστοῖς ἔβαλλον αὐτὰς
both they-defended-themselves and with-fire-bearing arrows they-shot the-very

τὰς ναῦς, ὥστε φόβον παρέχειν τοῖς Μακεδόσι πελάζειν
the ships so-as fear to-cause for-the Macedonians to-approach
τῷ τείχει.
the wall
ἦν δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὰ τείχη τὰ κατὰ τὸ χῶμα τό τε 21.4
were and for-them also the walls the along the mole the both
ὕψος εἰς πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν μάλιστα πόδας καὶ
height about fifty and hundred roughly feet and
ἐς πλάτος ξύμμετρον λίθοις μεγάλοις ἐν γύψῳ κειμένοις
in breadth proportionate with-stones large in gypsum set
ξυμπεπηγότα. ταῖς δὲ ἱππαγωγοῖς τε καὶ ταῖς τριήρεσι
fitted-together for-the and horse-transports both and for-the triremes
τῶν Μακεδόνων, ὅσαι τὰς μηχανὰς προσῆγον τῷ
of-the Macedonians as-many-as the engines brought-up to-the
τείχει, καὶ ταύτῃ οὐκ εὔπορον ἐγίγνετο πελάζειν τῇ πόλει,
wall also there not easy was to-approach the city
ὅτι λίθοι πολλοὶ ἐς τὸ πέλαγος προβεβλημένοι ἐξεῖργον
because stones many into the sea thrown-in-front kept-off
αὐτῶν τὴν ἐγγὺς προσβολήν.
their the close attack
καὶ τούτους Ἀλέξανδρος ἔγνω ἐξελκύσαι ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης· 21.5
and these Alexander decided to-drag-out from the sea
ἠνύετο δὲ χαλεπῶς τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον, οἷα δὴ ἀπὸ
was-accomplished but with-difficulty this the work as indeed from
νεῶν καὶ οὐκ ἀπὸ γῆς βεβαίου γιγνόμενον· ἄλλως τε καὶ
ships and not from land firm being-done especially both also
οἱ Τύριοι ναῦς καταφράξαντες παρὰ τὰς ἀγκύρας ἐπῆγον
the Tyrians ships having-armored along the anchors brought-up
τῶν τριήρων καὶ ὑποτέμνοντες τὰς σχοίνους τῶν ἀγκυρῶν
of-the triremes and cutting-under the cables of-the anchors
ἄπορον τὴν προσόρμισιν ταῖς πολεμίαις ναυσὶν ἐποίουν.
impossible the mooring for-the enemy ships made

21.6 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τριακοντόρους πολλὰς ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν
Alexander and thirty-oared-ships many in the same
τρόπον φράξας ἐπέστησεν ἐγκαρσίας πρὸ τῶν ἀγκυρῶν,
manner having-armored stationed crosswise before the anchors
ὡς ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀναστέλλεσθαι τὸν ἐπίπλουν τῶν νεῶν.
so-that from them to-be-checked the attack of-the ships
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὣς ὕφαλοι κολυμβηταὶ τὰς σχοίνους αὐτοῖς
but even so under-water divers the cables for-them
ὑπέτεμνον. οἱ δὲ ἁλύσεσιν ἀντὶ σχοίνων εἰς τὰς ἀγκύρας
cut the and with-chains instead-of cables for the anchors
χρώμενοι, οἱ Μακεδόνες, καθίεσαν, ὥστε μηδὲν ἔτι
using the Macedonians let-down so-that nothing any-longer
πλέον τοῖς κολυμβηταῖς γίγνεσθαι.
more for-the divers to-be

21.7 ἐξάπτοντες οὖν βρόχους τῶν λίθων ἀπὸ τοῦ χώματος
fastening then nooses of-the stones from the mole
ἀνέσπων αὐτοὺς ἔξω τῆς θαλάσσης, ἔπειτα μηχαναῖς
they-hauled them out-of the sea then with-engines
μετεωρίσαντες κατὰ βάθους ἀφίεσαν, ἵνα οὐκέτι
having-lifted into deep they-let-go where no-longer
προβεβλημένοι βλάψειν ἔμελλον. ὅπου δὲ καθαρὸν
thrown-in-front to-harm they-were-likely where and clear
πεποίητο τῶν προβόλων τὸ τεῖχος, οὐ χαλεπῶς ἤδη
had-been-made of-the obstacles the wall not with-difficulty now
ταύτῃ αἱ νῆες προσεῖχον.
there the ships put-in

21.8 οἱ δὲ Τύριοι πάντῃ ἄποροι γιγνόμενοι ἔγνωσαν ἐπίπλουν
the and Tyrians on-every-side at-a-loss becoming decided an-attack
ποιήσασθαι ταῖς Κυπρίαις ναυσίν, αἳ κατὰ τὸν λιμένα
to-make on-the Cyprian ships which at the harbor
ἐφώρμουν τὸν ἐς Σιδῶνα τετραμμένον· ἐκ πολλοῦ δὴ
lay-at-anchor the toward Sidon facing from long-before indeed

καταπετάσαντες τὸ στόμα τοῦ λιμένος ἱστίοις, τοῦ μὴ
having-spread-over the mouth of-the harbor with-sails for-the not
καταφανῆ γενέσθαι τῶν τριήρων τὴν πλήρωσιν, ἀμφὶ μέσον
visible to-become of-the triremes the manning about middle
ἡμέρας, ὁπότε οἵ τε ναῦται ἐπὶ τὰ ἀναγκαῖα ἐσκεδασμένοι
of-day when the both sailors to the necessities scattered
ἦσαν καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐν τούτῳ μάλιστα ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐπὶ
were and Alexander in this most from the on
θάτερα τῆς πόλεως ναυτικοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἀπεχώρει,
the-other-side of-the city fleet to the tent withdrew
πληρώσαντες πεντήρεις μὲν τρεῖς καὶ τετρήρεις ἴσας,
having-manned quinqueremes indeed three and quadriremes equal
τριήρεις δὲ ἑπτὰ ὡς ἀκριβεστάτοις τε τοῖς πληρώμασι 21.9
triremes and seven as with-most-exact both the crews
καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν καταστρωμάτων μάχεσθαι μέλλουσιν
and the from the decks to-fight about-to
εὐοπλοτάτοις καὶ ἅμα εὐθαρσεστάτοις ἐς τοὺς
with-best-armed and at-the-same-time most-courageous for the
ναυτικοὺς ἀγῶνας, τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἀτρέμα τῇ εἰρεσίᾳ
naval contests the indeed first quietly with-the rowing
ἐπὶ μιᾶς νεὼς ἐξέπλεον ἄνευ κελευστῶν τὰς κώπας
in single ship sailed-out without boatswains the oars
παραφέροντες· ὡς δὲ ἐπέστρεφον ἤδη ἐπὶ τοὺς
moving-aside when and they-turned already against the
Κυπρίους καὶ ἐγγὺς τοῦ καθορᾶσθαι ἦσαν, τότε δὴ
Cyprians and near the to-be-seen they-were then indeed
ξὺν βοῇ τε πολλῇ καὶ ἐγκελευσμῷ ἐς ἀλλήλους καὶ
with shout both great and cheering to one-another and
ἅμα τῇ εἰρεσίᾳ ξυντόνῳ ἐπεφέροντο.
at-the-same-time with-the rowing vigorous they-bore-down

The Tyrian sortie sinks several Cypriot ships, but Alexander returns early, sails around the city, and disables or takes most of their ships at the harbor mouth. Probing the walls, he breaches the south wall. Admetus leads the shield-bearers over the bridges from the ships and dies on the wall, and Alexander follows. The Phoenicians and Cypriots force both harbors. The Macedonians, angered by the long siege and by Tyrians who had killed captives on the wall, kill some eight thousand; about four hundred Macedonians fall in the whole siege. Those in the temple of Heracles, the king among them, are spared, and about thirty thousand are sold. Alexander sacrifices to Heracles with a procession and games and dedicates his engine and a Tyrian ship to him.

22.1 ξυνέβη δὲ ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀποχωρῆσαι μὲν
it-happened and on-that the day Alexander to-withdraw indeed
ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνήν, οὐ διατρίψαντα δὲ κατὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς δι᾽
to the tent not having-stayed but according-to the customary in
ὀλίγου ἐπὶ τὰς ναῦς ἐπανελθεῖν.
short-time to the ships to-return

22.2 οἱ δὲ Τύριοι προσπεσόντες ἀπροσδοκήτως ταῖς ναυσὶν
the and Tyrians having-fallen-on unexpectedly the ships
ὁρμούσαις καὶ ταῖς μὲν πάντῃ κεναῖς ἐπιτυχόντες,
lying-at-anchor and the-ones indeed altogether empty having-found
τῶν δ᾽ ὑπ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν βοὴν καὶ τὸν ἐπίπλουν χαλεπῶς
the-others and at itself the shout and the attack with-difficulty
ἐκ τῶν παρόντων πληρουμένων, τήν τε Πνυταγόρου
from the at-hand being-manned the both of-Pnytagoras
τοῦ βασιλέως πεντήρη εὐθὺς ὑπὸ τῇ πρώτῃ ἐμβολῇ
the king quinquereme at-once at the first charge
κατέδυσαν καὶ τὴν Ἀνδροκλέους τοῦ Ἀμαθουσίου καὶ
they-sank and the of-Androcles the Amathusian and

τὴν Πασικράτους τοῦ Κουριέως, τὰς δὲ ἄλλας ἐς τὸν
the of-Pasicrates the Curian the and others onto the
αἰγιαλὸν ἐξωθοῦντες ἔκοπτον.
beach pushing they-battered
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ᾔσθετο τὸν ἔκπλουν τῶν Τυρίων 22.3
Alexander and when he-perceived the sailing-out of-the Tyrian
τριήρων, τὰς μὲν πολλὰς τῶν ξὺν αὐτῷ νεῶν,
triremes the indeed most of-the with him ships
ὅπως ἑκάστη πληρωθείη, ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος
as each was-manned at the mouth of-the harbor
ἀνακωχεύειν ἔταξεν, ὡς μὴ καὶ ἄλλαι ἐκπλεύσειαν τῶν
to-lie-to posted so-that not also others might-sail-out of-the
Τυρίων νηῶν· αὐτὸς δὲ πεντήρεις τε τὰς ξὺν αὐτῷ
Tyrian ships he-himself and quinqueremes both the with him
ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τῶν τριήρων ἐς πέντε μάλιστα, ὅσαι
having-taken and of-the triremes about five roughly as-many-as
ἔφθησαν αὐτῷ κατὰ τάχος πληρωθεῖσαι, περιέπλει τὴν
were-first for-him with speed manned sailed-around the
πόλιν ὡς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἐκπεπλευκότας τῶν Τυρίων.
city as against the having-sailed-out of-the Tyrians
οἱ δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους, τόν τε ἐπίπλουν τῶν πολεμίων 22.4
the and from the wall the both attack of-the enemy
κατιδόντες καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, βοῇ
having-seen and Alexander himself on the ships with-shout
τε ἐπανάγειν ἐνεκελεύοντο τοῖς ἐκ τῶν σφετέρων νεῶν
both to-put-back urged the from the own ships
καὶ ὡς οὐκ ἐξακουστὸν ἦν ὑπὸ θορύβου ξυνεχομένων ἐν
and as not audible it-was by uproar being-engaged in
τῷ ἔργῳ, σημείοις ἄλλοις καὶ ἄλλοις ἐπεκάλουν ἐς τὴν
the action with-signals other and other called for the

ἀναχώρησιν. οἱ δὲ ὀψέ ποτε αἰσθόμενοι τὸν ἐπίπλουν τῶν
retreat they and late at-last having-perceived the attack of-the
ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ὑποστρέψαντες ἐς τὸν λιμένα ἔφευγον.
around Alexander having-turned into the harbor fled
22.5 καὶ ὀλίγαι μὲν τῶν νεῶν φθάνουσιν ὑπεκφυγοῦσαι, ταῖς δὲ
and few indeed of-the ships get-in-time having-escaped the and
πλείοσιν ἐμβαλοῦσαι αἱ ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὰς μὲν αὐτῶν
greater-part having-rammed the with Alexander the-ones indeed of-them
ἄπλους ἐποίησαν, πεντήρης δέ τις καὶ τετρήρης αὐτῶν
unseaworthy made a-quinquereme and some and a-quadrireme of-them
ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τῷ στόματι τοῦ λιμένος ἐλήφθησαν. φόνος
at itself the mouth of-the harbor were-taken slaughter
δὲ τῶν ἐπιβατῶν οὐ πολὺς ἐγένετο. ὡς γὰρ ᾔσθοντο
and of-the marines not great took-place when for they-perceived
ἐχομένας τὰς ναῦς ἀπενήξαντο οὐ χαλεπῶς ἐς τὸν λιμένα.
held the ships they-swam-off not with-difficulty into the harbor
22.6 ὡς δὲ οὐδεμία ἔτι τοῖς Τυρίοις ἐκ τῶν νεῶν ὠφέλεια
when and no longer for-the Tyrians from the ships help
ἦν, ἐπῆγον ἤδη οἱ Μακεδόνες τὰς μηχανὰς τῷ τείχει
was brought-up already the Macedonians the engines to-the wall
αὐτῶν. κατὰ μὲν δὴ τὸ χῶμα προσαγόμεναι διὰ
their along indeed indeed the mole being-brought-up because-of
ἰσχὺν τοῦ τείχους οὐδὲν ἤνυον ὅ τι καὶ λόγου
strength of-the wall nothing they-accomplished what ever even of-account
ἄξιον, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὸ πρὸς Σιδῶνα τετραμμένον τῆς
worthy the-ones and along the toward Sidon facing of-the
πόλεως τῶν νεῶν τινας τῶν μηχανοφόρων προσῆγον.
city of-the ships some of-the engine-bearing brought-up
22.7 ὡς δὲ οὐδὲ ταύτῃ ἤνυεν, ἐς τὸ πρὸς νότον αὖ
when and not-even there he-succeeded to the toward south again
ἄνεμον καὶ πρὸς Αἴγυπτον ἀνέχον τεῖχος μετῄει πάντῃ
wind and toward Egypt facing wall he-moved-on on-every-side

ἀποπειρώμενος τοῦ ἔργου. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πρῶτον κατεσείσθη
testing the work and there first was-shaken
τε τὸ τεῖχος ἐπὶ μέγα καί τι καὶ κατηρίφθη αὐτοῦ
both the wall to great-extent and some-(part) also was-thrown-down of-it
παραρραγέν. τότε μὲν δὴ ὅσον ἐπιβαλὼν γεφύρας ᾗ
broken-off then indeed indeed only-so-much having-thrown bridges where
ἐρήριπτο τοῦ τείχους ἀπεπειράθη ἐς ὀλίγον τῆς προσβολῆς·
it-had-fallen of-the wall he-made-trial to small-extent of-the assault
καὶ οἱ Τύριοι οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀπεκρούσαντο τοὺς Μακεδόνας.
and the Tyrians not with-difficulty beat-off the Macedonians
τρίτῃ δὲ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἡμέρᾳ νηνεμίαν τε φυλάξας 23.1
on-the-third and from this day calm both having-watched-for
καὶ παρακαλέσας τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τῶν τάξεων ἐς τὸ
and having-exhorted the commanders of-the battalions for the
ἔργον ἐπῆγε τῇ πόλει ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν τὰς μηχανάς.
work he-led-against the city on the ships the engines
καὶ πρῶτα μὲν κατέσεισε τοῦ τείχους ἐπὶ μέγα, ὡς
and first indeed he-shook of-the wall to great-extent when
δὲ ἀποχρῶν εἰς πλάτος ἐφάνη τὸ παρερρηγμένον, τὰς
and sufficient in breadth appeared the broken-part the
μὲν μηχανοφόρους ναῦς ἐπανάγειν ἐκέλευσεν·
indeed engine-bearing ships to-withdraw he-ordered
ὁ δὲ δύο ἄλλας ἐπῆγεν, αἳ τὰς γεφύρας αὐτῷ ἔφερον, ἃς 23.2
he and two others brought-up which the bridges for-him carried which
δὴ ἐπιβάλλειν ἐπενόει τῷ κατερρηγμένῳ τοῦ τείχους.
indeed to-throw-on he-intended to-the broken-part of-the wall
καὶ τὴν μὲν μίαν τῶν νεῶν οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ ἔλαβον, ᾗ
and the indeed one of-the ships the shield-bearers took over-which
ἐπετέτακτο Ἄδμητος, τὴν ἑτέραν δὲ ἡ Κοίνου τάξις οἱ
had-been-set Admetus the other and the of-Coenus battalion the

πεζέταιροι καλούμενοι, καὶ αὐτὸς ξὺν τοῖς ὑπασπισταῖς
foot-companions called and himself with the shield-bearers
ἐπιβήσεσθαι τοῦ τείχους ᾗ παρείκοι ἔμελλεν.
to-mount the wall where it-should-allow was-about

23.3 τὰς τριήρεις δὲ τὰς μὲν ἐπιπλεῖν κατὰ τοὺς λιμένας
the triremes and the-ones indeed to-sail-against along the harbors
ἀμφοτέρους ἐκέλευσεν, εἴ πως πρὸς σφᾶς τετραμμένων
both he-ordered if somehow toward themselves turned
τῶν Τυρίων βιάσαιντο τὸν ἔσπλουν· ὅσαι δὲ αὐτῶν
the Tyrians they-might-force the entrance as-many-as and of-them
βέλη ἀπὸ μηχανῶν βαλλόμενα εἶχον ἢ ὅσαι τοξότας
missiles from engines shot had or as-many-as archers
ἐπὶ τῶν καταστρωμάτων ἔφερον, ταύτας δὲ ἐκέλευσεν
on the decks carried these and he-ordered
ἐν κύκλῳ περιπλεούσας τὸ τεῖχος ἐποκέλλειν τε ὅπῃ
in circle sailing-around the wall to-run-aground both wherever
παρείκοι καὶ ἀνακωχεύειν ἐντὸς βέλους, ἔστε τὸ
it-should-allow and to-lie-to within missile-range until the
ἐποκεῖλαι ἄπορον γίγνοιτο, ὡς πανταχόθεν βαλλομένους
to-run-aground impossible should-become so-that from-every-side being-shot
τοὺς Τυρίους ἐν τῷ δεινῷ ἀμφιβόλους γίγνεσθαι.
the Tyrians in the danger beset-on-both-sides to-become

23.4 ὡς δὲ αἵ τε νῆες αἱ σὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ προσέσχον τῇ πόλει
when and the both ships the with Alexander put-in at-the city
καὶ αἱ γέφυραι ἐπεβλήθησαν τῷ τείχει ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν, ἐνταῦθα
and the bridges were-thrown-onto the wall from them there
οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ εὐρώστως κατὰ ταύτας ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὸ
the shield-bearers stoutly along these went-up onto the
τεῖχος. ὅ τε γὰρ Ἄδμητος ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ἐν τῷ τότε
wall the both for Admetus a-man brave in the then
ἐγένετο καὶ ἅμα Ἀλέξανδρος εἵπετο αὐτοῖς, τοῦ τε
proved and at-the-same-time Alexander followed them of-the both

ἔργου αὐτοῦ καρτερῶς ἁπτόμενος καὶ θεατὴς τῶν ἄλλων
work itself vigorously laying-hold and spectator of-the others
ὅτῳ τι λαμπρὸν κατ᾽ ἀρετὴν ἐν τῷ κινδύνῳ ἐτολμᾶτο.
by-whom anything brilliant in valor in the danger was-dared
καὶ ταύτῃ πρῶτον ᾗ ἐπετέτακτο Ἀλέξανδρος ἐλήφθη 23.5
and there first where had-been-stationed Alexander was-taken
τὸ τεῖχος, οὐ χαλεπῶς ἀποκρουσθέντων ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ τῶν
the wall not with-difficulty having-been-beaten-off from it the
Τυρίων, ἐπειδὴ πρῶτον βεβαίῳ τε καὶ ἅμα οὐ
Tyrians as-soon-as first firm both and at-the-same-time not
πάντῃ ἀποτόμῳ τῇ προσβάσει ἐχρήσαντο οἱ Μακεδόνες.
wholly sheer the approach used the Macedonians
καὶ Ἄδμητος μὲν πρῶτος ἐπιβὰς τοῦ τείχους καὶ τοῖς
and Admetus indeed first having-mounted the wall and the
ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἐγκελευόμενος ἐπιβαίνειν βληθεὶς λόγχῃ
around himself urging to-mount having-been-struck by-a-spear
ἀποθνήσκει αὐτοῦ·
dies there
ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτῷ Ἀλέξανδρος ἔσχε τὸ τεῖχος ξὺν τοῖς ἑταίροις. 23.6
after and him Alexander took the wall with the companions
ὡς δὲ εἴχοντο αὐτῷ πύργοι τε ἔστιν οἳ καὶ μεταπύργια,
when and were-held by-him towers both there-are which and curtains
αὐτὸς μὲν παρῄει διὰ τῶν ἐπάλξεων ὡς ἐπὶ τὰ βασίλεια,
he-himself indeed passed through the battlements as toward the palace
ὅτι ταύτῃ εὐπορωτέρα ἐφαίνετο ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἡ κάθοδος.
because there easier appeared into the city the descent
οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, οἵ τε Φοίνικες κατὰ τὸν λιμένα τὸν 24.1
the and on the ships the both Phoenicians at the harbor the
πρὸς Αἰγύπτου, καθ᾽ ὅνπερ καὶ ἐφορμοῦντες ἐτύγχανον,
toward Egypt opposite which-very also lying-at-anchor they-happened
βιασάμενοι καὶ τὰ κλεῖθρα διασπάσαντες ἔκοπτον τὰς ναῦς
having-forced and the booms having-torn-apart battered the ships

ἐν τῷ λιμένι, ταῖς μὲν μετεώροις ἐμβάλλοντες, τὰς δὲ
in the harbor the-ones indeed afloat ramming the-others and
ἐς τὴν γῆν ἐξωθοῦντες, καὶ οἱ Κύπριοι κατὰ τὸν ἄλλον
onto the land pushing and the Cyprians at the other
λιμένα τὸν ἐκ Σιδῶνος φέροντα οὐδὲ κλεῖθρον τοῦτόν
harbor the from Sidon leading not-even a-boom this
γε ἔχοντα εἰσπλεύσαντες εἷλον εὐθὺς ταύτῃ τὴν πόλιν.
at-least having having-sailed-in took at-once there the city
24.2 τὸ δὲ πλῆθος τῶν Τυρίων τὸ μὲν τεῖχος, ὡς ἐχόμενον εἶδον,
the and multitude of-the Tyrians the indeed wall when held they-saw
ἐκλείπουσιν, ἀθροισθέντες δὲ κατὰ τὸ Ἀγηνόριον καλούμενον
abandon having-gathered and at the Agenorium called
ἐπέστρεψαν ταύτῃ ἐπὶ τοὺς Μακεδόνας. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ξὺν
turned there against the Macedonians and Alexander with
τοῖς ὑπασπισταῖς ἐπὶ τούτους χωρήσας τοὺς μὲν αὐτοῦ
the shield-bearers against these having-advanced the indeed there
μαχομένους διέφθειρεν αὐτῶν, τοῖς δὲ φεύγουσιν ἐφείπετο.
fighting destroyed of-them the and fleeing followed
24.3 καὶ φόνος ἦν πολύς, τῶν τε ἀπὸ τοῦ λιμένος ἐχόντων
and slaughter was great of-the both from the harbor holding
ἤδη τὴν πόλιν καὶ τῆς Κοίνου τάξεως παρεληλυθυίας
already the city and of-the of-Coenus battalion having-entered
ἐς αὐτήν. ὀργῇ γὰρ ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ πᾶν οἱ Μακεδόνες, τῆς
into it in-anger for they-went at all the Macedonians of-the
τε πολιορκίας τῇ τριβῇ ἀχθόμενοι καὶ ὅτι λαβόντες
both siege at-the delay vexed and because having-taken
τινὰς αὐτῶν οἱ Τύριοι πλέοντας ἐκ Σιδῶνος ἐπὶ τὸ
some of-them the Tyrians sailing from Sidon onto the
τεῖχος ἀναβιβάσαντες, ὅπως ἄποπτον εἴη ἀπὸ τοῦ
wall having-brought-up so-that in-view it-might-be from the
στρατοπέδου, σφάξαντες ἔρριψαν εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.
camp having-slaughtered threw into the sea

ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν μὲν Τυρίων ἐς ὀκτακισχιλίους, τῶν 24.4
died and of-the indeed Tyrians about eight-thousand of-the
Μακεδόνων δὲ ἐν τῇ τότε προσβολῇ Ἄδμητός τε ὁ
Macedonians and in the then assault Admetus both the
πρῶτος ἑλὼν τὸ τεῖχος, ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς γενόμενος,
first having-taken the wall a-man brave having-proved
καὶ ξὺν αὐτῷ εἴκοσι τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν· ἐν δὲ τῇ πάσῃ
and with him twenty of-the shield-bearers in and the whole
πολιορκίᾳ μάλιστα ἐς τετρακοσίους.
siege roughly about four-hundred
τοῖς δὲ ἐς τὸ ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡρακλέους καταφυγοῦσιν ἦσαν 24.5
to-the and into the temple — of-Heracles having-fled were
δὲ αὐτῶν τε τῶν Τυρίων οἱ μάλιστα ἐν τέλει. καὶ ὁ
and of-them both the Tyrians the most in office and the
βασιλεὺς Ἀζέμιλκος καὶ Καρχηδονίων τινὲς θεωροὶ ἐς τιμὴν
king Azemilcus and of-Carthaginians some envoys for honor
τοῦ Ἡρακλέους κατὰ δή τι νόμιμον παλαιὸν εἰς τὴν
— of-Heracles according-to indeed some custom old to the
μητρόπολιν ἀφικόμενοι τούτοις ξύμπασιν ἄδειαν δίδωσιν
mother-city having-come to-these all amnesty gives
Ἀλέξανδρος· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἠνδραπόδισε, καὶ ἐπράθησαν
Alexander the and others he-enslaved and were-sold
Τυρίων τε καὶ τῶν ξένων ὅσοι ἐγκατελήφθησαν
of-Tyrians both and of-the foreigners as-many-as were-caught
μάλιστα ἐς τρισμυρίους.
roughly about thirty-thousand
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἔθυσέ τε καὶ πομπὴν ἔστειλε 24.6
Alexander and — to-Heracles sacrificed both and a-procession held
ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει ὡπλισμένῃ· καὶ αἱ νῆες ξυνεπόμπευσαν τῷ
with the force armed and the ships joined-in-the-procession —
Ἡρακλεῖ, καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ καὶ λαμπάδα
for-Heracles and a-contest gymnastic in the temple and a-torch-race

ἐποίησε· καὶ τὴν μηχανήν, ᾗ τὸ τεῖχος κατεσείσθη,
he-made and the engine by-which the wall was-shaken
ἀνέθηκεν ἐς τὸν νεὼν καὶ τὴν ναῦν τὴν Τυρίαν τὴν
dedicated in the temple and the ship the Tyrian the
ἱερὰν τοῦ Ἡρακλέους, ἥντινα ἐν τῷ ἐπίπλῳ ἔλαβε, καὶ
sacred — of-Heracles which in the attack he-took also
ταύτην τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἀνέθηκεν καὶ ἐπίγραμμα ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ,
this — to-Heracles dedicated and an-inscription on it
ἢ αὐτὸς ποιήσας ἢ ὅτου δὴ ἄλλου ποιήσαντος.
either himself having-composed or of-whoever indeed other having-composed
οὐκ ἄξιον μνήμης τὸ ἐπίγραμμα· διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἐγὼ αὐτὸ
not worthy of-memory the inscription for this also I it
ἀναγράψαι ἀπηξίωσα. Τύρος μὲν δὴ οὕτως ἑάλω ἐπὶ
to-record thought-unworthy Tyre indeed indeed thus was-taken under
ἄρχοντος Νικήτου Ἀθήνησι μηνὸς Ἑκατομβαιῶνος.
archon Nicetes at-Athens in-the-month Hecatombaeon

Darius offers ten thousand talents for his family, the land west of the Euphrates, and his daughter. Parmenion, it is said, would accept if he were Alexander; so would Alexander, he answers, if he were Parmenion. He replies that all of it is his already, and Darius prepares for war. The eunuch Batis holds Gaza on its high mound, and the engineers judge its wall impossible to take by force. A bird drops a stone on Alexander's head at a sacrifice, and Aristander foretells the city's fall and the king's danger that day. Meeting a sally, Alexander is wounded in the shoulder by a catapult bolt. With Tyre's engines and a mound all around, he takes Gaza at the fourth assault; its defenders die at their posts, and he enslaves the women and children and resettles the city as a fortress.

ἔτι δὲ ἐν τῇ πολιορκίᾳ τῆς Τύρου ξυνεχομένου 25.1
still and in the siege — of-Tyre being-occupied
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀφίκοντο παρὰ Δαρείου πρέσβεις ὡς
Alexander arrived from Darius envoys to
αὐτὸν ἀπαγγέλλοντες μύρια μὲν τάλαντα ὑπὲρ τῆς
him reporting ten-thousand indeed talents for the
μητρός τε καὶ τῆς γυναικὸς καὶ τῶν παίδων δοῦναι
mother both and the wife and the children to-give
ἐθέλειν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ Δαρεῖον· τὴν δὲ χώραν πᾶσαν
to-be-willing to-Alexander Darius the and country all
τὴν ἐντὸς Εὐφράτου ποταμοῦ ἔστε ἐπὶ θάλασσαν
the within Euphrates river as-far to sea
τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου εἶναι· γήμαντα δὲ τὴν
the Greek of-Alexander to-be having-married and the
Δαρείου παῖδα Ἀλέξανδρον φίλον τε εἶναι Δαρείῳ καὶ
of-Darius daughter Alexander friend both to-be to-Darius and
ξύμμαχον.
ally

25.2 καὶ τούτων ἐν τῷ ξυλλόγῳ τῶν ἑταίρων ἀπαγγελθέντων
and these in the council of-the companions having-been-reported
Παρμενίωνα μὲν λέγουσιν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ εἰπεῖν ὅτι
Parmenion indeed they-say to-Alexander to-have-said that
αὐτὸς ἂν Ἀλέξανδρος ὢν ἐπὶ τούτοις ἠγάπησεν
himself — Alexander being on these-terms would-have-been-content
καταλύσας τὸν πόλεμον μηκέτι τὸ πρόσω κινδυνεύειν·
having-ended the war no-longer the further to-run-risk
Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ Παρμενίωνι ἀποκρίνασθαι ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς
Alexander and to-Parmenion to-have-answered that also himself
ἄν, εἴπερ Παρμενίων ἦν, οὕτως ἔπραξεν, ἐπεὶ δὲ
— if-indeed Parmenion he-were so would-have-done since but
Ἀλέξανδρός ἐστιν, ἀποκρινεῖσθαι Δαρείῳ ἅπερ δὴ
Alexander he-is to-be-going-to-answer to-Darius the-very-things indeed
καὶ ἀπεκρίνατο.
also he-answered

25.3 ἔφη γὰρ οὔτε χρημάτων δεῖσθαι παρὰ Δαρείου οὔτε
he-said for neither of-money to-need from Darius nor
τῆς χώρας λαβεῖν ἀντὶ τῆς πάσης τὸ μέρος· εἶναι
of-the country to-receive instead-of the whole the part to-be
γὰρ τά τε χρήματα καὶ τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ πᾶσαν·
for the both money and the country his all
γῆμαί τε εἰ ἐθέλοι τὴν Δαρείου παῖδα, γῆμαι ἂν
to-marry both if he-wished the of-Darius daughter to-marry —
καὶ οὐ διδόντος Δαρείου· ἐκέλευέ τε αὐτὸν ἥκειν, εἴ
even not giving Darius he-bade both him to-come if
τι εὑρέσθαι ἐθέλοι φιλάνθρωπον παρ᾽ αὑτοῦ. ταῦτα
anything to-obtain he-wished kind from him these-things
ὡς ἤκουσε Δαρεῖος, τὰς μὲν ξυμβάσεις ἀπέγνω τὰς
when heard Darius the indeed agreements gave-up the

πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον, ἐν παρασκευῇ δὲ τοῦ πολέμου αὖθις
with Alexander in preparation and of-the war again
ἦν.
was
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐπ᾽ Αἰγύπτου ἔγνω ποιεῖσθαι τὸν 25.4
Alexander and toward Egypt decided to-make the
στόλον. καὶ ἦν αὐτῷ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα τῆς Παλαιστίνης
expedition and were for-him the indeed other-parts of-the of-Palestine
καλουμένης Συρίας προσκεχωρηκότα ἤδη, εὐνοῦχος δέ
called Syria having-come-over already eunuch but
τις, ᾧ ὄνομα ἦν Βάτις, κρατῶν τῆς Γαζαίων πόλεως,
some to-whom name was Batis holding of-the of-Gazaeans city
οὐ προσεῖχεν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ἀλλὰ Ἄραβάς τε μισθωτοὺς
not attended to-Alexander but Arabs both hired
ἐπαγαγόμενος καὶ σῖτον ἐκ πολλοῦ παρεσκευακὼς
having-brought-in and grain from long having-prepared
διαρκῆ ἐς χρόνιον πολιορκίαν καὶ τῷ χωρίῳ πιστεύων
sufficient for long siege and in-the place trusting
μήποτε ἂν βίᾳ ἁλῶναι, ἔγνω μὴ δέχεσθαι τῇ πόλει
never — by-force to-be-captured decided not to-receive into-the city
Ἀλέξανδρον.
Alexander
ἀπέχει δὲ ἡ Γάζα τῆς μὲν θαλάσσης εἴκοσι 26.1
is-distant and — Gaza from-the indeed sea twenty
μάλιστα σταδίους, καὶ ἔστι ψαμμώδης καὶ βαθεῖα
about stades and is sandy and deep
ἐς αὐτὴν ἡ ἄνοδος καὶ ἡ θάλασσα ἡ κατὰ τὴν
to it the ascent and the sea the by the
πόλιν τεναγώδης πᾶσα. μεγάλη δὲ πόλις ἡ Γάζα
city shoaly all large and city — Gaza
ἦν καὶ ἐπὶ χώματος ὑψηλοῦ ᾤκιστο καὶ τεῖχος
was and on a-mound high was-situated and a-wall

περιεβέβλητο αὐτῇ ὀχυρόν. ἐσχάτη δὲ ὠκεῖτο ὡς
had-been-thrown-around it strong last and it-was-inhabited as
ἐπ᾽ Αἴγυπτον ἐκ Φοινίκης ἰόντι ἐπὶ τῇ ἀρχῇ τῆς
toward Egypt from Phoenicia for-one-going at the beginning of-the
ἐρήμου.
desert

26.2 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἀφίκετο πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, τῇ
Alexander and when he-arrived at the city on-the
μὲν πρώτῃ κατεστρατοπέδευσεν ᾗ μάλιστα ἐπίμαχον
indeed first-day encamped where most assailable
αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο τὸ τεῖχος, καὶ μηχανὰς συμπηγνύναι
to-him appeared the wall and engines to-put-together
ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ μηχανοποιοὶ γνώμην ἀπεδείκνυντο
ordered the and engineers opinion declared
ἄπορον εἶναι βίᾳ ἑλεῖν τὸ τεῖχος διὰ ὕψος τοῦ
impossible to-be by-force to-take the wall because-of height of-the
χώματος.
mound

26.3 ἀλλὰ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ αἱρετέον ἐδόκει εἶναι ὅσῳ
but to-Alexander must-be-taken it-seemed to-be by-as-much-as
ἀπορώτερον· ἐκπλήξειν γὰρ τοὺς πολεμίους τὸ ἔργον
more-impossible to-be-going-to-terrify for the enemy the deed
τῷ παραλόγῳ ἐπὶ μέγα, καὶ τὸ μὴ ἑλεῖν αἰσχρὸν
by-the unexpectedness to great and the not to-take shameful
εἶναί οἱ λεγόμενον ἔς τε τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ἐς
to-be for-him being-told to both the Greeks and to
Δαρεῖον. ἐδόκει δὴ χῶμα ἐν κύκλῳ τῆς πόλεως
Darius it-seemed-good indeed a-mound in circle of-the city
χωννύναι, ὡς ἐξ ἴσου ἀπὸ τοῦ χωσθέντος ἐπάγεσθαι
to-build so-that from equal-level from the built-up to-be-brought-up
τὰς μηχανὰς τοῖς τείχεσι. καὶ ἐχώννυτο κατὰ τὸ
the engines to-the walls and was-being-built against the

νότιον μάλιστα τῆς πόλεως τεῖχος, ἵνα ἐπιμαχώτερα
southern most of-the city wall where more-assailable
ἐφαίνετο.
it-appeared
ὡς δὲ ἐδόκει ἐξῆρθαι συμμέτρως τὸ χῶμα, 26.4
when and it-seemed to-have-been-raised proportionately the mound
μηχανὰς ἐπιστήσαντες οἱ Μακεδόνες ἐπῆγον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
engines having-set-up the Macedonians brought-up as toward the
τεῖχος τῶν Γαζαίων. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ θύοντι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
wall of-the Gazaeans and in this sacrificing Alexander
καὶ ἐστεφανωμένῳ τε καὶ κατάρχεσθαι μέλλοντι τοῦ
and crowned both and to-begin being-about the
πρώτου ἱερείου κατὰ νόμον τῶν τις σαρκοφάγων
first victim according-to custom of-the one flesh-eating
ὀρνίθων ὑπερπετόμενος ὑπὲρ τοῦ βωμοῦ λίθον ἐμβάλλει
birds flying over the altar a-stone drops
ἐς τὴν κεφαλήν, ὅντινα τοῖν ποδοῖν ἔφερε. καὶ
onto the head which in-the-two feet it-carried and
Ἀλέξανδρος ἤρετο Ἀρίστανδρον τὸν μάντιν, ὅ τι
Alexander asked Aristander the seer what ever
νοοῖ ὁ οἰωνός. ὁ δὲ ἀποκρίνεται ὅτι· ὦ βασιλεῦ,
means the omen he and answers that O king
τὴν μὲν πόλιν αἱρήσεις, αὐτῷ δέ σοι φυλακτέα
the indeed city you-will-take yourself but for-you to-be-guarded-against
ἐστὶν ἐπὶ τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ. ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ἀλέξανδρος
it-is on this the day these-things having-heard Alexander
τέως μὲν πρὸς ταῖς μηχαναῖς ἔξω βέλους αὑτὸν
for-a-time indeed by the engines outside missile-range himself
εἶχεν·
kept

27.1 ὡς δὲ ἐκδρομή τε ἐκ τῆς πόλεως καρτερὰ ἐγίγνετο
when and a-sally both from the city fierce was-made
καὶ πῦρ τε ἐπέφερον ταῖς μηχαναῖς οἱ Ἄραβες καὶ
and fire both brought to-the engines the Arabs and
τοὺς Μακεδόνας ἀμυνομένους κάτωθεν αὐτοὶ ἐξ
the Macedonians defending-themselves from-below they-themselves from
ὑπερδεξίου τοῦ χωρίου ἔβαλλόν τε καὶ ὤθουν κατὰ
commanding the ground were-shooting both and were-pushing down
τοῦ ποιητοῦ χώματος, ἐνταῦθα ἢ ἑκὼν ἀπειθεῖ
the made mound there either willingly disobeys
Ἀλέξανδρος τῷ μάντει ἢ ἐκπλαγεὶς ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ
Alexander the seer or having-been-carried-away in the action
οὐκ ἐμνημόνευσε τῆς μαντείας, ἀλλ᾽ ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς
not he-remembered the prophecy but having-taken the
ὑπασπιστὰς παρεβοήθει, ἵνα μάλιστα ἐπιέζοντο οἱ
shield-bearers came-to-help where most were-hard-pressed the
Μακεδόνες.
Macedonians

27.2 καὶ τούτους μὲν ἔσχε τὸ μὴ οὐκ αἰσχρᾷ φυγῇ
and these indeed he-prevented the not not with-shameful flight
ὠσθῆναι κατὰ τοῦ χώματος, αὐτὸς δὲ βάλλεται
to-be-pushed down the mound he-himself and is-struck
καταπέλτῃ διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος διαμπὰξ καὶ τοῦ
by-a-catapult-bolt through the shield right-through and the
θώρακος ἐς τὸν ὦμον. ὡς δὲ ἔγνω τὰ ἀμφὶ
breastplate into the shoulder when and he-knew the-things about
τὸ τραῦμα ἀληθεύσαντα Ἀρίστανδρον, ἐχάρη, ὅτι
the wound having-spoken-true Aristander he-rejoiced because
καὶ τὴν πόλιν δὴ αἱρήσειν ἐδόκει Ἀριστάνδρου
also the city indeed to-be-going-to-take he-thought of-Aristander
ἕνεκα.
for-the-sake

καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν τὸ τραῦμα ἐθεραπεύετο χαλεπῶς· 27.3
and himself indeed the wound was-treated with-difficulty
ἀφικνοῦνται δ' αὐτῷ μετάπεμπτοι ἀπὸ θαλάσσης αἱ
arrive and for-him sent-for from sea the
μηχαναί, αἷς Τύρον εἷλε. καὶ χῶμα χωννύναι ἐν
engines with-which Tyre he-took and a-mound to-build in
κύκλῳ πάντοθεν τῆς πόλεως ἐκέλευσεν, εὖρος μὲν
circle on-all-sides of-the city he-ordered in-breadth indeed
ἐς δύο σταδίους, ὕψος δὲ ἐς πόδας πεντήκοντα καὶ
about two stades in-height and about feet fifty and
διακοσίους.
two-hundred
ὡς δὲ αἵ τε μηχαναὶ αὐτῷ ἐποιήθησαν καὶ ἐπαχθεῖσαι 27.4
when and the both engines for-him had-been-made and having-been-brought-up
κατὰ τὸ χῶμα κατέσεισαν τοῦ τείχους ἐπὶ πολύ,
along the mound shook-down of-the wall to great-extent
ὑπονόμων τε ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ ὀρυσσομένων καὶ τοῦ
tunnels both here and there being-dug and the
χοῦ ἀφανῶς ἐκφερομένου τὸ τεῖχος πολλαχῇ ἠρείπετο
earth unseen being-carried-out the wall in-many-places fell
ὑφιζάνον κατὰ τὸ κενούμενον, τοῖς τε βέλεσιν
settling into the being-emptied with-the both missiles
ἐπὶ πολὺ κατεῖχον οἱ Μακεδόνες ἀναστέλλοντες
over great-extent held the Macedonians driving-back
τοὺς προμαχομένους τῶν πύργων, ἐς μὲν τρεῖς
the defenders of-the towers for indeed three
προσβολὰς οἱ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἀποθνησκόντων
assaults the from the city dying
τε αὐτοῖς πολλῶν καὶ τιτρωσκομένων ὅμως
both of-them many and being-wounded nevertheless
ἀντεῖχον.
held-out

27.5 τῇ τετάρτῃ δὲ τῶν Μακεδόνων τὴν φάλαγγα πάντοθεν
in-the fourth and of-the Macedonians the phalanx from-all-sides
προσαγαγὼν Ἀλέξανδρος τῇ μὲν ὑπορυσσόμενον
having-brought-up Alexander in-one-part indeed being-undermined
τὸ τεῖχος καταβάλλει, τῇ δὲ παιόμενον ταῖς
the wall throws-down in-another and being-struck by-the
μηχαναῖς κατασείει ἐπὶ πολύ, ὡς μὴ χαλεπὴν
engines shakes-down to great-extent so-that not difficult
ταῖς κλίμαξιν τὴν προσβολὴν κατὰ τὰ ἐρηριμμένα
for-the ladders the assault on the fallen-parts
ἐνδοῦναι.
to-allow

27.6 αἵ τε οὖν κλίμακες προσήγοντο τῷ τείχει καὶ ἔρις πολλὴ
the both then ladders were-brought-up to-the wall and rivalry great
ἦν τῶν Μακεδόνων, ὅσοι τι ἀρετῆς μετεποιοῦντο,
was of-the Macedonians as-many-as any of-valor laid-claim-to
ὅστις πρῶτος αἱρήσει τὸ τεῖχος· καὶ αἱρεῖ πρῶτος
who first will-take the wall and takes first
Νεοπτόλεμος τῶν ἑταίρων τοῦ Αἰακιδῶν γένους· ἐπὶ δὲ
Neoptolemus of-the companions of-the of-Aeacids race after and
αὐτῷ ἄλλαι καὶ ἄλλαι τάξεις ὁμοῦ τοῖς ἡγεμόσιν
him others and others battalions together-with the commanders
ἀνέβαινον.
went-up

27.7 ὡς δὲ ἅπαξ παρῆλθόν τινες ἐντὸς τοῦ τείχους
when and once came-in some within the wall
τῶν Μακεδόνων, κατασχίσαντες ἄλλας καὶ ἄλλας
of-the Macedonians having-split-open others and others
πύλας, ὅσαις ἕκαστοι ἐπετύγχανον, δέχονται εἴσω
gates as-many-as each happened-upon they-receive inside
τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν. οἱ δὲ Γαζαῖοι καὶ τῆς
the army whole the and Gazaeans also the

πόλεώς σφισιν ἤδη ἐχομένης ξυνεστηκότες ὅμως
city for-them already being-held having-gathered nevertheless
ἐμάχοντο, καὶ ἀπέθανον πάντες αὐτοῦ μαχόμενοι
fought and died all there fighting
ὡς ἕκαστοι ἐτάχθησαν· παῖδας δὲ καὶ γυναῖκας
as each were-posted children but and women
ἐξηνδραπόδισεν αὐτῶν Ἀλέξανδρος. τὴν πόλιν δὲ
he-enslaved of-them Alexander the city and
ξυνοικίσας ἐκ τῶν περιοίκων ἐχρῆτο ὅσα φρουρίῳ ἐς
having-resettled from the neighbors he-used as a-fortress for
τὸν πόλεμον.
the war

BOOK III

I · EGYPT, ALEXANDRIA, AND AMMON

Mazaces surrenders Egypt without a fight, and Alexander sacrifices to Apis at Memphis. On the coast he lays out Alexandria; a story Arrian credits has its lines marked with barley meal, which the seers read as a sign of plenty. Hegelochus brings the prisoners from Chios and reports the Aegean recovered. Alexander goes to the oracle of Ammon, as Perseus and Heracles had, and rain and two guides, serpents in Ptolemy's account and ravens in Aristobulus', save the army in the desert. Arrian describes the oasis, its salt, and its spring that warms by night. Back at Memphis Alexander divides Egypt's government among many men, a caution Arrian thinks Rome learned from him.

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐπ᾽ Αἰγύπτου, ἵναπερ τὸ πρῶτον 1.1
Alexander and toward Egypt where-indeed the first
ὡρμήθη, ἐστέλλετο, καὶ ἑβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀπὸ τῆς Γάζης
he-had-set-out set-out and on-the-seventh day from — Gaza
ἐλαύνων ἦκεν εἰς Πηλούσιον τῆς Αἰγύπτου. ὁ δὲ ναυτικὸς
marching came to Pelusium — of-Egypt the and naval
στρατὸς παρέπλει αὐτῷ ἐκ Φοινίκης ὡς ἐπ᾽ Αἴγυπτον·
force sailed-along with-him from Phoenicia as toward Egypt
καὶ καταλαμβάνει τὰς ναῦς ἐν Πηλουσίῳ ὁρμούσας.
and he-finds the ships in Pelusium lying-at-anchor
Μαζάκης δὲ ὁ Πέρσης, ὃς ἦν σατράπης Αἰγύπτου 1.2
Mazaces and the Persian who was satrap of-Egypt
ἐκ Δαρείου καθεστηκώς, τήν τε ἐν Ἰσσῷ μάχην ὅπως
by Darius appointed the both at Issus battle how
συνέβη πεπυσμένος καὶ Δαρεῖον ὅτι αἰσχρᾷ φυγῇ ἔφυγεν,
it-had-gone having-learned and Darius that in-shameful flight had-fled
καὶ Φοινίκην τε καὶ Συρίαν καὶ τῆς Ἀραβίας τὰ πολλὰ
and Phoenicia both and Syria and — of-Arabia the most

ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐχόμενα, αὐτῷ τε οὐκ οὔσης δυνάμεως
by Alexander held for-himself both not there-being force
Περσικῆς, ἐδέχετο ταῖς τε πόλεσι φιλίως καὶ τῇ
Persian received with-the both cities in-friendly-fashion and with-the
χώρᾳ Ἀλέξανδρον.
country Alexander

1.3 ὁ δὲ εἰς μὲν Πηλούσιον φυλακὴν εἰσήγαγε, τοὺς δὲ ἐπὶ
he and into indeed Pelusium a-garrison brought-in the and on
τῶν νεῶν ἀναπλεῖν κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν κελεύσας ἔστε
the ships to-sail-up along the river having-ordered as-far
ἐπὶ Μέμφιν πόλιν αὐτὸς ἐφ' Ἡλιουπόλεως ᾔει, ἐν δεξιᾷ
to Memphis city he-himself toward Heliopolis went on right
ἔχων τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Νεῖλον, καὶ ὅσα καθ' ὁδὸν
keeping the river — Nile and as-many-as along road
χωρία ἐνδιδόντων τῶν ἐνοικούντων κατασχὼν διὰ τῆς
places surrendering the inhabitants having-occupied through the
ἐρήμου ἀφίκετο ἐς Ἡλιούπολιν·
desert arrived at Heliopolis

1.4 ἐκεῖθεν δὲ διαβὰς τὸν πόρον ἦκεν ἐς Μέμφιν· καὶ
thence and having-crossed the stream came to Memphis and
θύει ἐκεῖ τοῖς τε ἄλλοις θεοῖς καὶ τῷ Ἄπιδι καὶ ἀγῶνα
sacrifices there to-the both other gods and — to-Apis and a-contest
ἐποίησε γυμνικόν τε καὶ μουσικόν· ἦκον δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ
made gymnastic both and musical came and to-him the
ἀμφὶ ταῦτα τεχνῖται ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος οἱ δοκιμώτατοι.
about these-things artists from — Greece the most-renowned
ἐκ δὲ Μέμφιος κατέπλει κατὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ὡς ἐπὶ
from and Memphis sailed-down along the river as toward
θάλασσαν τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν λαβὼν
sea the both shield-bearers on the ships having-taken

καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τῶν ἱππέων
and the archers and the Agrianians and of-the cavalry
τὴν βασιλικὴν ἴλην τὴν τῶν ἑταίρων.
the royal squadron the of-the companions
ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐς Κάνωβον καὶ κατὰ τὴν λίμνην τὴν 1.5
having-come and to Canobus and along the lake the
Μαρίαν περιπλεύσας ἀποβαίνει, ὅτου νῦν Ἀλεξάνδρεια
Mareian having-sailed-around disembarks where now Alexandria
πόλις ᾤκισται, Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπώνυμος. καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ
city has-been-founded of-Alexander named-after and seemed to-him
ὁ χῶρος κάλλιστος κτίσαι ἐν αὐτῷ πόλιν καὶ γενέσθαι
the place most-beautiful to-found in it a-city and to-become
ἂν εὐδαίμονα τὴν πόλιν. πόθος οὖν λαμβάνει αὐτὸν τοῦ
— prosperous the city longing then seizes him for-the
ἔργου, καὶ αὐτὸς τὰ σημεῖα τῇ πόλει ἔθηκεν, ἵνα τε
work and himself the marks for-the city laid-down where both
ἀγορὰν ἐν αὐτῇ δείμασθαι ἔδει καὶ ἱερὰ ὅσα
a-market-place in it to-build was-necessary and temples how-many
καὶ θεῶν ὧντινων, τῶν μὲν Ἑλληνικῶν, Ἴσιδος δὲ
and of-gods of-which the indeed Greek of-Isis and
Αἰγυπτίας, καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ᾗ περιβεβλῆσθαι. καὶ ἐπὶ
Egyptian and the wall where to-be-thrown-around and for
τούτοις ἐθύετο, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἐφαίνετο.
these he-sacrificed and the sacrifices favorable appeared
λέγεται δέ τις καὶ τοιόσδε λόγος, οὐκ ἄπιστος ἔμοιγε· 2.1
is-told and some also such a-story not incredible to-me-at-least
ἐθέλειν μὲν Ἀλέξανδρον καταλείπειν αὐτὸν τὰ σημεῖα
to-wish indeed Alexander to-leave himself the marks
τοῦ τειχισμοῦ τοῖς τέκτοσιν, οὐκ εἶναι δὲ ὅτῳ τὴν
of-the walling for-the builders not to-be but with-what the
γῆν ἐπιγράψουσιν· τῶν δὴ τεκτόνων τινὰ ἐπιφρασθέντα,
ground they-would-mark-out of-the indeed builders one having-thought-of

ὅσα ἐν τεύχεσιν ἄλφιτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἐκόμιζον
as-much-as in vessels barley-meal the soldiers carried
ξυναγαγόντα ἐπιβάλλειν τῇ γῇ, ἵναπερ ὁ βασιλεὺς
having-collected to-throw on-the ground where-indeed the king
ὑφηγεῖτο, καὶ τὸν κύκλον οὕτω περιγραφῆναι τοῦ
led-the-way and the circle so to-be-traced of-the
περιτειχισμοῦ, ὅντινα τῇ πόλει ἐποίει.
circuit-wall which for-the city he-was-making

2.2 τοῦτο δὲ ἐπιλεξαμένους τοὺς μάντεις καὶ μάλιστα δὴ
this and having-considered the seers and most indeed
Ἀρίστανδρον τὸν Τελμισσέα, ὃς δὴ πολλὰ μὲν καὶ
Aristander the Telmissian who indeed many-things indeed also
ἄλλα ἀληθεῦσαι ἐλέγετο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, φάναι εὐδαίμονα
other to-have-spoken-truly was-said to-Alexander to-say prosperous
ἔσεσθαι τὴν πόλιν τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τῶν ἐκ γῆς
to-be-going-to-be the city the both other-things and of-the from earth
καρπῶν εἵνεκα.
fruits for-the-sake

2.3 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Ἡγέλοχος κατέπλευσεν εἰς Αἴγυπτον
in this and also Hegelochus sailed-in to Egypt
καὶ ἀπαγγέλλει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ Τενεδίους τε ἀποστάντας
and reports to-Alexander Tenedians both having-revolted
Περσῶν σφίσι προσθέσθαι καὶ γὰρ καὶ ἄκοντας Πέρσαις
from-Persians to-them to-have-gone-over and for also unwilling to-Persians
προσχωρῆσαι καὶ Χίων ὅτι δὴ ὁ δῆμος ἐπηγάγετο
to-have-come-over and of-Chians that indeed the people brought-in
σφᾶς βίᾳ τῶν κατεχόντων τὴν πόλιν, οὓς Αὐτοφραδάτης
them by-force of-the holding the city whom Autophradates
τε καὶ Φαρνάβαζος ἐγκατέστησαν·
both and Pharnabazus had-installed

ἁλῶναι δὲ αὐτόθι καὶ Φαρνάβαζον ἐγκαταληφθέντα 2.4
to-have-been-caught and there also Pharnabazus overtaken
καὶ Ἀριστόνικον Μηθυμναῖον τὸν τύραννον ἐσπλεύσαντα ἐς
and Aristonicus the-Methymnaean the tyrant having-sailed-in into
τὸν λιμένα τῆς Χίου ξὺν ἡμιολίαις λῃστρικαῖς πέντε, ὑπὸ
the harbor — of-Chios with half-deckers piratical five by
σφῶν ἐχόμενον τὸν λιμένα οὐ γνόντα, ἀλλ᾽ ἐξαπατηθέντα
them held the harbor not knowing but deceived
γὰρ πρὸς τῶν τὰ κλεῖθρα ἐχόντων τοῦ λιμένος, ὅτι τὸ
for by the the booms holding of-the harbor that the
Φαρναβάζου ἄρα ναυτικὸν ὁρμεῖ ἐν αὐτῷ·
of-Pharnabazus then fleet lies-at-anchor in it
καὶ τοὺς μὲν λῃστὰς πάντας αὐτοῦ κατακοπῆναι πρὸς 2.5
and the indeed pirates all there to-have-been-cut-down by
σφῶν, Ἀριστόνικον δὲ ἦγε παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ
them Aristonicus and he-brought to Alexander and
Ἀπολλωνίδην τὸν Χῖον καὶ Φησῖνον καὶ Μεγαρέα καὶ
Apollonides the Chian and Phesinus and Megareus and
τοὺς ἄλλους, ὅσοι τῆς τε ἀποστάσεως τῆς Χίων
the others as-many-as of-the both revolt the of-Chians
ξυνεπελάβοντο καὶ ἐν τῷ τότε τὰ πράγματα τῆς νήσου
had-taken-part and in the then the affairs of-the island
βίᾳ εἶχον·
by-force held
καὶ Μιτυλήνην δὲ Χάρητα ἔχοντα ὅτι ἀφείλετο καὶ 2.6
and Mytilene and Chares holding that he-had-taken-away and
τὰς ἄλλας τὰς ἐν Λέσβῳ πόλεις καὶ αὐτὰς ὁμολογίᾳ
the other the in Lesbos cities also them by-agreement
προσηγάγετο, Ἀμφοτερὸν δὲ σὺν ἑξήκοντα ναυσὶν ἐπὶ
he-had-brought-over Amphoterus and with sixty ships to
Κῶ ἔπεμψεν· ἐπικαλεῖσθαι γὰρ σφᾶς τοὺς Κῴους· καὶ
Cos he-had-sent to-call-in for them the Coans and

αὐτὸς καταπλεύσας ὅτι εὗρε τὴν Κῶ πρὸς Ἀμφοτεροῦ
himself having-sailed-in that he-found — Cos by Amphoterus
ἤδη ἐχομένην.
already held

2.7 καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ὅσοι αἰχμάλωτοι ἦγεν Ἡγέλοχος,
and the indeed others as-many-as prisoners led Hegelochus
Φαρνάβαζος δὲ ἀπέδρα ἐν Κῷ λαθὼν τοὺς φύλακας.
Pharnabazus and escaped in Cos having-eluded the guards
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τοὺς τυράννους μὲν τοὺς ἐκ τῶν πόλεων
Alexander and the tyrants indeed the from the cities
ἐς τὰς πόλεις πέμπει χρήσασθαι ὅπως ἐθέλοιεν, τοὺς
to the cities sends to-deal-with as they-wished the
δὲ ἀμφὶ Ἀπολλωνίδην τοὺς Χίους ἐς Ἐλεφαντίνην πόλιν
and around Apollonides the Chians to Elephantine city
Αἰγυπτίαν ξὺν φυλακῇ ἀκριβεῖ ἔπεμψεν.
Egyptian with guard strict he-sent

3.1 ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ πόθος λαμβάνει αὐτὸν ἐλθεῖν παρ᾽ Ἄμμωνα
after these-things and longing seizes him to-go to Ammon
ἐς Λιβύην, τὸ μέν τι τῷ θεῷ χρησόμενον, ὅτι
into Libya partly indeed somewhat the god about-to-consult because
ἀτρεκὲς ἐλέγετο εἶναι τὸ μαντεῖον τοῦ Ἄμμωνος καὶ
unerring was-said to-be the oracle — of-Ammon and
χρήσασθαι αὐτῷ Περσέα καὶ Ἡρακλέα, τὸν μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν
to-have-consulted it Perseus and Heracles the-one indeed against —
Γοργόνα ὅτε πρὸς Πολυδέκτου ἐστέλλετο, τὸν δὲ ὅτε παρ᾽
Gorgon when by Polydectes he-was-sent the-other and when to
Ἀνταῖον ἦει εἰς Λιβύην καὶ παρὰ Βούσιριν εἰς Αἴγυπτον.
Antaeus he-went into Libya and to Busiris into Egypt

3.2 Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ φιλοτιμία ἦν πρὸς Περσέα καὶ Ἡρακλέα,
for-Alexander and rivalry was with Perseus and Heracles
ἀπὸ γένους τε ὄντι τοῦ ἀμφοῖν καί τι καὶ αὐτὸς
from family both being the of-both and somewhat also himself

τῆς γενέσεως τῆς ἑαυτοῦ ἐς Ἄμμωνα ἀνέφερε, καθάπερ
of-the birth the his-own to Ammon referred as
οἱ μῦθοι τὴν Ἡρακλέους τε καὶ Περσέως ἐς Δία. καὶ οὖν
the myths the of-Heracles both and of-Perseus to Zeus and then
παρ᾽ Ἄμμωνα ταύτῃ τῇ γνώμῃ ἐστέλλετο, ὡς καὶ τὰ
to Ammon with-this the purpose he-set-out so-as also the-things
αὐτοῦ ἀτρεκέστερον εἰσόμενος ἢ φήσων γε ἐγνωκέναι.
about-himself more-exactly about-to-know or about-to-say at-least to-have-learned
μέχρι μὲν δὴ Παραιτονίου παρὰ θάλασσαν ᾔει δι᾽ 3.3
as-far indeed indeed Paraetonium along sea he-went through
ἐρήμου, οὐ μέντοι δι᾽ ἀνύδρου τῆς χώρας, σταδίους ἐς
desert not however through waterless the country stades about
χιλίους καὶ ἑξακοσίους, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος. ἐντεῦθεν
thousand and six-hundred as says Aristobulus thence
δὲ ἐς τὴν μεσόγαιαν ἐτράπετο, ἵνα τὸ μαντεῖον ἦν τοῦ
and into the interior he-turned where the oracle was —
Ἄμμωνος. ἔστι δὲ ἐρήμη τε ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ ψάμμος ἡ
of-Ammon is and desert both the road and sand the
πολλὴ αὐτῆς καὶ ἄνυδρος.
most of-it and waterless
ὕδωρ δὲ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ πολὺ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐγένετο, καὶ τοῦτο 3.4
water and from heaven much for-Alexander came and this
ἐς τὸ θεῖον ἀνηνέχθη. ἀνηνέχθη δὲ ἐς τὸ θεῖον καὶ
to the divine was-referred was-referred and to the divine also
τόδε· ἄνεμος νότος ἐπὰν πνεύσῃ ἐν ἐκείνῳ τῷ χώρῳ,
this a-wind south whenever it-blows in that the region
τῆς ψάμμου ἐπιφορεῖ κατὰ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐπὶ μέγα, καὶ
of-the sand heaps-up over the road to great-extent and
ἀφανίζεται τῆς ὁδοῦ τὰ σημεῖα οὐδὲ ἔστιν εἰδέναι ἵνα
are-obliterated of-the road the marks nor is-it-possible to-know where
χρὴ πορεύεσθαι καθάπερ ἐν πελάγει τῇ ψάμμῳ,
it-is-necessary to-travel as in sea in-the sand

ὅτι σημεῖα οὐκ ἔστι κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν οὔτε που ὄρος
because marks not are along the road neither anywhere a-mountain
οὔτε δένδρον οὔτε γήλοφοι βέβαιοι ἀνεστηκότες, οἷστισιν
nor a-tree nor hills firm standing by-which
οἱ ὁδῖται τεκμαίροιντο ἂν τὴν πορείαν, καθάπερ οἱ ναῦται
the wayfarers might-judge — the way as the sailors
τοῖς ἄστροις· ἀλλὰ ἐπλανᾶτο γὰρ ἡ στρατιὰ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
by-the stars but wandered for the army for-Alexander
καὶ οἱ ἡγεμόνες τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀμφίβολοι ἦσαν.
and the guides of-the road in-doubt were

3.5 Πτολεμαῖος μὲν δὴ ὁ Λάγου λέγει δράκοντας δύο
Ptolemy indeed indeed the (son)-of-Lagus says serpents two
ἰέναι πρὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος φωνὴν ἱέντας, καὶ τούτοις
to-go before the army voice uttering and these
Ἀλέξανδρον κελεῦσαι ἕπεσθαι τοὺς ἡγεμόνας πιστεύσαντας
Alexander to-order to-follow the guides trusting
τῷ θείῳ, τοὺς δὲ ἡγήσασθαι τὴν ὁδὸν τήν τε ἐς τὸ
the divine they and to-have-led the way the both to the
μαντεῖον καὶ ὀπίσω αὖθις·
oracle and back again

3.6 Ἀριστόβουλος δέ, καὶ ὁ πλείων λόγος ταύτῃ κατέχει,
Aristobulus and and the greater account this-way holds
κόρακας δύο προπετομένους πρὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς, τούτους
ravens two flying-ahead before the army these
γενέσθαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τοὺς ἡγεμόνας. καὶ ὅτι μὲν θεῖόν
to-have-become for-Alexander the guides and that indeed divine
τι ξυνεπέλαβεν αὐτῷ ἔχω ἰσχυρίσασθαι, ὅτι καὶ τὸ
something helped him I-can to-affirm because also the
εἰκὸς ταύτῃ ἔχει, τὸ δὲ ἀτρεκὲς τοῦ λόγου ἀφείλοντο
likelihood this-way holds the but exactness of-the account have-taken-away
οἱ ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ ἐξηγησάμενοι.
the here and there about it having-explained

ὁ δὲ χῶρος, ἴναπερ τοῦ Ἄμμωνος τὸ ἱερόν ἐστι, 4.1
the and place where-indeed — of-Ammon the temple is
τὰ μὲν κύκλῳ πάντα ἔρημα καὶ ψάμμον τὸ πᾶν ἔχει
the-parts indeed in-circle all desert and sand the whole has
καὶ ἄνυδρον, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐν μέσῳ ὀλίγος ὢν ὅσον γὰρ
and waterless itself and in middle small being as-much-as for
πλεῖστον αὐτοῦ ἐς πλάτος διέχει ἐς τεσσαράκοντα μάλιστα
most of-it to breadth extends to forty about
σταδίους ἔρχεται κατάπλεώς ἐστιν ἡμέρων δένδρων,
stades it-comes full is of-cultivated trees
ἐλαῶν καὶ φοινίκων, καὶ ἔνδροσος μόνος τῶν πέριξ.
of-olives and of-palms and dewy alone of-the round-about
καὶ πηγὴ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἀνίσχει οὐδέν τι ἐοικυῖα ταῖς 4.2
and a-spring from it rises in-no-way at-all resembling the
πηγαῖς, ὅσαι ἄλλαι ἐκ γῆς ἀνίσχουσιν. ἐν μὲν γὰρ
springs as-many-as others from earth rise at indeed for
μεσημβρίᾳ ψυχρὸν τὸ ὕδωρ γευσαμένῳ τε καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον
midday cold the water for-one-tasting both and still more
ἁψαμένῳ οἷον ψυχρότατον· ἐγκλίναντος δὲ τοῦ ἡλίου
for-one-touching as-it-were coldest having-declined and the sun
ἐς ἑσπέραν θερμότερον, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἑσπέρας ἔτι
toward evening warmer and from the evening still
θερμότερον ἔστε ἐπὶ μέσας τὰς νύκτας, μέσων δὲ νυκτῶν
warmer as-far to middle the nights at-middle and night
ἑαυτοῦ θερμότατον· ἀπὸ δὲ μέσων νυκτῶν ψύχεται ἐν
of-itself hottest from and middle night it-cools in
τάξει, καὶ ἕωθεν ψυχρὸν ἤδη ἐστί, ψυχρότατον δὲ
order and at-dawn cold already it-is coldest and
μεσημβρίας· καὶ τοῦτο ἀμείβει ἐν τάξει ἐπὶ ἑκάστῃ ἡμέρᾳ.
at-midday and this it-alternates in order on each day

4.3 γίγνονται δὲ καὶ ἅλες αὐτόματοι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ τούτῳ
are-produced and also salts of-themselves in the place this
ὀρυκτοί· καὶ τούτων ἔστιν οὓς ἐς Αἴγυπτον φέρουσι τῶν
dug and of-these there-are which to Egypt carry of-the
ἱερέων τινὲς τοῦ Ἄμμωνος. ἐπειδὰν γὰρ ἐπ᾽ Αἰγύπτου
priests some — of-Ammon whenever for toward Egypt
στέλλωνται, ἐς κοιτίδας πλεκτὰς ἐκ φοίνικος ἐσβαλόντες
they-set-out into baskets woven from palm having-put
δῶρον τῷ βασιλεῖ ἀποφέρουσιν ἢ εἴ τῳ ἄλλῳ.
a-gift to-the king they-bring or if to-any other
4.4 ἔστι δὲ μακρός τε ὁ χόνδρος ἤδη δέ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ
is and long both the grain already and some of-them even
ὑπὲρ τρεῖς δακτύλους καὶ καθαρὸς ὥσπερ κρύσταλλος·
over three fingers and clear as crystal
καὶ τούτῳ ἐπὶ ταῖς θυσίαις χρῶνται, ὡς καθαρωτέρῳ
and this at the sacrifices use as purer
τῶν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης ἁλῶν, Αἰγύπτιοί τε καὶ ὅσοι
than-the from sea salts Egyptians both and as-many-as
ἄλλοι τοῦ θείου οὐκ ἀμελῶς ἔχουσιν.
others for-the divine not carelessly are
4.5 ἐνταῦθα Ἀλέξανδρος τόν τε χῶρον ἐθαύμασε καὶ τῷ θεῷ
there Alexander the both place admired and the god
ἐχρήσατο· καὶ ἀκούσας ὅσα αὐτῷ πρὸς θυμοῦ ἦν, ὡς
consulted and having-heard as-much-as to-him to heart was as
ἔλεγεν, ἀνέζευξεν ἐπ᾽ Αἰγύπτου, ὡς μὲν Ἀριστόβουλος
he-said he-returned toward Egypt as indeed Aristobulus
λέγει, τὴν αὐτὴν ὀπίσω ὁδόν, ὡς δὲ Πτολεμαῖος ὁ
says the same back road as and Ptolemy the
Λάγου, ἄλλην εὐθεῖαν ὡς ἐπὶ Μέμφιν.
(son)-of-Lagus another straight as toward Memphis

εἰς Μέμφιν δὲ αὐτῷ πρεσβεῖαί τε πολλαὶ ἐκ τῆς 5.1
to Memphis and to-him embassies both many from —
Ἑλλάδος ἦκον, καὶ οὐκ ἔστιν ὅντινα ἀτυχήσαντα ὧν
Greece came and not there-is whom having-failed-to-obtain of-what
ἐδεῖτο ἀπέπεμψε, καὶ στρατιὰ παραγίγνεται παρὰ μὲν
he-asked he-sent-away and an-army arrives from indeed
Ἀντιπάτρου μισθοφόροι Ἕλληνες ἐς τετρακοσίους, ὧν
Antipater mercenaries Greek about four-hundred whom
ἡγεῖτο Μενοίτας ὁ Ἡγησάνδρου, ἐκ Θρᾴκης δὲ ἱππεῖς ἐς
led Menoetas the (son)-of-Hegesander from Thrace and cavalry about
πεντακοσίους, ὧν ἦρχεν Ἀσκληπιόδωρος ὁ Εὐνίκου.
five-hundred whom commanded Asclepiodorus the (son)-of-Eunicus
ἐνταῦθα θύει τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ πομπεύει 5.2
there he-sacrifices — to-Zeus the king and holds-a-procession
ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιεῖ γυμνικὸν
with the army in the arms and a-contest makes gymnastic
καὶ μουσικόν. καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἐνταῦθα
and musical and the-affairs in — Egypt there
ἐκόσμησε· δύο μὲν νομάρχας Αἰγύπτου κατέστησεν
he-arranged two indeed nomarchs of-Egypt he-appointed
Αἰγυπτίους, Δολόασπιν καὶ Πέτισιν, καὶ τούτοις διένειμε
Egyptians Doloaspis and Petisis and to-these he-divided
τὴν χώραν τὴν Αἰγυπτίαν· Πετίσιος δὲ ἀπειπαμένου τὴν
the country the Egyptian Petisis and having-declined the
ἀρχὴν Δολόασπις ἐκδέχεται πᾶσαν.
office Doloaspis receives whole
φρουράρχους δὲ τῶν ἑταίρων ἐν Μέμφει μὲν Πανταλέοντα 5.3
garrison-commanders and of-the companions in Memphis indeed Pantaleon
κατέστησε τὸν Πυδναῖον, ἐν Πηλουσίῳ δὲ Πολέμωνα τὸν
he-appointed the Pydnaean in Pelusium and Polemon the
Μεγακλέους Πελλαῖον· τῶν ξένων δὲ ἄρχειν Λυκίδαν
(son)-of-Megacles a-Pellaean of-the mercenaries and to-command Lycidas

Αἰτωλόν, γραμματέα δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ξένων Εὔγνωστον
an-Aetolian secretary and over the mercenaries Eugnostus
τὸν Ξενοφάντου τῶν ἑταίρων· ἐπισκόπους δὲ αὐτῶν
the (son)-of-Xenophantus of-the companions overseers and of-them
Αἰσχύλον τε καὶ Ἔφιππον τὸν Χαλκιδέως.
Aeschylus both and Ephippus the (son)-of-Chalcideus
5.4 Λιβύης δὲ τῆς προσχώρου ἄρχειν δίδωσιν Ἀπολλώνιον
of-Libya and the neighboring to-govern he-gives Apollonius
Χαρίνου, Ἀραβίας δὲ τῆς πρὸς Ἡρώων πόλει Κλεομένην
(son)-of-Charinus of-Arabia and the at of-Heroes city Cleomenes
τὸν ἐκ Ναυκράτιος· καὶ τούτῳ παρηγγέλλετο τοὺς μὲν
the from Naucratis and to-him it-was-ordered the indeed
νομάρχας ἐᾶν ἄρχειν τῶν νομῶν τῶν κατὰ σφᾶς
nomarchs to-allow to-govern the nomes the in their-own
καθάπερ ἐκ παλαιοῦ καθειστήκει, αὐτὸν δὲ ἐκλέγειν παρ᾽
as from of-old had-been-established himself and to-collect from
αὐτῶν τοὺς φόρους· οἱ δὲ ἀποφέρειν αὐτῷ ἐτάχθησαν.
them the tributes they and to-pay to-him were-ordered
5.5 στρατηγοὺς δὲ τῇ στρατιᾷ κατέστησεν, ἥντινα ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ
generals and for-the army he-appointed which in Egypt
ὑπελείπετο, Πευκέσταν τε τὸν Μακαρτάτου καὶ Βάλακρον
was-left Peucestas both the (son)-of-Macartatus and Balacrus
τὸν Ἀμύντου, ναύαρχον δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν Πολέμωνα τὸν
the (son)-of-Amyntas admiral and over the ships Polemon the
Θηραμένους· σωματοφύλακα δὲ ἀντὶ Ἀρρύβα Λεοννάτον
(son)-of-Theramenes bodyguard and in-place-of Arrybas Leonnatus
τὸν Ὀνάσου ἔταξεν· Ἀρρύβας γὰρ νόσῳ ἀπέθανεν.
the (son)-of-Onasus he-appointed Arrybas for by-disease died
5.6 ἀπέθανε δὲ καὶ Ἀντίοχος ὁ ἄρχων τῶν τοξοτῶν, καὶ
died and also Antiochus the commander of-the archers and
ἀντὶ τούτου ἄρχειν ἐπέστησε τοῖς τοξόταις Ὀμβρίωνα
in-place-of him to-command he-set-over the archers Ombrion

Κρῆτα. ἐπὶ δὲ τοὺς ξυμμάχους τοὺς πεζούς, ὧν Βάλακρος
a-Cretan over and the allies the infantry whom Balacrus
ἡγεῖτο, ἐπεὶ Βάλακρος ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ ὑπελείπετο, Κάλανον
led since Balacrus in Egypt was-left Calanus
κατέστησεν ἡγεμόνα.
he-appointed commander
κατανεῖμαι δὲ λέγεται ἐς πολλοὺς τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς 5.7
to-have-divided and is-said among many the rule —
Αἰγύπτου τήν τε φύσιν τῆς χώρας θαυμάσας καὶ τὴν
of-Egypt the both nature of-the country having-admired and the
ὀχυρότητα, ὅτι οὐκ ἀσφαλές οἱ ἐφαίνετο ἑνὶ ἐπιτρέψαι
strength because not safe to-him it-appeared to-one to-entrust
ἄρχειν Αἰγύπτου πάσης. καὶ Ῥωμαῖοί μοι δοκοῦσι παρ᾽
to-rule Egypt whole and Romans to-me seem from
Ἀλεξάνδρου μαθόντες ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν Αἴγυπτον καὶ
Alexander having-learned in guard to-keep Egypt and
μηδένα τῶν ἀπὸ βουλῆς ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐκπέμπειν ὕπαρχον
no-one of-the from senate for this to-send-out as-prefect
Αἰγύπτου, ἀλλὰ τῶν εἰς τοὺς ἱππέας σφίσι ξυντελούντων.
of-Egypt but of-the among the knights for-them being-ranked

Alexander returns to Tyre, frees the Athenian prisoners taken at the Granicus, and sends ships to the Peloponnese against Sparta. Harpalus, who fled before Issus, is restored to charge of the treasury. At Thapsacus Mazaeus abandons the Euphrates bridges, and Alexander marches up through Mesopotamia and fords the Tigris unopposed. An eclipse of the moon, Aristander says, means victory within the month. Persian horsemen taken in a pursuit tell him Darius is near: his army, with Bactrians, Scythians, Indians, and peoples from every satrapy, forty thousand horse and two hundred scythed chariots among them, is encamped at Gaugamela on ground leveled for his chariots.

6.1 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἅμα τῷ ἦρι ὑποφαίνοντι ἐκ Μέμφιος ἦει
Alexander and with the spring dawning from Memphis went
ἐπὶ Φοινίκης· καὶ ἐγεφυρώθη αὐτῷ ὅ τε κατὰ Μέμφιν
toward Phoenicia and was-bridged for-him the both at Memphis
πόρος τοῦ Νείλου καὶ αἱ διώρυχες αὐτοῦ πᾶσαι. ὡς δὲ
channel — of-Nile and the canals its all when and
ἀφίκετο ἐς Τύρον, καταλαμβάνει ἐνταῦθα ἥκον αὐτῷ
he-arrived at Tyre he-finds there having-come for-him
ἤδη καὶ τὸ ναυτικόν. ἐν Τύρῳ δὲ αὖθις θύει τῷ
already also the fleet in Tyre and again he-sacrifices —
Ἡρακλεῖ καὶ ἀγῶνα ποιεῖ γυμνικόν τε καὶ μουσικόν.
to-Heracles and a-contest makes gymnastic both and musical
6.2 ἐνταῦθα ἀφικνεῖται παρ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐξ Ἀθηνῶν ἡ Πάραλος
there arrives to him from Athens the Paralus
πρέσβεις ἄγουσα Διόφαντον καὶ Ἀχιλλέα· ξυνεπρέσβευον δὲ
envoys bringing Diophantus and Achilles were-envoys-with and
αὐτοῖς καὶ οἱ Πάραλοι ξύμπαντες. καὶ οὗτοι τῶν τε ἄλλων
them also the Paralians all and these of-the both other-things

ἔτυχον ὧν ἕνεκα ἐστάλησαν καὶ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους
obtained for-what for-the-sake they-had-been-sent and the prisoners
ἀφῆκεν Ἀθηναίοις ὅσοι ἐπὶ Γρανίκῳ Ἀθηναίων ἑάλωσαν.
he-released to-Athenians as-many-as at Granicus of-Athenians had-been-captured
τὰ δὲ ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ ὅτι αὐτῷ νενεωτερίσθαι 6.3
the-affairs and in Peloponnese because for-him to-have-revolted
ἀπήγγελτο, Ἀμφοτερὸν πέμπει βοηθεῖν Πελοποννησίων
had-been-reported Amphoterus he-sends to-help of-Peloponnesians
ὅσοι ἔς τε τὸν Περσικὸν πόλεμον βέβαιοι ἦσαν καὶ
as-many-as for both the Persian war steadfast were and
Λακεδαιμονίων οὐ κατήκουον. Φοίνιξι δὲ καὶ Κυπρίοις
of-Lacedaemonians not obeyed to-Phoenicians and and Cyprians
προσετάχθη ἑκατὸν ναῦς ἄλλας πρὸς αἷς ἔχοντα
was-ordered hundred ships other in-addition-to those-which having
Ἀμφοτερὸν ἔπεμπε στέλλειν ἐπὶ Πελοποννήσου.
Amphoterus he-sent to-send toward Peloponnese
αὐτὸς δὲ ἤδη ἄνω ὡρμᾶτο ὡς ἐπὶ Θάψακόν τε καὶ τὸν 6.4
he-himself and already upward set-out as toward Thapsacus both and the
Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, ἐν Φοινίκῃ μὲν ἐπὶ τῶν φόρων τῇ
Euphrates river in Phoenicia indeed over the tributes for-the
ξυλλογῇ καταστήσας Κοίρανον Βεροιαῖον, Φιλόξενον δὲ
collection having-appointed Coeranus a-Beroean Philoxenus and
τῆς Ἀσίας τὰ ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Ταύρου ἐκλέγειν. τῶν ξὺν
— of-Asia the-parts on this-side — of-Taurus to-collect of-the with
αὐτῷ δὲ χρημάτων τὴν φυλακὴν ἀντὶ τούτων ἐπέτρεψεν
himself and money the guard in-place-of these entrusted
Ἁρπάλῳ τῷ Μαχάτα ἄρτι ἐκ τῆς φυγῆς ἥκοντι.
to-Harpalus the (son)-of-Machatas just from the exile having-come
Ἅρπαλος γὰρ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἔφυγε, Φιλίππου ἔτι 6.5
Harpalus for the indeed first fled Philip still
βασιλεύοντος, ὅτι πιστὸς ἦν, καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ὁ
reigning because faithful he-was and Ptolemy the

Λάγου ἐπὶ τῷ αὐτῷ ἔφυγε καὶ Νέαρχος ὁ
(son)-of-Lagus on the same-account fled and Nearchus the
Ἀνδροτίμου καὶ Ἐριγύϊος ὁ Λαρίχου καὶ Λαομέδων
(son)-of-Androtimus and Erigyius the (son)-of-Larichus and Laomedon
ὁ τούτου ἀδελφός, ὅτι ὕποπτα ἦν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐς
the his brother because suspect-relations were to-Alexander with
Φίλιππον, ἐπειδὴ Εὐρυδίκην γυναῖκα ἠγάγετο Φίλιππος,
Philip when Eurydice as-wife married Philip
Ὀλυμπιάδα δὲ τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου μητέρα ἠτίμασε.
Olympias and the of-Alexander mother he-dishonored
6.6 τελευτήσαντος δὲ Φιλίππου κατελθόντας ἀπὸ τῆς
having-died and Philip having-come-back from the
φυγῆς ὅσοι δι᾽ αὐτὸν ἔφευγον Πτολεμαῖον
exile as-many-as on-account-of him were-exiled Ptolemy
μὲν σωματοφύλακα κατέστησεν, Ἅρπαλον δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν
indeed bodyguard he-appointed Harpalus and over the
χρημάτων, ὅτι αὐτῷ τὸ σῶμα ἐς τὰ πολέμια ἀχρεῖον
money because for-him the body for the warlike-things useless
ἦν, Ἐριγύϊον δὲ ἱππάρχην τῶν ξυμμάχων, Λαομέδοντα
was Erigyius and cavalry-commander of-the allies Laomedon
δὲ τὸν τούτου ἀδελφόν, ὅτι δίγλωσσος ἦν ἐς τὰ
and the his brother because bilingual he-was in the
βαρβαρικὰ γράμματα, ἐπὶ τοῖς αἰχμαλώτοις βαρβάροις,
barbarian letters over the captive barbarians
Νέαρχον δὲ σατραπεύειν Λυκίας καὶ τῆς ἐχομένης Λυκίας
Nearchus and to-be-satrap of-Lycia and of-the adjoining Lycia
χώρας ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸν Ταῦρον τὸ ὄρος.
country as-far to — Taurus the mountain
6.7 ὀλίγον δὲ πρόσθεν τῆς μάχης τῆς ἐν Ἰσσῷ γενομένης
a-little and before the battle the at Issus having-been-fought
ἀναπεισθεὶς πρὸς Ταυρίσκου ἀνδρὸς κακοῦ Ἅρπαλος
having-been-persuaded by Tauriscus a-man base Harpalus

φεύγει ξὺν Ταυρίσκῳ. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ταυρίσκος παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον
flees with Tauriscus and — indeed Tauriscus to Alexander
τὸν Ἠπειρώτην ἐς Ἰταλίαν σταλεὶς ἐκεῖ ἐτελεύτησεν,
the Epirote to Italy having-gone there died
Ἁρπάλῳ δὲ ἐν τῇ Μεγαρίδι ἡ φυγὴ ἦν. ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρος
for-Harpalus and in — Megarid the exile was but Alexander
πείθει αὐτὸν κατελθεῖν πίστεις δοὺς οὐδέν οἱ μεῖον
persuades him to-return pledges having-given nothing to-him less
ἔσεσθαι ἐπὶ τῇ φυγῇ· οὐδὲ ἐγένετο ἐπανελθόντι, ἀλλὰ
to-be-going-to-be for the flight nor was-it upon-his-return but
ἐπὶ τῶν χρημάτων αὖθις ἐτάχθη Ἅρπαλος. ἐς Λυδίαν
over the money again was-appointed Harpalus to Lydia
δὲ σατράπην Μένανδρον ἐκπέμπει τῶν ἑταίρων·
and as-satrap Menander he-sends-out of-the companions
ἐπὶ δὲ τοῖς ξένοις, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Μένανδρος, Κλέαρχος 6.8
over and the mercenaries whom led Menander Clearchus
αὐτῷ ἐτάχθη. ἀντὶ δὲ Ἀρίμμα σατράπην Συρίας
for-him was-appointed in-place-of and Arimmas satrap of-Syria
Ἀσκληπιόδωρον τὸν Εὐνίκου ἀπέδειξεν, ὅτι Ἀρίμμας
Asclepiodorus the (son)-of-Eunicus he-appointed because Arimmas
βλακεῦσαι ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ παρασκευῇ, ἥντινα ἐτάχθη
to-have-been-slack seemed to-him in the preparation which he-was-ordered
παρασκευάσαι τῇ στρατιᾷ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν ἄνω. καὶ
to-prepare for-the army along the road the upward and
ἀφίκετο ἐς Θάψακον Ἀλέξανδρος μηνὸς Ἑκατομβαιῶνος
arrived at Thapsacus Alexander in-the-month Hecatombaeon
ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος Ἀθήνησιν Ἀριστοφάνους·
under archon at-Athens Aristophanes
καὶ καταλαμβάνει δυοῖν γεφύραιν ἐζευγμένον τὸν πόρον. 7.1
and finds with-two bridges spanned the crossing
καὶ γὰρ καὶ Μαζαῖος, ὅτῳ ἡ φυλακὴ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκ
and for also Mazaeus to-whom the guard of-the river by

Δαρείου ἐπετέτραπτο, ἱππέας μὲν ἔχων περὶ τρισχιλίους,
Darius had-been-entrusted cavalry indeed having about three-thousand
πεζοὺς δὲ *** καὶ τούτων Ἕλληνας μισθοφόρους
infantry and (lacuna) and of-these Greeks mercenaries
δισχιλίους, τέως μὲν αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ ἐφύλασσε,
two-thousand for-a-time indeed there by the river was-guarding
7.2 καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε οὐ ξυνεχὴς ἡ γέφυρα ἐζευγμένη ἦν ἔστε
and for this not continuous the bridge spanned was as-far
ἐπὶ τὴν ἀντιπέρας ὄχθην τοῖς Μακεδόσι, δειμαίνουσι
to the opposite bank for-the Macedonians fearing
μὴ ἐπιθοῖντο οἱ ἀμφὶ Μαζαῖον τῇ γεφύρᾳ ἵνα ἐπαύετο·
lest should-attack the around Mazaeus the bridge where it-ended
Μαζαῖος δὲ ὡς ἤκουσεν ἤδη προσάγοντα Ἀλέξανδρον,
Mazaeus and when he-heard already approaching Alexander
ᾤχετο φεύγων ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ πάσῃ. καὶ εὐθὺς ὡς ἔφυγε
went-off fleeing with the army whole and at-once as fled
Μαζαῖος ἐπεβλήθησαν αἱ γέφυραι τῇ ὄχθῃ τῇ πέραν καὶ
Mazaeus were-thrown-across the bridges to-the bank the beyond and
διέβη ἐπ᾽ αὐτῶν ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ἀλέξανδρος.
crossed on them with the army Alexander
7.3 ἔνθεν δὲ ἐχώρει ἄνω, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ ἔχων τὸν Εὐφράτην
thence and he-went upward on left keeping the Euphrates
ποταμὸν καὶ τῆς Ἀρμενίας τὰ ὄρη. διὰ τῆς
river and — of-Armenia the mountains through the
Μεσοποταμίας καλουμένης χώρας. οὐκ εὐθεῖαν δὲ ἐπὶ
Mesopotamia called country not straight and toward
Βαβυλῶνος ἦγεν ἀπὸ τοῦ Εὐφράτου ὁρμηθείς, ὅτι τὴν
Babylon he-led from — Euphrates having-set-out because the
ἑτέραν ἰόντι εὐπορώτερα τὰ ξύμπαντα τῷ στρατῷ
other for-one-going easier the all-things for-the army

ἦν, καὶ χιλὸς τοῖς ἵπποις καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς
was and fodder for-the horses and the provisions from the
χώρας λαμβάνειν καὶ τὸ καῦμα οὐχ ὡσαύτως ἐπιφλέγον.
country to-take and the heat not equally scorching
ἁλόντες δέ τινες κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τῶν ἀπὸ τοῦ Δαρείου 7.4
captured and some along the road of-the from the of-Darius
στρατεύματος κατασκοπῆς ἕνεκα ἀπεσκεδασμένων
army for-scouting for-the-sake scattered
ἐξήγγειλαν, ὅτι Δαρεῖος ἐπὶ τοῦ Τίγρητος ποταμοῦ κάθηται
reported that Darius at the Tigris river sits
ἐγνωκὼς εἴργειν Ἀλέξανδρον, εἰ διαβαίνοι· καὶ εἶναι αὐτῷ
having-resolved to-bar Alexander if he-should-cross and to-be for-him
στρατιὰν πολὺ μείζονα ἢ ξὺν ᾗ ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἐμάχετο.
an-army much greater than with which in Cilicia he-fought
ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ἀλέξανδρος ᾔει σπουδῇ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν 7.5
these-things having-heard Alexander went in-haste as toward —
Τίγρητα. ὡς δὲ ἀφίκετο, οὔτε αὐτὸν Δαρεῖον καταλαμβάνει
Tigris when and he-arrived neither himself Darius he-finds
οὔτε τὴν φυλακήν, ἥντινα ἀπολελοίπει Δαρεῖος, ἀλλὰ
nor the guard which had-left Darius but
διαβαίνει τὸν πόρον, χαλεπῶς μὲν δι᾽ ὀξύτητα τοῦ
he-crosses the ford with-difficulty indeed because-of swiftness of-the
ῥοῦ, οὐδενὸς δὲ εἴργοντος. ἐνταῦθα ἀναπαύει τὸν στρατόν·
current nobody but hindering there he-rests the army
καὶ τῆς σελήνης τὸ πολὺ ἐκλιπὲς ἐγένετο·
and of-the moon the most eclipsed became
καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἔθυε τῇ τε σελήνῃ καὶ τῷ ἡλίῳ καὶ τῇ 7.6
and Alexander sacrificed to-the both moon and to-the sun and to-the
γῇ, ὅτων τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο λόγος εἶναι κατέχει. καὶ ἐδόκει
earth whose the deed this account to-be holds and it-seemed
Ἀριστάνδρῳ πρὸς Μακεδόνων καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου εἶναι τῆς
to-Aristander in-favor-of Macedonians and Alexander to-be of-the

σελήνης τὸ πάθημα καὶ ἐκείνου τοῦ μηνὸς ἔσεσθαι ἡ
moon the affliction and in-that the month to-be-going-to-be the
μάχη, καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἱερῶν νίκην σημαίνεσθαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
battle and from the sacrifices victory to-be-signified to-Alexander
7.7 ἄρας δὲ ἀπὸ τοῦ Τίγρητος ᾔει διὰ τῆς Ἀσσυρίας
having-set-out and from — Tigris he-went through the Assyrian
χώρας, ἐν ἀριστερᾷ μὲν ἔχων τὰ Γορδυηνῶν ὄρη,
country on left indeed keeping the of-Gordyaeans mountains
ἐν δεξιᾷ δὲ αὐτὸν τὸν Τίγρητα. τετάρτῃ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ ἀπὸ
on right and itself — Tigris on-the-fourth and day from
τῆς διαβάσεως οἱ πρόδρομοι αὐτῷ ἐξαγγέλλουσιν, ὅτι
the crossing the prodromoi to-him report that
ἱππεῖς οὗτοι πολέμιοι ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον φαίνονται, ὅσοι
cavalry these enemy over the plain appear how-many
δέ, οὐκ ἔχειν εἰκάσαι. ξυντάξας οὖν τὴν στρατιὰν
but not to-be-able to-guess having-drawn-up then the army
προὐχώρει ὡς ἐς μάχην· καὶ ἄλλοι αὖ τῶν προδρόμων
he-advanced as for battle and others again of-the prodromoi
προσελάσαντες ἀκριβέστερον οὗτοι κατιδόντες ἔφασκον
having-ridden-up more-accurately these having-observed said
δοκεῖν εἶναί σφισιν οὐ πλείους ἢ χιλίους τοὺς ἱππέας.
to-seem to-be to-them not more than thousand the cavalry
8.1 ἀναλαβὼν οὖν τήν τε βασιλικὴν ἴλην καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων μίαν
having-taken then the both royal squadron and of-the companions one
καὶ τῶν προδρόμων τοὺς Παίονας ἤλαυνε σπουδῇ, τὴν δὲ
and of-the prodromoi the Paeonians he-rode in-haste the and
ἄλλην στρατιὰν βάδην ἕπεσθαι ἐκέλευσεν. οἱ δὲ τῶν Περσῶν
other army at-a-walk to-follow ordered the and of-the Persians
ἱππεῖς κατιδόντες τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ὀξέως ἐπάγοντας
cavalry having-seen the around Alexander swiftly advancing
ἔφευγον ἀνὰ κράτος. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος διώκων ἐνέκειτο·
fled at full-speed and Alexander pursuing pressed-on

καὶ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ ἀπέφυγον, τοὺς δέ τινας καὶ 8.2
and the indeed many escaped the-ones and some also
ἀπέκτειναν, ὅσοις οἱ ἵπποι ἐν τῇ φυγῇ ἔκαμον, τοὺς
they-killed whose the horses in the flight were-tired the-others
δὲ καὶ ζῶντας αὐτοῖς ἵπποις ἔλαβον· καὶ παρὰ τούτων
and also alive with-the-very horses took and from these
ἔμαθον, ὅτι οὐ πόρρω εἴη Δαρεῖος ξὺν δυνάμει πολλῇ.
they-learned that not far was Darius with force great
βεβοηθήκεσαν γὰρ Δαρείῳ Ἰνδῶν τε ὅσοι Βακτρίοις 8.3
had-come-to-help for to-Darius of-Indians both as-many-as with-Bactrians
ὅμοροι καὶ αὐτοὶ Βάκτριοι καὶ Σογδιανοί· τούτων μὲν
bordering and themselves Bactrians and Sogdians of-these indeed
πάντων ἡγεῖτο Βῆσσος ὁ τῆς Βακτρίων χώρας σατράπης.
all led Bessus the of-the Bactrian country satrap
εἵποντο δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ Σάκαι — Σκυθικὸν τοῦτο τὸ γένος
followed and them also Sacae Scythian this the race
τῶν τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐποικούντων Σκυθῶν — οὐχ ὑπήκοοι
of-the — Asia inhabiting Scythians not subject
οὗτοι Βήσσου, ἀλλὰ κατὰ συμμαχίαν τὴν Δαρείου· ἡγεῖτο
these to-Bessus but by alliance the of-Darius led
δὲ αὐτῶν Μαυάκης· αὐτοὶ δὲ ἱπποτοξόται ἦσαν.
and them Mauaces themselves and mounted-archers were
Βαρσαέντης δὲ Ἀραχωτῶν σατράπης Ἀραχωτούς τε ἦγε 8.4
Barsaentes and of-Arachotians satrap Arachotians both led
καὶ τοὺς ὀρείους Ἰνδοὺς καλουμένους. Σατιβαρζάνης δὲ
and the mountain Indians called Satibarzanes and
ὁ Ἀρείων σατράπης Ἀρείους ἦγεν. Παρθυαίους δὲ καὶ
the of-Arians satrap Arians led Parthyaeans and and
Ὑρκανίους καὶ Τοπείρους, τοὺς πάντας ἱππέας, Φραταφέρνης
Hyrcanians and Topeiri the all cavalry Phrataphernes

ἦγεν. Μήδων δὲ ἡγεῖτο Ἀτροπάτης ξυνετάττοντο δὲ
led of-Medes and led Atropates were-ranged-with and
Μήδοις Καδούσιοί τε καὶ Ἀλβανοὶ καὶ Σακεσῖναι.
the-Medes Cadusians both and Albanians and Sacesinae
8.5 τοὺς δὲ προσοίκους τῇ ἐρυθρᾷ θαλάσσῃ Ὀροντοβάτης
the and dwelling-near the Red Sea Orontobates
καὶ Ἀριοβαρζάνης καὶ Ὀρξίνης ἐκόσμουν. Οὔξιοι δὲ καὶ
and Ariobarzanes and Orxines marshaled Uxians and and
Σουσιανοὶ ἡγεμόνα παρείχοντο Ὀξάθρην τὸν Ἀβουλίτου.
Susians leader provided Oxathres the (son)-of-Abulites
Βουπάρης δὲ Βαβυλωνίων ἡγεῖτο. οἱ δ' ἀνάσπαστοι Κᾶρες
Bupares and of-Babylonians led the and transplanted Carians
καὶ Σιττακηνοὶ σὺν Βαβυλωνίοις ἐτετάχατο. Ἀρμενίων δὲ
and Sittacenians with Babylonians had-been-posted of-Armenians and
Ὀρόντης καὶ Μιθραύστης ἦρχε, καὶ Ἀριάκης Καππαδοκῶν.
Orontes and Mithraustes commanded and Ariaces of-Cappadocians
8.6 Σύρους δὲ τούς τε ἐκ τῆς κοίλης καὶ ὅσοι τῆς
Syrians and the both from the Hollow and as-many-as of-the
μεταξὺ τῶν ποταμῶν Συρίας Μαζαῖος ἦγεν. ἐλέγετο δὲ ἡ
between the rivers Syria Mazaeus led was-said and the
πᾶσα στρατιὰ ἡ Δαρείου ἱππεῖς μὲν ἐς τετρακισμυρίους,
whole army the of-Darius cavalry indeed about forty-thousand
πεζοὶ δὲ ἐς ἑκατὸν μυριάδας, καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα
infantry and about hundred myriads and chariots scythe-bearing
διακόσια, ἐλέφαντες δὲ οὐ πολλοί, ἀλλὰ ἐς πεντεκαίδεκα
two-hundred elephants and not many but about fifteen
μάλιστα Ἰνδοῖς τοῖς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἦσαν.
about belonging-to-Indians the on this-side — of-Indus they-were
8.7 ξὺν ταύτῃ τῇ δυνάμει ἐστρατοπεδεύκει Δαρεῖος ἐν
with this the force had-encamped Darius at
Γαυγαμήλοις πρὸς ποταμῷ Βουμήλῳ, ἀπέχων Ἀρβήλων
Gaugamela by river Bumelus being-distant from-Arbela

τῆς πόλεως ὅσον ἑξακοσίους σταδίους, ἐν χώρῳ ὁμαλῷ
the city about six-hundred stades in ground level
πάντῃ. καὶ γὰρ καὶ ὅσα ἀνώμαλα αὐτοῦ ἐς ἱππασίαν,
on-every-side and for also as-many-as uneven of-it for riding
ταῦτα δὲ ἐκ πολλοῦ οἱ Πέρσαι τοῖς τε ἅρμασιν
these and from long the Persians for-the both chariots
ἐπελαύνειν εὐπετῆ πεποιήκεσαν καὶ τῇ ἵππῳ ἱππάσιμα.
to-drive easy had-made and for-the horse fit-for-riding
ἦσαν γὰρ οἳ ἀνέπειθον Δαρεῖον ὑπὲρ τῆς πρὸς
there-were for those-who persuaded Darius about the at
Ἰσσῷ γενομένης μάχης, ὅτι ἄρα ἐμειονέκτησε τῶν
Issus having-been-fought battle that then he-had-been-at-a-disadvantage of-the
χωρίων τῇ στενότητι· καὶ Δαρεῖος οὐ χαλεπῶς ἐπείθετο.
places by-the narrowness and Darius not with-difficulty was-persuaded

III · THE EVE OF GAUGAMELA

Alexander rests four days, fortifies a camp for the baggage, and marches by night. On Parmenion's advice he halts to reconnoiter the ground. He tells his officers that this battle will decide the rule of all Asia and asks for silence, order, and a terrible war cry. When Parmenion, they say, urges a night attack, he answers that he will not steal the victory, and Arrian praises the reasoning. The Persians stand under arms all night. Their order of battle, later captured, is given, with Darius in the center, and so is Alexander's front line, from the companions on the right to Parmenion's Thessalians on the left.

ταῦτα ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πρὸς τῶν κατασκόπων 9.1
these-things when were-reported to-Alexander by the scouts
τῶν Περσῶν ὅσοι ἑάλωσαν, ἔμεινεν αὐτοῦ ἵνα
of-the Persians as-many-as had-been-captured he-remained there where
ἐξηγγέλθη ἡμέρας τέσσαρας· καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν ἐκ τῆς
they-were-reported days four and the army from the

ὁδοῦ ἀνέπαυσε, τὸ δὲ στρατόπεδον τάφρῳ τε καὶ χάρακι
march he-rested the and camp with-ditch both and palisade
ἐτείχισεν. ἔγνω γὰρ τὰ μὲν σκευοφόρα ἀπολείπειν καὶ
he-fortified he-decided for the indeed baggage to-leave and
ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν
as-many-as of-the soldiers unfit-for-battle were himself and with
τοῖς μαχίμοις οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὅτι μὴ ὅπλα φέρουσιν ἰέναι
the fighting-men nothing else except — arms carrying to-go
ἐς τὸν ἀγῶνα.
to the contest

9.2 ἀναλαβὼν οὖν τὴν δύναμιν νυκτὸς ἦγεν ἀμφὶ δευτέραν
having-taken then the force by-night he-led about second
φυλακὴν μάλιστα, ὡς ἅμ᾽ ἡμέρᾳ προσμῖξαι τοῖς βαρβάροις.
watch about so-as with day to-engage the barbarians
Δαρεῖος δέ, ὡς προσηγγέλθη αὐτῷ προσάγων ἤδη
Darius and when it-was-reported to-him approaching already
Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐκτάσσει τὴν στρατιὰν ὡς ἐς μάχην· καὶ
Alexander draws-up the army as for battle and
Ἀλέξανδρος ἦγεν ὡσαύτως τεταγμένους. καὶ ἀπεῖχε μὲν
Alexander led likewise drawn-up and were-distant indeed
ἀλλήλων τὰ στρατόπεδα ὅσον ἑξήκοντα σταδίους, οὐ
from-one-another the armies about sixty stades not
μήν πω καθεώρων ἀλλήλους· γήλοφοι γὰρ ἐν μέσῳ
indeed yet did-they-see one-another hills for in middle
ἐπίπροσθεν ἀμφοῖν ἦσαν.
in-front of-both were

9.3 ὡς δὲ ἀπεῖχεν Ἀλέξανδρος ὅσον ἐς τριάκοντα σταδίους
when and was-distant Alexander about to thirty stades
καὶ κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἤδη τῶν γηλόφων ἦει αὐτῷ ὁ στρατός,
and down themselves already the hills went for-him the army
ἐνταῦθα, ὡς εἶδε τοὺς βαρβάρους, ἔστησε τὴν αὑτοῦ
there when he-saw the barbarians he-halted the his-own

φάλαγγα· καὶ ξυγκαλέσας αὖ τούς τε ἑταίρους καὶ
phalanx and having-called-together again the both companions and
στρατηγοὺς καὶ ἰλάρχας καὶ τῶν συμμάχων τε καὶ
generals and squadron-leaders and of-the allies both and
τῶν μισθοφόρων ξένων τοὺς ἡγεμόνας ἐβουλεύετο, εἰ
of-the mercenaries foreign the commanders he-deliberated whether
αὐτόθεν ἐπάγοι ἤδη τὴν φάλαγγα, ὡς οἱ πλεῖστοι
from-there he-should-lead-on already the phalanx as the most
ἄγειν ἐκέλευον, ἢ καθάπερ Παρμενίωνι ἐδόκει, τότε μὲν
to-lead bade or as to-Parmenion it-seemed then indeed
αὐτοῦ καταστρατοπεδεύειν,
there to-encamp
κατασκέψασθαι δὲ τόν τε χῶρον ξύμπαντα, εἰ δή 9.4
to-reconnoiter and the both ground whole if indeed
τι ὕποπτον αὐτοῦ ἢ ἄπορον, ἢ εἴ πῃ τάφροι ἢ
anything suspect there or impassable or if anywhere ditches or
σκόλοπες καταπεπηγότες ἀφανεῖς, καὶ τὰς τάξεις τῶν
stakes fixed-in unseen and the formations of-the
πολεμίων ἀκριβέστερον κατιδεῖν. καὶ νικᾷ Παρμενίων τῇ
enemy more-accurately to-observe and wins Parmenion in-the
γνώμῃ, καὶ καταστρατοπεδεύουσιν αὐτοῦ ὅπως τεταγμένοι
judgment and they-encamp there as drawn-up
ἔμελλον ἰέναι ἐς τὴν μάχην.
they-were-about to-go into the battle
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς ψιλοὺς καὶ τῶν ἱππέων 9.5
Alexander and having-taken the light-troops and of-the cavalry
τοὺς ἑταίρους περιῄει ἐν κύκλῳ σκοπῶν τὴν χώραν πᾶσαν,
the companions went-around in circle surveying the country whole
ἵνα τὸ ἔργον αὐτῷ ἔσεσθαι ἔμελλεν. ἐπανελθὼν δὲ καὶ
where the action for-him to-be was-about having-returned and also
ξυγκαλέσας αὖθις τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἡγεμόνας, αὐτοὺς μὲν οὐκ
having-called-together again the same commanders them indeed not

ἔφη χρῆναι παρακαλεῖσθαι πρὸς οὗ ἐς τὸν ἀγῶνα·
he-said it-to-be-necessary to-be-exhorted by himself for the contest
πάλαι γὰρ εἶναι δι᾽ ἀρετήν τε τὴν σφῶν παρακεκλημένους
long for to-be by valor both the their exhorted
καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν πολλάκις ἤδη καλῶν ἔργων ἀποδεδειγμένων.
and by the many-times already fine deeds displayed

9.6 τοὺς κατὰ σφᾶς δὲ ἑκάστους ἐξορμᾶν ἠξίου, λοχαγόν
the under them and each to-urge-on he-required captain
τε λοχίτας καὶ ἰλάρχην τὴν ἴλην τὴν αὑτοῦ
both the-men-of-the-company and squadron-leader the squadron the his-own
ἕκαστον καὶ ταξιάρχους τὰς τάξεις, τούς τε ἡγεμόνας τῶν
each and taxiarchs the battalions the both commanders of-the
πεζῶν τὴν φάλαγγα ἕκαστον τήν οἱ ἐπιτετραμμένην,
infantry the phalanx each the to-him entrusted
ὡς ἐν τῇδε τῇ μάχῃ οὐχ ὑπὲρ Κοίλης Συρίας ἢ Φοινίκης,
as in this the battle not for Hollow Syria or Phoenicia
οὐδὲ ὑπὲρ Αἰγύπτου, ὡς πρόσθεν, μαχουμένους, ἀλλὰ
nor for Egypt as before about-to-fight but
ὑπὲρ τῆς ξυμπάσης Ἀσίας, οὕστινας χρὴ ἄρχειν, ἐν
for the whole Asia who it-is-necessary to-rule in
τῷ τότε κριθησόμενον.
the then about-to-be-decided

9.7 οὔκουν τὴν ἐς τὰ καλὰ ἐξόρμησιν διὰ πολλῶν
not-therefore the to the noble-things urging through many-words
ἀναγκαίαν αὐτοῖς εἶναι οἴκοθεν τοῦτο ἔχουσιν, ἀλλὰ κόσμου
necessary for-them to-be from-home this having but of-order
τε ἐν τῷ κινδύνῳ ὅπως τις καθ᾽ αὑτὸν ἐπιμελήσεται
both in the danger that each by himself will-take-care
καὶ σιγῆς ἀκριβοῦς, ὁπότε σιγῶντας ἐπιέναι δέοι,
and of-silence exact when in-silence to-advance it-should-be-necessary

καὶ αὖ λαμπρᾶς τῆς βοῆς, ἵνα ἐμβοῆσαι καλόν, καὶ
and again of-ringing the shout where to-shout fine and
ἀλαλαγμοῦ ὡς φοβερωτάτου, ὁπότε ἐπαλαλάξαι καιρός,
of-war-cry as most-fearful when to-raise-the-war-cry the-moment
αὐτοί τε ὅπως ὀξέως κατακούοιεν τῶν παραγγελλομένων 9.8
themselves both that quickly they-should-hear the-things being-ordered
καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτῶν αὖ ὅπως ἐς τὰς τάξεις ὀξέως παραδιδῶνται
and from them in-turn that to the battalions quickly should-be-passed-on
τὰ παραγγέλματα· ἔν τε τῷ καθ᾽ αὑτὸν ἕκαστον καὶ
the orders in both the by himself each and
τὸ πᾶν μεμνῆσθαι ξυγκινδυνεῦον τε ἀμελουμένῳ καὶ δι᾽
the whole to-remember sharing-the-danger both being-neglected and through
ἐπιμελείας ἐκπονουμένῳ ξυνορθούμενον.
care being-carried-out being-set-right-together
ταῦτα καὶ τοιαῦτα ἄλλα οὐ πολλὰ παρακαλέσας τε 10.1
these-things and such others not many having-exhorted both
καὶ ἀντιπαρακληθεὶς πρὸς τῶν ἡγεμόνων θαρρεῖν ἐπὶ
and having-been-exhorted-in-return by the commanders to-take-heart in
σφίσι, δειπνοποιεῖσθαί τε καὶ ἀναπαύεσθαι ἐκέλευσε τὸν
themselves to-take-supper both and to-rest ordered the
στρατόν. Παρμενίων δὲ λέγουσιν ὅτι ἀφικόμενος παρ᾽
army Parmenion and they-say that having-come to
αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνήν, νύκτωρ παρῄνει ἐπιθέσθαι τοῖς
him to the tent by-night advised to-attack the
Πέρσαις· ἀπροσδοκήτοις τε γὰρ καὶ ἀνατεταραγμένοις
Persians unexpecting both for and confused
καὶ ἅμα ἐν νυκτὶ φοβερωτέροις ἐπιθήσεσθαι.
and at-the-same-time in night more-terrified to-be-going-to-attack
ὁ δὲ ἐκείνῳ μὲν ἀποκρίνεται, ὅτι καὶ ἄλλοι κατήκουον 10.2
he and to-him indeed answers because also others were-listening
τῶν λόγων, αἰσχρὸν εἶναι κλέψαι τὴν νίκην, ἀλλὰ φανερῶς
of-the words shameful to-be to-steal the victory but openly

καὶ ἄνευ σοφίσματος χρῆναι νικῆσαι Ἀλέξανδρον. καὶ
and without stratagem to-be-necessary to-conquer Alexander and
τὸ μεγαλήγορον αὐτοῦ τοῦτο οὐχ ὑπέρογκον μᾶλλόν
the boastfulness his this not overweening more
τι ἢ εὐθαρσὲς ἐν τοῖς κινδύνοις ἐφαίνετο· δοκεῖν δ'
somewhat than confident in the dangers appeared to-seem and
ἔμοιγε, καὶ λογισμῷ ἀκριβεῖ ἐχρήσατο ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε·
to-me-at-least also reasoning exact he-used in the such
10.3 ἐν νυκτὶ γὰρ τοῖς τε ἀποχρώντως καὶ τοῖς ἐνδεῶς πρὸς
in night for for-the both sufficiently and for-the deficiently for
τὰς μάχας παρεσκευασμένοις πολλὰ ἐκ τοῦ παραλόγου
the battles prepared many-things from the unexpected
ξυμβάντα τοὺς μὲν ἔσφηλε, τοὺς κρείσσονας, τοῖς χείροσι
having-happened the-ones indeed tripped the stronger to-the weaker
δὲ παρὰ τὰ ἐξ ἀμφοῖν ἐλπισθέντα τὴν νίκην παρέδωκεν.
and contrary-to the from both expected the victory handed-over
αὐτῷ τε κινδυνεύοντι τὸ πολὺ ἐν ταῖς μάχαις σφαλερὰ
for-himself both running-risk the most in the battles hazardous
ἡ νὺξ κατεφαίνετο, καὶ ἅμα ἡσσηθέντι τε αὖθις
the night appeared and at-the-same-time having-been-defeated both again
Δαρείῳ τὴν ξυγχώρησιν τοῦ χείρονι ὄντι χειρόνων ἡγεῖσθαι
for-Darius the admission of-the inferior being inferior-men to-lead
ἡ λαθραία τε καὶ νυκτερινὴ ἐκ σφῶν ἐπίθεσις ἀφῃρεῖτο,
the secret both and by-night from them attack would-take-away
10.4 εἴ τέ τι ἐκ τοῦ παραλόγου πταῖσμα σφίσι ξυμπέσοι,
if both anything from the unexpected reverse to-them should-befall
τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις τὰ κύκλῳ φίλια καὶ αὐτοὶ τῆς χώρας
for-the indeed enemy the in-circle friendly and themselves of-the country
ἔμπειροι, σφεῖς δὲ ἄπειροι ἐν πολεμίοις τοῖς πᾶσιν, ὧν
experienced they but inexperienced among enemies the all of-whom
οὐ μικρὰ μοῖρα οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἦσαν, ξυνεπιθησόμενοι ἐν
not small part the prisoners were about-to-join-the-attack in

νυκτὶ μὴ ὅτι πταίσασιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰ μὴ παρὰ πολὺ νικῶντες
night not only having-tripped but even if not by much conquering
φαίνοιντο. τούτων τε τῶν λογισμῶν ἕνεκα ἐπαινῶ
they-should-appear of-these both the reasonings for-the-sake I-praise
Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ τοῦ ἐς τὸ φανερὸν ὑπερόγκου οὐ μεῖον.
Alexander and for-the to the open overweening not less
Δαρεῖος δὲ καὶ ὁ ξὺν Δαρείῳ στρατὸς οὕτως ὅπως τὴν 11.1
Darius and and the with Darius army so as at-the
ἀρχὴν ἐτάξαντο ἔμειναν τῆς νυκτὸς ξυντεταγμένοι,
beginning they-had-been-drawn-up remained through-the night drawn-up
ὅτι οὔτε στρατόπεδον αὐτοῖς περιεβέβλητο ἀκριβὲς καὶ
because neither a-camp for-them had-been-thrown-around strict and
ἅμα ἐφοβοῦντο μή σφισι νύκτωρ ἐπιθοῖντο οἱ πολέμιοι.
at-the-same-time they-feared lest them by-night should-attack the enemy
καὶ εἴπερ τι ἄλλο, καὶ τοῦτο ἐκάκωσε τοῖς Πέρσαις 11.2
and if-indeed anything else also this harmed for-the Persians
ἐν τῷ τότε τὰ πράγματα, ἡ στάσις ἡ πολλὴ ἡ ξὺν τοῖς
in the then the affairs the standing the long the with the
ὅπλοις καὶ τὸ δέος, ὅ τι περ φιλεῖ πρὸ τῶν μεγάλων
arms and the fear what ever indeed is-wont before the great
κινδύνων γίγνεσθαι, οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ παραυτίκα σχεδιασθέν,
dangers to-arise not from the moment improvised
ἀλλ' ἐν πολλῷ χρόνῳ μελετηθέν τε καὶ τὰς γνώμας
but in long time practiced both and the minds
αὐτοῖς δουλωσάμενον. ἐτάχθη δὲ αὐτῷ ἡ στρατιὰ ὧδε·
them having-enslaved was-drawn-up and for-him the army thus
ἑάλω γὰρ ὕστερον ἡ τάξις, ἥντινα ἔταξε Δαρεῖος, 11.3
was-captured for later the order-of-battle which drew-up Darius
γεγραμμένη, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος. τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον
written as says Aristobulus the indeed left
αὐτῷ κέρας οἵ τε Βάκτριοι ἱππεῖς εἶχον καὶ ξὺν τούτοις
for-him wing the both Bactrian cavalry held and with these

Δάαι καὶ Ἀραχωτοί· ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις Πέρσαι ἐτετάχατο,
Daae and Arachotians next and to-these Persians had-been-posted
ἱππεῖς τε ὁμοῦ καὶ πεζοὶ ἀναμεμιγμένοι, καὶ Σούσιοι
cavalry both together and infantry mixed and Susians
ἐπὶ Πέρσαις ἐπὶ δὲ Σουσίοις Καδούσιοι.
next-to Persians next and to-Susians Cadusians

11.4 αὕτη μὲν ἡ τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρως ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ μέσον τῆς
this indeed the of-the left wing as-far to the center of-the
πάσης φάλαγγος τάξις ἦν· κατὰ δὲ τὸ δεξιὸν οἵ τε ἐκ
whole phalanx order was on and the right the both from
Κοίλης Συρίας καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς μέσης τῶν ποταμῶν ἐτετάχατο,
Hollow Syria and the from the middle of-the rivers had-been-posted
καὶ Μῆδοι ἔτι κατὰ τὸ δεξιόν, ἐπὶ δὲ Παρθυαῖοι καὶ Σάκαι,
and Medes still on the right next and Parthyaeans and Sacae
ἐπὶ δὲ Τόπειροι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἐπὶ δὲ Ἀλβανοὶ καὶ Σακεσῖναι,
next and Topeiri and Hyrcanians next and Albanians and Sacesinae
οὗτοι μὲν ἔστε ἐπὶ τὸ μέσον τῆς πάσης φάλαγγος.
these indeed as-far to the center of-the whole phalanx

11.5 κατὰ τὸ μέσον δέ, ἵνα ἦν βασιλεὺς Δαρεῖος, οἵ τε συγγενεῖς
at the center and where was king Darius the both kinsmen
οἱ βασιλέως ἐτετάχατο καὶ οἱ μηλοφόροι Πέρσαι καὶ
the of-the-king had-been-posted and the apple-bearers Persians and
Ἰνδοὶ καὶ Κᾶρες οἱ ἀνάσπαστοι καλούμενοι καὶ οἱ Μάρδοι
Indians and Carians the transplanted called and the Mardian
τοξόται· Οὔξιοι δὲ καὶ Βαβυλώνιοι καὶ οἱ πρὸς τῇ ἐρυθρᾷ
archers Uxians and and Babylonians and the by the Red
θαλάσσῃ καὶ Σιττακηνοὶ εἰς βάθος ἐπιτεταγμένοι ἦσαν.
Sea and Sittacenians in depth posted-behind were

11.6 προετετάχατο δὲ ἐπὶ μὲν τοῦ εὐωνύμου κατὰ τὸ δεξιὸν
had-been-posted-in-front and on indeed the left opposite the right
τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου οἵ τε Σκύθαι ἱππεῖς καὶ τῶν Βακτριανῶν
— of-Alexander the both Scythian cavalry and of-the Bactrians

ἐς χιλίους καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα ἑκατόν. οἱ δὲ
about thousand and chariots scythe-bearing hundred the and
ἐλέφαντες ἔστησαν κατὰ τὴν Δαρείου ἴλην τὴν βασιλικὴν
elephants stood opposite the of-Darius squadron the royal
καὶ ἅρματα ἐς πεντήκοντα.
and chariots about fifty
τοῦ δὲ δεξιοῦ οἵ τε Ἀρμενίων καὶ Καππαδοκῶν ἱππεῖς 11.7
of-the and right the both of-Armenians and of-Cappadocians cavalry
προετετάχατο καὶ ἅρματα δρεπανηφόρα πεντήκοντα. οἱ δὲ
had-been-posted-in-front and chariots scythe-bearing fifty the and
Ἕλληνες οἱ μισθοφόροι παρὰ Δαρεῖόν τε αὐτὸν ἑκατέρωθεν
Greeks the mercenaries beside Darius both himself on-either-side
καὶ τοὺς ἅμα αὐτῷ Πέρσας κατὰ τὴν φάλαγγα αὐτὴν
and the with him Persians opposite the phalanx itself
τῶν Μακεδόνων ὡς μόνοι δὴ ἀντίρροποι τῇ φάλαγγι
of-the Macedonians as alone indeed a-match for-the phalanx
ἐτάχθησαν. Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐκοσμήθη ὧδε.
were-posted for-Alexander and the army was-arrayed thus
τὸ μὲν δεξιὸν αὐτῷ εἶχον τῶν ἱππέων οἱ ἑταῖροι, ὧν 11.8
the indeed right for-him held of-the cavalry the companions in-front-of-whom
προετέτακτο ἡ ἴλη ἡ βασιλική, ἧς Κλεῖτος ὁ
was-posted the squadron the royal of-which Cleitus the
Δρωπίδου ἰλάρχης ἦν, ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἡ Γλαυκίου ἴλη,
(son)-of-Dropides squadron-leader was next and to-this the of-Glaucias squadron
ἐχομένη δ' αὐτῆς ἡ Ἀρίστωνος, ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ Σωπόλιδος τοῦ
adjoining and it the of-Ariston next and the of-Sopolis the
Ἑρμοδώρου, ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ Ἡρακλείδου τοῦ Ἀντιόχου, ἐπὶ
(son)-of-Hermodorus next and the of-Heracleides the (son)-of-Antiochus next
ταύτῃ δὲ ἡ Δημητρίου τοῦ Ἀλθαιμένους, ταύτης δὲ ἐχομένη
to-this and the of-Demetrius the (son)-of-Althaemenes this and adjoining
ἡ Μελεάγρου, τελευταία δὲ τῶν βασιλικῶν ἰλῶν ἧς
the of-Meleager last and of-the royal squadrons of-which

Ἡγέλοχος ὁ Ἱππoστράτου ἰλάρχης ἦν. ξυμπάσης δὲ
Hegelochus the (son)-of-Hippostratus squadron-leader was of-the-whole and
τῆς ἵππου τῶν ἑταίρων Φιλώτας ἦρχεν ὁ Παρμενίωνος.
of-the horse of-the companions Philotas commanded the (son)-of-Parmenion
11.9 τῆς δὲ φάλαγγος τῶν Μακεδόνων ἐχόμενον τῶν ἱππέων
of-the and phalanx of-the Macedonians adjoining the cavalry
πρῶτον τὸ ἄγημα ἐτέτακτο τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν καὶ ἐπὶ
first the agema had-been-posted of-the shield-bearers and next
τούτῳ οἱ ἄλλοι ὑπασπισταί· ἡγεῖτο δὲ αὐτῶν Νικάνωρ
to-this the other shield-bearers led and them Nicanor
ὁ Παρμενίωνος· τούτων δὲ ἐχομένη ἡ Κοίνου τοῦ
the (son)-of-Parmenion these and adjoining the of-Coenus the
Πολεμοκράτους τάξις ἦν, μετὰ δὲ τούτους ἡ Περδίκκου
(son)-of-Polemocrates battalion was after and these the of-Perdiccas
τοῦ Ὀρόντου, ἔπειτα ἡ Μελεάγρου τοῦ Νεοπτολέμου, ἐπὶ
the (son)-of-Orontes then the of-Meleager the (son)-of-Neoptolemus next
δὲ ἡ Πολυπέρχοντος τοῦ Σιμμίου, ἐπὶ δὲ ἡ Ἀμύντου
and the of-Polyperchon the (son)-of-Simmias next and the of-Amyntas
τοῦ Φιλίππου· ταύτης δὲ ἡγεῖτο Σιμμίας, ὅτι Ἀμύντας
the (son)-of-Philip this and led Simmias because Amyntas
ἐπὶ Μακεδονίας ἐς ξυλλογὴν στρατιᾶς ἐσταλμένος ἦν.
to Macedonia for levy of-an-army sent had-been
11.10 τὸ δὲ εὐώνυμον τῆς φάλαγγος τῶν Μακεδόνων ἡ
the and left of-the phalanx of-the Macedonians the
Κρατεροῦ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου τάξις εἶχε, καὶ αὐτὸς Κρατερὸς
of-Craterus the (son)-of-Alexander battalion held and himself Craterus
ἐξῆρχε τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πεζῶν· καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐχόμενοι
commanded the left of-the infantry and cavalry adjoining
αὐτοῦ οἱ ξύμμαχοι, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Ἐριγύϊος ὁ Λαρίχου·
him the allied whom led Erigyius the (son)-of-Larichus
τούτων δὲ ἐχόμενοι ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας οἱ
these and adjoining as toward the left wing the

Θεσσαλοὶ ἱππεῖς, ὧν ἦρχε Φίλιππος ὁ Μενελάου.
Thessalian cavalry whom commanded Philip the (son)-of-Menelaus
ξύμπαν δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἦγε Παρμενίων ὁ Φιλώτα,
whole and the left led Parmenion the (son)-of-Philotas
καὶ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν οἱ τῶν Φαρσαλίων ἱππεῖς οἱ κράτιστοί
and around him the of-the Pharsalians cavalry the best
τε καὶ πλεῖστοι τῆς Θεσσαλικῆς ἵππου ἀνεστρέφοντο.
both and most-numerous of-the Thessalian horse were-stationed
ἡ μὲν ἐπὶ μετώπου τάξις Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ὧδε κεκόσμητο·
the indeed on front order for-Alexander thus had-been-arranged

IV · GAUGAMELA

Alexander posts a second line behind the phalanx to face about if surrounded. He inclines right until he nearly leaves the leveled ground, and Darius sends cavalry around his flank. The fighting there is hard, and the scythed chariots are shot down or let through the opened ranks. When the Persian cavalry leave a gap, Alexander leads the companions in a wedge at Darius, who flees first. Indians and Persians break through to the baggage and are routed by the second line. Called back by Parmenion, Alexander meets the fleeing Persian cavalry in the fiercest fighting of the day. He pursues to Arbela, where Darius' chariot and treasure are taken; Arrian gives the losses and dates the battle.

ἐπέταξε δὲ καὶ δευτέραν τάξιν ὡς εἶναι τὴν φάλαγγα 12.1
he-posted-behind and also a-second line so-as to-be the phalanx
ἀμφίστομον. καὶ παρηγγέλλετο τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τῶν
double-fronted and it-was-ordered to-the commanders of-the
ἐπιτεταγμένων, εἰ κυκλουμένους τοὺς σφῶν πρὸς τοῦ
posted-behind if being-surrounded the their-own by the
Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος κατίδοιεν, ἐπιστρέψαντας ἐς τὸ
Persian army they-should-see having-turned to the
ἔμπαλιν δέχεσθαι τοὺς βαρβάρους·
back to-receive the barbarians

12.2 ἐς ἐπικαμπὴν δέ, εἴ που ἀνάγκη καταλαμβάνοι ἢ
at an-angle and if anywhere necessity should-arise either
ἀναπτύξαι ἢ ξυγκλεῖσαι τὴν φάλαγγα, κατὰ μὲν τὸ
to-open-out or to-close-up the phalanx on indeed the
δεξιὸν κέρας ἐχόμενοι τῆς βασιλικῆς ἴλης τῶν Ἀγριάνων
right wing adjoining the royal squadron of-the Agrianians
ἐτάχθησαν οἱ ἡμίσεες, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Ἄτταλος, καὶ μετὰ
were-posted the half whom led Attalus and with
τούτων οἱ Μακεδόνες οἱ τοξόται, ὧν Βρίσων ἦρχεν,
these the Macedonian the archers whom Brison commanded
ἐχόμενοι δὲ τῶν τοξοτῶν οἱ ἀρχαῖοι καλούμενοι ξένοι
adjoining and the archers the old called mercenaries
καὶ ἄρχων τούτων Κλέανδρος.
and commander of-these Cleander

12.3 προετάχθησαν δὲ τῶν τε Ἀγριάνων καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν οἵ τε
were-posted-in-front and of-the both Agrianians and of-the archers the both
πρόδρομοι ἱππεῖς καὶ οἱ Παίονες, ὧν Ἀρέτης καὶ Ἀρίστων
prodromoi cavalry and the Paeonians whom Aretes and Ariston
ἡγοῦντο. ξυμπάντων δὲ προτεταγμένοι ἦσαν οἱ μισθοφόροι
led of-all and posted-in-front were the mercenary
ἱππεῖς, ὧν Μενίδας ἦρχε. τῆς δὲ βασιλικῆς ἴλης καὶ
cavalry whom Menidas commanded of-the and royal squadron and
τῶν ἄλλων ἑταίρων προτεταγμένοι ἦσαν τῶν τε Ἀγριάνων
of-the other companions posted-in-front were of-the both Agrianians
καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν οἱ ἡμίσεες, καὶ οἱ Βαλάκρου ἀκοντισταί·
and of-the archers the half and the of-Balacrus javelin-men
οὗτοι κατὰ τὰ ἅρματα τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἐτετάχατο.
these opposite the chariots the scythe-bearing had-been-posted

12.4 Μενίδᾳ δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν παρήγγελτο, εἰ περιϊππεύοιεν
to-Menidas and and to-the around him it-had-been-ordered if should-ride-around
οἱ πολέμιοι τὸ κέρας σφῶν, ἐς πλαγίους ἐμβάλλειν αὐτοὺς
the enemy the wing their at flank to-charge them

ἐπικάμψαντας. τὰ μὲν ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως οὕτως
having-wheeled the-things indeed on the right wing so
ἐτέτακτο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ· κατὰ δὲ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἐς ἐπικαμπὴν
had-been-arranged by-Alexander on and the left at an-angle
οἵ τε Θρᾷκες ἐτετάχατο, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Σιτάλκης, καὶ ἐπὶ
the both Thracians had-been-posted whom led Sitalces and next-to
τούτοις οἱ ξύμμαχοι ἱππεῖς, ὧν ἦρχε Κοίρανος, ἐπὶ
these the allied cavalry whom commanded Coeranus next
δὲ οἱ Ὀδρύσαι ἱππεῖς, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Ἀγάθων ὁ Τυρίμμα.
and the Odrysian cavalry whom led Agathon the (son)-of-Tyrimmas
ξυμπάντων δὲ ταύτῃ προετάχθη ἡ ξενικὴ ἵππος ἡ τῶν 12.5
of-all and there was-posted-in-front the foreign horse the of-the
μισθοφόρων, ὧν Ἀνδρόμαχος ὁ Ἱέρωνος ἦρχεν. ἐπὶ
mercenaries whom Andromachus the (son)-of-Hieron commanded over
δὲ τοῖς σκευοφόροις οἱ ἀπὸ Θρᾴκης πεζοὶ ἐς φυλακὴν
and the baggage the from Thrace infantry for guard
ἐτάχθησαν. ἦν δὲ ἡ πᾶσα στρατιὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἱππεῖς μὲν
were-posted was and the whole army of-Alexander cavalry indeed
ἐς ἑπτακισχιλίους, πεζοὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τὰς τέσσαρας μυριάδας.
about seven-thousand infantry and about the four myriads
ὡς δὲ ὁμοῦ ἤδη τὰ στρατόπεδα ἐγίγνετο, ὤφθη Δαρεῖός 13.1
when and close already the armies were was-seen Darius
τε καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οἵ τε μηλοφόροι Πέρσαι καὶ
both and the around him the both apple-bearers Persians and
Ἰνδοὶ καὶ Ἀλβανοὶ καὶ Κᾶρες οἱ ἀνάσπαστοι καὶ οἱ
Indians and Albanians and Carians the transplanted and the
Μάρδοι τοξόται, κατ' αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον τεταγμένοι καὶ
Mardian archers opposite himself Alexander posted and
τὴν ἴλην τὴν βασιλικήν. ἦγε δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν τὸ
the squadron the royal led and as toward the right the

αὐτοῦ Ἀλέξανδρος μᾶλλον, καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι ἀντιπαρῆγον,
his-own Alexander rather and the Persians led-along-opposite
ὑπερφαλαγγοῦντες πολὺ ἐπὶ τῷ σφῶν εὐωνύμῳ.
outflanking far on the their left

13.2 ἤδη τε οἱ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἱππεῖς παριππεύοντες ἥπτοντο τῶν
already both the of-the Scythians cavalry riding-along touched the
προτεταγμένων τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου τάξεως καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
posted-in-front — of-Alexander line and Alexander
ἔτι ὅμως ἦγεν ἐπὶ δόρυ, καὶ ἐγγὺς ἦν τοῦ ἐξαλλάσσειν
still nevertheless led to the-right and near was to-the to-pass-beyond
τὸν ὡδοποιημένον πρὸς τῶν Περσῶν χῶρον. ἔνθα δὴ
the leveled by the Persians ground there indeed
δείσας Δαρεῖος μὴ προχωρησάντων ἐς τὰ οὐχ ὁμαλὰ
having-feared Darius lest having-advanced into the not level
τῶν Μακεδόνων ἀχρεῖά σφισι γένηται τὰ ἅρματα, κελεύει
the Macedonians useless to-them become the chariots orders
τοὺς προτεταγμένους τοῦ εὐωνύμου περιϊππεύειν τὸ κέρας
the posted-in-front of-the left to-ride-around the wing
τὸ δεξιόν, ᾗ Ἀλέξανδρος ἦγε, τοῦ μηκέτι προσωτέρω
the right where Alexander led for-the no-longer farther
αὐτοὺς ἐξάγειν τὸ κέρας.
them to-extend the wing

13.3 τούτου δὲ γενομένου Ἀλέξανδρος ἐμβάλλειν κελεύει ἐς
this and having-happened Alexander to-charge orders at
αὐτοὺς τοὺς μισθοφόρους ἱππέας, ὧν Μενίδας ἡγεῖτο.
them the mercenary cavalry whom Menidas led
ἀντεκδραμόντες δὲ ἐπ᾽ αὐτοὺς οἵ τε Σκύθαι ἱππεῖς καὶ
having-run-out-against and against them the both Scythian cavalry and
τῶν Βακτρίων οἱ ξυντεταγμένοι τοῖς Σκύθαις τρέπουσιν
of-the Bactrians the drawn-up-with the Scythians rout
ὀλίγους ὄντας πολλῷ πλείονες. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τοὺς περὶ
few being by-much more Alexander and the around

Ἀρέτην τε, τοὺς Παίονας, καὶ τοὺς ξένους ἐμβαλεῖν τοῖς
Aretes both the Paeonians and the mercenaries to-charge the
Σκύθαις ἐκέλευσε·
Scythians ordered
καὶ ἐγκλίνουσιν οἱ βάρβαροι. Βάκτριοι δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι 13.4
and give-way the barbarians Bactrians and the others
πελάσαντες τοῖς Παίοσί τε καὶ ξένοις τούς τε σφῶν
having-approached the Paeonians both and mercenaries the both their-own
φεύγοντας ἤδη ἀνέστρεψαν ἐς τὴν μάχην καὶ τὴν
fleeing already turned-back to the battle and the
ἱππομαχίαν ξυστῆναι ἐποίησαν. καὶ ἔπιπτον μὲν πλείονες
cavalry-battle to-close made and fell indeed more
τῶν Ἀλεξάνδρου, τῷ τε πλήθει τῶν βαρβάρων βιαζόμενοι
of-the of-Alexander by-the both multitude of-the barbarians being-overpowered
καὶ ὅτι αὐτοί τε οἱ Σκύθαι καὶ οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς
and because themselves both the Scythians and the horses their
ἀκριβέστερον εἰς φυλακὴν πεφραγμένοι ἦσαν. ἀλλὰ καὶ
more-thoroughly for protection armored were but even
ὡς τάς τε προσβολὰς αὐτῶν ἐδέχοντο οἱ Μακεδόνες καὶ
so the both attacks of-them received the Macedonians and
βίᾳ κατ᾽ ἴλας προσπίπτοντες ἐξώθουν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως.
by-force by squadrons falling-on pushed-out from the formation
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τὰ ἅρματα τὰ δρεπανηφόρα ἐφῆκαν οἱ 13.5
and in this the chariots the scythe-bearing they-launched the
βάρβαροι κατ᾽ αὐτὸν Ἀλέξανδρον, ὡς ἀναταράξοντες
barbarians against himself Alexander so-as about-to-throw-into-confusion
αὐτῷ τὴν φάλαγγα. καὶ ταύτῃ μάλιστα ἐψεύσθησαν· τὰ μὲν
for-him the phalanx and there most they-were-deceived some indeed
γὰρ εὐθὺς ὡς προσεφέρετο κατηκόντισαν οἵ τε Ἀγριᾶνες καὶ
for at-once as they-bore-on shot-down the both Agrianians and
οἱ ξὺν Βαλάκρῳ ἀκοντισταὶ οἱ προτεταγμένοι τῆς ἵππου τῶν
the with Balacrus javelin-men the posted-in-front of-the horse of-the

ἑταίρων· τὰ δὲ τῶν ῥυτήρων ἀντιλαμβανόμενοι τούς τε
companions the-others and of-the reins seizing the both
ἀναβάτας κατέσπων καὶ τοὺς ἵππους περιϊστάμενοι ἔκοπτον.
drivers pulled-down and the horses surrounding cut-down
13.6 ἔστι δὲ ᾗ καὶ διεξέπεσε διὰ τῶν τάξεων· διέσχον
there-are and which also got-through through the ranks they-parted
γάρ, ὥσπερ παρήγγελτο αὐτοῖς, ἵνα προσέπιπτε τὰ
for as had-been-ordered them where fell-on the
ἅρματα· καὶ ταύτῃ μάλιστα ξυνέβη αὐτά τε σῶα
chariots and there most it-happened them both safe
καὶ οἷς ἐπηλάθη ἀβλαβῶς διελθεῖν· ἀλλὰ καὶ
and those-at-whom they-were-driven unharmed to-pass but also
τούτων οἵ τε ἱπποκόμοι τῆς Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιᾶς καὶ
of-these the both grooms of-the of-Alexander army and
οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ οἱ βασιλικοὶ ἐκράτησαν.
the shield-bearers the royal got-the-mastery
14.1 ὡς δὲ Δαρεῖος ἐπῆγεν ἤδη τὴν φάλαγγα πᾶσαν,
when and Darius led-on already the phalanx whole
ἐνταῦθα Ἀλέξανδρος Ἀρέτην μὲν κελεύει ἐμβαλεῖν τοῖς
there Alexander Aretes indeed orders to-charge the
περιϊππεύουσι τὸ κέρας σφῶν τὸ δεξιὸν ὡς ἐς κύκλωσιν·
riding-around the wing their the right as for encirclement
14.2 αὐτὸς δὲ τέως μὲν ἐπὶ κέρως τοὺς ἀμφ' αὑτὸν ἦγε,
he-himself and for-a-time indeed in column the around himself led
τῶν δὲ ἐκβοηθησάντων ἱππέων τοῖς κυκλουμένοις τὸ
of-the and having-come-out-to-help cavalry for-the encircling the
κέρας τὸ δεξιὸν παραρρηξάντων τι τῆς πρώτης
wing the right having-broken somewhat of-the first
φάλαγγος τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιστρέψας κατὰ τὸ διέχον καὶ
phalanx of-the barbarians having-wheeled at the gap and
ὥσπερ ἔμβολον ποιήσας τῆς τε ἵππου τῆς ἑταιρικῆς
as-it-were a-wedge having-made of-the both horse the of-the-companions

καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος τῆς ταύτῃ τεταγμένης ἦγε δρόμῳ τε
and of-the phalanx the there posted he-led at-a-run both
καὶ ἀλαλαγμῷ ὡς ἐπὶ αὐτὸν Δαρεῖον.
and with-war-cry as against himself Darius
καὶ χρόνον μέν τινα ὀλίγον ἐν χερσὶν ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο· ὡς 14.3
and time indeed some little in hands the battle was when
δὲ οἵ τε ἱππεῖς οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος
and the both cavalry the around Alexander and himself Alexander
εὐρώστως ἐνέκειντο ὠθισμοῖς τε χρώμενοι καὶ τοῖς ξυστοῖς
stoutly pressed with-shovings both using and with-the lances
τὰ πρόσωπα τῶν Περσῶν κόπτοντες, ᾗ τε φάλαγξ ἡ
the faces of-the Persians striking the both phalanx the
Μακεδονικὴ πυκνὴ καὶ ταῖς σαρίσσαις πεφρικυῖα ἐμβεβλήκει
Macedonian dense and with-the sarissas bristling had-charged
ἤδη αὐτοῖς, καὶ πάντα ὁμοῦ τὰ δεινὰ καὶ πάλαι ἤδη
already them and all at-once the terrors and long already
φοβερῷ ὄντι Δαρείῳ ἐφαίνετο, πρῶτος αὐτὸς ἐπιστρέψας
terrified being to-Darius appeared first himself having-turned
ἔφευγεν· ἐφοβήθησαν δὲ καὶ οἱ περιϊππεύοντες τῶν Περσῶν
fled were-frightened and also the riding-around of-the Persians
τὸ κέρας ἐμβαλόντων ἐς αὐτοὺς εὐρώστως τῶν ἀμφὶ Ἀρέτην.
the wing having-charged into them stoutly the around Aretes
ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ τῶν Περσῶν φυγὴ καρτερὰ ἦν, καὶ 14.4
there indeed indeed of-the Persians flight headlong was and
οἱ Μακεδόνες ἐφεπόμενοι ἐφόνευον τοὺς φεύγοντας.
the Macedonians following slaughtered the fleeing
οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Σιμμίαν καὶ ἡ τούτου τάξις οὐκέτι
the and around Simmias and the his battalion no-longer
ξυνεξορμῆσαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δυνατοὶ ἐγένοντο ἐς τὴν δίωξιν,
to-rush-out-with Alexander able were for the pursuit

ἀλλ᾽ ἐπιστήσαντες τὴν φάλαγγα αὐτοῦ ἠγωνίζοντο, ὅτι
but having-halted the phalanx there fought because
τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν Μακεδόνων πονεῖσθαι ἠγγέλλετο.
the left of-the Macedonians to-be-hard-pressed was-reported
14.5 καὶ ταύτῃ παραρραγείσης αὐτοῖς τῆς τάξεως κατὰ τὸ
and there broken for-them the line at the
διέχον διεκπαίουσι τῶν τε Ἰνδῶν τινες καὶ τῆς Περσικῆς
gap break-through of-the both Indians some and of-the Persian
ἵππου ὡς ἐπὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν Μακεδόνων· καὶ τὸ
horse as toward the baggage of-the Macedonians and the
ἔργον ἐκεῖ καρτερὸν ἐγίγνετο. οἵ τε γὰρ Πέρσαι θρασέως
action there fierce became the both for Persians boldly
προσέκειντο ἀνόπλοις τοῖς πολλοῖς καὶ οὐ προσδοκήσασιν
pressed-on unarmed the many and not having-expected
ἐπὶ σφᾶς διεκπεσεῖσθαί τινας διακόψαντας διπλῆν τὴν
toward them to-be-going-to-break-through some having-cut-through double the
φάλαγγα, καὶ οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι βάρβαροι ἐμβαλόντων τῶν
phalanx and the prisoners barbarians having-charged the
Περσῶν ξυνεπέθεντο καὶ αὐτοὶ τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ἐν τῷ ἔργῳ.
Persians joined-the-attack also themselves on-the Macedonians in the action
14.6 τῶν δὲ ἐπιτεταγμένων τῇ πρώτῃ φάλαγγι οἱ ἡγεμόνες
of-the and posted-behind the first phalanx the commanders
ὀξέως μαθόντες τὸ γιγνόμενον μεταβαλόντες, ᾗπερ
quickly having-learned the happening having-turned-about as
παρήγγελτο αὐτοῖς, τὴν τάξιν ἐπιγίγνονται κατὰ νώτου
had-been-ordered them the formation come-up at rear
τοῖς Πέρσαις, καὶ πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν αὐτοῦ ἀμφὶ
on-the Persians and many indeed of-them there about
τοῖς σκευοφόροις ξυνεχομένους ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ
the baggage being-hemmed-in killed the-others and
αὐτῶν ἐγκλίναντες ἔφευγον. οἱ δ᾽ ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως
of-them having-given-way fled those and on the right wing

τῶν Περσῶν οὔπω τῆς φυγῆς τῆς Δαρείου ἠσθημένοι
of-the Persians not-yet of-the flight — of-Darius having-perceived
περιϊππεύσαντες τὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου εὐώνυμον κατὰ κέρας τοῖς
having-ridden-around the of-Alexander left on flank the
ἀμφὶ τὸν Παρμενίωνα ἐνέβαλλον.
around — Parmenion charged
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἀμφιβόλων τὰ πρῶτα γενομένων τῶν 15.1
and in this in-doubt at-the first having-become the
Μακεδόνων πέμπει Παρμενίων παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον σπουδῇ
Macedonians sends Parmenion to Alexander in-haste
ἀγγελοῦντα, ὅτι ἐν ἀγῶνι ξυνέχεται τὸ κατὰ σφᾶς
(one)-to-report that in struggle is-held the-part on-the-side-of them
καὶ βοηθεῖν δεῖ. ταῦτα ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ,
and to-help it-is-necessary these-things when were-reported to-Alexander
τοῦ μὲν διώκειν ἔτι ἀπετράπετο, ἐπιστρέψας δὲ ξὺν
from-the indeed pursuing still he-turned-back having-wheeled and with
τῇ ἵππῳ τῶν ἑταίρων ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν τῶν βαρβάρων
the horse of-the companions as toward the right of-the barbarians
ἦγε δρόμῳ. καὶ πρῶτα μὲν τοῖς φεύγουσι τῶν πολεμίων
he-led at-a-run and first indeed on-the fleeing of-the enemy
ἱππεῦσι, τοῖς τε Παρθυαίοις καὶ τῶν Ἰνδῶν ἔστιν οἷς
cavalry the both Parthyaeans and of-the Indians there-are whom
καὶ Πέρσαις τοῖς πλείστοις καὶ κρατίστοις ἐμβάλλει.
and Persians the most-numerous and strongest he-charges
καὶ ἱππομαχία αὕτη καρτερωτάτη τοῦ παντὸς ἔργου 15.2
and cavalry-battle this fiercest of-the whole action
ξυνέστη. ἐς βάθος τε γὰρ οἷα δὴ ἰληδὸν τεταγμένοι
was-joined in depth both for as indeed by-squadrons drawn-up
ἀνέστρεφον οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ ἀντιμέτωποι τοῖς ἀμφ᾽
wheeled-about the barbarians and face-to-face with-the around
Ἀλέξανδρον ξυμπεσόντες οὔτε ἀκοντισμῷ ἔτι οὔτ᾽
Alexander having-clashed neither with-javelin-throwing any-longer nor

ἐξελιγμοῖς τῶν ἵππων, ἥπερ ἱππομαχίας δίκη, ἐχρῶντο,
with-wheelings of-the horses which of-cavalry-battle the-manner they-used
ἀλλὰ διεκπαῖσαι πᾶς τις τὸ καθ' αὑτόν, ὡς μόνην ταύτην
but to-break-through each one the opposite himself as only this
σωτηρίαν σφίσιν οὖσαν, ἐπειγόμενοι ἔκοπτόν τε καὶ
salvation for-them being hastening they-struck both and
ἐκόπτοντο ἀφειδῶς, οἷα δὴ οὐχ ὑπὲρ νίκης ἀλλοτρίας
were-struck unsparingly as indeed not for victory another's
ἔτι, ἀλλ' ὑπὲρ σωτηρίας οἰκείας ἀγωνιζόμενοι. καὶ
any-longer but for safety their-own contending and
ἐνταῦθα πίπτουσι μὲν ἀμφὶ ἑξήκοντα τῶν ἑταίρων τοῦ
there fall indeed about sixty of-the companions —
Ἀλεξάνδρου, καὶ τιτρώσκεται Ἡφαιστίων τε αὐτὸς καὶ
of-Alexander and is-wounded Hephaestion both himself and
Κοῖνος καὶ Μενίδας· ἀλλὰ ἐκράτησε καὶ τούτων Ἀλέξανδρος.
Coenus and Menidas but got-the-mastery also of-these Alexander
15.3 καὶ τούτων μὲν ὅσοι διεξέπαισαν διὰ τῶν ἀμφ'
and of-these indeed as-many-as broke-through through the around
Ἀλέξανδρον ἔφευγον ἀνὰ κράτος· Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐγγὺς
Alexander fled at full-speed Alexander and near
ἦν προσμῖξαι ἤδη τῷ δεξιῷ κέρατι τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ
was to-engage already the right wing of-the enemy and
ἐν τούτῳ οἱ Θεσσαλοὶ ἱππεῖς λαμπρῶς ἀγωνισάμενοι οὐχ
in this the Thessalian cavalry brilliantly having-fought not
ὑπελείποντο Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τοῦ ἔργου· ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον γὰρ ἤδη
fell-short of-Alexander in-the action but were-fleeing for already
οἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως τῶν βαρβάρων, ὁπότε Ἀλέξανδρος
the from the right wing of-the barbarians when Alexander
αὐτοῖς ξυνέμιξεν, ὥστε ἀποτραπόμενος Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς τὸ
them engaged so-that having-turned Alexander to the
διώκειν αὖθις Δαρεῖον ἐξώρμησε· καὶ ἐδίωξεν ἔστε φάος ἦν·
to-pursue again Darius rushed-out and pursued while light was

καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Παρμενίωνα τὸ καθ᾽ αὑτοὺς διώκοντες 15.4
and the around Parmenion the opposite themselves pursuing
εἵποντο. ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρος μὲν διαβὰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν
followed but Alexander indeed having-crossed the river —
Λύκον κατεστρατοπέδευσεν αὐτοῦ, ὡς ἀναπαῦσαι ὀλίγον
Lycus encamped there so-as to-rest a-little
τούς τε ἄνδρας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους· Παρμενίων δὲ τό τε
the both men and the horses Parmenion and the both
στρατόπεδον τῶν βαρβάρων εἷλε καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ
camp of-the barbarians took and the baggage and
τοὺς ἐλέφαντας καὶ τὰς καμήλους.
the elephants and the camels
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἀναπαύσας τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἱππέας ἔστε 15.5
Alexander and having-rested the around himself cavalry until
ἐπὶ μέσας νύκτας προὐχώρει αὖθις κατὰ σπουδὴν ἐπ᾽
about middle night advanced again with haste toward
Ἄρβηλα, ὡς Δαρεῖόν τε αἱρήσων ἐκεῖ καὶ τὰ χρήματα
Arbela as Darius both about-to-catch there and the money
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην κατασκευὴν τὴν βασιλικήν. καὶ ἀφίκετο
and the other equipment the royal and arrived
εἰς Ἄρβηλα τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ διώξας τοὺς πάντας ἐκ
at Arbela on-the next-day having-pursued the all from
τῆς μάχης σταδίους μάλιστα ἑξακοσίους. καὶ Δαρεῖον
the battle stades roughly about six-hundred and Darius
μὲν οὐ καταλαμβάνει ἐν Ἀρβήλοις, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγεν οὐδέν
indeed not he-catches in Arbela but was-fleeing not
τι ἐλινύσας Δαρεῖος· τὰ χρήματα δὲ ἐγκατελήφθη καὶ
at-all having-paused Darius the money and was-taken and
ἡ κατασκευὴ πᾶσα, καὶ τὸ ἅρμα τὸ Δαρείου αὖθις
the equipment all and the chariot the of-Darius again
ἐγκατελήφθη καὶ ἡ ἀσπὶς αὖθις καὶ τὰ τόξα ἑάλω.
was-taken and the shield again and the bows was-captured

15.6 ἀπέθανον δὲ τῶν ἀμφ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἄνδρες μὲν ἐς
died and of-the around Alexander men indeed about
ἑκατὸν μάλιστα, ἵπποι δὲ ἔκ τε τῶν τραυμάτων καὶ τῆς
hundred roughly horses and from both the wounds and the
κακοπαθείας τῆς ἐν τῇ διώξει ὑπὲρ τοὺς χιλίους, καὶ τούτων
hardship the in the pursuit over the thousand and of-these
τῆς ἑταιρικῆς ἵππου σχεδόν τι οἱ ἡμίσεες. τῶν βαρβάρων
of-the companion horse nearly somewhat the half of-the barbarians
δὲ νεκρῶν μὲν ἐλέγοντο ἐς τριάκοντα μυριάδας, ἑάλωσαν
and corpses indeed were-said about thirty myriads were-captured
δὲ πολὺ πλείονες τῶν ἀποθανόντων καὶ οἱ ἐλέφαντες
and far more than-the having-died and the elephants
καὶ τῶν ἁρμάτων ὅσα μὴ κατεκόπη ἐν τῇ μάχῃ.
and of-the chariots as-many-as not were-cut-to-pieces in the battle

15.7 τοῦτο τὸ τέλος τῇ μάχῃ ταύτῃ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος
this the end to-the battle this came under archon
Ἀθηναίοις Ἀριστοφάνους μηνὸς Πυανεψιῶνος· καὶ
at-Athens Aristophanes in-the-month Pyanepsion and
Ἀριστάνδρῳ ξυνέβη ἡ μαντεία ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ μηνί, ἐν ὅτῳ
for-Aristander came-true the prophecy in the same month in which
ἡ σελήνη ἐκλιπὴς ἐφάνη, τήν τε μάχην Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ
the moon eclipsed appeared the both battle for-Alexander and
τὴν νίκην γενέσθαι.
the victory to-take-place

Darius flees into Media, while Alexander enters Babylon and orders its temples rebuilt. Susa yields fifty thousand talents and the statues of Harmodius and Aristogeiton, which he returns to Athens; he sends money to Antipater for the war on Sparta, and Amyntas brings reinforcements. The mountain Uxians demand a toll, and he takes their villages by a night march and drives them into Craterus' troops. At the Persian Gates Ariobarzanes walls the pass. Led by captives, Alexander circles behind him while Craterus attacks the wall, and the Persian force is destroyed. He seizes the treasuries and burns the Persian palace to avenge Xerxes' invasion, against Parmenion's advice; Arrian thinks him wrong.

Δαρεῖος μὲν δὴ εὐθὺς ἐκ τῆς μάχης παρὰ τὰ ὄρη 16.1
Darius indeed indeed at-once from the battle past the mountains
τὰ Ἀρμενίων ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ Μηδίας, καὶ ξὺν αὐτῷ οἵ
the of-Armenians rode toward Media and with him the
τε Βάκτριοι ἱππεῖς, ὡς τότε ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ξυνετάχθησαν,
both Bactrian cavalry as then in the battle they-had-been-ranged
ἔφευγον καὶ Περσῶν οἵ τε συγγενεῖς οἱ βασιλέως καὶ
fled and of-Persians the both kinsmen the of-the-king and
τῶν μηλοφόρων καλουμένων οὐ πολλοί.
of-the apple-bearers called not many
προσεγένοντο δὲ αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν φυγὴν καὶ τῶν μισθοφόρων 16.2
joined and him in the flight also of-the mercenaries
ξένων ἐς δισχιλίους, οὓς Πάτρων τε ὁ Φωκεὺς καὶ
foreign about two-thousand whom Patron both the Phocian and
Γλαῦκος ὁ Αἰτωλὸς ἦγον. ταύτῃ δὲ αὐτῷ ἡ φυγὴ ἐπὶ
Glaucus the Aetolian led this-way and for-him the flight toward
Μηδίας ἐγίγνετο, ὅτι ἐδόκει τὴν ἐπὶ Σούσων τε καὶ
Media was because he-thought the toward Susa both and
Βαβυλῶνος ἥξειν Ἀλέξανδρον ἐκ τῆς μάχης, ὅτι
Babylon to-be-going-to-come Alexander from the battle because

οἰκουμένη τε ἐκείνη πᾶσα ἦν καὶ ὁδὸς τοῖς σκευοφόροις οὐ
inhabited both that all was and a-road for-the baggage not
χαλεπή, καὶ ἅμα τοῦ πολέμου τὸ ἆθλον ἡ Βαβυλὼν
difficult and at-the-same-time of-the war the prize — Babylon
καὶ τὰ Σοῦσα ἐφαίνετο· ἡ δὲ ἐπὶ Μηδίας μεγάλῳ
and — Susa appeared the and toward Media for-a-great
στρατεύματι οὐκ εὔπορος. καὶ οὐκ ἐψεύσθη Δαρεῖος.
army not easy and not was-deceived Darius
16.3 Ἀλέξανδρος γὰρ ἐξ Ἀρβήλων ὁρμηθεὶς τὴν ἐπὶ
Alexander for from Arbela having-set-out the toward
Βαβυλῶνος εὐθὺς προὐχώρει. ἤδη τε οὐ πόρρω
Babylon at-once advanced already both not far
Βαβυλῶνος ἦν καὶ δύναμιν ξυντεταγμένην ὡς ἐς μάχην
from-Babylon he-was and force drawn-up as for battle
ἦγε, καὶ οἱ Βαβυλώνιοι πανδημεὶ ἀπήντων αὐτῷ ξὺν ἱερεῦσί
he-led and the Babylonians in-full-force met him with priests
τε σφῶν καὶ ἄρχουσι, δῶρά τε ὡς ἕκαστοι φέροντες
both their and magistrates gifts both as each bringing
καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἐνδιδόντες καὶ τὴν ἄκραν καὶ τὰ χρήματα.
and the city surrendering and the citadel and the money
16.4 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ παρελθὼν εἰς τὴν Βαβυλῶνα τὰ ἱερά, ἃ
Alexander and having-entered into — Babylon the temples which
Ξέρξης καθεῖλεν, ἀνοικοδομεῖν προσέταξε Βαβυλωνίοις, τά
Xerxes pulled-down to-rebuild ordered Babylonians the
τε ἄλλα καὶ τοῦ Βήλου τὸ ἱερόν, ὃν μάλιστα θεῶν
both others and — of-Bel the temple whom most of-gods
τιμῶσι Βαβυλώνιοι. σατράπην δὲ κατέστησε Βαβυλῶνος
honor Babylonians satrap and appointed of-Babylon
Μαζαῖον, Ἀπολλόδωρον δὲ τὸν Ἀμφιπολίτην στρατηγὸν
Mazaeus Apollodorus and the Amphipolitan general

τῶν μετὰ Μαζαίου ὑπολειπομένων στρατιωτῶν, καὶ
of-the with Mazaeus left-behind soldiers and
Ἀσκληπιόδωρον τὸν Φίλωνος τοὺς φόρους ἐκλέγειν.
Asclepiodorus the (son)-of-Philon the tributes to-collect
κατέπεμψε δὲ καὶ ἐς Ἀρμενίαν Μιθρήνην σατράπην, ὃς 16.5
he-sent-down and also to Armenia Mithrenes as-satrap who
τὴν ἐν Σάρδεσιν ἀκρόπολιν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐνέδωκεν. ἔνθα
the in Sardis acropolis to-Alexander surrendered there
δὴ καὶ τοῖς Χαλδαίοις ἐνέτυχεν, καὶ ὅσα ἐδόκει
indeed also the Chaldaeans he-met and as-many-as seemed-good
Χαλδαίοις ἀμφὶ τὰ ἱερὰ τὰ Βαβυλῶνι ἔπραξε, τά τε
to-Chaldaeans about the temples — in-Babylon he-did the both
ἄλλα καὶ τῷ Βήλῳ καθ' ἃ ἐκεῖνοι ἐξηγοῦντο
other-things and — to-Bel according-to what they directed
ἔθυσεν. αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ Σούσων ἐστέλλετο·
sacrificed he-himself and toward Susa set-out
καὶ ἐντυγχάνει αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ὅ τε παῖς τοῦ 16.6
and meets him on the road the both son of-the
Σουσίων σατράπου καὶ παρὰ Φιλοξένου ἐπιστολεύς.
of-Susians satrap and from Philoxenus a-letter-bearer
Φιλόξενον γὰρ εὐθὺς ἐκ τῆς μάχης ἐπὶ Σούσων
Philoxenus for at-once from the battle toward Susa
ἐστάλκει Ἀλέξανδρος. τῇ δὲ ἐπιστολῇ τῇ παρὰ Φιλοξένου
had-sent Alexander in-the and letter the from Philoxenus
ἐνεγέγραπτο, ὅτι τήν τε πόλιν οἱ Σούσιοι παραδεδώκασιν
had-been-written that the both city the Susians have-surrendered
καὶ τὰ χρήματα πάντα σῶά ἐστιν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
and the money all safe is for-Alexander
ἀφίκετο δὲ ἐς Σοῦσα Ἀλέξανδρος ἐκ Βαβυλῶνος ἐν 16.7
arrived and at Susa Alexander from Babylon in
ἡμέραις εἴκοσι· καὶ παρελθὼν ἐς τὴν πόλιν τά τε χρήματα
days twenty and having-entered into the city the both money

παρέλαβεν ὄντα ἀργυρίου τάλαντα ἐς πεντακισμύρια
took-over being of-silver talents about fifty-thousand
καὶ τὴν ἄλλην κατασκευὴν τὴν βασιλικήν. πολλὰ δὲ
and the other equipment the royal many and
καὶ ἄλλα κατελήφθη αὐτοῦ, ὅσα Ξέρξης ἀπὸ τῆς
also other-things were-found there as-many-as Xerxes from —
Ἑλλάδος ἄγων ἦλθε, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ Ἁρμοδίου καὶ
Greece bringing came the both other-things and of-Harmodius and
Ἀριστογείτονος χαλκαῖ εἰκόνες.
Aristogeiton bronze statues

16.8 καὶ ταύτας Ἀθηναίοις ὀπίσω πέμπει Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ νῦν
and these to-Athenians back sends Alexander and now
κεῖνται Ἀθήνησιν ἐν Κεραμεικῷ αἱ εἰκόνες, ᾗ ἄνιμεν
lie at-Athens in Ceramicus the statues where we-go-up
ἐς πόλιν, καταντικρὺ μάλιστα τοῦ Μητρῴου, οὐ μακρὰν
to Acropolis opposite most — of-Metroum not far
τῶν Εὐδανέμων τοῦ βωμοῦ· ὅστις δὲ μεμύηται ταῖν
of-the Eudanemi the altar whoever and has-been-initiated to-the-two
θεαῖν ἐν Ἐλευσῖνι, οἶδε τοῦ Εὐδανέμου τὸν βωμὸν ἐπὶ
goddesses in Eleusis knows — of-Eudanemus the altar on
τοῦ δαπέδου ὄντα.
the floor being

16.9 ἐνταῦθα θύσας τῷ πατρίῳ νόμῳ Ἀλέξανδρος
there having-sacrificed with-the ancestral custom Alexander
καὶ λαμπάδα ποιήσας καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικόν, καταλιπὼν
and a-torch-race having-made and a-contest gymnastic having-left
σατράπην μὲν τῆς Σουσιανῆς Ἀβουλίτην ἄνδρα Πέρσην,
satrap indeed — of-Susiane Abulites a-man Persian
φρούραρχον δὲ ἐν τῇ ἄκρᾳ τῶν Σούσων Μάζαρον
garrison-commander and in the citadel — of-Susa Mazarus
τῶν ἑταίρων καὶ στρατηγὸν Ἀρχέλαον τὸν Θεοδώρου,
of-the companions and general Archelaus the (son)-of-Theodorus

προὐχώρει ὡς ἐπὶ Πέρσας· ἐπὶ θάλασσαν δὲ κατέπεμψεν
advanced as toward Persians to sea and he-sent-down
ὕπαρχον Συρίας καὶ Φοινίκης καὶ Κιλικίας Μένητα.
as-hyparch of-Syria and Phoenicia and Cilicia Menes
καὶ τούτῳ ἔδωκεν ἀργυρίου τάλαντα ἐς τρισχίλια φέρειν 16.10
and to-him he-gave of-silver talents about three-thousand to-carry
ἐπὶ θάλασσαν, καὶ ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀποστεῖλαι παρ᾽ Ἀντίπατρον
to sea and from them to-send to Antipater
ὅσων ἂν δέηται Ἀντίπατρος ἐς τὸν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους
as-many-as — should-need Antipater for the against Lacedaemonians
πόλεμον. ἐνταῦθα καὶ Ἀμύντας ὁ Ἀνδρομένους ξὺν τῇ
war there also Amyntas the (son)-of-Andromenes with the
δυνάμει ἀφίκετο, ἣν ἐκ Μακεδονίας ἦγε.
force arrived which from Macedonia he-led
καὶ τούτων τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας ἐς τὴν ἵππον τὴν ἑταιρικὴν 16.11
and of-these the indeed cavalry into the horse the companion
κατέταξεν Ἀλέξανδρος, τοὺς πεζοὺς δὲ προσέθηκεν ταῖς
assigned Alexander the infantry and he-added to-the
τάξεσι ταῖς ἄλλαις. κατὰ ἔθνη ἑκάστους ξυντάξας.
battalions the other by nations each having-arranged
κατέστησε δὲ καὶ λόχους δύο ἐν ἑκάστῃ ἴλῃ, οὐ
he-established and also companies two in each squadron not
πρόσθεν ὄντας λόχους ἱππικούς, καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἐπέστησε
before being companies of-cavalry and as-captains he-set-over
τοὺς κατ᾽ ἀρετὴν προκριθέντας ἐκ τῶν ἑταίρων.
the for valor preferred from the companions
Ἄρας δὲ ἐκ Σούσων καὶ διαβὰς τὸν Πασιτίγριν 17.1
having-set-out and from Susa and having-crossed the Pasitigris
ποταμὸν ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὴν Οὐξίων γῆν. Οὐξίων δὲ
river he-invades into the of-Uxians land of-Uxians and
οἱ μὲν τὰ πεδία οἰκοῦντες τοῦ τε σατράπου τῶν
the-ones indeed the plains inhabiting the both satrap of-the

Περσῶν ἤκουον καὶ τότε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ σφᾶς ἐνέδοσαν·
Persians obeyed and then to-Alexander themselves surrendered
οἱ δὲ ὄρειοι καλούμενοι Οὔξιοι Πέρσαις τε οὐχ
the-others and mountain called Uxians to-Persians both not
ὑπήκοοι ἦσαν καὶ τότε πέμψαντες παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον οὐκ
subject were and then having-sent to Alexander not
ἄλλως παρήσειν ἔφασαν τὴν ἐπὶ Πέρσας ἰόντα ξὺν
otherwise to-be-going-to-let-pass they-said the toward Persians going with
τῇ δυνάμει ἢ λαβεῖν, ὅσα καὶ παρὰ τοῦ Περσῶν
the force than to-receive as-much-as also from the of-Persians
βασιλέως ἐπὶ τῇ παρόδῳ ἐλάμβανον.
king for the passage they-received

17.2 καὶ τούτους ἀποπέμπει Ἀλέξανδρος, ἥκειν κελεύσας ἐπὶ τὰ
and these sends-away Alexander to-come having-ordered to the
στενά, ὧν κρατοῦντες ἐπὶ σφίσιν ἐδόκουν τὴν πάροδον
narrows which holding on them they-thought the passage
εἶναι τὴν ἐς Πέρσας, ἵνα καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ λάβοιεν
to-be the into Persis so-that also from himself they-might-receive
τὰ τεταγμένα. αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς σωματοφύλακας
the appointed-dues he-himself and having-taken the bodyguards
τοὺς βασιλικοὺς καὶ τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τῆς ἄλλης
the royal and the shield-bearers and of-the other
στρατιᾶς ἐς ὀκτακισχιλίους τῆς νυκτὸς ᾖει ἄλλην ἢ
army about eight-thousand in-the night went another than
τὴν φανερὰν ἡγησαμένων αὐτῷ τῶν Σουσίων.
the open-one having-guided him the Susians

17.3 καὶ διελθὼν ὁδὸν τραχεῖαν καὶ δύσπορον ἐν μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ
and having-traversed a-road rough and hard-to-pass in one day
ἐπιπίπτει ταῖς κώμαις τῶν Οὐξίων, καὶ λείαν τε πολλὴν
falls-upon the villages of-the Uxians and booty both much
ἔλαβε καὶ αὐτῶν ἔτι ἐν ταῖς εὐναῖς ὄντων πολλοὺς
took and of-them still in the beds being many

κατέκτεινεν· οἱ δὲ ἀπέφυγον ἐς τὰ ὄρη. αὐτὸς
killed the-others and escaped into the mountains he-himself
δὲ ᾖει σπουδῇ ἐπὶ τὰ στενά, ἵνα ἀπαντήσεσθαι οἱ
and went in-haste to the narrows where to-be-going-to-meet-(him) the
Οὔξιοι πανδημεῖ ἐδόκουν ληψόμενοι τὰ τεταγμένα.
Uxians in-full-force seemed about-to-receive the appointed-dues
Κρατερὸν δὲ ἔτι πρόσθεν ἀπέστειλε τὰ ἄκρα καταληψόμενον, 17.4
Craterus and still before sent-off the heights about-to-seize
ἔνθα ᾤετο βιαζομένους τοὺς Οὐξίους ἀποχωρήσειν. αὐτὸς
where he-thought being-forced the Uxians to-be-going-to-retreat he-himself
δὲ πολλῷ τάχει ᾖει· καὶ φθάνει τε κρατήσας τῶν
and with-much speed went and gets-ahead both having-mastered the
παρόδων καὶ ξυντεταγμένους τοὺς ἀμφ' αὑτὸν ἔχων ἐξ
passes and drawn-up the around himself having from
ὑπερδεξίων χωρίων ἐπῆγεν ὡς ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους.
commanding positions he-led-on as against the barbarians
οἱ δὲ τῷ τε τάχει τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐκπλαγέντες καὶ τοῖς 17.5
they and by-the both speed the of-Alexander astounded and by-the
χωρίοις, οἷς μάλιστα δὴ ἐπεποίθεσαν, πλεονεκτούμενοι
positions in-which most indeed they-had-trusted outmatched
ἔφυγον οὐδὲ εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθόντες· καὶ οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν
fled not-even into hands having-come and the-ones indeed of-them
ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον ἐν τῇ φυγῇ ἀπέθανον, πολλοὶ
by the around Alexander in the flight died many
δὲ καὶ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρημνώδη οὖσαν· οἱ πλεῖστοι δὲ
and also along the road precipitous being the most and
ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἀναφεύγοντες ἐμπίπτουσιν ἐς τοὺς ἀμφὶ
to the mountains fleeing-up fall among the around
Κρατερὸν καὶ ὑπὸ τούτων ἀπώλοντο.
Craterus and by these perished

17.6 ταῦτα τὰ γέρα παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου λαβόντες χαλεπῶς
these the gifts-of-honor from Alexander having-received with-difficulty
εὕροντο δεόμενοι παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ τὴν χώραν τὴν σφῶν ἔχοντες
obtained asking from him the country the their-own holding
φόρους ὅσα ἔτη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀποφέρειν. Πτολεμαῖος δὲ ὁ
tributes each year to-Alexander to-pay Ptolemy and the
Λάγου λέγει τὴν Δαρείου μητέρα δεηθῆναι ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν
(son)-of-Lagus says the of-Darius mother to-have-entreated for them
Ἀλεξάνδρου δοῦναί σφισι τὴν χώραν οἰκεῖν. ὁ φόρος δὲ ὁ
Alexander to-give them the country to-inhabit the tribute and the
συνταχθεὶς ἦν ἵπποι ἐς ἔτος ἑκατὸν καὶ ὑποζύγια πεντακόσια
assessed was horses for year hundred and pack-animals five-hundred
καὶ πρόβατα τρισμύρια. χρήματα γὰρ οὐκ ἦν Οὐξίοις οὐδὲ
and sheep thirty-thousand money for not was for-Uxians nor
ἡ γῆ οἵα ἐργάζεσθαι, ἀλλὰ νομεῖς αὐτῶν οἱ πολλοὶ ἦσαν.
the land such-as to-be-worked but herdsmen of-them the most were
18.1 ἐκ δὲ τούτου τὰ μὲν σκευοφόρα καὶ τοὺς Θεσσαλοὺς
from and this the indeed baggage and the Thessalian
ἱππέας καὶ τοὺς ξυμμάχους καὶ τοὺς μισθοφόρους τοὺς
cavalry and the allies and the mercenaries the
ξένους καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι τοῦ στρατεύματος βαρύτερον
foreign and as-many-as others of-the army more-heavily
ὡπλισμένοι ξὺν Παρμενίωνι ἐκπέμπει ὡς ἐπὶ Πέρσας
armed with Parmenion he-sends-off as toward Persians
ἄγειν κατὰ τὴν ἁμαξιτὸν τὴν ἐς Πέρσας φέρουσαν.
to-lead along the wagon-road the into Persis leading
18.2 αὐτὸς δὲ τούς τε Μακεδόνας τοὺς πεζοὺς ἀναλαβὼν καὶ
he-himself and the both Macedonian the infantry having-taken and
τὴν ἵππον τὴν ἑταιρικὴν καὶ τοὺς προδρόμους ἱππέας καὶ
the horse the companion and the prodromoi cavalry and
τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ᾔει σπουδῇ τὴν διὰ
the Agrianians and the archers went in-haste the through

τῶν ὀρῶν. ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας τὰς Περσίδας ἀφίκετο,
the mountains when and to the gates the Persian he-arrived
καταλαμβάνει αὐτοῦ Ἀριοβαρζάνην τὸν Περσῶν σατράπην
he-finds there Ariobarzanes the of-Persians satrap
πεζοὺς μὲν ἐς τετρακισμυρίους ἔχοντα, ἱππέας δὲ ἐς
infantry indeed about forty-thousand having cavalry and about
ἑπτακοσίους, διατετειχικότα τὰς πύλας καὶ αὐτοῦ πρὸς
seven-hundred having-walled-across the gates and there by
τῷ τείχει ἐστρατοπεδευκότα, ὡς εἴργειν τῆς παρόδου
the wall having-encamped so-as to-bar from-the passage
Ἀλέξανδρον. τότε μὲν δὴ αὐτοῦ κατεστρατοπεδεύσατο·
Alexander then indeed indeed there he-encamped
τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ξυντάξας τὴν στρατιὰν ἐπῆγε τῷ 18.3
on-the and next-day having-drawn-up the army he-led-against the
τείχει. ὡς δὲ ἄπορόν τε διὰ δυσχωρίαν ἐφαίνετο
wall when and impossible both because-of difficult-ground it-appeared
αἱρεθῆναι καὶ πολλὰς πληγὰς οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ἐλάμβανον
to-be-taken and many blows the around him received
ἐξ ὑπερδεξίου τε χωρίου καὶ ἀπὸ μηχανῶν βαλλόμενοι,
from commanding both ground and from engines being-shot
τότε μὲν ἀποχωρεῖ ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον·
then indeed he-withdraws to the camp
τῶν δὲ αἰχμαλώτων φρασάντων ἄλλην ὁδὸν 18.4
of-the and prisoners having-declared another road
περιάξειν αὐτόν, ὡς εἴσω παρελθεῖν τῶν πυλῶν,
to-be-going-to-lead-around him so-as within to-come of-the gates
ἐπεὶ τραχεῖαν τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ στενὴν ἐπύθετο, Κρατερὸν μὲν
when rough the road and narrow he-learned Craterus indeed
αὐτοῦ καταλείπει ἐπὶ στρατοπέδου τήν τε αὐτοῦ τάξιν
there he-leaves in-the camp the both his-own battalion

ἔχοντα καὶ τὴν Μελεάγρου καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν ὀλίγους καὶ
having and the of-Meleager and of-the archers few and
τῶν ἱππέων ἐς πεντακοσίους, καὶ προστάττει αὐτῷ,
of-the cavalry about five-hundred and orders him
18.5 ἐπειδὰν ἐκπεριεληλυθότα αὐτὸν αἴσθηται καὶ προσάγοντα
whenever having-gone-around himself he-perceives and approaching
ἤδη τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τῶν Περσῶν αἰσθήσεσθαι δὲ οὐ
already the camp of-the Persians to-be-going-to-perceive and not
χαλεπῶς, σημανεῖν γὰρ αὐτῷ τὰς σάλπιγγας, τότε δὲ
with-difficulty to-be-going-to-signal for to-him the trumpets then and
προσβαλεῖν τῷ τείχει· αὐτὸς δὲ προὐχώρει νύκτωρ καὶ
to-attack the wall he-himself and advanced by-night and
διελθὼν ὅσον ἑκατὸν σταδίους ἀναλαμβάνει τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς
having-gone about hundred stades takes-up the shield-bearers
καὶ τὴν Περδίκκου τάξιν καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν τοὺς κουφοτάτους
and the of-Perdiccas battalion and of-the archers the lightest
καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων τὴν ἴλην τὴν βασιλικὴν
and the Agrianians and of-the companions the squadron the royal
καὶ τετραρχίαν πρὸς ταύτῃ μίαν ἱππικήν, καὶ ξὺν τούτοις ἦει
and a-tetrarchy besides this one of-cavalry and with these went
ἐπικάμψας ὡς ἐπὶ τὰς πύλας, ἵν᾽ οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι ἦγον.
having-wheeled as toward the gates where the prisoners were-leading
18.6 Ἀμύνταν δὲ καὶ Φιλώταν καὶ Κοῖνον τὴν ἄλλην στρατιὰν
Amyntas and and Philotas and Coenus the other army
ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον ἄγειν καὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὃν ἐχρῆν
as toward the plain to-lead and the river which it-was-necessary
περᾶσαι ἰόντα ἐπὶ Πέρσας, γεφυροῦν ἐκέλευσεν· αὐτὸς
to-cross going toward Persians to-bridge he-ordered he-himself
δὲ ᾖει ὁδὸν χαλεπὴν καὶ τραχεῖαν καὶ ταύτην δρόμῳ
and went a-road difficult and rough and this at-a-run
τὸ πολὺ ἦγε. τὴν μὲν δὴ πρώτην φυλακὴν τῶν
the most-of-the-way led the indeed indeed first guard of-the

βαρβάρων πρὶν φάους ἐπιπεσὼν διέφθειρε καὶ τῶν
barbarians before light having-fallen-on destroyed and of-the
δευτέρων τοὺς πολλούς·
second the most
τῆς τρίτης δὲ οἱ πλείους διέφυγον, καὶ οὐδὲ οὗτοι ἐς 18.7
of-the third and the most escaped and not-even these into
τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ Ἀριοβαρζάνου ἔφυγον, ἀλλ' αὐτόθεν
the camp the of-Ariobarzanes fled but from-there
ὡς εἶχον ἐς τὰ ὄρη πεφοβημένοι, ὥστε ἔλαθεν
as they-were to the mountains terrified so-that he-escaped-notice
ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω ἐπιπεσὼν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τῶν πολεμίων.
toward the dawn having-fallen-on the camp of-the enemy
καὶ ἅμα μὲν προσέβαλλε τῇ τάφρῳ, ἅμα
and at-the-same-time indeed he-attacked the ditch at-the-same-time
δὲ αἱ σάλπιγγες ἐσήμαινον τοῖς ἀμφὶ Κρατερόν, καὶ
and the trumpets signaled to-the around Craterus and
Κρατερὸς προσῆγε τῷ προτειχίσματι.
Craterus advanced-against the outwork
οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ πάντοθεν ἀμφίβολοι γιγνόμενοι οὐδὲ ἐς 18.8
the enemy and on-all-sides beset-on-both-sides becoming not-even into
χεῖρας ἐλθόντες ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ πανταχόθεν γὰρ εἴργοντο,
hands having-come fled but from-every-side for they-were-shut-off
τῇ μὲν Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπικειμένου, ἄλλῃ δὲ τῶν
on-one-side indeed Alexander pressing on-the-other and of-the
ἀμφὶ Κρατερὸν παραθεόντων, ὥστε ἠναγκάσθησαν οἱ
around Craterus running-up so-that were-compelled the
πολλοὶ αὐτῶν ἐς τὰ τείχη ἀποστρέψαντες φεύγειν· εἴχετο
most of-them into the walls having-turned to-flee was-held
δὲ καὶ τὰ τείχη πρὸς τῶν Μακεδόνων ἤδη.
and also the walls by the Macedonians already

18.9 Ἀλέξανδρος γὰρ τοῦτο αὐτὸ ὅπερ ξυνέβη ὑποτοπήσας
Alexander for this itself which happened having-suspected
Πτολεμαῖον ἀπολελοίπει αὐτοῦ, ἔχοντα τῶν πεζῶν ἐς
Ptolemy had-left there having of-the infantry about
τρισχιλίους, ὥστε οἱ μὲν πλεῖστοι τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν
three-thousand so-that the indeed most of-the barbarians in
χερσὶ πρὸς τῶν Μακεδόνων κατεκόπησαν, οἱ δὲ
hand-to-hand by the Macedonians were-cut-down the-others and
καὶ ἐν τῇ φυγῇ φοβερᾷ γενομένῃ κατὰ τῶν κρημνῶν
also in the flight fearful having-become down the cliffs
ῥίψαντες ἀπώλοντο· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Ἀριοβαρζάνης ξὺν
having-thrown-themselves perished himself and — Ariobarzanes with
ὀλίγοις ἱππεῦσιν ἐς τὰ ὄρη ἀπέφυγεν.
few horsemen into the mountains escaped

18.10 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ σπουδῇ αὖθις ἦγεν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
Alexander and in-haste again led as toward the river
καὶ καταλαμβάνει ἤδη πεποιημένην ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῦ γέφυραν καὶ
and finds already made over it a-bridge and
διαβαίνει ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ εὐπετῶς. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ αὖθις σπουδῇ
crosses with the army easily thence and again in-haste
ἤλαυνεν ἐς Πέρσας, ὥστε ἔφθη ἀφικέσθαι πρὶν τὰ
he-drove into Persis so-that he-was-in-time to-arrive before the
χρήματα διαρπάσασθαι τοὺς φύλακας. ἔλαβε δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐν
money to-plunder the guards he-took and also the in
Πασαργάδαις χρήματα ἐν τοῖς Κύρου τοῦ πρώτου θησαυροῖς.
Pasargadae money in the of-Cyrus the first treasuries

18.11 σατράπην μὲν δὴ Περσῶν κατέστησε Φρασαόρτην τὸν
satrap indeed indeed of-Persians he-appointed Phrasaortes the
Ῥεομίθρου παῖδα· τὰ βασίλεια δὲ τὰ Περσικὰ ἐνέπρησε,
of-Rheomithres son the palace and the Persian he-set-on-fire
Παρμενίωνος σώζειν ξυμβουλεύοντος, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ
Parmenion to-preserve advising the both other-things and

ὅτι οὐ καλὸν αὐτοῦ κτήματα ἤδη ἀπολλύναι καὶ ὅτι
because not fine his-own possessions now to-destroy and because
οὐχ ὡσαύτως προσέξουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν
not likewise will-attend to-him the in — Asia
ἄνθρωποι, ὡς οὐδὲ αὐτῷ ἐγνωκότι κατέχειν τῆς Ἀσίας
men as not-even him having-resolved to-hold — of-Asia
τὴν ἀρχήν, ἀλλὰ ἐπελθεῖν μόνον νικῶντα.
the rule but to-pass-through only conquering
ὁ δὲ τιμωρήσασθαι ἐθέλειν Πέρσας ἔφασκεν ἀνθ' ὧν 18.12
he and to-punish to-wish Persians said in-return-for what
ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἐλάσαντες τάς τε Ἀθήνας κατέσκαψαν
against — Greece having-marched — both Athens they-razed
καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐνέπρησαν, καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα κακὰ τοὺς
and the temples burned and as-many-as other evils the
Ἕλληνας εἰργάσαντο, ὑπὲρ τούτων δίκας λαβεῖν. ἀλλ'
Greeks they-did for these penalty to-exact but
οὐδ' ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ σὺν νῷ δρᾶσαι τοῦτό γε Ἀλέξανδρος
not-even to-me seems with sense to-have-done this at-least Alexander
οὐδὲ εἶναί τις αὕτη Περσῶν τῶν πάλαι τιμωρία.
nor to-be any this of-Persians of-the long-ago vengeance

Alexander marches on Ecbatana and learns that Darius has fled. He sends the Thessalians home with a bonus, leaves Harpalus with the treasure, and sends Parmenion toward Hyrcania. Beyond the Caspian Gates he hears that Bessus, Nabarzanes, and Barsaentes have arrested Darius and named Bessus leader, while Artabazus and the Greek mercenaries turn aside. He marches through nights with picked men, mounts infantry on horses, and overtakes the Persians, who scatter. Satibarzanes and Barsaentes wound Darius and flee, and he dies before Alexander sees him. Alexander sends the body to the royal tombs. Arrian sums up Darius as weak in war, blameless otherwise, and dogged by misfortune.

19.1 ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος προὐχώρει ἐπὶ Μηδίας· ἐκεῖ γὰρ
these-things and having-accomplished he-advanced toward Media there for
ἐπυνθάνετο εἶναι Δαρεῖον. γνώμην δὲ πεποίητο Δαρεῖος,
he-learned to-be Darius resolve and had-made Darius
εἰ μὲν ἐπὶ Σούσων καὶ Βαβυλῶνος μένοι Ἀλέξανδρος,
if indeed at Susa and Babylon should-remain Alexander
αὐτοῦ προσμένειν καὶ αὐτὸς ἐν Μήδοις, εἰ δή τι
there to-wait also himself among Medes if indeed anything
νεωτερισθείη τῶν ἀμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον· εἰ δ' ἐλαύνοι ἐπ'
should-be-stirred-up of-the around Alexander if and he-should-march against
αὐτόν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἄνω ἰέναι τὴν ἐπὶ Παρθυαίους τε
him himself and upward to-go the toward Parthyaeans both
καὶ Ὑρκανίαν ἔστε ἐπὶ Βάκτρα, τήν τε χώραν φθείρων
and Hyrcania as-far to Bactra the both country ravaging
πᾶσαν καὶ ἄπορον ποιῶν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὴν πρόσω ὁδόν.
all and impassable making for-Alexander the farther road
19.2 τὰς μὲν δὴ γυναῖκας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην τὴν ἔτι ἀμφ'
the indeed indeed women and the other the still around
αὐτὸν κατασκευὴν καὶ τὰς ἁρμαμάξας ἐπὶ τὰς Κασπίας
himself equipment and the covered-wagons to the Caspian

καλουμένας πύλας· πέμπει, αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει,
called gates he-sends himself and with the force
ἥτις ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ξυνείλεκτο αὐτῷ, προσέμενεν
which from the present-means had-been-collected for-him waited
ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις. ταῦτα ἀκούων Ἀλέξανδρος προὐχώρει
in Ecbatana these-things hearing Alexander advanced
ἐπὶ Μηδίας. καὶ Παραιτάκας μὲν εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν
toward Media and Paraetacae indeed into the country of-them
ἐμβαλὼν κατεστρέψατο καὶ σατραπεύειν ἔταξεν αὐτῶν
having-invaded subdued and to-be-satrap he-appointed of-them
Ὀξάθρην τὸν Ἀβουλίτου τοῦ Σούσων σατράπου παῖδα.
Oxathres the of-Abulites of-the of-Susa satrap son
αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἠγγέλθη κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν,
himself and when it-was-reported along the road
ὅτι ἐγνωκὼς εἴη Δαρεῖος ἀπαντᾶν τε αὐτῷ ὡς ἐς μάχην 19.3
that resolved was Darius to-meet both him as for battle
καὶ αὖθις διακινδυνεύειν, Σκύθας τε γὰρ αὐτῷ ἥκειν καὶ
and again to-risk-the-decision Scythians both for to-him to-have-come and
Καδουσίους συμμάχους, τὰ μὲν ὑποζύγια καὶ τοὺς τούτων
Cadusians as-allies the indeed pack-animals and the their
φύλακας καὶ τὴν ἄλλην κατασκευὴν ἕπεσθαι ἐκέλευσε,
guards and the other equipment to-follow he-ordered
τὴν στρατιὰν δὲ τὴν ἄλλην ἀναλαβὼν ἦγεν ἐσταλμένους
the army and the other having-taken he-led equipped
ὡς ἐς μάχην. καὶ ἀφικνεῖται δωδεκάτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἐς Μηδίαν.
as for battle and arrives on-the-twelfth day into Media
ἔνθα ἔμαθεν οὐκ οὖσαν ἀξιόμαχον δύναμιν Δαρείῳ οὐδὲ 19.4
there he-learned not being a-match force for-Darius nor
Καδουσίους ἢ Σκύθας αὐτῷ συμμάχους ἥκοντας, ἀλλ᾽
Cadusians or Scythians to-him allies having-come but
ὅτι φεύγειν ἐγνωκὼς εἴη Δαρεῖος· ὁ δὲ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἦγε
that to-flee resolved was Darius he and still more led

σπουδῇ. ὡς δὲ ἀπεῖχεν Ἐκβατάνων ὅσον τριῶν ἡμερῶν
in-haste when and he-was-distant from-Ecbatana about three days
ὁδόν, ἐνταῦθα ἀπήντα αὐτῷ Βισθάνης ὁ Ὤχου παῖς τοῦ
road there met him Bisthanes the of-Ochus son of-the
πρὸ Δαρείου βασιλεύσαντος Περσῶν·
before Darius having-reigned of-Persians
19.5 καὶ οὗτος ἀπήγγειλεν, ὅτι Δαρεῖος ἐς πέμπτην ἡμέραν
and this-one reported that Darius on-the fifth day
εἴη πεφευγὼς ἔχων τά τε χρήματα τὰ ἐκ Μήδων
was having-fled having the both money the from Medes
ἐς ἑπτακισχίλια τάλαντα καὶ στρατιὰν ἱππέας μὲν ἐς
about seven-thousand talents and an-army cavalry indeed about
τρισχιλίους, πεζοὺς δὲ ἐς ἑξακισχιλίους. ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐς
three-thousand infantry and about six-thousand having-come and to
Ἐκβάτανα Ἀλέξανδρος τοὺς μὲν Θετταλοὺς ἱππέας καὶ
Ecbatana Alexander the indeed Thessalian cavalry and
τοὺς ἄλλους ξυμμάχους ἀποπέμπει ὀπίσω ἐπὶ θάλασσαν,
the other allies sends-off back to sea
τόν τε μισθὸν ἀποδοὺς αὐτοῖς ἐντελῆ τὸν ξυντεταγμένον
the both pay having-paid them full the agreed
καὶ δισχίλια παρ᾽ αὑτοῦ τάλαντα ἐπιδούς·
and two-thousand from himself talents having-given-besides
19.6 ὅστις δὲ ἰδίᾳ βούλοιτο ἔτι μισθοφορεῖν παρ᾽ αὐτῷ,
whoever and privately wished still to-serve-for-pay with him
ἀπογράφεσθαι ἐκέλευσε· καὶ ἐγένοντο οἱ ἀπογραψάμενοι οὐκ
to-enroll he-ordered and were the having-enrolled not
ὀλίγοι. Ἐπόκιλλον δὲ τὸν Πολυειδοῦς ἔταξε καταγαγεῖν
few Epocillus and the (son)-of-Polyeides he-appointed to-conduct
αὐτοὺς ὡς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν, ἱππέας ἄλλους ἔχοντα ἐς φυλακὴν
them as to sea cavalry other having for guard
αὐτῶν· οἱ γὰρ Θεσσαλοὶ τοὺς ἵππους αὐτοῦ ἀπέδοντο.
of-them the for Thessalians the horses there sold

ἐπέστειλε δὲ καὶ Μένητι, ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκωνται ἐπὶ θάλασσαν,
he-sent-word and also to-Menes whenever they-arrive at sea
ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὅπως ἐπὶ τριήρων κομισθήσονται ἐς Εὔβοιαν.
to-take-care that on triremes they-will-be-conveyed to Euboea
Παρμενίωνα δὲ προσέταξε τὰ χρήματα τὰ ἐκ Περσῶν 19.7
Parmenion and he-ordered the money the from Persians
κομιζόμενα εἰς τὴν ἄκραν τὴν ἐν Ἐκβατάνοις καταθέσθαι
being-brought into the citadel the in Ecbatana to-deposit
καὶ Ἁρπάλῳ παραδοῦναι· Ἅρπαλον γὰρ ἐπὶ τῶν χρημάτων
and to-Harpalus to-hand-over Harpalus for over the money
ἀπέλιπε καὶ φυλακὴν τῶν χρημάτων Μακεδόνας ἐς
he-left and as-guard of-the money Macedonians about
ἑξακισχιλίους καὶ ἱππέας καὶ ψιλοὺς ὀλίγους· αὐτὸν δὲ
six-thousand and cavalry and light-troops few himself and
Παρμενίωνα τοὺς ξένους ἀναλαβόντα καὶ τοὺς Θρᾷκας
Parmenion the mercenaries having-taken and the Thracians
καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς ἔξω τῆς ἵππου τῆς ἑταιρικῆς
and as-many-as other cavalry outside the horse the companion
παρὰ τὴν χώραν τὴν Καδουσίων ἐλαύνειν ἐς Ὑρκανίαν.
along the country the of-Cadusians to-march into Hyrcania
Κλείτῳ δὲ τῷ τῆς βασιλικῆς ἴλης ἡγεμόνι ἐπέστειλεν, 19.8
to-Cleitus and the of-the royal squadron commander he-sent-word
ἐπειδὰν ἐκ Σούσων εἰς Ἐκβάτανα ἀφίκηται, κατελέλειπτο
whenever from Susa to Ecbatana he-arrives he-had-been-left
γὰρ ἐν Σούσοις ἀρρωστῶν, ἀναλαβόντα τοὺς Μακεδόνας
for in Susa being-ill having-taken the Macedonians
τοὺς ἐπὶ τῶν χρημάτων τότε ὑπολειφθέντας ἰέναι τὴν
the over the money then left-behind to-go the
ἐπὶ Παρθυαίους, ἵνα καὶ αὐτὸς ᾖξειν ἔμελλεν.
toward Parthyaeans where also himself to-come was-about

20.1 αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τήν τε ἵππον τῶν ἑταίρων καὶ τοὺς
he-himself and having-taken the both horse of-the companions and the
προδρόμους καὶ τοὺς μισθοφόρους ἱππέας, ὧν Ἐριγύϊος
prodromoi and the mercenary cavalry whom Erigyius
ἡγεῖτο, καὶ τὴν φάλαγγα τὴν Μακεδονικὴν ἔξω τῶν
led and the phalanx the Macedonian except the
ἐπὶ τοῖς χρήμασι ταχθέντων καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς
over the money posted and the archers and the
Ἀγριᾶνας ἤλαυνεν ὡς ἐπὶ Δαρεῖον. καὶ αὐτῷ κατὰ τὴν
Agrianians marched as against Darius and for-him along the
ὁδὸν σπουδῇ γιγνομένην τῶν τε στρατιωτῶν πολλοὶ
road in-haste being-made of-the both soldiers many
κάμνοντες ὑπελείποντο καὶ ἵπποι ἀπέθνησκον·
being-exhausted were-left-behind and horses died

20.2 ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς ἦγε, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐς Ῥάγας ἑνδεκάτῃ
but even so he-led and arrives at Rhagae on-the-eleventh
ἡμέρᾳ. διέχει δὲ ὁ χῶρος οὗτος ἀπὸ τῶν Κασπίων
day is-distant and the place this from the Caspian
πυλῶν ὁδὸν ἡμέρας μιᾶς ἐλαύνοντι ὡς Ἀλέξανδρος ἦγε.
gates a-road of-day one for-one-marching as Alexander led
Δαρεῖος δὲ ἐφθάκει ἤδη παρεληλυθὼς εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν
Darius and had-anticipated already having-passed within the gates
τῶν Κασπίων. τῶν δὲ συμφευγόντων Δαρείῳ πολλοὶ μὲν
the Caspian of-the and fleeing-with Darius many indeed
ἀπολιπόντες αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ φυγῇ ἐπὶ τὰ αὑτῶν ἕκαστοι
having-left him in the flight to the their-own each
ἀπεχώρουν, οὐκ ὀλίγοι δὲ καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ σφᾶς ἐνεδίδοσαν.
departed not few and also to-Alexander themselves surrendered

20.3 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὡς ἀπέγνω κατὰ πόδας αἱρήσειν
Alexander and when he-despaired at heels to-be-going-to-catch
Δαρεῖον, μείνας αὐτοῦ πέντε ἡμέρας καὶ ἀναπαύσας
Darius having-remained there five days and having-rested

τὸν στρατὸν Μηδίας μὲν σατράπην ἀπέδειξεν Ὀξυδάτην
the army of-Media indeed satrap appointed Oxydates
Πέρσην ἄνδρα, ὃς ἐτύγχανε πρὸς Δαρείου ξυνειλημμένος
a-Persian man who happened by Darius arrested
καὶ ἐν Σούσοις εἰργόμενος· τοῦτο αὐτῷ ἐς πίστιν ἦν
and in Susa confined this to-him for trust was
πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον· αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ Παρθυαίους ἦγε.
toward Alexander himself and as toward Parthyaeans led
καὶ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ πρὸς ταῖς Κασπίαις πύλαις 20.4
and on-the indeed first-day by the Caspian gates
ἐστρατοπέδευσε, τῇ δευτέρᾳ δὲ εἴσω παρῆλθε τῶν
he-encamped on-the second and within passed the
πυλῶν ἔστε οἰκούμενα ἦν. ἐπισιτισάμενος δὲ αὐτόθεν,
gates as-far-as inhabited it-was having-provisioned and from-there
ὅτι ἔρημον τὴν πρόσω χώραν ἤκουεν, ἐς προνομὴν
because desert the farther country he-heard for foraging
ἐκπέμπει Κοῖνον ξὺν ἱππεῦσί τε καὶ τῶν πεζῶν ὀλίγοις.
he-sends-out Coenus with cavalry both and of-the infantry few
καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἀφικνεῖται παρ' αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Δαρείου 21.1
and in this arrives to him from of-the of-Darius
στρατοπέδου Βαγιστάνης Βαβυλώνιος ἀνὴρ τῶν γνωρίμων
camp Bagistanes a-Babylonian man of-the notables
καὶ ξὺν τούτῳ Ἀντίβηλος τῶν Μαζαίου παίδων. οὗτοι
and with him Antibelus of-the of-Mazaeus sons these
ἀπήγγειλαν ὅτι Ναβαρζάνης τε, χιλιάρχης τῶν ξὺν Δαρείῳ
reported that Nabarzanes both chiliarch of-the with Darius
φευγόντων ἱππέων, καὶ Βῆσσος ὁ Βακτρίων σατράπης
fleeing cavalry and Bessus the of-Bactrians satrap
καὶ Βαρσαέντης ὁ Ἀραχωτῶν καὶ Δραγγῶν σατράπης
and Barsaentes the of-Arachotians and Drangians satrap
ξυνειληφότες εἶεν Δαρεῖον.
having-arrested were Darius

21.2 ταῦτα ἀκούσας Ἀλέξανδρος ἔτι μᾶλλον ἦγε σπουδῇ, τοὺς
these-things having-heard Alexander still more led in-haste the
ἑταίρους μόνους ἔχων ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν καὶ τοὺς προδρόμους
companions alone having around himself and the prodromoi
ἱππέας καὶ τῶν πεζῶν τοὺς εὐρωστοτάτους τε καὶ
cavalry and of-the infantry the most-robust both and
κουφοτάτους ἐπιλεξάμενος, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Κοῖνον
lightest having-selected not-even the around Coenus
προσμείνας ἐκ τῆς προνομῆς ἐπανελθεῖν. τοῖς δὲ
having-waited from the foraging to-return over-the and
ὑπολειπομένοις ἐπιστήσας Κρατερὸν προστάττει ἕπεσθαι
left-behind having-set Craterus he-orders to-follow
μὴ μακρὰς ὁδοὺς ἄγοντα. οἱ δὲ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν τὰ ὅπλα
not long marches leading they and around him the arms
εἶχον μόνον καὶ δύο ἡμερῶν σιτία.
had only and two of-days rations

21.3 ἐλθὼν δὲ τήν τε νύκτα ὅλην καὶ τῆς ἐπιούσης ἡμέρας μέχρι
having-gone and the both night whole and of-the following day until
μεσημβρίας ὀλίγον χρόνον ἀναπαύσας τὸν στρατὸν αὖθις
midday little time having-rested the army again
ᾔει ὅλην νύκτα, καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ ὑποφαινούσῃ παρῆν
he-went whole night and with day dawning he-was-present
εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ὅθεν ἀφωρμήκει ὀπίσω Βαγιστάνης.
at the camp whence had-set-out back Bagistanes

21.4 καὶ τοὺς μὲν πολεμίους οὐ κατέλαβε, Δαρείου δὲ πέρι
and the indeed enemy not he-overtook of-Darius and about
ἐπύθετο αὐτὸν μὲν συνειλημμένον ἄγεσθαι ἐφ᾽ ἁρμαμάξης,
he-learned him indeed arrested to-be-led on a-covered-wagon
Βήσσῳ δὲ ἀντὶ Δαρείου εἶναι τὸ κράτος καὶ ἡγεμόνα
for-Bessus and instead-of Darius to-be the power and leader
ὠνομάσθαι Βῆσσον πρός τε τῶν Βακτρίων ἱππέων καὶ
to-have-been-named Bessus by both the Bactrian cavalry and

τῶν ἄλλων ὅσοι βάρβαροι ξυνέφευγον Δαρείῳ, πλὴν
the other as-many-as barbarians fled-with Darius except
Ἀρταβάζου καὶ τῶν Ἀρταβάζου παίδων καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
Artabazus and of-the of-Artabazus sons and the Greeks
τῶν μισθοφόρων· τούτους δὲ πιστοὺς εἶναι Δαρείῳ, καὶ
the mercenaries these and faithful to-be to-Darius and
εἴργειν μὲν τὰ γιγνόμενα οὐ δυνατοὺς εἶναι, ἐκτραπέντας
to-prevent indeed the happening not able to-be having-turned-aside
δὲ ἔξω τῆς λεωφόρου ὁδοῦ ὡς ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἰέναι
and outside the high road as toward the mountains to-go
κατὰ σφᾶς, οὐ μετέχοντας τοῖς ἀμφὶ Βῆσσον τοῦ ἔργου.
by themselves not sharing with-the around Bessus the deed
γνώμην δὲ πεποιῆσθαι τοὺς ξυλλαβόντας Δαρεῖον,
resolve and to-have-made the having-arrested Darius
εἰ μὲν διώκοντα σφᾶς Ἀλέξανδρον πυνθάνοιντο, παραδοῦναι 21.5
if indeed pursuing them Alexander they-should-learn to-hand-over
Δαρεῖον Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ σφίσι τι ἀγαθὸν εὑρίσκεσθαι·
Darius to-Alexander and for-themselves something good to-obtain
εἰ δὲ τὸ ἔμπαλιν ἐπανεληλυθότα μάθοιεν, τοὺς δὲ
if but the back having-returned they-should-learn they and
στρατιάν τε ξυλλέγειν ὅσην πλείστην δύναιντο καὶ
an-army both to-collect as-large-as greatest they-could and
διασώζειν ἐς τὸ κοινὸν τὴν ἀρχήν. Βῆσσον δὲ ἐν τῷ
to-preserve for the common the rule Bessus and in the
παρόντι ἐξηγεῖσθαι κατ᾽ οἰκειότητά τε τὴν Δαρείου καὶ
present to-lead by kinship both the of-Darius and
ὅτι ἐν τῇ αὐτοῦ σατραπείᾳ τὸ ἔργον ἐγίγνετο.
because in the his-own satrapy the deed was-done
ταῦτα ἀκούσαντι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀνὰ κράτος διωκτέα 21.6
these-things having-heard to-Alexander at full-strength must-be-pursued
ἐφαίνετο. καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἐξέκαμνον οἵ τε ἄνδρες καὶ οἱ
it-appeared and already indeed were-worn-out the both men and the

ἵπποι ὑπὸ τῇ ταλαιπωρίᾳ τῇ ξυνεχεῖ· ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς ἦγε,
horses under the hardship the continuous but even so he-led
καὶ διελθὼν ὁδὸν πολλὴν τῆς τε νυκτὸς καὶ τῆς ἐπὶ ταύτῃ
and having-gone road long of-the both night and of-the after it
ἡμέρας ἔστε ἐπὶ μεσημβρίαν ἀφικνεῖται ἔς τινα κώμην,
day as-far to midday arrives at some village
ἵνα τῇ προτεραίᾳ ἐστρατοπεδεύκεσαν οἱ Δαρεῖον ἄγοντες.
where on-the day-before had-encamped — Darius leading
21.7 ἐνταῦθα ἀκούσας ὅτι νυκτὸς ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν
there having-heard that by-night to-make the march
ἐγνωσμένον εἴη τοῖς βαρβάροις, ἤλεγχε τοὺς προσχώρους,
resolved it-was by-the barbarians he-questioned the natives
εἰ δή τινα εἰδεῖεν ἐπιτομωτέραν ὁδὸν ἐπὶ τοὺς φεύγοντας.
if indeed any they-knew shorter road toward the fleeing
οἱ δὲ εἰδέναι μὲν ἔφασαν, ἐρήμην δὲ εἶναι τὴν ὁδὸν
they and to-know indeed said desert but to-be the road
δι' ἀνυδρίαν. ὁ δὲ ταύτην ἄγειν ἐκέλευσε· καὶ
because-of lack-of-water he and this to-guide ordered and
γνοὺς ὅτι οὐχ ἕψονται οἱ πεζοὶ αὐτῷ σπουδῇ
having-recognized that not will-follow the infantry him in-haste
ἐλαύνοντι τῶν μὲν ἱππέων ἐς πεντακοσίους κατεβίβασεν
riding of-the indeed cavalry about five-hundred he-dismounted
ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, τοὺς ἡγεμόνας δὲ τῶν πεζῶν καὶ τῶν
from the horses the officers and of-the infantry and of-the
ἄλλων ἐπιλεξάμενος τοὺς κρατιστεύοντας ἐπιβῆναι τῶν
others having-selected the strongest to-mount the
ἵππων ἐκέλευσεν οὕτως ὅπως οἱ πεζοὶ ὡπλισμένοι ἦσαν.
horses he-ordered so as the infantry armed were
21.8 Νικάνορα δὲ τὸν τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἡγεμόνα καὶ Ἄτταλον
Nicanor and the of-the shield-bearers commander and Attalus
τὸν τῶν Ἀγριάνων κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ἥντινα οἱ ἀμφὶ Βῆσσον
the of-the Agrianians along the road which the around Bessus

προὐκεχωρήκεσαν, τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας ἄγειν ἐκέλευσε,
had-gone-forward the left-behind to-lead ordered
καὶ τούτους ὡς κουφότατα ἐσταλμένους, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους
and these as most-lightly equipped the and other
πεζοὺς ἐν τάξει ἕπεσθαι.
infantry in order to-follow
αὐτὸς δὲ ἀμφὶ δείλην ἄγειν ἀρξάμενος δρόμῳ ἡγεῖτο· 21.9
he-himself and about afternoon to-lead having-begun at-a-run led
διελθὼν δὲ τῆς νυκτὸς σταδίους ἐς τετρακοσίους ὑπὸ
having-gone and in-the night stades about four-hundred toward
τὴν ἕω ἐπιτυγχάνει τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀτάκτως ἰοῦσι καὶ
the dawn comes-upon the barbarians in-disorder going and
ἀνόπλοις, ὥστε ὀλίγοι μέν τινες αὐτῶν ὡς ἀμυνούμενοι
unarmed so-that few indeed some of-them as about-to-defend-themselves
ὥρμησαν, οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ εὐθὺς ὡς Ἀλέξανδρον αὐτὸν
rushed the and many at-once as Alexander himself
κατεῖδον οὐδὲ ἐς χεῖρας ἐλθόντες ἔφευγον· καὶ οἱ
they-saw not-even into hands having-come fled and the
τραπέντες ἐς ἀλκὴν ὀλίγων πεσόντων καὶ οὗτοι ἔφυγον.
having-turned to resistance few having-fallen also these fled
Βῆσσος δὲ καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτῷ τέως μὲν ἐφ' ἁρμαμάξης 21.10
Bessus and and the with him for-a-time indeed on a-covered-wagon
Δαρεῖον μετὰ σφῶν ἐκόμιζον· ὡς δὲ ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἦν
Darius with them carried when and close already was
Ἀλέξανδρος, Δαρεῖον μὲν Σατιβαρζάνης καὶ Βαρσαέντης
Alexander Darius indeed Satibarzanes and Barsaentes
κατατρώσαντες αὐτοῦ ἀπέλιπον, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἔφυγον ξὺν
having-wounded there left themselves and fled with
ἱππεῦσιν ἑξακοσίοις. Δαρεῖος δὲ ἀποθνήσκει ὀλίγον ὕστερον
horsemen six-hundred Darius and dies little later
ἐκ τῶν τραυμάτων πρὶν ὀφθῆναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
from the wounds before to-be-seen by-Alexander

22.1 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τὸ μὲν σῶμα τοῦ Δαρείου ἐς Πέρσας
Alexander and the indeed body — of-Darius to Persians
ἀπέπεμψε, θάψαι κελεύσας ἐν ταῖς βασιλικαῖς θήκαις,
sent-off to-bury having-ordered in the royal tombs
καθάπερ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρὸ Δαρείου βασιλεῖς· σατράπην
as also the other the before Darius kings satrap
δὲ ἀπέδειξε Παρθυαίων καὶ Ὑρκανίων Ἀμμινάπην
and he-appointed of-Parthyaeans and Hyrcanians Amminapes
Παρθυαῖον· ἦν δὲ οὗτος τῶν Αἴγυπτον ἐνδόντων
a-Parthyaean was and this-one of-those Egypt having-surrendered
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ μετὰ Μαζάκου. Τληπόλεμος δὲ Πυθοφάνους
to-Alexander with Mazaces Tlepolemus and (son)-of-Pythophanes
τῶν ἑταίρων ξυνετάχθη αὐτῷ σκοπεῖν τὰ ἐν
of-the companions was-appointed-with him to-watch the-affairs among
Παρθυαίοις τε καὶ Ὑρκανίοις.
Parthyaeans both and Hyrcanians

22.2 τοῦτο τὸ τέλος Δαρείῳ ἐγένετο ἐπὶ ἄρχοντος Ἀθηναίοις
this the end for-Darius came under archon at-Athens
Ἀριστοφῶντος μηνὸς Ἑκατομβαιῶνος, ἀνδρὶ τὰ μὲν
Aristophon in-the-month Hecatombaeon for-a-man in-the indeed
πολέμια, εἴπερ τινὶ ἄλλῳ, μαλθακῷ τε καὶ οὐ φρενήρει,
warlike-affairs if-indeed any other soft both and not sound-of-mind
εἰς δὲ τἆλλα οὐδὲν ἀνεπιεικὲς ἔργον ἀποδειξαμένῳ ἢ
in and the-other-things no unreasonable deed having-displayed or
οὐδὲ ἐγγενόμενον αὐτῷ ἀποδείξασθαι, ὅτι ὁμοῦ μὲν ἐς
not-even having-been-possible for-him to-display because together indeed into
τὴν βασιλείαν παρελθεῖν, ὁμοῦ δὲ προσπολεμεῖσθαι πρός
the kingship to-come together and to-be-warred-on by
τε Μακεδόνων καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ξυνέβη. οὔκουν οὐδὲ
both Macedonians and the Greeks it-happened not-therefore even

ἐθέλοντι ἐξῆν ἔτι ὑβρίζειν ἐς τοὺς ὑπηκόους
(for-him)-wishing it-was-possible still to-act-insolently toward the subjects
ἐν μείζονι κινδύνῳ ἤπερ ἐκεῖνοι καθεστηκότι.
in greater danger than they being-placed
ζῶντι μὲν δὴ ξυμφοραὶ αὐτῷ ἄλλαι ἐπ᾽ ἄλλαις 22.3
living indeed indeed misfortunes for-him others on others
ξυνηνέχθησαν, οὐδέ τις ἀνακωχὴ ἐγένετο ἐπειδὴ πρῶτον ἐς
befell nor any respite came after first into
τὴν ἀρχὴν παρῆλθεν· ἀλλὰ εὐθὺς μὲν τὸ τῶν σατραπῶν
the rule he-came but at-once indeed the of-the satraps
ἐπὶ Γρανίκῳ πταῖσμα ξυνέβη τὸ ἱππικόν, εὐθὺς δὲ Ἰωνία
at Granicus reverse happened the cavalry-one at-once and Ionia
τε καὶ Αἰολὶς εἶχοντο καὶ Φρύγες ἀμφότεροι καὶ Λυδία
both and Aeolis were-held and Phrygians both and Lydia
καὶ Κᾶρες πλὴν Ἁλικαρνασσέων·
and Carians except Halicarnassians
ὀλίγον δὲ ὕστερον καὶ Ἁλικαρνασσὸς ἐξῄρητο, ἐπὶ δὲ 22.4
little and later also Halicarnassus had-been-taken next and
ἡ παραλία πᾶσα ἔστε ἐπὶ Κιλικίαν· ἔνθεν δὲ ἡ αὐτοῦ
the coast all as-far to Cilicia thence and the his
ἐπ᾽ Ἰσσῷ ἥσσα, ἵνα τήν τε μητέρα αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσαν
at Issus defeat where the both mother captured
καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας ἐπεῖδεν· ἐπὶ τῷδε
and the wife and the children he-saw upon this
Φοινίκη τε ἀπώλετο καὶ Αἴγυπτος πᾶσα· ἐπὶ δὲ αὐτὸς ἐν
Phoenicia both was-lost and Egypt all next and himself at
Ἀρβήλοις ἔφυγέ τε ἐν πρώτοις αἰσχρῶς καὶ στρατιὰν
Arbela fled both among first shamefully and an-army
πλείστην παντὸς τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ γένους ἀπώλεσε·
greatest of-all the barbarian race lost

22.5 φυγάς τε ἐκ τούτου τῆς αὐτοῦ ἀρχῆς πλανώμενος καὶ
a-fugitive both from this of-the his-own realm wandering and
τελευτῶν πρὸς τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν ἐς τὰ ἔσχατα προδοθείς,
at-last by the around himself to the uttermost betrayed
βασιλεύς τε ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ καὶ δεσμώτης ξὺν ἀτιμίᾳ ἀγόμενος,
king both at the same-time and prisoner with dishonor being-led
τέλος δὲ πρὸς τῶν οἰκειοτάτων ἐπιβουλευθεὶς ἀπώλετο.
at-the-end and by the nearest-kin plotted-against he-perished

22.6 ζῶντι μὲν Δαρείῳ τοιαῦτα ξυνηνέχθη, τελευτήσαντι
living indeed to-Darius such-things befell to-him-having-died
δὲ ταφή τε ἡ βασιλικὴ καὶ τῶν παίδων ὁποία καὶ
and burial both the royal and of-the children such-as even
βασιλεύοντος αὐτοῦ τροφή τε παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ
reigning him rearing both from Alexander and
παίδευσις, καὶ γαμβρὸς Ἀλέξανδρος. ὁπότε δὲ ἐτελεύτα,
education and as-son-in-law Alexander when and he-died
ἐγεγόνει ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.
he-had-become about the fifty years

Alexander crosses into Hyrcania, where Nabarzanes and Phrataphernes surrender. Artabazus and his sons come to him and are honored. The Greek mercenaries who served Darius surrender at his discretion. He subdues the Mardians, holds the Spartan envoys to Darius, and sets free those Greeks who were in Persian service before the peace. Satibarzanes is restored as satrap of Aria; news comes that Bessus has taken the royal title, and then that Satibarzanes has killed his escort and revolted. Alexander drives Satibarzanes out by a rapid march and turns toward the Zarangaeans, whose ruler Barsaentes, one of Darius' attackers, flees to the Indians and is handed over to be put to death.

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας ἐν τῇ διώξει τῆς 23.1
Alexander and the left-behind in the pursuit of-the
στρατιᾶς ἀναλαβὼν ἐς Ὑρκανίαν προὐχώρει. κεῖται δὲ
army having-taken-up to Hyrcania advanced lies and
ἡ Ὑρκανία χώρα ἐν ἀριστερᾷ τῆς ὁδοῦ τῆς ἐπὶ Βάκτρα
— Hyrcania country on left of-the road the to Bactra
φερούσης· καὶ τῇ μὲν ὄρεσιν ἀπείργεται δασέσι
leading and on-one-side indeed by-mountains is-shut-in wooded
καὶ ὑψηλοῖς, τὸ πεδίον δὲ αὐτῆς καθήκει ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν
and high the plain and its comes-down as-far to the
μεγάλην τὴν ταύτῃ θάλασσαν. ταύτην δὲ ἦγεν, ὅτι
great the there sea this and he-led because
ταύτῃ τοὺς ξένους τοὺς ἀμφὶ Δαρεῖον διαπεφευγέναι ἐς
this-way the mercenaries the around Darius to-have-escaped into
τὰ τῶν Ταπούρων ὄρη ἐπύθετο καὶ αὐτοὺς ἅμα
the of-the Tapurians mountains he-learned and them at-the-same-time
τοὺς Ταπούρους χειρωσόμενος.
the Tapurians about-to-subdue

23.2 τριχῇ δὴ διελὼν τὸν στρατὸν αὐτὸς μὲν τὴν
in-three indeed having-divided the army himself indeed the
ἐπιτομωτάτην καὶ χαλεπωτάτην ἡγήσατο, τὸ πλεῖστον
shortest and most-difficult led the most
καὶ ἅμα τὸ κουφότατον τῆς δυνάμεως ἄγων·
and at-the-same-time the lightest of-the force leading
Κρατερὸν δὲ τήν τε αὑτοῦ τάξιν ἔχοντα καὶ τὴν
Craterus and the both his-own battalion having and the
Ἀμύντου καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν ἔστιν οὕς, καὶ ὀλίγους τῶν
of-Amyntas and of-the archers there-are whom and few of-the
ἱππέων ἐπὶ Ταπούρων ἔστειλεν· Ἐριγύϊον δὲ τούς τε
cavalry against Tapurians he-sent Erigyius and the both
ξένους καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν ἵππον ἀναλαβόντα τὴν λεωφόρον
mercenaries and the remaining horse having-taken the highway
τε καὶ μακροτέραν ἡγεῖσθαι ἐκέλευσε, τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ
both and longer to-lead he-ordered the wagons and
τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ τὸν ἄλλον ὅμιλον ἄγοντα.
the baggage and the other crowd leading

23.3 ὑπερβαλὼν δὲ τὰ πρῶτα ὄρη καὶ καταστρατοπεδεύσας
having-crossed and the first mountains and having-encamped
αὐτοῦ ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τῆς Μακεδονικῆς
there having-taken the both shield-bearers and of-the Macedonian
φάλαγγος τοὺς κουφοτάτους καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν ἔστιν οὓς
phalanx the lightest and of-the archers there-are whom
ἦει χαλεπὴν ὁδὸν καὶ δύσπορον, φύλακας τῶν ὁδῶν
he-went a-difficult road and hard-to-pass guards of-the roads
καταλιπών, ἵνα σφαλερόν τι αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο, ὡς
having-left where hazardous something to-him appeared so-that
μὴ τοῖς ἑπομένοις κατ' ἐκεῖνα ἐπιθοῖντο οἱ τὰ ὄρη
not on-the following on that-side might-attack the the mountains
ἔχοντες τῶν βαρβάρων.
holding of-the barbarians

αὐτὸς δὲ μετὰ τῶν τοξοτῶν διελθὼν τὰ στενὰ 23.4
he-himself and with the archers having-passed-through the narrows
ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ κατεστρατοπέδευσε πρὸς ποταμῷ οὐ
in the plain encamped by a-river not
μεγάλῳ. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ὄντος αὐτοῦ Ναβαρζάνης τε ὁ
great and there being him Nabarzanes both the
Δαρείου χιλιάρχης καὶ Φραταφέρνης ὁ Ὑρκανίας τε καὶ
of-Darius chiliarch and Phrataphernes the of-Hyrcania both and
Παρθυαίων σατράπης καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ἀμφὶ Δαρεῖον Περσῶν
of-Parthyaeans satrap and others of-the around Darius Persians
οἱ ἐπιφανέστατοι ἀφικόμενοι παρέδοσαν σφᾶς αὐτούς.
the most-distinguished having-come surrendered them selves
ὑπομείνας δὲ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ τέσσαρας ἡμέρας ἀνέλαβε 23.5
having-waited and in the camp four days he-took-up
τοὺς ὑπολειφθέντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους
the left-behind along the road the indeed others
ἀσφαλῶς διελθόντας, τοῖς δὲ Ἀγριᾶσιν ὀπισθοφυλακοῦσιν
safely having-come-through on-the and Agrianians guarding-the-rear
ἐπέθεντο οἱ ὄρειοι τῶν βαρβάρων, καὶ μεῖον ἔχοντες
attacked the mountain of-the barbarians and the-worse having
τῷ ἀκροβολισμῷ ἀπηλλάγησαν.
in-the skirmishing withdrew
ἄρας δὲ ἐντεῦθεν προῆει ὡς ἐφ' Ὑρκανίαν εἰς 23.6
having-set-out and thence he-advanced as toward Hyrcania to
Ζαδράκαρτα πόλιν Ὑρκανίων. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οἱ περὶ
Zadracarta city of-Hyrcanians and in this the around
Κρατερὸν ξυνέμιξαν αὐτῷ, τοῖς μὲν ξένοις τοῖς Δαρείου
Craterus joined him the indeed mercenaries the of-Darius
οὐκ ἐντετυχηκότες, τὴν χώραν δὲ ὅσην διαπεπορευμένοι
not having-met the country and as-much-as having-traversed
ἦσαν τὴν μὲν βίᾳ, τὴν δὲ ἐνδιδόντων τῶν
they-were the-part indeed by-force the-part and surrendering the

κατοικούντων προσπεποιημένοι. ἐνταῦθα καὶ Ἐριγύϊος ἦκε
inhabitants having-won-over there also Erigyius came
σὺν τοῖς σκευοφόροις καὶ ταῖς ἁμάξαις.
with the baggage and the wagons

23.7 ὀλίγον δὲ ὕστερον Ἀρτάβαζος ἀφίκετο παρ' Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ
a-little and later Artabazus arrived to Alexander and
τῶν παίδων αὐτοῦ Κωφὴν καὶ Ἀριοβαρζάνης καὶ Ἀρσάμης
of-the sons his Cophen and Ariobarzanes and Arsames
καὶ ξὺν τούτοις παρὰ τῶν ξένων τῶν ξὺν Δαρείῳ πρέσβεις
and with these from the mercenaries the with Darius envoys
καὶ Αὐτοφραδάτης ὁ Ταπούρων σατράπης. Αὐτοφραδάτῃ
and Autophradates the of-Tapurians satrap to-Autophradates
μὲν δὴ τὴν σατραπείαν ἀπέδωκεν, Ἀρτάβαζον δὲ καὶ
indeed indeed the satrapy he-gave-back Artabazus and and
τοὺς παῖδας ἅμα οἱ ἐν τιμῇ ἦγε, τά τε ἄλλα ἐν τοῖς
the sons with him in honor he-kept the both other-things among the
πρώτοις Περσῶν ὄντας καὶ τῆς ἐς Δαρεῖον πίστεως ἕνεκα.
first of-Persians being and of-the to Darius loyalty for-the-sake

23.8 τοῖς πρέσβεσι δὲ τῶν Ἑλλήνων δεομένοις σπείσασθαί
to-the envoys and of-the Greeks asking to-make-a-truce
σφισιν ὑπὲρ τοῦ παντὸς ξενικοῦ ἀπεκρίνατο
with-them on-behalf-of the whole mercenary-force he-answered
ὁμολογίαν μὲν οὐκ ἂν ποιήσασθαι πρὸς αὐτοὺς οὐδεμίαν·
agreement indeed not — to-make with them any
ἀδικεῖν γὰρ μεγάλα τοὺς στρατευομένους ἐναντία τῇ
to-do-wrong for greatly the campaigning against —
Ἑλλάδι παρὰ τοῖς βαρβάροις παρὰ τὰ δόγματα τῶν
Greece with the barbarians contrary-to the decrees of-the
Ἑλλήνων· ἐκέλευσε δὲ ἥκειν ξύμπαντας καὶ παραδιδόναι
Greeks he-ordered but to-come all and to-hand-over

σφᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐπιτρέποντας Ἀλεξάνδρῳ χρῆσθαι ὅ τι
them selves permitting Alexander to-deal what ever
βούλοιτο, ἢ σώζεσθαι ὅπῃ δύναιντο.
he-wished or to-save-themselves where they-could
οἱ δὲ ἐπιτρέπειν ἔφασαν σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους 23.9
they and to-entrust said them both selves and the others
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ· ξυμπέμπειν τε ἐκέλευον τὸν ἡγησόμενον αὐτοῖς,
to-Alexander to-send-with both they-asked the about-to-guide them
ὡς ἀσφαλῶς διακομισθεῖεν παρ᾽ αὐτόν· εἶναι δὲ ἐλέγοντο
so-that safely they-might-be-conveyed to him to-be and were-said
ἐς χιλίους καὶ πεντακοσίους. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος πέμπει
about thousand and five-hundred and Alexander sends
Ἀνδρόνικον τὸν Ἀγέρρου καὶ Ἀρτάβαζον παρ᾽ αὐτούς.
Andronicus the (son)-of-Agerrus and Artabazus to them
αὐτὸς δὲ προῆγεν ὡς ἐπὶ Μάρδους, ἀναλαβὼν τούς 24.1
he-himself and advanced as against Mardians having-taken the
τε ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ
both shield-bearers and the archers and the Agrianians and
τὴν Κοίνου καὶ Ἀμύντου τάξιν καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων ἱππέων
the of-Coenus and of-Amyntas battalion and of-the companion cavalry
τοὺς ἡμίσεας καὶ τοὺς ἱππακοντιστάς· ἤδη γὰρ αὐτῷ
the half and the mounted-javelin-men already for for-him
καὶ ἱππακοντισταὶ τάξις ἦσαν.
also mounted-javelin-men a-unit were
ἐπελθὼν δὲ τὸ πολὺ μέρος τῆς χώρας τῶν Μάρδων 24.2
having-traversed and the great part of-the country of-the Mardians
πολλοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτῶν φεύγοντας, οὓς δέ τινας
many indeed he-killed of-them fleeing some and others
ἐς ἀλκὴν τετραμμένους, πολλοὺς δὲ ζῶντας ἔλαβεν. οὐ
to resistance turned many and alive he-took not
γὰρ ἔστιν ὅστις χρόνου ἐμβεβλήκει ἐς τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν
for there-is anyone for-a-long-time had-invaded into the land of-them

ἐπὶ πολέμῳ διά τε δυσχωρίαν καὶ ὅτι πένητες οἱ
for war because-of both difficult-ground and because poor the
Μάρδοι καὶ μάχιμοι ἐπὶ τῇ πενίᾳ ἦσαν. οὔκουν
Mardians and warlike in-addition-to the poverty were not-therefore
οὐδὲ Ἀλέξανδρον ἐμβαλεῖν ἄν ποτε δείσαντες, ἄλλως τε
even Alexander to-invade — ever fearing especially both
καὶ προκεχωρηκότα ἤδη ἐς τὸ πρόσω, ταύτῃ μᾶλλόν
also having-advanced already to the forward thereby more
τι ἀφύλακτοι ἡλίσκοντο.
somewhat unguarded they-were-caught

24.3 πολλοὶ δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ ἐς τὰ ὄρη κατέφυγον, ἃ δὴ
many and of-them also into the mountains fled which indeed
ὑπερύψηλά τε καὶ ἀπότομα αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐστίν,
very-high both and sheer for-them in the country are
ὡς πρὸς ταῦτά γε οὐχ ἥξοντα Ἀλέξανδρον. ἐπεὶ δὲ
as against these at-least not about-to-come Alexander when and
καὶ ταύτῃ προσῆγεν, οἱ δὲ πέμψαντες πρέσβεις σφᾶς
also there he-led they and having-sent envoys them
τε αὐτοὺς ἐνέδοσαν καὶ τὴν χώραν· καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
both selves surrendered and the country and Alexander
αὐτοὺς μὲν ἀφῆκεν, σατράπην δὲ ἀπέδειξεν αὐτῶν
them indeed released satrap and appointed of-them
Αὐτοφραδάτην, ὅνπερ καὶ Ταπούρων.
Autophradates whom-very also of-Tapurians

24.4 αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπανελθὼν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἔνθενπερ ὡρμήθη
he-himself and having-returned to the camp whence-indeed he-had-set-out
ἐς τῶν Μάρδων τὴν γῆν, κατέλαβε τοὺς Ἕλληνας τοὺς
into of-the Mardians the land found the Greeks the
μισθοφόρους ἥκοντας καὶ τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίων πρέσβεις,
mercenaries having-come and the of-Lacedaemonians envoys
οἳ παρὰ βασιλέα Δαρεῖον ἐπρέσβευον, Καλλιστρατίδαν
who to king Darius were-on-embassy Callistratidas

τε καὶ Παύσιππον καὶ Μόνιμον καὶ Ὀνόμαντα, καὶ
both and Pausippus and Monimus and Onomas and
Ἀθηναίων Δρωπίδην. τούτους μὲν δὴ ξυλλαβὼν ἐν
of-Athenians Dropides these indeed indeed having-arrested in
φυλακῇ εἶχε, τοὺς Σινωπέων δὲ ἀφῆκεν, ὅτι Σινωπεῖς
custody he-held the of-Sinopeans but he-released because Sinopeans
οὔτε τοῦ κοινοῦ τῶν Ἑλλήνων μετεῖχον, ὑπὸ Πέρσαις
neither of-the common of-the Greeks had-share under Persians
τε τεταγμένοι οὐκ ἀπεικότα ποιεῖν ἐδόκουν παρὰ τὸν
both being-ranged not unreasonable-things to-do they-seemed to the
βασιλέα σφῶν πρεσβεύοντες.
king their sending-envoys
ἀφῆκεν δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων, ὅσοι πρὸ τῆς 24.5
he-released and also of-the other Greeks as-many-as before the
εἰρήνης τε καὶ τῆς ξυμμαχίας τῆς πρὸς Μακεδόνας
peace both and the alliance the with Macedonians
γενομένης παρὰ Πέρσαις ἐμισθοφόρουν, καὶ Καλχηδονίων
having-been-made with Persians served-for-pay and of-Chalcedonians
Ἡρακλείδην τὸν πρεσβευτὴν ἀφῆκεν· τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους
Heracleides the envoy he-released the and others
ξυστρατεύεσθαί οἱ ἐπὶ μισθῷ τῷ αὐτῷ ἐκέλευσε· καὶ
to-campaign-with him for pay the same he-ordered and
ἐπέταξεν αὐτοῖς Ἀνδρόνικον, ὅσπερ ἤγαγέ τε αὐτοὺς καὶ
he-set-over them Andronicus who-very had-brought both them and
ἔνδηλος γεγόνει οὐ φαῦλον ποιούμενος σῶσαι τοὺς ἄνδρας.
evident had-been not slight considering to-save the men
ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ἦγεν ὡς ἐπὶ Ζαδράκαρτα, τὴν 25.1
these-things and having-accomplished he-led as toward Zadracarta the
μεγίστην πόλιν τῆς Ὑρκανίας, ἵνα καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τοῖς
greatest city — of-Hyrcania where also the palace for-the
Ὑρκανίοις ἦν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα διατρίψας ἡμέρας πεντεκαίδεκα
Hyrcanians was and there having-stayed days fifteen

καὶ θύσας τοῖς θεοῖς ὡς νόμος καὶ ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν
and having-sacrificed to-the gods as custom and a-contest gymnastic
ποιήσας ὡς ἐπὶ Παρθυαίους ἦγεν· ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ἐπὶ τὰ
having-made as toward Parthyaeans he-led thence and to the
τῆς Ἀρείας ὅρια καὶ Σουσίαν, πόλιν τῆς Ἀρείας, ἵνα καὶ
— of-Aria borders and Susia city — of-Aria where also
Σατιβαρζάνης ἦκε παρ' αὐτὸν ὁ τῶν Ἀρείων σατράπης.
Satibarzanes came to him the of-the Arians satrap
25.2 τούτῳ μὲν δὴ τὴν σατραπείαν ἀποδοὺς ξυμπέμπει
to-him indeed indeed the satrapy having-given-back he-sends-with
αὐτῷ Ἀνάξιππον τῶν ἑταίρων δοὺς αὐτῷ τῶν
him Anaxippus of-the companions having-given him of-the
ἱππακοντιστῶν ἐς τεσσαράκοντα, ὡς ἔχοι
mounted-javelin-men about forty so-that he-might-be-able
φύλακας καθιστάναι τῶν τόπων, τοῦ μὴ ἀδικεῖσθαι τοὺς
guards to-station of-the places for-the not to-be-wronged the
Ἀρείους πρὸς τῆς στρατιᾶς κατὰ τὴν πάροδον.
Arians by the army on the passage
25.3 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἀφικνοῦνται παρ' αὐτὸν Περσῶν τινες, οἳ
in this and arrive to him of-Persians some who
ἤγγελλον Βῆσσον τήν τε τιάραν ὀρθὴν ἔχειν καὶ τὴν
reported Bessus the both tiara upright to-have and the
Περσικὴν στολὴν φοροῦντα Ἀρτοξέρξην τε καλεῖσθαι
Persian dress wearing Artaxerxes both to-be-called
ἀντὶ Βήσσου καὶ βασιλέα φάσκειν εἶναι τῆς Ἀσίας· ἔχειν
instead-of Bessus and king to-claim to-be — of-Asia to-have
τε ἀμφ' αὐτὸν Περσῶν τε τοὺς ἐς Βάκτρα διαφυγόντας
both around himself of-Persians both the to Bactra having-escaped
καὶ αὐτῶν Βακτριανῶν πολλούς· προσδοκᾶσθαι δὲ
and of-the-very Bactrians many to-be-expected and
ἥξειν αὐτῷ καὶ Σκύθας ξυμμάχους.
to-be-going-to-come to-him also Scythians as-allies

Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἔχων τὴν πᾶσαν δύναμιν ᾔει 25.4
Alexander and together already having the whole force went
ἐπὶ Βάκτρων, ἵνα καὶ Φίλιππος ὁ Μενελάου παρ᾽ αὐτὸν
toward Bactra where also Philip the (son)-of-Menelaus to him
ἀφίκετο ἐκ Μηδίας, ἔχων τούς τε μισθοφόρους ἱππέας, ὧν
arrived from Media having the both mercenary cavalry whom
ἡγεῖτο αὐτός, καὶ Θεσσαλῶν τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς ὑπομείναντας καὶ
led he-bimself and of-Thessalians the volunteers having-stayed-behind and
τοὺς ξένους τοὺς Ἀνδρομάχου. Νικάνωρ δὲ ὁ Παρμενίωνος
the mercenaries the of-Andromachus Nicanor and the (son)-of-Parmenion
ὁ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἄρχων τετελευτήκει ἤδη νόσῳ.
the of-the shield-bearers commander had-died already by-disease
ἰόντι δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὴν ἐπὶ Βάκτρα ἐξηγγέλθη 25.5
going and to-Alexander the toward Bactra it-was-reported
Σατιβαρζάνης ὁ Ἀρείων σατράπης Ἀνάξιππον μὲν καὶ
Satibarzanes the of-Arians satrap Anaxippus indeed and
τοὺς ἱππακοντιστὰς τοὺς ξὺν αὐτῷ ἀπεκτονώς, ὁπλίζων
the mounted-javelin-men the with him having-killed arming
δὲ τοὺς Ἀρείους καὶ ξυνάγων εἰς Ἀρτακόανα πόλιν, ἵνα
and the Arians and gathering into Artacoana city where
τὸ βασίλειον ἦν τῶν Ἀρείων· ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ὅτι ἔγνωκεν,
the palace was of-the Arians thence and that he-had-resolved
ἐπειδὰν προκεχωρηκότα Ἀλέξανδρον πύθηται, ἰέναι ξὺν
whenever having-advanced Alexander he-should-learn to-go with
τῇ δυνάμει παρὰ Βῆσσον, ὡς ξὺν ἐκείνῳ ἐπιθησόμενος
the force to Bessus so-as with him about-to-attack
ὅπῃ ἂν τύχῃ τοῖς Μακεδόσι.
wherever — he-might-happen on-the Macedonians
ταῦτα ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη αὐτῷ, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ Βάκτρα 25.6
these-things when were-reported to-him the indeed toward Bactra
ὁδὸν οὐκ ἦγεν, ἀναλαβὼν δὲ τούς τε ἑταίρους ἱππέας
road not he-led having-taken and the both companion cavalry

καὶ τοὺς ἱππακοντιστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς
and the mounted-javelin-men and the archers and the
Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τὴν Ἀμύντου τε καὶ Κοίνου τάξιν, τὴν δὲ
Agrianians and the of-Amyntas both and of-Coenus battalion the and
ἄλλην δύναμιν αὐτοῦ καταλιπὼν καὶ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ Κρατερὸν
other force there having-left and over it Craterus
ἡγεμόνα, σπουδῇ ἦγεν ὡς ἐπὶ Σατιβαρζάνην τε καὶ
as-commander in-haste he-led as against Satibarzanes both and
τοὺς Ἀρείους καὶ διελθὼν ἐν δυσὶν ἡμέραις σταδίους
the Arians and having-traversed in two days stades
ἐς ἑξακοσίους πρὸς Ἀρτακόανα ἦκεν.
about six-hundred to Artacoana he-came

25.7 Σατιβαρζάνης μὲν οὖν ὡς ἔγνω ἐγγὺς ὄντα Ἀλέξανδρον
Satibarzanes indeed then when he-learned near being Alexander
τῇ ὀξύτητι τῆς ἐφόδου ἐκπλαγεὶς ξὺν ὀλίγοις ἱππεῦσι
at-the swiftness of-the approach astounded with few horsemen
τῶν Ἀρείων ἔφυγε· πρὸς γὰρ τῶν πολλῶν στρατιωτῶν
of-the Arians fled by for the many soldiers
κατελείφθη ἐν τῇ φυγῇ, ὡς κἀκεῖνοι ἔμαθον προσάγοντα
he-was-abandoned in the flight when they-too learned approaching
Ἀλέξανδρον. Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὅσους ξυναιτίους τῆς
Alexander Alexander and as-many-as accomplices of-the
ἀποστάσεως κατέμαθε καὶ ἐν τῷ τότε ἀπολελοιπότας τὰς
revolt he-learned and in the then having-left the
κώμας, τούτους δὲ ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ, ὀξείας τὰς διώξεις
villages these and here and there swift the pursuits
ποιησάμενος, τοὺς μὲν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δὲ ἠνδραπόδισε·
having-made the-ones indeed he-killed the-others and enslaved
σατράπην δὲ Ἀρείων ἀπέδειξεν Ἀρσάκην, ἄνδρα Πέρσην.
satrap and of-Arians he-appointed Arsaces a-man Persian

αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τοῖς ἀμφὶ Κρατερὸν ὑπολελειμμένοις, 25.8
he-himself and with the around Craterus left-behind
ὁμοῦ οὖσιν ἤδη, ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν Ζαραγγαίων χώραν ἦγε·
together being now as toward the of-Zarangaeans country led
καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἵνα τὰ βασίλεια τῶν Ζαραγγαίων ἦν.
and arrives where the palace of-the Zarangaeans was
Βαρσαέντης δέ, ὃς τότε κατεῖχε τὴν χώραν, εἷς ὢν
Barsaentes and who then held the country one being
τῶν ξυνεπιθεμένων Δαρείῳ ἐν τῇ φυγῇ, προσιόντα
of-the having-joined-in-attacking Darius in the flight approaching
Ἀλέξανδρον μαθὼν ἐς Ἰνδοὺς τοὺς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ
Alexander having-learned to Indians the on this-side of-the
Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ ἔφυγε. ξυλλαβόντες δὲ αὐτὸν οἱ Ἰνδοὶ
Indus river fled having-arrested and him the Indians
παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀπέστειλαν, καὶ ἀποθνήσκει πρὸς
to Alexander sent and dies at-the-hands-of
Ἀλεξάνδρου τῆς ἐς Δαρεῖον ἀδικίας ἕνεκα.
Alexander for-the toward Darius wrong for-the-sake

Among the Zarangaeans Alexander learns of a plot that Philotas son of Parmenion knew of and did not report, though he came to the tent twice daily. Philotas is tried before the Macedonians and speared, and Parmenion is killed in Media on Alexander's orders, as an accomplice or as too dangerous to leave alive. Amyntas son of Andromenes is acquitted. Hephaestion and Cleitus divide the companion cavalry, Alexander rewards the Benefactors, and Ptolemy replaces the arrested bodyguard Demetrius. Erigyius kills Satibarzanes, who has raised the Arians again. Alexander crosses the Caucasus, and Bessus wastes the land and retreats across the Oxus.

26.1 ἐνταῦθα καὶ τὴν Φιλώτα ἐπιβουλὴν τοῦ Παρμενίωνος ἔμαθεν
there also the of-Philotas plot the (son)-of-Parmenion learned
Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ λέγει Πτολεμαῖος καὶ Ἀριστόβουλος, ὅτι
Alexander and says Ptolemy and Aristobulus that
προσηγγελμένη μὲν ἦν ἤδη οἱ καὶ πρότερον ἐν
reported indeed it-had-been already to-him also before in
Αἰγύπτῳ, οὐ μέντοι πιστή γε ἐφάνη τῆς τε φιλίας τῆς
Egypt not however credible at-least it-appeared the both friendship the
πάλαι ἕνεκα καὶ τῆς ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἐς Παρμενίωνά τε τὸν
old for-the-sake and of-the from him to Parmenion both the
πατέρα τὸν Φιλώτα τιμῆς καὶ ἐς αὐτὸν Φιλώταν πίστεως.
father the of-Philotas honor and toward himself Philotas trust

26.2 Πτολεμαῖος δὲ ὁ Λάγου λέγει εἰσαχθῆναι εἰς
Ptolemy and the (son)-of-Lagus says to-have-been-brought-in before
Μακεδόνας Φιλώταν καὶ κατηγορῆσαι μὲν αὐτοῦ ἰσχυρῶς
Macedonians Philotas and to-have-accused indeed him vehemently
Ἀλέξανδρον, ἀπολογήσασθαι δὲ αὐτὸν Φιλώταν· καὶ τοὺς
Alexander to-have-defended-himself and himself Philotas and the
ἐπιμηνυτὰς τοῦ ἔργου παρελθόντας ἐξελέγξαι Φιλώταν τε
informers of-the deed having-come-forward to-have-convicted Philotas both

καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἄλλοις τε ἐλέγχοις οὐκ ἀφανέσι καὶ
and the around him with-other both proofs not obscure and
μάλιστα δὴ ὅτι αὐτὸς Φιλώτας πεπύσθαι μὲν ἐπιβουλήν
most indeed because himself Philotas to-have-learned indeed a-plot
τινα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ παρασκευαζομένην συνέφη, ἐξηλέγχετο δὲ
some against-Alexander being-prepared he-admitted he-was-convicted but
κατασιωπήσας ταύτην πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον, καίτοι δὶς ἐπὶ
having-kept-silent this to Alexander although twice to
τὴν σκηνὴν ὁσημέραι τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου φοιτῶν.
the tent daily the of-Alexander going
καὶ Φιλώταν μὲν κατακοντισθῆναι πρὸς τῶν Μακεδόνων 26.3
and Philotas indeed to-have-been-speared by the Macedonians
καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μετέσχον αὐτῷ τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς· ἐπὶ
and as-many-as others shared with-him of-the plot to
Παρμενίωνα δὲ σταλῆναι Πολυδάμαντα, ἕνα τῶν
Parmenion and to-have-been-sent Polydamas one of-the
ἑταίρων, γράμματα φέροντα παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου πρὸς τοὺς
companions letters carrying from Alexander to the
στρατηγοὺς τοὺς ἐν Μηδίᾳ, Κλέανδρόν τε καὶ Σιτάλκην
generals the in Media Cleander both and Sitalces
καὶ Μενίδαν· οὗτοι γὰρ ἐπὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς, ἧς Παρμενίων
and Menidas these for over the army which Parmenion
ἦρχε, τεταγμένοι ἦσαν·
commanded posted were
καὶ πρὸς τούτων ἀποθανεῖν Παρμενίωνα, τυχὸν μὲν ὅτι 26.4
and by these to-have-died Parmenion perhaps indeed because
οὐ πιστὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι Ἀλέξανδρος Φιλώτα ἐπιβουλεύοντος
not credible thought to-be Alexander Philotas plotting
μὴ ξυμμετασχεῖν Παρμενίωνα τῷ παιδὶ τοῦ βουλεύματος.
not to-have-shared Parmenion with-the son of-the plan
τυχὸν δὲ ὅτι, εἰ καὶ μὴ ξυμμετέσχε, σφαλερὸς ἤδη
perhaps and because if even not he-had-shared dangerous already

ἦν περιὼν Παρμενίων τοῦ παιδὸς αὐτοῦ ἀνῃρημένου, ἐν
was surviving Parmenion the son his having-been-killed in
τοσαύτῃ ὢν ἀξιώσει παρά τε αὐτῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ ἐς τὸ
so-great being esteem with both himself Alexander and with the
ἄλλο στράτευμα, μὴ ὅτι τὸ Μακεδονικόν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν
other army not only the Macedonian but also of-the
ἄλλων ξένων, ὧν πολλάκις καὶ ἐν μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ
other mercenaries whom often both in turn and contrary-to the
μέρος κατὰ πρόσταξιν τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου ξὺν χάριτι ἐξηγεῖτο.
turn by order the of-Alexander with favor he-led

27.1 λέγουσι δὲ καὶ Ἀμύνταν τὸν Ἀνδρομένους κατὰ τὸν
they-say and also Amyntas the (son)-of-Andromenes at the
αὐτὸν χρόνον ὑπαχθῆναι ἐς κρίσιν καὶ Πολέμωνα
same time to-have-been-brought to trial and Polemon
καὶ Ἄτταλον καὶ Σιμμίαν τοὺς Ἀμύντου ἀδελφούς, ὡς
and Attalus and Simmias the of-Amyntas brothers as
ξυμμετασχόντας καὶ αὐτοὺς τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς τῆς κατ᾽
having-shared also themselves of-the plot the against
Ἀλεξάνδρου κατὰ πίστιν τε καὶ ἑταιρίαν τὴν Φιλώτα.
Alexander from trust both and comradeship the of-Philotas

27.2 καὶ ἐδόκει πιστοτέρα ἡ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐς τὸ πλῆθος, ὅτι
and seemed more-credible the plot to the multitude because
Πολέμων, εἷς τῶν ἀδελφῶν τῶν Ἀμύντου, ξυλληφθέντος
Polemon one of-the brothers — of-Amyntas having-been-arrested
Φιλώτα ἔφυγεν ἐς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἀλλ᾽ Ἀμύντας γε ξὺν
Philotas fled to the enemy but Amyntas at-least with
τοῖς ἀδελφοῖς ὑπομείνας τὴν δίκην καὶ ἀπολογησάμενος
the brothers having-stood the trial and having-defended-himself
ἐν Μακεδόσι καρτερῶς ἀφίεται τῆς αἰτίας· καὶ εὐθὺς ὡς
among Macedonians strongly is-acquitted of-the charge and at-once as

ἀπέφυγεν ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἠξίωσεν ἐφεθῆναί οἱ ἐλθεῖν
he-was-acquitted in the assembly he-asked to-be-allowed to-him to-go
παρὰ τὸν ἀδελφὸν καὶ ἐπαναγαγεῖν αὐτὸν παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον·
to the brother and to-bring-back him to Alexander
καὶ οἱ Μακεδόνες ξυγχωροῦσιν. ὁ δὲ ἀπελθὼν αὐτῇ τῇ 27.3
and the Macedonians consent he and having-gone-away on-the-very the
ἡμέρᾳ τὸν Πολέμωνα ἐπανήγαγε· καὶ ταύτῃ πολὺ ἔτι μᾶλλον
day — Polemon brought-back and thereby much still more
ἢ πρόσθεν ἔξω αἰτίας ἐφάνη Ἀμύντας. ἀλλὰ ὀλίγον γὰρ
than before outside charge appeared Amyntas but a-little for
ὕστερον κώμην τινὰ πολιορκῶν τοξευθεὶς ἐκ τῆς
later village some besieging having-been-shot-by-an-arrow from the
πληγῆς ἐτελεύτησεν, ὥστε οὐδὲν πλέον αὐτῷ γίγνεται τὴν
wound he-died so-that nothing more to-him comes the
κρίσιν ἀποφυγόντι ὅτι μὴ ἀγαθῷ νομιζομένῳ ἀποθανεῖν.
trial having-escaped except — good being-considered to-die
Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, καταστήσας ἐπὶ τοὺς ἑταίρους ἱππάρχας 27.4
Alexander and having-appointed over the companions hipparchs
δύο, Ἡφαιστίωνά τε τὸν Ἀμύντορος καὶ Κλεῖτον τὸν
two Hephaestion both the (son)-of-Amyntor and Cleitus the
Δρωπίδου, καὶ δίχα διελὼν τὴν τάξιν τῶν ἑταίρων,
(son)-of-Dropides and in-two having-divided the unit of-the companions
ὅτι οὐδὲ φίλτατον ἂν ἠβούλετο ἕνα τοσούτων ἱππέων,
because not-even the-dearest — he-wished one so-many cavalry
ἄλλως τε καὶ τῶν κρατίστων τοῦ παντὸς ἱππικοῦ κατά
especially both also the best of-the whole cavalry by
τε ἀξίωσιν καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἀρετήν, ἐξηγεῖσθαι, ἀφικνεῖται
both rank and the other excellence to-lead he-arrives
ἐς τοὺς πάλαι μὲν Ἀριάσπας καλουμένους, ὕστερον δὲ
at the long-ago indeed Ariaspians called later and

Εὐεργέτας ἐπονομασθέντας, ὅτι Κύρῳ τῷ Καμβύσου
Benefactors named because with-Cyrus the (son)-of-Cambyses
ξυνεπελάβοντο τῆς ἐς Σκύθας ἐλάσεως.
they-helped in-the against Scythians expedition
27.5 καὶ τούτους Ἀλέξανδρος ὧν τε ἐς Κῦρον ὑπῆρξαν οἱ
and these Alexander for-what both toward Cyrus had-rendered the
πρόγονοι αὐτῶν τιμήσας καὶ αὐτοὺς καταμαθὼν ἄνδρας
ancestors of-them having-honored and themselves having-observed men
οὐ κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς ταύτῃ βαρβάρους πολιτεύοντας,
not like the other the there barbarians governing-themselves
ἀλλὰ τοῦ δικαίου ἴσα καὶ τοῖς κρατίστοις τῶν Ἑλλήνων
but of-the just equally also with-the best of-the Greeks
μεταποιουμένους, ἐλευθέρους τε ἀφῆκεν καὶ χώραν τῆς
laying-claim free both he-set and land of-the
ὁμόρου ὅσην αὐτοὶ σφίσιν ᾔτησαν, οὐ πολλὴν δὲ
neighboring as-much-as they-themselves for-themselves asked not much but
οὐδ' αὐτοὶ ᾔτησαν, προσέθηκεν. ἐνταῦθα θύσας
not-even they-themselves asked he-added there having-sacrificed
τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι Δημήτριον μὲν ἕνα τῶν σωματοφυλάκων
— to-Apollo Demetrius indeed one of-the bodyguards
ὑποπτεύσας μετασχεῖν Φιλώτᾳ τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς ξυνέλαβε·
having-suspected to-have-shared with-Philotas of-the plot he-arrested
σωματοφύλακα δὲ ἀντὶ Δημητρίου ἀπέδειξε Πτολεμαῖον
bodyguard and in-place-of Demetrius he-appointed Ptolemy
τὸν Λάγου.
the (son)-of-Lagus
28.1 ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος προῄει ὡς ἐπὶ Βάκτρα τε
these-things and having-accomplished he-advanced as toward Bactra both
καὶ Βῆσσον, Δράγγας τε καὶ Γαδρωσοὺς ἐν τῇ παρόδῳ
and Bessus Drangians both and Gadrosians on the march
παραστησάμενος. παρεστήσατο δὲ καὶ τοὺς Ἀραχώτας καὶ
having-won-over he-won-over and also the Arachotians and

σατράπην κατέστησεν ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς Μένωνα. ἐπῆλθε δὲ καὶ
satrap he-appointed over them Menon he-reached and also
τῶν Ἰνδῶν τοὺς προσχώρους Ἀραχώταις. ξύμπαντα δὲ
of-the Indians the neighbors to-Arachotians all and
ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη διὰ χιόνος τε πολλῆς καὶ ξὺν ἀπορίᾳ τῶν
these the peoples through snow both much and with lack of-the
ἐπιτηδείων καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ταλαιπωρίᾳ ἐπῆλθε.
provisions and of-the soldiers hardship he-went-through
μαθὼν δὲ τοὺς Ἀρείους αὖθις ἀφεστάναι, Σατιβαρζάνου 28.2
having-learned and the Arians again to-have-revolted Satibarzanes
ἐς τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν ἐμβαλόντος σὺν ἱππεῦσι δισχιλίοις,
into the country of-them having-invaded with horsemen two-thousand
οὓς παρὰ Βήσσου ἔλαβεν, ἀποστέλλει παρ᾽ αὐτοὺς
whom from Bessus he-had-received he-sends-off against them
Ἀρτάβαζόν τε τὸν Πέρσην καὶ Ἐριγύϊον καὶ Κάρανον
Artabazus both the Persian and Erigyius and Caranus
τῶν ἑταίρων. προσέταξε δὲ καὶ Φραταφέρνην τὸν τῶν
of-the companions he-ordered and also Phrataphernes the of-the
Παρθυαίων σατράπην ξυνεμβαλεῖν αὐτοῖς ἐς τοὺς Ἀρείους.
Parthyaeans satrap to-invade-with them into the Arians
καὶ γίγνεται μάχη τοῖς ἀμφὶ Ἐριγύϊον καὶ Κάρανον 28.3
and takes-place a-battle for-the around Erigyius and Caranus
πρὸς Σατιβαρζάνην καρτερά, οὐδὲ πρόσθεν οἱ βάρβαροι
against Satibarzanes fierce nor before the barbarians
ἐνέκλιναν πρὶν Σατιβαρζάνην ξυμπεσόντα Ἐριγυΐῳ πρὸς
gave-way until Satibarzanes having-engaged-with Erigyius by
Ἐριγυΐου πληγέντα δόρατι ἐς τὸ πρόσωπον ἀποθανεῖν.
Erigyius having-been-struck with-a-spear in the face died
τότε δὲ ἐγκλίναντες οἱ βάρβαροι προτροπάδην ἔφευγον.
then and having-given-way the barbarians headlong fled

28.4 ἐν τούτῳ δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς τὸν Καύκασον τὸ ὄρος
in this and Alexander toward — Caucasus the mountain
ἦγεν, ἵνα καὶ πόλιν ἔκτισε καὶ ὠνόμασεν Ἀλεξάνδρειαν·
led where also a-city he-founded and named Alexandria
καὶ θύσας ἐνταῦθα τοῖς θεοῖς ὅσοις νόμος αὐτῷ
and having-sacrificed there to-the gods to-whom custom for-him
ὑπερέβαλε τὸ ὄρος τὸν Καύκασον, σατράπην μὲν τῇ
crossed the mountain — Caucasus satrap indeed for-the
χώρᾳ ἐπιτάξας Προέξην, ἄνδρα Πέρσην, τῶν δὲ ἑταίρων
country having-appointed Proexes a-man Persian of-the and companions
Νειλόξενον τὸν Σατύρου ἐπίσκοπον ξὺν στρατιᾷ ἀπολιπών.
Niloxenus the (son)-of-Satyrus as-overseer with an-army having-left

28.5 τὸ δὲ ὄρος ὁ Καύκασος ὑψηλὸν μέν ἐστιν ὥσπερ τι ἄλλο
the and mountain — Caucasus high indeed is as any other
τῆς Ἀσίας, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος, ψιλὸν δὲ τὸ πολύ, αὐτοῦ
— of-Asia as says Aristobulus bare and the most of-it
τό γε ταύτῃ. μακρὸν γὰρ ὄρος παρατέταται ὁ Καύκασος,
the at-least there long for mountain stretches — Caucasus
ὥστε καὶ τὸν Ταῦρον τὸ ὄρος, ὃς δὴ τὴν Κιλικίαν τε
so-that even — Taurus the mountain which indeed — Cilicia both
καὶ Παμφυλίαν ἀπείργει, ἀπὸ τοῦ Καυκάσου εἶναι λέγουσι
and Pamphylia bounds from — Caucasus to-be they-say
καὶ ἄλλα ὄρη μεγάλα, ἀπὸ τοῦ Καυκάσου διακεκριμένα
and other mountains great from — Caucasus distinguished
ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ ἐπωνυμίᾳ κατὰ ἤθη τὰ ἑκάστων.
with-one and another name according-to customs the of-each

28.6 ἀλλὰ ἔν γε τούτῳ τῷ Καυκάσῳ οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὅτι μὴ
but in at-least this — Caucasus nothing else except —
τέρμινθοι πεφύκασι καὶ σίλφιον, ὡς λέγει Ἀριστόβουλος·
terebinths grow and silphium as says Aristobulus
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς ἐπῳκεῖτο πολλοῖς ἀνθρώποις καὶ πρόβατα
but even so it-was-inhabited by-many people and sheep

πολλὰ καὶ κτήνη ἐνέμοντο, ὅτι καὶ χαίρουσι τῷ σιλφίῳ
many and cattle grazed because also delight-in the silphium
τὰ πρόβατα, καὶ εἰ ἐκ πολλοῦ πρόβατον σιλφίου
the sheep and if from far a-sheep silphium
αἴσθοιτο, καὶ θεῖ ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸ καὶ τό τε ἄνθος ἐπινέμεται
should-perceive also runs to it and the both flower grazes-on
καὶ τὴν ῥίζαν ἀνορύττον καὶ ταύτην κατεσθίει.
and the root digging-up also this devours
ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐν Κυρήνῃ ὡς μακροτάτω ἀπελαύνουσι τὰς 28.7
for this in Cyrene as farthest they-drive-away the
ποίμνας τῶν χωρίων, ἵνα αὐτοῖς τὸ σίλφιον φύεται.
flocks from-the places where for-them the silphium grows
οἱ δὲ καὶ περιφράσσουσι τὸν χῶρον, τοῦ μηδὲ εἰ
the-others and also fence-around the place for-the not-even if
πελάσειεν αὐτῷ πρόβατα, δυνατὰ γενέσθαι εἴσω παρελθεῖν,
should-approach it sheep able to-be inside to-get
ὅτι πολλοῦ ἄξιον Κυρηναίοις τὸ σίλφιον.
because of-much worth for-Cyrenaeans the silphium
Βῆσσος δὲ ἔχων ἀμφ᾽ αὑτὸν Περσῶν τε τοὺς μετασχόντας 28.8
Bessus and having around himself of-Persians both the having-shared
αὐτῷ τῆς Δαρείου συλλήψεως καὶ αὐτῶν Βακτρίων ἐς
with-him — of-Darius arrest and of-the-very Bactrians about
ἑπτακισχιλίους καὶ Δάας τοὺς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Τανάϊδος
seven-thousand and Daae the on this-side of-the Tanais
ποταμοῦ ἐποικοῦντας ἔφθειρε τὴν ὑπὸ τῷ ὄρει τῷ
river dwelling ravaged the under the mountain —
Καυκάσῳ, ὡς ἐρημίᾳ τε τῆς χώρας τῆς ἐν μέσῳ
Caucasus so-as by-desolation both of-the country of-the in middle
αὐτοῦ τε καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ ἀπορίᾳ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων
of-himself both and of-Alexander and by-lack of-the provisions
ἀπείρξων Ἀλέξανδρον τοῦ μὴ ἐλαύνειν πρόσω.
about-to-hinder Alexander from-the not to-march forward

28.9 ἀλλὰ Ἀλέξανδρος ἤλαυνεν οὐδὲν μεῖον, χαλεπῶς μὲν διά
but Alexander marched nothing less with-difficulty indeed through
τε χιόνος πολλῆς καὶ ἐνδείᾳ τῶν ἀναγκαίων, ἦει δὲ
both snow much and from-lack of-the necessities he-went but
ὅμως. Βῆσσος δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐξηγγέλλετο αὐτῷ οὐ πόρρω ἤδη
nevertheless Bessus and when it-was-reported to-him not far already
ὢν Ἀλέξανδρος, διαβὰς τὸν Ὦξον ποταμὸν τὰ μὲν
being Alexander having-crossed the Oxus river the indeed
πλοῖα ἐφ᾽ ὧν διέβη κατέκαυσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐς Ναύτακα
boats on which he-crossed burned himself and to Nautaca
τῆς Σογδιανῆς χώρας ἀπεχώρει.
of-the Sogdian country withdrew

28.10 εἵποντο δὲ αὐτῷ οἵ τε ἀμφὶ Σπιταμένην καὶ Ὀξυάρτην,
followed and him the both around Spitamenes and Oxyartes
ἔχοντες τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Σογδιανῆς ἱππέας, καὶ Δάαι οἱ ἀπὸ τοῦ
having the from — Sogdiana cavalry and Daae the from —
Τανάϊδος. οἱ δὲ τῶν Βακτρίων ἱππεῖς ὡς φεύγειν ἐγνωκότα
Tanais the and of-the Bactrian cavalry when to-flee having-resolved
ἔμαθον Βῆσσον, ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἐπὶ τὰ σφῶν ἕκαστοι
they-learned Bessus one another-way to the their-own each
ἀπηλλάγησαν. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐς Δράψακα ἀφικόμενος καὶ
departed Alexander and to Drapsaca having-arrived and
ἀναπαύσας τὴν στρατιὰν ἐς Ἄορνόν τε ἦγε καὶ Βάκτρα,
having-rested the army to Aornus both he-led and Bactra
αἵ δὴ μέγισταί εἰσι πόλεις ἐν τῇ Βακτρίων χώρᾳ.
which indeed greatest are cities in the of-Bactrians country

Alexander takes Bactra and Aornus and crosses the Oxus on skin floats. Spitamenes and Dataphernes offer to hand over Bessus, and when they waver Ptolemy rides ahead and takes him in a village. On Alexander's orders he is set naked in a collar by the road, questioned, scourged, and sent to Bactra to die. Aristobulus says Spitamenes' and Dataphernes' men brought him to Ptolemy. Alexander remounts his cavalry and reaches the Tanais, which Arrian distinguishes from the Tanais of Herodotus. Natives kill some foragers, and Alexander, shot through the leg, storms their mountain; of thirty thousand, eight thousand survive.

καὶ ταύτας τε ἐξ ἐφόδου ἔλαβε καὶ φυλακὴν ἐν τῇ 29.1
and these both at first-assault he-took and a-garrison in the
ἄκρᾳ τῆς Ἀόρνου ἀπέλιπε καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτης Ἀρχέλαον τὸν
citadel — of-Aornus he-left and over this Archelaus the
Ἀνδρόκλου τῶν ἑταίρων· τοῖς δὲ ἄλλοις Βακτρίοις οὐ
(son)-of-Androcles of-the companions over-the and other Bactrians not
χαλεπῶς προσχωρήσασιν ἐπέταξε σατράπην Ἀρτάβαζον
with-difficulty having-come-over he-set satrap Artabazus
τὸν Πέρσην. αὐτὸς δὲ ἦγεν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ὄξον ποταμόν.
the Persian he-himself and led as toward the Oxus river
ὁ δὲ Ὄξος ῥέει μὲν ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους τοῦ Καυκάσου, ἔστι 29.2
— and Oxus flows indeed from the mountain — Caucasus is
δὲ ποταμῶν μέγιστος τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, ὅσους γε δὴ
and of-rivers greatest of-the in — Asia as-many-as at-least indeed
Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ οἱ ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐπῆλθον, πλὴν τῶν Ἰνδῶν
Alexander and the with Alexander reached except the Indian
ποταμῶν· οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ πάντων ποταμῶν μέγιστοί εἰσιν. ἐξίησι
rivers the and Indian of-all rivers greatest are issues
δὲ ὁ Ὄξος ἐς τὴν μεγάλην θάλασσαν τὴν κατὰ Ὑρκανίαν.
and — Oxus into the great sea the by Hyrcania

29.3 διαβάλλειν δὲ ἐπιχειροῦντι αὐτῷ τὸν ποταμὸν πάντῃ
to-cross and attempting for-him the river on-every-side
ἄπορον ἐφαίνετο· τὸ μὲν γὰρ εὖρος ἦν ἐς ἓξ μάλιστα
impossible it-appeared the indeed for breadth was about six roughly
σταδίους, βάθος δὲ οὐ πρὸς λόγον τοῦ εὔρους, ἀλλὰ
stades depth and not in proportion to-the breadth but
πολὺ δή τι βαθύτερος καὶ ψαμμώδης καὶ ῥεῦμα
much indeed somewhat deeper and sandy and in-current
ὀξύς, ὡς τὰ καταπηγνύμενα πρὸς αὐτοῦ τοῦ ῥοῦ
swift so-that the things-fixed-down by itself the current
ἐκστρέφεσθαι ἐκ τῆς γῆς οὐ χαλεπῶς, οἷα δὴ οὐδὲ
to-be-wrenched-out from the ground not with-difficulty as indeed not-even
βεβαίως κατὰ τῆς ψάμμου ἱδρυμένα.
firmly in the sand set

29.4 ἄλλως τε καὶ ἀπορία ὕλης ἐν τοῖς πόνοις ἦν καὶ τριβὴ
especially both also lack of-timber in the works was and delay
πολλὴ ἐφαίνετο, εἰ μακρόθεν μετίοιεν ὅσα ἐς γεφύρωσιν
great appeared if from-afar they-should-fetch as-much-as for bridging
τοῦ πόρου. ξυναγαγὼν οὖν τὰς διφθέρας, ὑφ' αἷς ἐσκήνουν
of-the crossing having-collected then the hides under which camped
οἱ στρατιῶται, φορυτοῦ ἐμπλῆσαι ἐκέλευσεν ὡς ξηροτάτου
the soldiers with-chaff to-fill he-ordered as driest
καὶ καταδῆσαί τε καὶ ξυρράψαι ἀκριβῶς, τοῦ μὴ ἐσδύεσθαι
and to-tie-down both and to-sew-up tightly for-the not to-seep
ἐς αὐτὰς τοῦ ὕδατος. ἐμπλησθεῖσαι δὲ καὶ ξυρραφεῖσαι
into them of-the water having-been-filled and and having-been-sewn-up
ἱκαναὶ ἐγένοντο διαβιβάσαι τὴν στρατιὰν ἐν πέντε ἡμέραις.
sufficient they-were to-carry-across the army in five days

29.5 πρὶν δὲ διαβαίνειν τὸν ποταμὸν τῶν τε Μακεδόνων
before and to-cross the river of-the both Macedonians
ἐπιλέξας τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους καὶ ἤδη ἀπολέμους καὶ
having-selected the oldest and already unfit-for-war and

τῶν Θεσσαλῶν τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς καταμείναντας ἐπ᾽ οἴκου
of-the Thessalians the volunteers having-stayed-on to home
ἀπέστειλεν. ἐκπέμπει δὲ καὶ Στασάνορα, ἕνα τῶν ἑταίρων,
he-sent-off he-sends-out and also Stasanor one of-the companions
ἐς Ἀρείους, προστάξας Ἀρσάκην μὲν τὸν σατράπην τῶν
to Arians having-ordered Arsaces indeed the satrap of-the
Ἀρείων ξυλλαβεῖν, ὅτι ἐθελοκακεῖν αὐτῷ Ἀρσάκης ἔδοξεν,
Arians to-arrest because to-play-the-traitor to-him Arsaces seemed
αὐτὸν δὲ σατράπην εἶναι ἀντ᾽ ἐκείνου Ἀρείων.
himself and satrap to-be in-place-of him of-Arians
περάσας δὲ τὸν Ὄξον ποταμὸν ἦγε κατὰ σπουδήν, ἵνα 29.6
having-crossed and the Oxus river he-led with haste where
Βῆσσον εἶναι ξὺν τῇ δυνάμει ἐπυνθάνετο. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ
Bessus to-be with the force he-learned and in this
ἀφικνοῦνται παρὰ Σπιταμένους καὶ Δαταφέρνου πρὸς αὐτὸν
arrive from Spitamenes and Dataphernes to him
ἀγγέλλοντες, ὅτι Σπιταμένης καὶ Δαταφέρνης, εἰ πεμφθείη
reporting that Spitamenes and Dataphernes if should-be-sent
αὐτοῖς καὶ ὀλίγη στρατιὰ καὶ ἡγεμὼν τῇ στρατιᾷ,
to-them even a-small army and a-commander for-the army
ξυλλήψονται Βῆσσον καὶ παραδώσουσιν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ· ἐπεὶ
will-arrest Bessus and will-hand-over to-Alexander since
καὶ ἀδέσμῳ φυλακῇ φυλάσσεσθαι πρὸς αὐτῶν Βῆσσον.
even in-unfettered custody to-be-guarded by them Bessus
ταῦτα ὡς ἤκουσεν Ἀλέξανδρος, αὐτὸς μὲν ἀναπαύων 29.7
these-things when heard Alexander himself indeed resting
ἦγε τὴν στρατιὰν σχολαίτερον ἢ πρόσθεν, Πτολεμαῖον
led the army more-leisurely than before Ptolemy
δὲ τὸν Λάγου ἀποστέλλει τῶν τε ἑταίρων ἱππαρχίας
and the (son)-of-Lagus he-sends-off of-the both companions hipparchies
τρεῖς ἄγοντα καὶ τοὺς ἱππακοντιστὰς ξύμπαντας, πεζῶν
three leading and the mounted-javelin-men all of-infantry

δὲ τήν τε Φιλώτα τάξιν καὶ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν χιλιαρχίαν
and the both of-Philotas battalion and of-the shield-bearers chiliarchy
μίαν καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας πάντας καὶ τῶν τοξοτῶν τοὺς
one and the Agrianians all and of-the archers the
ἡμίσεας, σπουδῇ ἐλαύνειν κελεύσας ὡς Σπιταμένην τε
half in-haste to-march having-ordered as to-Spitamenes both
καὶ Δαταφέρνην. καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ᾖει ὡς ἐτέτακτο, καὶ
and Dataphernes and Ptolemy went as had-been-ordered and
διελθὼν ἐν ἡμέραις τέτταρσι σταθμοὺς δέκα ἀφικνεῖται
having-gone in days four stages ten arrives
ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον, οὗ τῇ προτεραίᾳ ηὐλισμένοι ἦσαν
at the camp where on-the day-before bivouacked had
οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Σπιταμένην βάρβαροι.
the around — Spitamenes barbarians

30.1 ἐνταῦθα ἔμαθε Πτολεμαῖος ὅτι οὐ βεβαία τῷ Σπιταμένει καὶ
there learned Ptolemy that not firm — for-Spitamenes and
Δαταφέρνῃ ἡ γνώμη ἐστὶν ἀμφὶ τῇ παραδόσει τοῦ Βήσσου.
Dataphernes the resolve is about the handing-over — of-Bessus
τοὺς μὲν δὴ πεζοὺς κατέλιπε, προστάξας ἕπεσθαι ἐν
the indeed indeed infantry he-left having-ordered to-follow in
τάξει, αὐτὸς δὲ ξὺν τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν ἐλάσας ἀφίκετο πρὸς
order he-himself and with the cavalry having-ridden arrived at
κώμην τινά, ἵνα ὁ Βῆσσος ἦν ξὺν ὀλίγοις στρατιώταις.
village some where — Bessus was with few soldiers

30.2 οἱ γὰρ ἀμφὶ τὸν Σπιταμένην μετακεχωρήκεσαν ἤδη
the for around — Spitamenes had-moved-off already
ἐκεῖθεν, καταιδεσθέντες αὐτοὶ παραδοῦναι τὸν Βῆσσον.
thence ashamed themselves to-hand-over — Bessus
Πτολεμαῖος δὲ περιστήσας ἐν κύκλῳ τῆς κώμης τοὺς
Ptolemy and having-posted in circle of-the village the
ἱππέας (ἦν γάρ τι καὶ τεῖχος περιβεβλημένον καὶ πύλαι
cavalry was for some also a-wall thrown-around and gates

κατ᾽ αὐτό) ἐπεκηρυκεύετο τοῖς ἐν τῇ κώμῃ βαρβάροις
in it he-made-proclamation to-the in the village barbarians
ἀπαθεῖς σφᾶς ἀπαλλάσσεσθαι παραδόντας Βῆσσον. οἱ
unharmed them to-depart having-handed-over Bessus they
δὲ ἐδέχοντο τοὺς ξὺν Πτολεμαίῳ ἐς τὴν κώμην.
and admitted the with Ptolemy into the village
καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ξυλλαβὼν Βῆσσον ὀπίσω ἐπανῄει. 30.3
and Ptolemy having-arrested Bessus back returned
προπέμψας δὲ ἤρετο Ἀλέξανδρον, ὅπως χρὴ ἐς
having-sent-ahead and he-asked Alexander how it-is-necessary into
ὄψιν ἄγειν Ἀλεξάνδρου Βῆσσον. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος γυμνὸν ἐν
sight to-bring of-Alexander Bessus and Alexander naked in
κλοιῷ δήσαντα οὕτως ἄγειν ἐκέλευσε καὶ καταστήσαντα
a-collar having-bound so to-bring ordered and having-set-him
ἐν δεξιᾷ τῆς ὁδοῦ, ᾗ αὐτός τε καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ
on right of-the road by-which himself both and the army
παρελεύσεσθαι ἔμελλε. καὶ Πτολεμαῖος οὕτως ἐποίησεν.
to-pass-by was-about and Ptolemy so did
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἰδὼν τὸν Βῆσσον ἐπιστήσας τὸ ἅρμα 30.4
Alexander and having-seen — Bessus having-stopped the chariot
ἤρετο ἀνθ᾽ ὅτου τὸν βασιλέα τὸν αὑτοῦ καὶ ἅμα
asked for what the king the his-own and at-the-same-time
καὶ οἰκεῖον καὶ εὐεργέτην γενόμενον Δαρεῖον τὰ μὲν
both kinsman and benefactor having-been Darius the indeed
πρῶτα ξυνέλαβε καὶ δήσας ἦγεν, ἔπειτα ἀπέκτεινε.
first he-arrested and having-bound led then killed
καὶ ὁ Βῆσσος οὐ μόνῳ οἱ ταῦτα δόξαντα
and — Bessus not alone to-himself these-things having-seemed-good
πρᾶξαι ἔφη, ἀλλὰ ξὺν τοῖς τότε ἀμφὶ Δαρεῖον οὖσιν, ὡς
to-do said but with the then around Darius being as
σωτηρίαν σφίσιν εὑρέσθαι παρ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου.
safety for-themselves to-find from Alexander

30.5 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐπὶ τοῖσδε μαστιγοῦν ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν
Alexander and for these to-scourge ordered him
καὶ ἐπιλέγειν τὸν κήρυκα ταὐτὰ ἐκεῖνα ὅσα αὐτὸς τῷ
and to-proclaim the herald the-same those-things which he-himself —
Βήσσῳ ἐν τῇ πύστει ὠνείδισε. Βῆσσος μὲν δὴ οὕτως
Bessus in the questioning reproached Bessus indeed indeed so
αἰκισθεὶς ἀποπέμπεται ἐς Βάκτρα ἀποθανούμενος. καὶ
maltreated is-sent-off to Bactra about-to-die and
ταῦτα Πτολεμαῖος ὑπὲρ Βήσσου ἀνέγραψεν· Ἀριστόβουλος
these-things Ptolemy about Bessus recorded Aristobulus
δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Σπιταμένην τε καὶ Δαταφέρνην Πτολεμαίῳ
and the around Spitamenes both and Dataphernes to-Ptolemy
ἀγαγεῖν Βῆσσον καὶ παραδοῦναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ γυμνὸν
to-have-brought Bessus and to-have-handed-over to-Alexander naked
ἐν κλοιῷ δήσαντας.
in a-collar having-bound

30.6 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἀναπληρώσας τὸ ἱππικὸν ἐκ τῶν αὐτόθεν
Alexander and having-filled-up the cavalry from the local
ἵππων πολλοὶ γὰρ αὐτῷ ἵπποι ἔν τε τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ
horses many for for-him horses in both the crossing —
Καυκάσου καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐπὶ τὸν Ὄξον τε καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ
of-Caucasus and in the to — Oxus both and from —
Ὄξου πορείᾳ ἐξέλιπον ὡς ἐπὶ Μαράκανδα ἦγε· τὰ δέ
Oxus march had-failed as toward Maracanda led which and
ἐστι βασίλεια τῆς Σογδιανῶν χώρας. ἔνθεν δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν
is palace of-the of-Sogdians country thence and toward the
Τάναϊν ποταμὸν προῄει.
Tanais river he-advanced

30.7 τῷ δὲ Τανάϊδι τούτῳ, ὃν δὴ καὶ Ὀρξάντην ἄλλῳ
— and for-Tanais this which indeed also Orxantes by-another
ὀνόματι πρὸς τῶν ἐπιχωρίων βαρβάρων καλεῖσθαι λέγει
name by the native barbarians to-be-called says

Ἀριστόβουλος, αἱ πηγαὶ μὲν ἐκ τοῦ Καυκάσου ὄρους
Aristobulus the springs indeed from — Caucasus mountain
καὶ αὐτῷ εἰσιν· ἐξίησι δὲ καὶ οὗτος ὁ ποταμὸς εἰς τὴν
also for-it are issues and also this the river into the
Ὑρκανίαν θάλασσαν.
Hyrcanian sea
ἄλλος δὲ ἂν εἴη Τάναϊς ὑπὲρ ὅτου λέγει Ἡρόδοτος ὁ 30.8
another and — would-be Tanais about which says Herodotus the
λογοποιὸς ὄγδοον εἶναι τῶν ποταμῶν τῶν Σκυθικῶν Τάναϊν,
chronicler eighth to-be of-the rivers the Scythian Tanais
καὶ ῥέειν μὲν ἐκ λίμνης μεγάλης ἀνίσχοντα, ἐκδιδόναι δὲ ἐς
and to-flow indeed from a-lake great rising to-discharge and into
μείζω ἔτι λίμνην, τὴν καλουμένην Μαιῶτιν· καὶ τὸν Τάναϊν
greater still lake the called Maeotis and — Tanais
τοῦτον εἰσὶν οἳ ὅρον ποιοῦσι τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ τῆς Εὐρώπης,
this there-are who boundary make — of-Asia and — of-Europe
οἷς δὴ ἀπὸ τοῦ μυχοῦ τοῦ πόντου τοῦ Εὐξείνου ἡ 30.9
to-whom indeed from the recess of-the sea the Euxine the
λίμνη τε ἡ Μαιῶτις καὶ ὁ ἐς ταύτην ἐξιεὶς ποταμὸς
lake both — Maeotis and the into this issuing river
ὁ Τάναις οὗτος διείργει τὴν Ἀσίαν καὶ τὴν Εὐρώπην,
— Tanais this divides — Asia and — Europe
καθάπερ ἡ κατὰ Γάδειρά τε καὶ τοὺς ἀντιπέρας Γαδείρων
just-as the at Gadeira both and the opposite Gadeira
Λίβυας τοὺς Νομάδας· θάλασσα τὴν Λιβύην αὖ καὶ τὴν
Libyans the Nomads sea — Libya again and —
Εὐρώπην διείργει, οἷς γε δὴ ἡ Λιβύη ἀπὸ τῆς
Europe divides to-whom at-least indeed — Libya from —
Ἀσίας τῆς ἄλλης τῷ Νείλῳ ποταμῷ διακέκριται.
Asia the other by-the Nile river has-been-divided

30.10 ἐνταῦθα ἀποσκεδασθέντες τινὲς τῶν Μακεδόνων ἐς
there having-scattered some of-the Macedonians for
προνομὴν κατακόπτονται πρὸς τῶν βαρβάρων οἱ δὲ
foraging are-cut-down by the barbarians the and
δράσαντες τὸ ἔργον ἀπέφυγον ἐς ὄρος τραχύτατον καὶ
having-done the deed fled to a-mountain most-rugged and
πάντῃ ἀπότομον· ἦσαν δὲ τὸ πλῆθος ἐς τρισμυρίους.
on-every-side sheer were and the number about thirty-thousand
καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους Ἀλέξανδρος τοὺς κουφοτάτους τῆς
and against these Alexander the lightest of-the
στρατιᾶς ἀναλαβὼν ἦγεν.
army having-taken led

30.11 ἔνθα δὴ προσβολαὶ πολλαὶ ἐγίγνοντο τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ἐς
there indeed assaults many took-place for-the Macedonians on
τὸ ὄρος· καὶ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἀπεκρούοντο βαλλόμενοι ἐκ
the mountain and the indeed first they-were-beaten-back being-shot by
τῶν βαρβάρων, καὶ ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ τραυματίαι ἐγένοντο
the barbarians and others both many wounded were
καὶ αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς τὴν κνήμην τοξεύεται διαμπὰξ
and himself Alexander in the shin is-shot right-through
καὶ τῆς περόνης τι ἀποθραύεται αὐτῷ ἐκ τοῦ τοξεύματος.
and of-the fibula some is-broken-off for-him by the arrow
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὣς ἔλαβέ τε τὸ χωρίον, καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων οἱ
but even so he-took both the place and of-the barbarians the-ones
μὲν αὐτοῦ κατεκόπησαν πρὸς τῶν Μακεδόνων, πολλοὶ δὲ
indeed there were-cut-down by the Macedonians many and
καὶ κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν ῥίψαντες σφᾶς ἀπέθανον, ὥστε
also down the rocks having-thrown themselves died so-that
ἐκ τρισμυρίων οὐ πλείους ἀποσωθῆναι ὀκτακισχιλίων.
from thirty-thousand not more to-have-got-safe than-eight-thousand

BOOK IV

I · THE REVOLT OF SOGDIANA

Envoys come from the Abian Scythians, praised by Homer as the justest of men, and from the European Scythians, and Alexander sends companions back with them as spies. He plans a city on the Tanais, but the barbarians by the river kill his garrisons, and the Sogdians and some Bactrians join the revolt. He takes five towns in two days. Cyropolis, the strongest, he enters by a dry watercourse, and he is badly struck by a stone. The seventh town is taken, and meanwhile a Scythian army gathers on the river and Spitamenes besieges Maracanda, against whom Alexander sends Andromachus, Menedemus, and Caranus, with Pharnuches the interpreter in command.

οὐ πολλαῖς δὲ ἡμέραις ὕστερον ἀφικνοῦνται παρ' 1.1
not many and days later arrive to
Ἀλέξανδρον πρέσβεις παρά τε Σκυθῶν τῶν Ἀβίων
Alexander envoys from both Scythians the Abii
καλουμένων, οὓς καὶ Ὅμηρος δικαιοτάτους ἀνθρώπους
called whom also Homer most-just men
εἰπὼν ἐν τῇ ποιήσει ἐπῄνεσεν· οἰκοῦσι δὲ ἐν τῇ
having-called in the poetry praised dwell and in —
Ἀσίᾳ οὗτοι αὐτόνομοι, οὐχ ἥκιστα διὰ πενίαν τε καὶ
Asia these independent not least because-of poverty both and
δικαιότητα καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἐκ τῆς Εὐρώπης Σκυθῶν, οἳ
justice and from the from — Europe Scythians who
δὴ τὸ μέγιστον ἔθνος ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἐποικοῦσιν.
indeed the greatest nation in — Europe inhabit
καὶ τούτοις ξυμπέμπει Ἀλέξανδρος τῶν ἑταίρων, πρόφασιν 1.2
and with-these sends-with Alexander of-the companions pretext
μὲν κατὰ πρεσβείαν φιλίαν ξυνθησομένους, ὁ δὲ νοῦς τῆς
indeed by embassy friendship about-to-conclude the but intent of-the

πομπῆς ἐς κατασκοπήν τι μᾶλλον ἔφερε φύσεώς τε
mission to reconnaissance somewhat rather tended of-nature both
τῆς χώρας τῆς Σκυθικῆς καὶ πλήθους αὐτῶν καὶ νομαίων
of-the country the Scythian and of-number of-them and of-customs
καὶ ὁπλίσεως, ἥντινα ἔχοντες στέλλονται ἐς τὰς μάχας.
and of-armament which having they-set-out to the battles
1.3 αὐτὸς δὲ πρὸς τῷ Τανάϊδι ποταμῷ ἐπενόει πόλιν οἰκίσαι,
he-himself and by the Tanais river intended a-city to-found
καὶ ταύτην ἑαυτοῦ ἐπώνυμον. ὅ τε γὰρ χῶρος ἐπιτήδειος
and this of-himself named-after the both for place suitable
αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο αὐξῆσαι ἐπὶ μέγα τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἐν καλῷ
to-him appeared to-increase to great the city and in a-good-position
οἰκισθήσεσθαι τῆς ἐπὶ Σκύθας, εἴποτε ξυμβαίνοι,
to-be-going-to-be-founded for-the toward Scythians if-ever it-should-come-about
ἐλάσεως καὶ τῆς προφυλακῆς τῆς χώρας πρὸς τὰς
expedition and for-the guarding of-the country against the
καταδρομὰς τῶν πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐποικούντων βαρβάρων.
raids of-the beyond the river dwelling barbarians
1.4 ἐδόκει δ᾽ ἂν καὶ μεγάλη γενέσθαι ἡ πόλις πλήθει τε
it-seemed and — also great to-become the city by-number both
τῶν ἐς αὐτὴν ξυνοικιζομένων καὶ τοῦ ὀνόματος τῇ
of-the into it being-settled and of-the name by-the
λαμπρότητι. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οἱ πρόσχωροι τῷ ποταμῷ
splendor and in this the neighbors to-the river
βάρβαροι τούς τε τὰ φρούρια ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι σφῶν ἔχοντας
barbarians the both the forts in the cities their holding
στρατιώτας τῶν Μακεδόνων ξυλλαβόντες ἀπέκτειναν καὶ
soldiers of-the Macedonians having-seized killed and
τὰς πόλεις ἐς ἀσφάλειάν τινα μᾶλλον ὠχύρουν.
the cities for security some rather fortified

ξυνεπελάβοντο δὲ αὐτοῖς τῆς ἀποστάσεως καὶ τῶν 1.5
joined and them in-the revolt also of-the
Σογδιανῶν οἱ πολλοί, ἐπαρθέντες πρὸς τῶν ξυλλαβόντων
Sogdians the many incited by the having-arrested
Βῆσσον, ὥστε καὶ τῶν Βακτριανῶν ἔστιν οὓς σφισιν
Bessus so-that also of-the Bactrians there-are whom with-them
οὗτοι ξυναπέστησαν, εἴτε δὴ καὶ δείσαντες Ἀλέξανδρον,
these drew-into-revolt whether indeed also having-feared Alexander
εἴτε καὶ λόγον ἐπὶ τῇ ἀποστάσει διδόντες, ὅτι ἐς ἕνα
or also reason for the revolt giving that to one
ξύλλογον ἐπηγγέλκει Ἀλέξανδρος ξυνελθεῖν τοὺς ὑπάρχους
assembly had-proclaimed Alexander to-come-together the hyparchs
τῆς χώρας ἐκείνης εἰς Ζαρίασπα, τὴν μεγίστην πόλιν,
of-the country that to Zariaspa the greatest city
ὡς ἐπ᾽ ἀγαθῷ οὐδενὶ τοῦ ξυλλόγου γιγνομένου.
as for good no the assembly being-held
ταῦτα ὡς ἀπηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, παραγγείλας τοῖς 2.1
these-things when were-reported to-Alexander having-ordered the
πεζοῖς κατὰ λόχους κλίμακας ποιεῖσθαι ὅσαι ἑκάστῳ
infantry by companies ladders to-make as-many-as to-each
λόχῳ ἐπηγγέλθησαν, αὐτὸς μὲν ἐπὶ τὴν πρώτην ἀπὸ
company were-assigned himself indeed against the first from
τοῦ στρατοπέδου ὁρμηθέντι πόλιν προὐχώρει, ᾗ
the camp for-one-setting-out city advanced to-which
ὄνομα ἦν Γάζα· ἐς γὰρ ἑπτὰ πόλεις ξυμπεφευγέναι
name was Gaza to for seven cities to-have-fled-together
ἐλέγοντο οἱ ἐκ τῆς χώρας βάρβαροι·
were-said the from the country barbarians
Κρατερὸν δὲ ἐκπέμπει πρὸς τὴν καλουμένην Κυρούπολιν, 2.2
Craterus and he-sends-out to the called Cyropolis
ἥπερ μεγίστη πασῶν καὶ ἐς αὐτὴν οἱ πλεῖστοι
which greatest of-all and into it the most

ξυνειλεγμένοι ἦσαν τῶν βαρβάρων. παρήγγελτο δὲ αὐτῷ
having-gathered were of-the barbarians it-had-been-ordered and to-him
στρατοπεδεῦσαι πλησίον τῆς πόλεως καὶ τάφρον τε ἐν
to-encamp near the city and a-ditch both in
κύκλῳ αὐτῆς ὀρύξαι καὶ χάρακα περιβαλέσθαι καὶ τὰς
circle of-it to-dig and a-palisade to-throw-around and the
μηχανὰς ὅσαις χρῆσθαι ξυμπηγνύναι, ὡς πρὸς τοὺς
engines as-many-as to-use to-fix-together so-that toward the
ἀμφὶ Κρατερὸν τὴν γνώμην τετραμμένοι οἱ ἐκ τῆς πόλεως
around Craterus the attention turned the from the city
ταύτης ἀδύνατοι ὦσι ταῖς ἄλλαις πόλεσιν ἐπωφελεῖν.
this unable may-be the other cities to-help

2.3 αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ τὴν Γάζαν ἐπεὶ ἀφίκετο, ὡς εἶχεν ἐξ ἐφόδου
he-himself and to — Gaza when he-arrived as he-was at the-first-assault
σημαίνει προσβάλλειν τῷ τείχει γηΐνῳ τε καὶ οὐχ ὑψηλῷ
signals to-attack the wall earthen both and not high
ὄντι, προσθέντας ἐν κύκλῳ πάντοθεν τὰς κλίμακας· οἱ δὲ
being having-set in circle on-all-sides the ladders the and
σφενδονῆται αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ τοξόται τε καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ ὁμοῦ
slingers for-him and the archers both and javelin-men together-with
τῇ ἐφόδῳ τῶν πεζῶν ἐσηκόντιζον ἐς τοὺς προμαχομένους
the attack of-the infantry hurled at the defenders
ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους καὶ βέλη ἀπὸ μηχανῶν ἠφίετο, ὥστε ὀξέως
from the wall and missiles from engines were-shot so-that quickly
μὲν ὑπὸ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν βελῶν ἐγυμνώθη τὸ τεῖχος τῶν
indeed by the multitude of-the missiles was-stripped the wall of-the
προμαχομένων, ταχεῖα δὲ ἡ πρόσθεσις τῶν κλιμάκων καὶ
defenders swift and the setting-up of-the ladders and
ἡ ἀνάβασις τῶν Μακεδόνων ἡ ἐπὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἐγίγνετο.
the ascent of-the Macedonians the onto the wall took-place

τοὺς μὲν δὴ ἄνδρας πάντας ἀπέκτειναν, οὕτως ἐξ 2.4
the indeed indeed men all they-killed so by
Ἀλεξάνδρου προστεταγμένον, γυναῖκας δὲ καὶ παῖδας καὶ
Alexander it-having-been-ordered women and and children and
τὴν ἄλλην λείαν διήρπασαν. ἔνθεν δὲ εὐθὺς ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὴν
the other booty they-plundered thence and at-once he-led against the
δευτέραν ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνης πόλιν ᾠκισμένην, καὶ ταύτην τῷ
second from that city situated and this in-the
αὐτῷ τε τρόπῳ καὶ τῇ αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ λαμβάνει καὶ τοὺς
same both manner and on-the same day takes and the
ἁλόντας τὰ αὐτὰ ἔπραξεν. ὁ δὲ ἦγεν ἐπὶ τρίτην πόλιν,
captured the same-things he-did he and led against a-third city
καὶ ταύτην τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπὶ τῇ πρώτῃ προσβολῇ εἷλεν.
and this on-the next-day at the first assault took
ἐν ᾧ δὲ αὐτὸς ξὺν τοῖς πεζοῖς ἀμφὶ ταῦτα εἶχε, τοὺς 2.5
in which and he-himself with the infantry about these-things was-occupied the
ἱππέας ἐκπέμπει ἐς τὰς δύο τὰς πλησίον πόλεις προστάξας
cavalry he-sends-out to the two the nearby cities having-ordered
παραφυλάττειν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τοὺς ἔνδον, μήποτε τὴν
to-watch the people the inside lest the
ἅλωσιν αἰσθόμενοι τῶν πλησίον πόλεων καὶ ἅμα τὴν
capture having-perceived of-the nearby cities and at-the-same-time the
αὐτοῦ οὐ διὰ μακροῦ ἔφοδον οἱ δὲ ἐς φυγὴν τραπέντες
his not after long approach they and into flight turned
ἄποροι αὐτῷ διώκειν γένωνται. καὶ ξυνέβη τε οὕτως ὅπως
impossible for-him to-pursue should-be and it-happened both so as
εἴκασε, καὶ ἐν δέοντι ἐγένετο αὐτῷ ἡ πομπὴ τῶν ἱππέων.
he-conjectured and in (good)-time was for-him the sending of-the cavalry
οἱ γὰρ τὰς δύο τὰς οὔπω ἑαλωκυίας πόλεις ἔχοντες τῶν 2.6
the for the two the not-yet captured cities holding of-the
βαρβάρων, ὡς καπνόν τε εἶδον ἀπὸ τῆς πρὸ σφῶν
barbarians when smoke both they-saw from the before them

πόλεως ἐμπιπραμένης καί τινες καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ πάθους
city burning and some also from the calamity
αὐτοῦ διαφυγόντες αὐτάγγελοι τῆς ἁλώσεως ἐγένοντο, ὡς
itself having-escaped self-reporters of-the capture became as
τάχους ἕκαστοι εἶχον ἀθρόοι ἐκ τῶν πόλεων φεύγοντες
of-speed each had in-crowds from the cities fleeing
ἐμπίπτουσιν ἐς τὸ στῖφος τῶν ἱππέων ξυντεταγμένον καὶ
fall into the mass of-the cavalry drawn-up and
κατεκόπησαν οἱ πλεῖστοι αὐτῶν.
were-cut-down the most of-them

3.1 οὕτω δὴ τὰς πέντε πόλεις ἐν δυσὶν ἡμέραις ἑλών τε
so indeed the five cities in two days having-taken both
καὶ ἐξανδραποδισάμενος ἦει ἐπὶ τὴν μεγίστην αὐτῶν τὴν
and having-enslaved he-went against the greatest of-them the
Κύρου πόλιν. ἡ δὲ τετειχισμένη τε ἦν ὑψηλοτέρῳ τείχει
of-Cyrus city it and fortified both was with-higher wall
ἤπερ αἱ ἄλλαι, οἷα δὴ ὑπὸ Κύρου οἰκισθεῖσα, καὶ τοῦ
than the others as indeed by Cyrus founded and of-the
πλείστου καὶ μαχιμωτάτου τῶν ταύτῃ βαρβάρων ἐς ταύτην
most and most-warlike of-the there barbarians into this
συμπεφευγότος οὐχ ὡσαύτως ῥᾳδία ἐξ ἐφόδου ἑλεῖν τοῖς
having-fled-together not equally easy at first-assault to-take for-the
Μακεδόσιν ἐγίγνετο. ἀλλὰ μηχανὰς γὰρ προσάγων τῷ τείχει
Macedonians it-was but engines for bringing-up to-the wall
Ἀλέξανδρος ταύτῃ μὲν κατασείειν ἐπενόει τὸ τεῖχος καὶ κατὰ
Alexander there indeed to-shake-down he-intended the wall and at
τὸ ἀεὶ παραρρηγνύμενον αὐτοῦ τὰς προσβολὰς ποιεῖσθαι.
the continually broken-part of-it the assaults to-make

3.2 αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς κατεῖδε τοὺς ἔκρους τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ὃς
he-himself and when he-observed the outlets of-the river which
διὰ τῆς πόλεως χειμάρρους ὢν διέρχεται, ξηροὺς ἐν
through the city a-torrent being passes-through dry in

τῷ τότε ὕδατος καὶ οὐ ξυνεχεῖς τοῖς τείχεσιν, ἀλλ'
the then of-water and not continuous with-the walls but
οἵους παρασχεῖν πάροδον τοῖς στρατιώταις διαδῦναι
such-as to-allow passage for-the soldiers to-slip-through
ἐς τὴν πόλιν, ἀναλαβὼν τούς τε σωματοφύλακας καὶ
into the city having-taken the both bodyguards and
τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας
the shield-bearers and the archers and the Agrianians
τετραμμένων τῶν βαρβάρων πρὸς τὰς μηχανὰς καὶ τοὺς
turned the barbarians toward the engines and the
ταύτῃ προσμαχομένους λανθάνει κατὰ τοὺς ἔκρους ξὺν
there fighting he-escapes-notice along the outlets with
ὀλίγοις τὸ πρῶτον παρελθὼν ἐς τὴν πόλιν·
few the first having-got into the city
ἀναρρήξας δὲ ἔνδοθεν τῶν πυλῶν, αἳ κατὰ τοῦτο τὸ 3.3
having-broken-open and from-within of-the gates which at this the
χωρίον ἦσαν, δέχεται καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας εὐπετῶς.
place were he-receives also the other soldiers easily
ἔνθα δὴ οἱ βάρβαροι ἐχομένην ἤδη τὴν πόλιν αἰσθόμενοι
there indeed the barbarians held already the city perceiving
ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ἀλέξανδρον ὅμως ἐτράπησαν· καὶ γίνεται
against the around Alexander nevertheless turned and takes-place
προσβολὴ αὐτῶν καρτερά, καὶ βάλλεται λίθῳ αὐτὸς
an-attack of-them fierce and is-struck with-a-stone himself
Ἀλέξανδρος βιαίως τήν τε κεφαλὴν καὶ τὸν αὐχένα καὶ
Alexander violently the both head and the neck and
Κρατερὸς τοξεύματι καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ἡγεμόνων·
Craterus by-an-arrow and many others of-the commanders
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς ἐξέωσαν ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς τοὺς βαρβάρους.
but even so they-drove-out from the market-place the barbarians

3.4 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οἱ κατὰ τὸ τεῖχος προσβεβληκότες ἔρημον
and in this the at the wall having-attacked empty
ἤδη τὸ τεῖχος τῶν προμαχομένων αἱροῦσιν. ἐν μὲν δὴ
already the wall of-the defenders take in indeed indeed
τῇ πρώτῃ καταλήψει τῆς πόλεως ἀπέθανον τῶν πολεμίων
the first capture of-the city died of-the enemy
μάλιστα ἐς ὀκτακισχιλίους. οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἦσαν γὰρ
roughly about eight-thousand the and rest were for
οἱ πάντες ἐς μυρίους καὶ πεντακισχιλίους μαχίμους οἱ
the all about ten-thousand and five-thousand fighting-men the
ξυνεληλυθότες καταφεύγουσιν ἐς τὴν ἄκραν. καὶ τούτους
having-gathered flee into the citadel and these
περιστρατοπεδεύσας Ἀλέξανδρος ἡμέραν μίαν ἐφρούρησεν·
having-surrounded Alexander day one he-blockaded
οἱ δὲ ἐνδείᾳ ὕδατος ἐνεχείρισαν σφᾶς Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
they and from-lack of-water surrendered themselves to-Alexander

3.5 τὴν δὲ ἑβδόμην πόλιν ἐξ ἐφόδου ἔλαβε, Πτολεμαῖος μὲν
the and seventh city at first-assault he-took Ptolemy indeed
λέγει, ὅτι αὐτοὺς σφᾶς ἐνδόντας, Ἀριστόβουλος δέ, ὅτι
says that them themselves having-surrendered Aristobulus but that
βίᾳ καὶ ταύτην ἐξεῖλεν καὶ ὅτι πάντας τοὺς καταληφθέντας
by-force also this he-took and that all the caught
ἐν αὐτῇ ἀπέκτεινε. Πτολεμαῖος δὲ κατανεῖμαι λέγει αὐτὸν
in it he-killed Ptolemy and to-have-distributed says him
τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ δεδεμένους κελεῦσαι
the people to-the army and bound to-have-ordered
φυλάσσεσθαι ἔστ᾽ ἂν ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἀπαλλάττηται αὐτός,
to-be-guarded until — from the country should-depart he-himself
ὡς μηδένα ἀπολείπεσθαι τῶν τὴν ἀπόστασιν πραξάντων.
so-that no-one to-be-left of-the the revolt having-carried-out

ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῶν τε ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας Σκυθῶν στρατιὰ 3.6
in this and of-the both from — Asia Scythians an-army
ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ ποταμοῦ τοῦ Τανάϊδος,
arrives at the banks of-the river — Tanais
ἀκούσαντες οἱ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν, ὅτι ἔστιν οἳ καὶ τῶν ἐπέκεινα
having-heard the many of-them that there-are who also of-the beyond
τοῦ ποταμοῦ βαρβάρων ἀπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀφεστᾶσιν, ὡς,
the river barbarians from Alexander have-revolted so-as
εἰ δή τι λόγου ὂν ἄξιον νεωτερίζοιτο, καὶ αὐτοὶ
if indeed anything of-account being worthy should-be-afoot also themselves
ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς Μακεδόσι. καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Σπιταμένην δὲ
about-to-attack the Macedonians and the around Spitamenes and
ἀπηγγέλθησαν ὅτι τοὺς ἐν Μαρακάνδοις καταλειφθέντας
were-reported that the in Maracanda left
ἐν τῇ ἄκρᾳ πολιορκοῦσιν.
in the citadel they-are-besieging
ἔνθα δὴ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπὶ μὲν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Σπιταμένην 3.7
there indeed Alexander against indeed the around Spitamenes
Ἀνδρόμαχόν τε ἀποστέλλει καὶ Μενέδημον καὶ Κάρανον,
Andromachus both sends-off and Menedemus and Caranus
ἱππέας μὲν ἔχοντας τῶν ἑταίρων ἐς ἑξήκοντα καὶ τῶν
cavalry indeed having of-the companions about sixty and of-the
μισθοφόρων ὀκτακοσίους, ὧν Κάρανος ἡγεῖτο, πεζοὺς
mercenaries eight-hundred whom Caranus led infantry
δὲ μισθοφόρους ἐς χιλίους πεντακοσίους· ἐπιτάσσει δὲ
and mercenaries about thousand five-hundred be-sets-over and
αὐτοῖς Φαρνούχην τὸν ἑρμηνέα, τὸ μὲν γένος Λύκιον
them Pharnuches the interpreter the indeed race a-Lycian
τὸν Φαρνούχην, ἐμπείρως δὲ τῆς τε φωνῆς τῶν ταύτῃ
— Pharnuches with-experience and of-the both language of-the there

βαρβάρων ἔχοντα καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ὁμιλῆσαι αὐτοῖς δεξιὸν
barbarians having and the other-things to-deal-with them clever
φαινόμενον.
appearing

II · THE SCYTHIANS, AND THE DISASTER AT THE POLYTIMETUS

Alexander founds his city in twenty days. Taunted by the Scythians across the river, he crosses despite bad omens, clearing the bank with catapults. Mixing light troops with his cavalry, he breaks their circling tactics, but bad water makes him ill and the rest escape. Their king sends apologies. Meanwhile the garrison of Maracanda beats off an assault, and Spitamenes withdraws before the relief force, which follows him into the steppe and is destroyed at the Polytimetus when Caranus crosses without consulting Andromachus; Aristobulus blames an ambush and generals who would not take command. Alexander marches fifteen hundred stades in three days, buries the dead, and ravages the valley to the desert, where the Polytimetus vanishes into the sand.

4.1 αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν πόλιν, ἣν ἐπενόει, τειχίσας ἐν ἡμέραις
he-himself and the city which he-intended having-walled in days
εἴκοσι καὶ ξυνοικίσας ἐς αὐτὴν τῶν τε Ἑλλήνων
twenty and having-settled into it of-the both Greek
μισθοφόρων καὶ ὅστις τῶν προσοικούντων βαρβάρων
mercenaries and whoever of-the neighboring barbarians
ἐθελοντὴς μετέσχε τῆς ξυνοικήσεως καί τινας καὶ τῶν ἐκ
volunteering shared-in the settlement and some also of-the from
τοῦ στρατοπέδου Μακεδόνων, ὅσοι ἀπόμαχοι ἤδη ἦσαν,
the camp Macedonians as-many-as unfit-for-battle already were
θύσας τοῖς θεοῖς ὡς νόμος αὐτῷ καὶ ἀγῶνα ἱππικόν
having-sacrificed to-the gods as custom for-him and a-contest equestrian

τε καὶ γυμνικὸν ποιήσας, ὡς οὐκ ἀπαλλασσομένους ἑώρα
both and gymnastic having-made when not departing he-saw
τοὺς Σκύθας ἀπὸ τῆς ὄχθης τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
the Scythians from the bank of-the river
ἀλλ' ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν ἑωρῶντο οὐ πλατὺν 4.2
but shooting into the river they-were-seen not wide
ταύτῃ ὄντα, καί τινα καὶ πρὸς ὕβριν τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου
there being and some also toward insult — of-Alexander
βαρβαρικῶς ἐθρασύναντο, ὡς οὐκ ἂν τολμήσαντα
barbarously they-were-boastful that not — daring
Ἀλέξανδρον ἅψασθαι Σκυθῶν ἢ μαθόντα ἂν ὅτι περ
Alexander to-lay-hands-on Scythians or having-learned — what indeed
τὸ διάφορον Σκύθαις τε καὶ τοῖς Ἀσιανοῖς βαρβάροις, —
the difference to-Scythians both and to-the Asian barbarians
ὑπὸ τούτων παροξυνόμενος ἐπενόει διαβαίνειν ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
by these being-provoked he-intended to-cross against them
καὶ τὰς διφθέρας παρεσκεύαζεν ἐπὶ τῷ πόρῳ.
and the hides he-prepared for the crossing
θυομένῳ δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ διαβάσει τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο· ὁ 4.3
to-him-sacrificing and for the crossing the sacrifices not came-out-favorably he
δὲ βαρέως μὲν ἔφερεν οὐ γιγνομένων, ὅμως δὲ ἐκαρτέρει
and heavily indeed bore-it not coming-out nevertheless and he-persisted
καὶ ἔμενεν. ὡς δὲ οὐκ ἀνίεσαν οἱ Σκύθαι, αὖθις ἐπὶ τῇ
and stayed when and not let-up the Scythians again for the
διαβάσει ἐθύετο, καὶ αὖ ἐς κίνδυνον αὐτῷ σημαίνεσθαι
crossing he-sacrificed and again to danger for-him to-be-signified
Ἀρίστανδρος ὁ μάντις ἔφραζεν· ὁ δὲ κρεῖσσον ἔφη ἐς
Aristander the seer declared he and better he-said to
ἔσχατον κινδύνου ἐλθεῖν ἢ κατεστραμμένον ξύμπασαν
extremity of-danger to-come than having-subdued all
ὀλίγου δεῖν τὴν Ἀσίαν γέλωτα εἶναι Σκύθαις, καθάπερ
by-little to-lack — Asia a-laughingstock to-be to-Scythians as

Δαρεῖος ὁ Ξέρξου πατὴρ πάλαι ἐγένετο. Ἀρίστανδρος δὲ
Darius the of-Xerxes father long-ago became Aristander and
οὐκ ἔφη παρὰ τὰ ἐκ τοῦ θείου σημαινόμενα ἄλλα
not he-said contrary-to the-things from the divine being-signified other-things
ἀποδείξεσθαι, ὅτι ἄλλα ἐθέλει ἀκοῦσαι Ἀλέξανδρος.
to-be-going-to-declare because other-things wishes to-hear Alexander
4.4 ὁ δέ, ὡς αἵ τε διφθέραι αὐτῷ παρεσκευασμέναι ἦσαν
he and when the both hides for-him prepared were
ἐπὶ τῷ πόρῳ καὶ ὁ στρατὸς ἐξωπλισμένος ἐφειστήκει
for the crossing and the army fully-armed stood-by
τῷ ποταμῷ, αἵ τε μηχαναὶ ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος ἐξηκόντιζον
the river the both engines at signal shot
ἐς τοὺς Σκύθας παριππεύοντας ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ καὶ ἔστιν
at the Scythians riding-along on the bank and there-are
οἳ αὐτῶν ἐτιτρώσκοντο ἐκ τῶν βελῶν, εἷς δὲ δὴ διὰ
who of-them were-wounded by the missiles one and indeed through
τοῦ γέρρου τε καὶ τοῦ θώρακος διαμπὰξ πληγεὶς πίπτει
the wicker-shield both and the breastplate right-through struck falls
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, οἱ μὲν ἐξεπλάγησαν πρός τε τῶν βελῶν
from the horse they indeed were-alarmed at both the missiles
τὴν διὰ μακροῦ ἄφεσιν καὶ ὅτι ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς αὐτοῖς
the at long-distance discharge and because a-man brave for-them
τετελευτήκει, καὶ ὀλίγον ἀνεχώρησαν ἀπὸ τῆς ὄχθης·
had-died and a-little withdrew from the bank
4.5 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τεταραγμένους πρὸς τὰ βέλη ἰδὼν ὑπὸ
Alexander and thrown-into-confusion by the missiles having-seen to
σαλπίγγων ἐπέρα τὸν ποταμὸν αὐτὸς ἡγούμενος· εἵπετο
trumpets crossed the river himself leading followed
δὲ αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ ἄλλη στρατιά. πρῶτον μὲν δὴ τοὺς
and him also the other army first indeed indeed the
τοξότας καὶ σφενδονήτας ἀποβιβάσας σφενδονᾶν τε καὶ
archers and slingers having-landed to-sling both and

ἐκτοξεύειν ἐκέλευσεν ἐς τοὺς Σκύθας, ὡς μὴ πελάζειν
to-shoot he-ordered at the Scythians so-that not to-approach
αὐτοὺς τῇ φάλαγγι τῶν πεζῶν ἐκβαινούσῃ, πρὶν τὴν
them the phalanx of-the infantry coming-out before the
ἵππον αὐτῷ διαβῆναι πᾶσαν.
horse for-him to-cross whole
ὡς δὲ ἀθρόοι ἐπὶ τῇ ὄχθῃ ἐγένοντο, ἐφῆκεν ἐπὶ τοὺς 4.6
when and massed on the bank they-were he-sent-in against the
Σκύθας τὸ μὲν πρῶτον μίαν ἵππαρχίαν τῶν ξένων
Scythians the indeed first one hipparchy of-the mercenaries
καὶ τῶν σαρισσοφόρων ἴλας τέσσαρας· καὶ τούτους
and of-the sarissa-bearers squadrons four and these
δεξάμενοι οἱ Σκύθαι καὶ ἐς κύκλους περιϊππεύοντες
having-received the Scythians and in circles riding-around
ἔβαλλόν τε πολλοὶ ὀλίγους καὶ αὐτοὶ οὐ χαλεπῶς
were-shooting both many few and themselves not with-difficulty
διεφύγγανον. Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τούς τε τοξότας καὶ τοὺς
escaped Alexander and the both archers and the
Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ψιλούς, ὧν Βάλακρος ἦρχεν,
Agrianians and the other light-troops whom Balacrus commanded
ἀναμίξας τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν ἐπῆγεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Σκύθας.
having-mixed with-the cavalry led-on against the Scythians
ὡς δὲ ὁμοῦ ἤδη ἐγίγνοντο, ἐλάσαι ἐκέλευσεν ἐς αὐτοὺς 4.7
when and close already they-were to-charge he-ordered at them
τῶν τε ἑταίρων τρεῖς ἱππαρχίας καὶ τοὺς ἱππακοντιστὰς
of-the both companions three hipparchies and the mounted-javelin-men
ξύμπαντας· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν λοιπὴν ἵππον ἄγων σπουδῇ
all and himself and the remaining horse leading in-haste
ἐνέβαλεν ὀρθίαις ταῖς ἴλαις. οὔκουν ἔτι οἷοί τε ἦσαν
charged with-column the squadrons not-therefore any-longer able — were
ἐξελίσσειν τὴν ἱππασίαν ἐς κύκλους, ὡς πρόσθεν ἔτι· ὁμοῦ
to-wheel the riding into circles as before still together

μὲν γὰρ ἡ ἵππος προσέκειτο αὐτοῖς, ὁμοῦ δὲ οἱ ψιλοὶ
indeed for the horse pressed them together and the light-troops
ἀναμεμιγμένοι τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν οὐκ εἴων τὰς ἐπιστροφὰς
mingled with-the cavalry not allowed the wheelings
ἀσφαλεῖς ποιεῖσθαι. ἔνθα λαμπρὰ ἤδη φυγὴ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἦν·
safe to-make there headlong already flight of-the Scythians was
4.8 καὶ πίπτουσι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐς χιλίους καὶ εἷς τῶν ἡγεμόνων,
and fall indeed of-them about thousand and one of-the commanders
Σατράκης, ἑάλωσαν δὲ ἐς ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα. ὡς δὲ
Satraces were-captured and about hundred and fifty when and
ἡ δίωξις ὀξεῖά τε καὶ διὰ καύματος πολλοῦ ταλαιπώρως
the pursuit swift both and through heat great wretchedly
ἐγίνετο, δίψει τε ἡ στρατιὰ πᾶσα εἴχετο καὶ αὐτὸς
took-place by-thirst both the army whole was-gripped and himself
Ἀλέξανδρος ἐλαύνων πίνει ὁποῖον ἦν ὕδωρ ἐν τῇ γῇ ἐκείνῃ.
Alexander riding drinks such-as was water in the land that
4.9 καὶ ἦν γὰρ πονηρὸν τὸ ὕδωρ, ῥεῦμα ἀθρόον κατασκήπτει
and was for bad the water a-flux continuous falls-down
αὐτῷ ἐς τὴν γαστέρα· καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε ἡ δίωξις οὐκ ἐπὶ
on-him into the belly and on this the pursuit not upon
πάντων Σκυθῶν ἐγένετο· εἰ δὲ μή, δοκοῦσιν ἄν μοι καὶ
all Scythians was if and not they-seem — to-me also
πάντες διαφθαρῆναι ἐν τῇ φυγῇ, εἰ μὴ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τὸ
all to-have-been-destroyed in the flight if not for-Alexander the
σῶμα ἔκαμεν. καὶ αὐτὸς ἐς ἔσχατον κινδύνου ἐλθὼν
body had-been-sick and himself to extremity of-danger having-come
ἐκομίσθη ὀπίσω ἐς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ οὕτω ξυνέβη ἡ
was-carried back to the camp and so came-true the
μαντεία Ἀριστάνδρῳ.
prophecy for-Aristander

ὀλίγον δὲ ὕστερον παρὰ τοῦ Σκυθῶν βασιλέως ἀφικνοῦνται 5.1
a-little and later from the of-Scythians king arrive
παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον πρέσβεις, ὑπὲρ τῶν πραχθέντων ἐς
to Alexander envoys about the things-done for
ἀπολογίαν ἐκπεμφθέντες, ὅτι οὐκ ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ
defense sent-out that not from the commonwealth
τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐπράχθη, ἀλλὰ καθ᾽ ἁρπαγὴν ληστρικῷ
of-the Scythians it-was-done but for plunder in-piratical
τρόπῳ σταλέντων, καὶ αὐτὸς ὅτι ἐθέλοι ποιεῖν τὰ
manner having-set-out and he-himself that he-wished to-do the-things
ἐπαγγελλόμενα. καὶ τούτῳ φιλάνθρωπα ἐπιστέλλει
being-enjoined and to-him kindly writes
Ἀλέξανδρος, ὅτι οὔτε ἀπιστοῦντα μὴ ἐπεξιέναι καλὸν
Alexander because neither distrusting not to-go-against fine
αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο, οὔτε κατὰ καιρὸν ἦν ἐν τῷ τότε ἐπεξιέναι.
to-him it-appeared nor in season was in the then to-go-against
οἱ δὲ ἐν Μαρακάνδοις ἐν τῇ ἄκρᾳ φρουρούμενοι Μακεδόνες 5.2
the and in Maracanda in the citadel being-garrisoned Macedonians
προσβολῆς γενομένης τῇ ἄκρᾳ ἐκ Σπιταμένους τε
an-attack having-been-made on-the citadel by Spitamenes both
καὶ τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐπεκδραμόντες ἀπέκτειναν τε τῶν
and the around him having-sallied-out killed both of-the
πολεμίων ἔστιν οὓς καὶ ἀπώσαντο ξύμπαντας, καὶ αὐτοὶ
enemy there-are whom and drove-back all and themselves
ἀπαθεῖς ἀπεχώρησαν ἐς τὴν ἄκραν.
unharmed withdrew into the citadel
ὡς δὲ καὶ οἱ ὑπ᾽ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐσταλμένοι ἐς Μαράκανδα 5.3
when and also the by Alexander sent to Maracanda
ἤδη προσάγοντες Σπιταμένει ἐξηγγέλλοντο, τὴν μὲν
already approaching to-Spitamenes were-reported the indeed
πολιορκίαν ἐκλείπει τῆς ἄκρας, αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἐς τὰ βόρεια
siege he-abandons of-the citadel himself and as to the northern-parts

τῆς Σογδιανῆς ἀνεχώρει. Φαρνούχης δὲ καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτῷ
— *of-Sogdiana withdrew Pharnuches and and the with him*
στρατηγοὶ σπεύδοντες ἐξελάσαι αὐτὸν παντάπασιν ἐπί τε
generals hastening to-drive-out him altogether to both
τὰ ὅρια τῆς Σογδιανῆς ξυνείποντο ὑποχωροῦντι καὶ εἰς
the borders — of-Sogdiana followed him-withdrawing and into
τοὺς Νομάδας τοὺς Σκύθας οὐδενὶ λογισμῷ ξυνεσβάλλουσιν.
the Nomads the Scythians with-no reasoning they-invade-with-him
5.4 ἔνθα δὴ προσλαβὼν ὁ Σπιταμένης τῶν Σκυθῶν
there indeed having-taken-in-addition — Spitamenes of-the Scythian
ἱππέων ἐς ἑξακοσίους προσεπήρθη ὑπὸ τῆς ξυμμαχίας
cavalry about six-hundred was-further-encouraged by the alliance
τῆς Σκυθικῆς δέξασθαι ἐπιόντας τοὺς Μακεδόνας·
the Scythian to-await approaching the Macedonians
παραταξάμενος δὲ ἐν χωρίῳ ὁμαλῷ πρὸς τῇ ἐρήμῳ
having-drawn-up and in ground level near the desert
τῆς Σκυθικῆς ὑπομεῖναι μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους ἢ αὐτὸς ἐς
of-the Scythian to-await indeed the enemy or himself at
αὐτοὺς ἐμβαλεῖν οὐκ ἤθελε, περιϊππεύων δὲ ἐτόξευεν ἐς
them to-charge not he-wished riding-around but he-shot at
τὴν φάλαγγα τῶν πεζῶν.
the phalanx of-the infantry
5.5 καὶ ἐπελαυνόντων μὲν αὐτοῖς τῶν ἀμφὶ Φαρνούχην
and riding-at indeed them the around Pharnuches
ἔφευγεν εὐπετῶς, οἷα δὴ ὠκυτέρων τε αὐτοῖς καὶ
he-fled easily as indeed swifter both for-them and
ἐν τῷ τότε ἀκμαιοτέρων ὄντων τῶν ἵππων, τοῖς δὲ
in the then fresher being the horses for-the and
ἀμφὶ Ἀνδρόμαχον ὑπό τε τῆς ξυνεχοῦς πορείας καὶ
around Andromachus by both the continuous march and

ἅμα χιλοῦ ἀπορίᾳ κεκάκωτο ἡ ἵππος· μένουσι
at-the-same-time of-fodder from-lack had-been-worn-out the horse standing
δὲ ἢ ὑποχωροῦσιν ἐπέκειντο εὐρώστως οἱ Σκύθαι.
and or withdrawing pressed stoutly the Scythians
ἔνθα δὴ πολλῶν μὲν τιτρωσκομένων ἐκ τῶν τοξευμάτων, 5.6
there indeed many indeed being-wounded by the arrows
ἔστι δὲ ὧν καὶ πιπτόντων, ἐς πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον
there-are and of-whom also falling into a-square equal-sided
τάξαντες τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀνεχώρουν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν
having-formed the soldiers they-withdrew as toward the
ποταμὸν τὸν Πολυτίμητον, ὅτι νάπος ταύτῃ ἦν, ὡς
river — Polytimetus because a-glen there was so-that
μήτε τοῖς βαρβάροις εὐπετὲς ἔτι εἶναι ἐκτοξεύειν ἐς
neither for-the barbarians easy any-longer to-be to-shoot at
αὐτούς, σφίσι τε οἱ πεζοὶ ὠφελιμώτεροι ὦσι.
them for-themselves both the infantry more-useful might-be
Κάρανος δὲ ὁ ἱππάρχης οὐκ ἀνακοινώσας Ἀνδρομάχῳ 5.7
Caranus and the cavalry-commander not having-communicated with-Andromachus
διαβαίνειν ἐπεχείρησε τὸν ποταμὸν ὡς ἐς ἀσφαλὲς ταύτῃ
to-cross attempted the river so-as into safety there
καταστήσων τὴν ἵππον· καὶ οἱ πεζοὶ αὐτῷ ἐπηκολούθησαν,
to-be-going-to-place the horse and the infantry him followed
οὐκ ἐκ παραγγέλματος, ἀλλὰ φοβερά τε καὶ οὐδενὶ
not from order but fearful both and with-no
κόσμῳ ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς ἡ ἔσβασις ἡ ἐς τὸν ποταμὸν
order became for-them the entry the into the river
κατὰ κρημνώδεις τὰς ὄχθας.
along precipitous the banks
καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι αἰσθόμενοι τὴν ἁμαρτίαν τῶν Μακεδόνων 5.8
and the barbarians having-perceived the error of-the Macedonians
αὐτοῖς ἵπποις ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν ἐσβάλλουσιν ἐς
with-the-very horses from-this-side and that-side charge into

τὸν πόρον. καὶ οἱ μὲν τῶν ἤδη διαβεβηκότων καὶ
the ford and the-ones indeed of-the already having-crossed and
ἀποχωρούντων εἶχοντο, οἱ δὲ τοὺς διαβαίνοντας
withdrawing held-on the-others and the crossing
ἀντιμέτωποι ταχθέντες ἀνείλουν ἐς τὸν ποταμόν, οἱ
face-to-face posted killed into the river the-others
δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν πλαγίων ἐξετόξευον ἐς αὐτούς,
and from the flanks shot at them
5.9 οἱ δὲ τοῖς ἔτι ἐσβαίνουσιν ἐπέκειντο, ὥστε ἀπορίᾳ
the-others and the still entering pressed-on so-that by-helplessness
πάντοθεν ξυνεχόμενοι οἱ Μακεδόνες ἐς νῆσόν τινα τῶν
on-all-sides hemmed-in the Macedonians into island some of-the
ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ ξυμφεύγουσιν οὐ μεγάλην. καὶ περιστάντες
in the river flee-together not large and having-surrounded
αὐτοὺς οἱ Σκύθαι τε καὶ οἱ ξὺν Σπιταμένει ἱππεῖς ἐν
them the Scythians both and the with Spitamenes cavalry in
κύκλῳ πάντας κατετόξευσαν· ὀλίγους δὲ ἠνδραποδίσαντο
circle all shot-down few and enslaved
αὐτῶν, καὶ τούτους πάντας ἀπέκτειναν.
of-them and these all killed
6.1 Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ ἐνέδρᾳ τὸ πολὺ τῆς στρατιᾶς
Aristobulus and by-ambush the most of-the army
διαφθαρῆναι λέγει, τῶν Σκυθῶν ἐν παραδείσῳ κρυφθέντων,
to-have-been-destroyed says of-the Scythians in a-park having-hidden
οἳ ἐκ τοῦ ἀφανοῦς ἐπεγένοντο τοῖς Μακεδόσιν ἐν αὐτῷ
who from the unseen fell-upon the Macedonians in very
τῷ ἔργῳ· ἵνα τὸν μὲν Φαρνούχην παραχωρεῖν τῆς
the action where — indeed Pharnuches to-yield the
ἡγεμονίας τοῖς ξυμπεμφθεῖσι Μακεδόσιν, ὡς οὐκ ἐμπείρως
command to-the sent-with-him Macedonians as not experienced
ἔχοντα ἔργων πολεμικῶν, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῷ καθομιλῆσαι τοὺς
being of-works warlike but for the to-win-over the

βαρβάρους μᾶλλόν τι πρὸς Ἀλεξάνδρου ἢ ἐπὶ τῷ ἐν
barbarians more somewhat by Alexander than for the in
ταῖς μάχαις ἐξηγεῖσθαι ἐσταλμένον, τοὺς δὲ Μακεδόνας
the battles to-lead having-been-sent them and Macedonians
τε εἶναι καὶ ἑταίρους βασιλέως.
both to-be and companions of-the-king
Ἀνδρόμαχον δὲ καὶ Κάρανον καὶ Μενέδημον οὐ δέξασθαι 6.2
Andromachus and and Caranus and Menedemus not to-have-accepted
τὴν ἡγεμονίαν, τὸ μέν τι ὡς μὴ δοκεῖν παρὰ
the command partly indeed somewhat so-as not to-seem contrary-to
τὰ ἐπηγγελμένα ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου αὐτούς τι κατὰ
the-things enjoined by Alexander themselves anything on
σφᾶς νεωτερίζειν, τὸ δὲ καὶ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ δεινῷ οὐκ
their-own to-innovate partly and also in very the danger not
ἐθελήσαντας, εἰ δή τι πταίσειαν, μὴ ὅσον κατ᾽
having-wished if indeed anything they-should-fail not as-much-as by
ἄνδρα μόνον μετέχειν αὐτοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς τὸ πᾶν
man only to-share it but also as the whole
αὐτοὺς κακῶς ἐξηγησαμένους. ἐν τούτῳ δὴ τῷ θορύβῳ
them badly having-led in this indeed the confusion
τε καὶ τῇ ἀταξίᾳ ἐπιθεμένους αὐτοῖς τοὺς βαρβάρους
both and the disorder having-attacked them the barbarians
κατακόψαι πάντας, ὥστε ἱππέας μὲν μὴ πλείονας τῶν
to-have-cut-down all so-that cavalry indeed not more than-the
τεσσαράκοντα ἀποσωθῆναι, πεζοὺς δὲ ἐς τριακοσίους.
forty to-have-got-safe infantry and about three-hundred
ταῦτα δὲ ὡς ἠγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ἤλγησέ τε τῷ 6.3
these-things and when were-reported to-Alexander he-grieved both at-the
πάθει τῶν στρατιωτῶν καὶ ἔγνω σπουδῇ ἐλαύνειν ὡς
suffering of-the soldiers and decided in-haste to-march as
ἐπὶ Σπιταμένην τε καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν βαρβάρους.
against Spitamenes both and the around him barbarians

ἀναλαβὼν οὖν τῶν τε ἑταίρων ἱππέων τοὺς ἡμισέας καὶ
having-taken then of-the both companion cavalry the half and
τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς ξύμπαντας καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ τοὺς
the shield-bearers all and the archers and the
Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τῆς φάλαγγος τοὺς κουφοτάτους ᾔει ὡς
Agrianians and of-the phalanx the lightest he-went as
ἐπὶ Μαράκανδα, ἵνα ἐπανήκειν Σπιταμένην ἐπυνθάνετο
toward Maracanda where to-have-returned Spitamenes he-learned
καὶ αὖθις πολιορκεῖν τοὺς ἐν τῇ ἄκρᾳ.
and again to-besiege the in the citadel

6.4 καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις διελθὼν χιλίους
and himself indeed in three days having-traversed thousand
καὶ πεντακοσίους σταδίους τῇ τετάρτῃ ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω
and five-hundred stades on-the fourth toward the dawn
προσῆγε τῇ πόλει. Σπιταμένης δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀμφ' αὐτόν,
approached the city Spitamenes and and the around him
ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη προσάγων Ἀλέξανδρος, οὐκ ἔμειναν, ἀλλ'
when was-reported approaching Alexander not stayed but
ἐκλιπόντες τὴν πόλιν φεύγουσιν.
having-abandoned the city flee

6.5 ὁ δὲ ἐχόμενος αὐτῶν ἐδίωκεν· ὡς δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν χῶρον
he and keeping-close-to them pursued when and to the place
ἦκεν, οὗ ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, θάψας τοὺς στρατιώτας
he-came where the battle took-place having-buried the soldiers
ὡς ἐκ τῶν παρόντων εἵπετο ἔστε ἐπὶ τὴν ἔρημον τοῖς
as from the present-means he-followed as-far to the desert the
φεύγουσιν. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ ἀναστρέφων ἐπόρθει τὴν χώραν
fleeing thence and turning-back ravaged the country
καὶ τοὺς ἐς τὰ ἐρύματα καταπεφευγότας τῶν βαρβάρων
and the into the strongholds having-fled of-the barbarians
ἔκτεινεν, ὅτι ξυνεπιθέσθαι ἐξηγγέλλοντο καὶ αὐτοὶ
killed because to-have-joined-in-attacking they-were-reported also themselves

τοῖς Μακεδόσι· καὶ ἐπῆλθε πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν ὅσην
the Macedonians and he-traversed all the country as-much-as
ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Πολυτίμητος ἐπάρδων ἐπέρχεται.
the river — Polytimetus watering goes-through
ἵνα δὲ ἀφανίζεται τῷ ποταμῷ τὸ ὕδωρ, ἐντεῦθεν 6.6
where and disappears for-the river the water from-there
ἤδη τὸ ἐπέκεινα ἔρημος ἡ χώρα ἐστίν· ἀφανίζεται δὲ
already the beyond desert the country is disappears and
καίπερ πολλοῦ ὢν ὕδατος ἐς τὴν ψάμμον. καὶ ἄλλοι
although of-much being water into the sand and other
ποταμοὶ ὡσαύτως ἐκεῖ ἀφανίζονται μεγάλοι καὶ ἀέναοι,
rivers likewise there disappear great and ever-flowing
ὅ τε Ἔπαρδος, ὃς ῥέει διὰ Μάρδων τῆς χώρας, καὶ
the both Epardus which flows through of-Mardians the country and
Ἄρειος, ὅτου ἐπώνυμος ἡ τῶν Ἀρείων γῆ ἐστιν, καὶ
Areius from-which named the of-the Arians land is and
Ἑτύμανδρος, ὃς δι' Εὐεργετῶν ῥέει.
Etymandrus which through Benefactors flows
καὶ εἰσὶ ξύμπαντες οὗτοι τηλικοῦτοι ποταμοὶ ὥστε οὐδεὶς 6.7
and are all these such-great rivers that no-one
αὐτῶν μείων ἐστὶ τοῦ Πηνειοῦ τοῦ Θεσσαλικοῦ ποταμοῦ,
of-them smaller is — than-Peneius the Thessalian river
ὃς διὰ τῶν Τεμπῶν ῥέων ἐκδιδοῖ ἐς θάλασσαν· ὁ δὲ
which through — Tempe flowing discharges into sea — and
Πολυτίμητος πολὺ ἔτι μείζων ἢ κατὰ τὸν Πηνειὸν
Polytimetus much still greater than in-proportion-to the Peneius
ποταμόν ἐστι.
river is

At Zariaspa, where satraps and generals bring prisoners and troops, Bessus is mutilated and sent to Ecbatana to die, and Arrian condemns the punishment and Alexander's Persian dress. At a feast where Alexander had neglected Dionysus, flatterers set him above the Dioscuri and Heracles. Cleitus, drunk, praises Philip and reminds Alexander that his hand saved him at the Granicus. Restrained by friends, Alexander calls in vain for his guards and kills Cleitus with a spear or a sarissa; Aristobulus says Ptolemy had led Cleitus out and he came back. Alexander lies three days without food in grief, and the seers blame Dionysus' wrath. Arrian praises his remorse and condemns Anaxarchus, who some say told him the king's acts are just by definition, and turns to the story that Alexander wished to receive obeisance.

7.1 ταῦτα δὲ διαπραξάμενος ἐς Ζαρίασπα ἀφίκετο· καὶ
these-things and having-accomplished to Zariaspa he-arrived and
αὐτοῦ κατέμενεν ἔστε παρελθεῖν τὸ ἀκμαῖον τοῦ χειμῶνος.
there remained until to-pass the height of-the winter
ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἀφίκοντο παρ' αὐτὸν Φραταφέρνης τε
in this and arrived to him Phrataphernes both
ὁ Παρθυαίων σατράπης καὶ Στασάνωρ ὁ ἐς Ἀρείους
the of-Parthyaeans satrap and Stasanor the to Arians
ἀποπεμφθεὶς ὡς Ἀρσάκην ξυλληψόμενος, τόν τε Ἀρσάκην
sent-off as Arsaces about-to-arrest — both Arsaces
δεδεμένον ἄγοντες καὶ Βραζάνην, ὄντινα Βῆσσος τῆς
bound bringing and Brazanes whom Bessus of-the
Παρθυαίων σατράπην κατέστησε, καί τινας ἄλλους τῶν
Parthyaeans satrap had-appointed and some others of-the
τότε ξὺν Βήσσῳ ἀποστάντων.
then with Bessus having-revolted

ἦκον δὲ ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ Ἐπόκιλλος καὶ Μελαμνίδας καὶ 7.2
came and in the same-time Epocillus and Melamnidas and
Πτολεμαῖος ὁ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν στρατηγὸς ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, οἳ τά
Ptolemy the of-the Thracians general from sea who the
τε χρήματα τὰ ξὺν Μένητι πεμφθέντα καὶ τοὺς ξυμμάχους
both money the with Menes sent and the allies
ὡς ἐπὶ θάλασσαν κατήγαγον. καὶ Ἄσανδρος δὲ ἐν τούτῳ
as to sea had-escorted and Asander and in this
ἦκεν καὶ Νέαρχος, στρατιὰν Ἑλλήνων μισθοφόρων ἄγοντες,
came and Nearchus an-army of-Greek mercenaries leading
καὶ Βῆσσός τε ὁ Συρίας σατράπης καὶ Ἀσκληπιόδωρος
and Bessus both the of-Syria satrap and Asclepiodorus
ὁ ὕπαρχος ἀπὸ θαλάσσης, καὶ οὗτοι στρατιὰν ἄγοντες.
the hyparch from sea also these an-army leading
ἔνθα δὴ ξύλλογον ἐκ τῶν παρόντων ξυναγαγὼν 7.3
there indeed an-assembly from the present having-gathered
Ἀλέξανδρος παρήγαγεν ἐς αὐτοὺς Βῆσσον· καὶ κατηγορήσας
Alexander brought-forward before them Bessus and having-accused
τὴν Δαρείου προδοσίαν τήν τε ῥῖνα Βήσσου ἀποτμηθῆναι καὶ
the of-Darius betrayal the both nose of-Bessus to-be-cut-off and
τὰ ὦτα ἄκρα ἐκέλευσεν, αὐτὸν δὲ ἐς Ἐκβάτανα ἄγεσθαι, ὡς
the ears' tips he-ordered him and to Ecbatana to-be-taken so-that
ἐκεῖ ἐν τῷ Μήδων τε καὶ Περσῶν ξυλλόγῳ ἀποθανούμενον.
there in the of-Medes both and Persians assembly about-to-be-put-to-death
καὶ ἐγὼ οὔτε τὴν ἄγαν ταύτην τιμωρίαν Βήσσου ἐπαινῶ, 7.4
and I neither the excessive this punishment of-Bessus praise
ἀλλὰ βαρβαρικὴν εἶναι τίθεμαι τῶν ἀκρωτηρίων τὴν λώβην
but barbarian to-be I-consider of-the extremities the mutilation
καὶ ὑπαχθῆναι Ἀλέξανδρον ξύμφημι ἐς ζῆλον τοῦ Μηδικοῦ
and to-have-been-led-on Alexander I-agree to emulation of-the Median
τε καὶ Περσικοῦ πλούτου καὶ τῆς κατὰ τοὺς βαρβάρους
both and Persian wealth and of-the according-to the barbarian

βασιλέας οὐκ ἴσης ἐς τοὺς ὑπηκόους ξυνδιαιτήσεως,
kings not equal toward the subjects way-of-life
ἐσθῆτά τε ὅτι Μηδικὴν ἀντὶ τῆς Μακεδονικῆς τε καὶ
the-dress both that Median instead-of the Macedonian both and
πατρίου Ἡρακλείδης ὢν μετέλαβεν, οὐδαμῇ ἐπαινῶ, καὶ τὴν
ancestral a-Heracleid being he-adopted in-no-way I-praise and the
κίταριν τὴν Περσικὴν τῶν νενικημένων ἀντὶ ὧν
kitaris the Persian of-the conquered instead-of the-things-which
αὐτὸς ὁ νικῶν πάλαι ἐφόρει ἀμεῖψαι οὐκ ἐπηδέσθη,
he-himself the conqueror long wore to-exchange not was-he-ashamed
7.5 οὐδὲν τούτων ἐπαινῶ, ἀλλ᾽ εἴπερ τι ἄλλο, καὶ τὰ
none of-these I-praise but if-indeed anything else also the
Ἀλεξάνδρου μεγάλα πράγματα ἐς τεκμηρίωσιν τίθεμαι ὡς
of-Alexander great affairs for proof I-consider that
οὔτε τὸ σῶμα ὅτῳ εἴη καρτερόν, οὔτε ὅστις γένει
neither the body to-whom might-be strong nor whoever in-family
ἐπιφανής, οὔτε κατὰ πόλεμον εἰ δή τις διευτυχοίη ἔτι
illustrious nor in war if indeed anyone should-succeed still
μᾶλλον ἢ Ἀλέξανδρος, οὐδὲ εἰ τὴν Λιβύην τις πρὸς τῇ
more than Alexander nor if — Libya one besides —
Ἀσίᾳ, καθάπερ οὖν ἐπενόει ἐκεῖνος, ἐκπεριπλεύσας κατάσχοι,
Asia as indeed intended he having-sailed-around should-hold
οὐδὲ εἰ τὴν Εὐρώπην ἐπὶ τῇ Ἀσίᾳ τε καὶ Λιβύῃ
nor if — Europe in-addition-to — Asia both and Libya
τρίτην, τούτων πάντων οὐδέν τι ὄφελος ἐς εὐδαιμονίαν
as-a-third of-these all not-at-all any benefit for happiness
ἀνθρώπου, εἰ μὴ σωφρονεῖν ἐν ταὐτῷ ὑπάρχοι τούτῳ τῷ
of-a-man if not to-be-temperate at the-same should-belong to-this the
ἀνθρώπῳ τῷ τὰ μεγάλα, ὡς δοκεῖ, πράγματα πράξαντι.
man the the great as it-seems affairs having-done

ἔνθα δὴ καὶ τὸ Κλείτου τοῦ Δρωπίδου πάθημα καὶ τὴν 8.1
there indeed also the of-Cleitus the (son)-of-Dropides suffering and the
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ ξυμφοράν, εἰ καὶ ὀλίγον ὕστερον
of-Alexander at it misfortune if even a-little later
ἐπράχθη, οὐκ ἔξω τοῦ καιροῦ ἀφηγήσομαι. εἶναι μὲν
it-was-done not outside the occasion I-shall-relate to-be indeed
γὰρ ἡμέραν ἱερὰν τοῦ Διονύσου Μακεδόσι καὶ θύειν
for day sacred — of-Dionysus for-Macedonians and to-sacrifice
Διονύσῳ ὅσα ἔτη ἐν αὐτῇ Ἀλέξανδρον·
to-Dionysus each year on it Alexander
τὸν δὲ τοῦ Διονύσου μὲν ἐν τῷ τότε ἀμελῆσαι λέγουσι, 8.2
him and — of-Dionysus indeed in the then to-have-neglected they-say
Διοσκούροιν δὲ θῦσαι, ἐξ ὅτου δὴ ἐπιφρασθέντα τοῖν
to-the-Dioscuri and to-have-sacrificed from what indeed having-thought-of to-the
Διοσκούροιν τὴν θυσίαν· πόρρω δὲ τοῦ πότου προϊόντος
Dioscuri the sacrifice far and the drinking advancing
καὶ γὰρ καὶ τὰ τῶν πότων ἤδη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐς
and for also the-things of-the drinking-parties already by-Alexander to
τὸ βαρβαρικώτερον νενεωτέριστο ἀλλ᾽ ἔν γε τῷ πότῳ
the more-barbarian had-been-changed but in at-least the drinking
τότε ὑπὲρ τοῖν Διοσκούροιν λόγους γίγνεσθαι, ὅπως ἐς
then about the Dioscuri talk to-arise how to
Δία ἀνηνέχθη αὐτοῖν ἡ γένεσις ἀφαιρεθεῖσα Τυνδάρεω.
Zeus was-referred of-the-two the birth taken-away-from Tyndareus
καί τινας τῶν παρόντων κολακείᾳ τῇ Ἀλεξάνδρου, οἷοι 8.3
and some of-the present by-flattery the of-Alexander such-as
δὴ ἄνδρες διέφθειράν τε ἀεὶ καὶ οὔποτε παύσονται
indeed men ruined both always and never will-cease
ἐπιτρίβοντες τὰ τῶν ἀεὶ βασιλέων πράγματα, κατ᾽ οὐδὲν
ruining the of-the ever kings affairs in no-way
ἀξιοῦν συμβάλλειν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τε καὶ τοῖς Ἀλεξάνδρου
to-think-fit to-compare to-Alexander both and to-the of-Alexander

ἔργοις τὸν Πολυδεύκην καὶ τὸν Κάστορα. οἱ δὲ οὐδὲ
deeds — Polydeuces and — Castor the-others and not-even
τοῦ Ἡρακλέους ἀπείχοντο ἐν τῷ πότῳ· ἀλλὰ τὸν φθόνον
— from-Heracles abstained in the drinking but the envy
γὰρ ἐμποδὼν ἵστασθαι τοῖς ζῶσι τὸ μὴ οὐ τὰς δικαίας
for in-the-way to-stand for-the living the not not the just
τιμὰς αὐτοῖς ἐκ τῶν ξυνόντων γίγνεσθαι.
honors for-them from the companions to-come

8.4 Κλεῖτον δὲ δῆλον μὲν εἶναι πάλαι ἤδη ἀχθόμενον τοῦ
Cleitus and evident indeed to-be long already vexed —
τε Ἀλεξάνδρου τῇ ἐς τὸ βαρβαρικώτερον μετακινήσει καὶ
both of-Alexander at-the to the more-barbarian change and
τῶν κολακευόντων αὐτὸν τοῖς λόγοις τότε δὲ καὶ αὐτὸν
of-the flattering him with-the words then and also himself
πρὸς τοῦ οἴνου παροξυνόμενον οὐκ ἐᾶν οὔτε ἐς τὸ θεῖον
by the wine being-provoked not to-allow neither toward the divine
ὑβρίζειν, οὔτε τὰ τῶν πάλαι ἡρώων ἔργα ἐκφαυλίζοντας
to-act-insolently nor the of-the old heroes deeds belittling
χάριν ταύτην ἄχαριν προστιθέναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ.
favor this graceless to-confer on-Alexander

8.5 εἶναι γὰρ οὖν οὐδὲ τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου οὕτω τι μεγάλα
to-be for then not-even the-deeds of-Alexander so at-all great
καὶ θαυμαστὰ ὡς ἐκεῖνοι ἐπαίρουσιν· οὔκουν μόνον
and wonderful as they exalt not-therefore alone
καταπρᾶξαι αὐτά, ἀλλὰ τὸ πολὺ γὰρ μέρος Μακεδόνων
to-have-accomplished them but the great for part of-Macedonians
εἶναι τὰ ἔργα. καὶ τοῦτον τὸν λόγον ἀνιᾶσαι Ἀλέξανδρον
to-be the deeds and this the speech to-have-pained Alexander
λεχθέντα. οὐδὲ ἐγὼ ἐπαινῶ τὸν λόγον, ἀλλὰ ἱκανὸν γὰρ
having-been-spoken nor I praise the speech but sufficient for

εἶναι τίθεμαι ἐν τοιᾷδε παροινίᾳ τὸ καθ᾽ αὑτὸν σιγῶντα
to-be I-consider in such drunkenness the as-regards himself silent
ἔχειν μηδὲ τὰ αὐτὰ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐς κολακείαν πλημμελεῖν.
to-keep nor the same-things with-the others for flattery to-offend
ὡς δὲ καὶ τῶν Φιλίππου τινὲς ἔργων, ὅτι οὐ μεγάλα 8.6
when and also of-the of-Philip some deeds that not great
οὐδὲ θαυμαστὰ Φιλίππῳ κατεπράχθη, οὐδεμιᾷ ξὺν δίκῃ
nor wonderful by-Philip were-accomplished no with justice
ἐπεμνήσθησαν, χαριζόμενοι καὶ οὗτοι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, τὸν
they-mentioned gratifying also these Alexander —
Κλεῖτον ἤδη οὐκέτι ἐν ἑαυτοῦ ὄντα πρεσβεύειν μὲν
Cleitus already no-longer in himself being to-champion indeed
τὰ τοῦ Φιλίππου, καταβάλλειν δὲ Ἀλέξανδρόν τε καὶ
the-deeds — of-Philip to-belittle and Alexander both and
τὰ τούτου ἔργα, παροινοῦντα ἤδη τὸν Κλεῖτον, τά τε
the his deeds being-drunk already — Cleitus the both
ἄλλα καὶ πολὺν εἶναι ἐξονειδίζοντα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ὅτι
other-things and much to-be reproaching Alexander that
πρὸς αὑτοῦ ἄρα ἐσώθη, ὁπότε ἡ ἱππομαχία ἡ ἐπὶ
by him then he-was-saved when the cavalry-battle the at
Γρανίκῳ ξυνειστήκει πρὸς Πέρσας·
Granicus had-been-joined against Persians
καὶ δὴ καὶ τὴν δεξιὰν τὴν αὑτοῦ σοβαρῶς ἀνατείναντα, 8.7
and indeed also the right the his-own arrogantly having-raised-up
αὕτη σε ἡ χείρ, φάναι, ὦ Ἀλέξανδρε, ἐν τῷ τότε ἔσωσε. καὶ
this you the hand to-say O Alexander in the then saved and
Ἀλέξανδρον οὐκέτι φέρειν τοῦ Κλείτου τὴν παροινίαν τε καὶ
Alexander no-longer to-bear — of-Cleitus the drunkenness both and
ὕβριν, ἀλλὰ ἀναπηδᾶν γὰρ ξὺν ὀργῇ ἐπ᾽ αὐτόν, κατέχεσθαι
insolence but to-leap-up for with anger at him to-be-restrained
δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν ξυμπινόντων. Κλεῖτον δὲ οὐκ ἀνιέναι ὑβρίζοντα.
and by the fellow-drinkers Cleitus and not to-cease being-insolent

8.8 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἐβόα ἄρα καλῶν τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς· οὐδενὸς
Alexander and shouted then calling the shield-bearers no-one
δὲ ὑπακούοντος ἐς ταὐτὰ ἔφη καθεστηκέναι Δαρείῳ, ὁπότε
but obeying in the-same he-said to-have-been-placed with-Darius when
πρὸς Βήσσου τε καὶ τῶν ἀμφὶ Βῆσσον ξυλληφθεὶς
by Bessus both and the around Bessus having-been-arrested
ἤγετο οὐδὲν ἄλλο ὅτι μὴ ὄνομα ὢν βασιλέως. οὔκουν
he-was-led nothing else except — name being of-king not-therefore
ἔτι οἵους τε εἶναι κατέχειν αὐτὸν τοὺς ἑταίρους, ἀλλ᾽
any-longer able — to-be to-restrain him the companions but
ἀναπηδήσαντα γὰρ οἱ μὲν λόγχην ἁρπάσαι λέγουσι
having-leapt-up for the-ones indeed a-spear to-have-snatched say
τῶν σωματοφυλάκων τινὸς καὶ ταύτῃ παίσαντα Κλεῖτον
of-the bodyguards some-one and with-this having-struck Cleitus
ἀποκτεῖναι,
to-have-killed

8.9 οἱ δὲ σάρισσαν παρὰ τῶν φυλάκων τινὸς καὶ ταύτην.
the-others and a-sarissa from the guards some-one and this
Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ ὅθεν μὲν ἡ παροινία ὡρμήθη οὐ
Aristobulus and whence indeed the drunken-brawl started not
λέγει, Κλείτου δὲ γενέσθαι μόνου τὴν ἁμαρτίαν, ὅν γε
says of-Cleitus but to-have-been alone the fault whom at-least
ὠργισμένου Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ ἀναπηδήσαντος ἐπ᾽ αὐτὸν ὡς
enraged Alexander and having-leapt-up at him as
διαχρησομένου ἀπαχθῆναι μὲν διὰ θυρῶν ἔξω ὑπὲρ
about-to-kill to-have-been-led-away indeed through doors out over
τὸ τεῖχός τε καὶ τὴν τάφρον τῆς ἄκρας, ἵνα ἐγίνετο,
the wall both and the ditch of-the citadel where it-was-happening
πρὸς Πτολεμαίου τοῦ Λάγου τοῦ σωματοφύλακος·
by Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus the bodyguard
οὐ καρτερήσαντα δὲ ἀναστρέψαι αὖθις καὶ περιπετῆ
not having-endured but to-have-turned-back again and in-collision

Ἀλεξάνδρῳ γενέσθαι Κλεῖτον ἀνακαλοῦντι, καὶ φάναι ὅτι·
with-Alexander to-have-come Cleitus calling and to-say that
οὗτός τοι ἐγὼ ὁ Κλεῖτος, ὦ Ἀλέξανδρε· καὶ ἐν τούτῳ
here surely I — Cleitus O Alexander and in this
πληγέντα τῇ σαρίσσῃ ἀποθανεῖν.
struck with-the sarissa to-have-died
καὶ ἐγὼ Κλεῖτον μὲν τῆς ὕβρεως τῆς ἐς τὸν βασιλέα 9.1
and I Cleitus indeed for-the insolence the toward the king
τὸν αὑτοῦ μεγαλωστὶ μέμφομαι· Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ τῆς
the his-own greatly I-blame Alexander but for-the
συμφορᾶς οἰκτείρω, ὅτι δυοῖν κακοῖν ἐν τῷ τότε ἡττημένον
misfortune I-pity because by-two evils in the then defeated
ἐπέδειξεν αὑτόν, ὑφ' ὅτων δὴ καὶ τοῦ ἑτέρου οὐκ ἐπέοικεν
he-showed himself by which indeed also the one not it-befits
ἄνδρα σωφρονοῦντα ἐξηττᾶσθαι, ὀργῆς τε καὶ παροινίας.
a-man temperate to-be-defeated by-anger both and by-drunkenness
ἀλλὰ τὰ ἐπὶ τοῖσδε αὖ ἐπαινῶ Ἀλεξάνδρου, ὅτι 9.2
but the-things after these again I-praise of-Alexander that
παραυτίκα ἔγνω σχέτλιον ἔργον ἐργασάμενος. καὶ
at-once he-recognized a-cruel deed having-done and
λέγουσιν εἰσὶν οἳ ὅτι ἐρείσας τὴν σάρισσαν πρὸς τὸν
they-say there-are who that having-fixed the sarissa against the
τοῖχον ἐπιπίπτειν ἐγνώκει αὐτῇ, ὡς οὐ καλὸν αὐτῷ ζῆν
wall to-fall-upon had-resolved it as not good for-him to-live
ἀποκτείναντι φίλον αὑτοῦ ἐν οἴνῳ.
having-killed a-friend his-own in wine
οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ ξυγγραφεῖς τοῦτο μὲν οὐ λέγουσιν, ἀπελθόντα 9.3
the many but historians this indeed not say having-gone-away
δὲ ἐς τὴν εὐνὴν κεῖσθαι ὀδυρόμενον, αὐτόν τε τὸν Κλεῖτον
but to the bed to-lie lamenting himself both — Cleitus
ὀνομαστὶ ἀνακαλοῦντα καὶ τὴν Κλείτου μὲν ἀδελφήν,
by-name calling and the of-Cleitus indeed sister

αὐτὸν δὲ ἀναθρεψαμένην, Λανίκην τὴν Δρωπίδου παῖδα, ὡς
him and having-reared Lanice the of-Dropides daughter how
καλὰ ἄρα αὐτῇ τροφεῖα ἀποτετικὼς εἴη ἀνδρωθείς,
fine then to-her nursing-wages having-repaid he-had having-grown-to-manhood
9.4 ἥ γε τοὺς μὲν παῖδας τοὺς ἑαυτῆς ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ
who at-least the indeed sons the her-own for him
μαχομένους ἐπεῖδεν ἀποθανόντας, τὸν ἀδελφὸν δὲ αὐτῆς
fighting had-seen having-died the brother but her
αὐτὸς αὐτοχειρίᾳ ἔκτεινε· φονέα τε τῶν φίλων οὐ
he-himself with-his-own-hand killed a-murderer both of-the friends not
διαλείπειν αὑτὸν ἀνακαλοῦντα, ἄσιτόν τε καὶ ἄποτον
to-cease himself calling without-food both and without-drink
καρτερεῖν ἔστε ἐπὶ τρεῖς ἡμέρας, οὐδέ τινα ἄλλην
to-persevere as-far to three days nor any other
θεραπείαν θεραπεῦσαι τὸ σῶμα.
care to-take-care-of the body
9.5 καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις τῶν μάντεών τινες μῆνιν ἐκ Διονύσου
and on these of-the seers some wrath from Dionysus
ᾖδον, ὅτι ἡ θυσία ἐξελείφθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἡ τοῦ
sang because the sacrifice had-been-omitted by-Alexander the —
Διονύσου. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος μόγις πρὸς τῶν ἑταίρων
of-Dionysus and Alexander with-difficulty by the companions
πεισθεὶς σίτου τε ἥψατο καὶ τὸ σῶμα κακῶς ἐθεράπευσε·
persuaded of-food both took and the body poorly cared-for
καὶ τῷ Διονύσῳ τὴν θυσίαν ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ οὐδὲ αὐτῷ
and — to-Dionysus the sacrifice paid since not-even to-him
ἄκοντι ἦν ἐς μῆνιν τοῦ θείου μᾶλλόν τι ἢ τὴν
unwilling was to wrath of-the divine more somewhat than the
αὐτοῦ κακότητα ἀναφέρεσθαι τὴν ξυμφοράν.
his-own wickedness to-be-referred the misfortune

ταῦτα μεγαλωστὶ ἐπαινῶ Ἀλεξάνδρου, τὸ μήτε 9.6
these-things greatly I-praise of-Alexander the neither
ἀπαυθαδιάσασθαι ἐπὶ κακῷ, μήτε προστάτην τε καὶ
to-be-obstinate in evil nor champion both and
ξυνήγορον κακίονα ἔτι γενέσθαι τοῦ ἁμαρτηθέντος, ἀλλὰ
advocate worse still to-become of-the wrong-done but
ξυμφῆσαι γὰρ ἐπταικέναι ἄνθρωπόν γε ὄντα.
to-agree for to-have-erred man at-least being
εἰσὶ δὲ οἳ λέγουσιν Ἀνάξαρχον τὸν σοφιστὴν ἐλθεῖν μὲν 9.7
there-are and who say Anaxarchus the sophist to-have-come indeed
παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον κληθέντα, ὡς παραμυθησόμενον· εὑρόντα
to Alexander summoned as about-to-console having-found
δὲ κείμενον καὶ ἐπιστένοντα, ἀγνοεῖν, φάναι ἐπιγελάσαντα,
and lying and groaning to-be-ignorant to-say having-laughed-at-him
διότι ἐπὶ τῷδε οἱ πάλαι σοφοὶ ἄνδρες τὴν Δίκην πάρεδρον
that for this the of-old wise men — Justice as-assessor
τῷ Διὶ ἐποίησαν ὡς ὅ τι ἂν πρὸς τοῦ Διὸς κυρωθῇ,
— to-Zeus made so-that what ever — by — Zeus should-be-ratified
τοῦτο ξὺν δίκῃ πεπραγμένον. καὶ οὖν καὶ τὰ ἐκ βασιλέως
this with justice done and then also the-things from king
μεγάλου γιγνόμενα δίκαια χρῆναι νομίζεσθαι, πρῶτα μὲν
great happening just to-be-necessary to-be-considered first indeed
πρὸς αὐτοῦ βασιλέως, ἔπειτα πρὸς τῶν ἄλλων ἀνθρώπων.
by himself king then by the other men
ταῦτα εἰπόντα παραμυθήσασθαι μὲν Ἀλέξανδρον ἐν 9.8
these-things having-said to-have-consoled indeed Alexander in
τῷ τότε, κακὸν δὲ μέγα, ὡς ἐγώ φημι, ἐξεργάσασθαι
the then evil but great as I say to-have-wrought
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ μεῖζον ἔτι ἢ ὅτῳ τότε ξυνείχετο,
for-Alexander and greater still than with-which then he-was-afflicted
εἴπερ οὖν σοφοῦ ἀνδρὸς τήνδε ἔγνω τὴν δόξαν, ὡς
if-indeed then of-a-wise man this he-recognized the opinion that

οὐ τὰ δίκαια ἄρα χρὴ σπουδῇ ἐπιλεγόμενον πράττειν
not the just then it-is-necessary with-zeal choosing to-do
τὸν βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ ὅ τι ἂν καὶ ὅπως οὖν ἐκ
the king but what ever — and in-whatever-way then by
βασιλέως πραχθῇ, τοῦτο δίκαιον νομίζειν.
king should-be-done this just to-consider
9.9 ἐπεὶ καὶ προσκυνεῖσθαι ἐθέλειν Ἀλέξανδρον λόγος κατέχει,
since also to-receive-obeisance to-wish Alexander a-story holds
ὑπούσης μὲν αὐτῷ καὶ τῆς ἀμφὶ τοῦ Ἄμμωνος πατρὸς
being-present indeed in-him also of-the about — Ammon as-father
μᾶλλόν τι ἢ Φιλίππου δόξης, θαυμάζοντα δὲ ἤδη
more somewhat than Philip belief admiring and already
τὰ Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων τῆς τε ἐσθῆτος τῇ ἀμείψει καὶ
the-things of-Persians and Medes of-the both dress in-the change and
τῆς ἄλλης θεραπείας τῇ μετακοσμήσει. οὐκ ἐνδεῆσαι
of-the other attendance in-the rearrangement not to-have-been-lacking
δὲ οὐδὲ πρὸς τοῦτο αὐτῷ τοὺς κολακείᾳ ἐς αὐτὸ
and even for this to-him the by-flattery to it
ἐνδιδόντας, ἄλλους τέ τινας καὶ δὴ καὶ τῶν σοφιστῶν
giving-in others both some and indeed also of-the sophists
τῶν ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν Ἀνάξαρχόν τε καὶ Ἆγιν Ἀργεῖον, ἐποποιόν.
the around him Anaxarchus both and Agis an-Argive epic-poet

Callisthenes disapproves of the flattery, and Arrian agrees, but he is said to have boasted that Alexander's fame depended on his history, and to have told Philotas that Athens would shelter a tyrant-slayer. By arrangement with Alexander, Anaxarchus proposes at a banquet that the Macedonians honor him as a god now rather than after his death. Callisthenes answers that men and gods are honored differently, that Heracles was not worshiped while he lived, and that free Greeks will not do obeisance. Alexander is pained, the Macedonians are pleased, and he forbids further talk of it. Leonnatus laughs at a Persian's bow. Another account has Callisthenes drink the pledge without bowing and be refused a kiss. Arrian faults both Alexander's insolence and Callisthenes' rudeness, which made the charge that he shared the pages' plot easy to believe.

Καλλισθένην δὲ τὸν Ὀλύνθιον Ἀριστοτέλους τε τῶν 10.1
Callisthenes and the Olynthian of-Aristotle both the
λόγων διακηκοότα καὶ τὸν τρόπον ὄντα ὑπαγροικότερον
lectures having-heard and in-the manner being rather-boorish
οὐκ ἐπαινεῖν ταῦτα. τούτου μὲν δὴ ἕνεκα καὶ αὐτὸς
not to-approve these-things of-this indeed indeed for-the-sake also I-myself
Καλλισθένει ξυμφέρομαι, ἐκεῖνα δὲ οὐκέτι ἐπιεικῆ δοκῶ
with-Callisthenes agree those-things but no-longer reasonable I-think
τοῦ Καλλισθένους, εἴπερ ἀληθῆ ξυγγέγραπται, ὅτι ὑφ'
— of-Callisthenes if-indeed true it-has-been-written that under
αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπέφαινε καὶ τῇ αὐτοῦ ξυγγραφῇ Ἀλέξανδρόν
himself to-be he-declared and on-the his-own history Alexander
τε καὶ τὰ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἔργα,
both and the of-Alexander deeds
οὔκουν αὐτὸς ἀφῖχθαι ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου δόξαν κτησόμενος, 10.2
not-therefore himself to-have-come from Alexander glory about-to-acquire
ἀλλὰ ἐκεῖνον εὐκλεᾶ ἐς ἀνθρώπους ποιήσων· καὶ οὖν
but him famous among men about-to-make and then

καὶ τοῦ θείου τὴν μετουσίαν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ οὐκ ἐξ ὧν
also of-the divine the share for-Alexander not from what
Ὀλυμπιὰς ὑπὲρ τῆς γενέσεως αὐτοῦ ψεύδεται ἀνηρτῆσθαι,
Olympias about the birth his lies to-depend
ἀλλὰ ἐξ ὧν ἂν αὐτὸς ὑπὲρ Ἀλεξάνδρου ξυγγράψας
but from what — he-himself about Alexander having-written
ἐξενέγκῃ ἐς ἀνθρώπους.
should-publish among men

10.3 εἰσὶ δὲ οἳ καὶ τάδε ἀνέγραψαν, ὡς ἄρα ἤρετο αὐτόν
there-are and who also these-things recorded that then asked him
ποτε Φιλώτας ὅντινα οἴοιτο μάλιστα τιμηθῆναι πρὸς
once Philotas whom he-thought most to-have-been-honored by
τῆς Ἀθηναίων πόλεως· τὸν δὲ ἀποκρίνασθαι Ἁρμόδιον
the of-Athenians city him and to-have-answered Harmodius
καὶ Ἀριστογείτονα, ὅτι τὸν ἕτερον τοῖν τυράννοιν
and Aristogeiton because the one of-the-two tyrants
ἔκτειναν καὶ τυραννίδα ὅτι κατέλυσαν.
they-killed and tyranny because they-put-down

10.4 ἐρέσθαι δὲ αὖθις τὸν Φιλώταν εἰ τῷ τύραννον
to-have-asked and again — Philotas if for-one tyrant
κτείναντι ὑπάρχοι παρ᾽ οὕστινας ἐθέλει τῶν Ἑλλήνων
having-killed it-would-be-possible among whichever he-wishes of-the Greeks
φυγόντα σώζεσθαι· καὶ ἀποκρίνασθαι αὖθις Καλλισθένην,
having-fled to-be-safe and to-have-answered again Callisthenes
εἰ καὶ μὴ παρ᾽ ἄλλους, παρά γε Ἀθηναίους ὅτι
if even not among others among at-least Athenians that
φυγόντι ὑπάρχοι σώζεσθαι. τούτους γὰρ καὶ πρὸς
for-one-having-fled it-would-be-possible to-be-safe these for also against
Εὐρυσθέα πολεμῆσαι ὑπὲρ τῶν παίδων τῶν Ἡρακλέους,
Eurystheus to-have-made-war for the children — of-Heracles
τυραννοῦντα ἐν τῷ τότε τῆς Ἑλλάδος.
being-tyrant in the then — of-Greece

ὑπὲρ δὲ τῆς προσκυνήσεως ὅπως ἠναντιώθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, 10.5
about and the obeisance how he-opposed Alexander
καὶ τοιόσδε κατέχει λόγος. ξυγκεῖσθαι μὲν γὰρ τῷ
also such holds account to-have-been-agreed indeed for —
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πρὸς τοὺς σοφιστάς τε καὶ τοὺς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν
with-Alexander with the sophists both and the around him
Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων τοὺς δοκιμωτάτους μνήμην τοῦ λόγου
of-Persians and Medes the most-esteemed mention of-the talk
τοῦδε ἐν πότῳ ἐμβαλεῖν·
this at drinking-party to-introduce
ἄρξαι δὲ τοῦ λόγου Ἀνάξαρχον, ὡς πολὺ δικαιότερον 10.6
to-have-begun and the talk Anaxarchus that far more-justly
ἂν θεὸν νομιζόμενον Ἀλέξανδρον Διονύσου τε καὶ
— a-god being-considered Alexander than-Dionysus both and
Ἡρακλέους, μὴ ὅτι τῶν ἔργων ἕνεκα ὅσα καὶ ἡλίκα
Heracles not only of-the deeds for-the-sake as-many-as and how-great
καταπέπρακται Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅτι Διόνυσος μὲν
have-been-accomplished by-Alexander but also because Dionysus indeed
Θηβαῖος ἦν, οὐδέν τι προσήκων Μακεδόσι, καὶ Ἡρακλῆς
a-Theban was not at-all belonging to-Macedonians and Heracles
Ἀργεῖος, οὐδὲ οὗτος προσήκων ὅτι μὴ κατὰ γένος τὸ
an-Argive nor this-one belonging except — by descent the
Ἀλεξάνδρου· Ἡρακλείδην γὰρ εἶναι Ἀλέξανδρον·
of-Alexander a-Heracleid for to-be Alexander
Μακεδόνας δὲ ἂν τὸν σφῶν βασιλέα δικαιότερον 10.7
Macedonians and — the their king more-justly
θείαις τιμαῖς κοσμοῦντας. καὶ γὰρ οὐδὲ ἐκεῖνο εἶναι
with-divine honors adorning and for not-even that to-be
ἀμφίλογον ὅτι ἀπελθόντα γε ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ὡς θεὸν
disputable that having-departed at-least from men as a-god

τιμήσουσι· πόσῳ δὴ δικαιότερον ζῶντα γεραίρειν ἢπερ
they-will-honor by-how-much indeed more-justly living to-honor than
τελευτήσαντα ἐς οὐδὲν ὄφελος τῷ τιμωμένῳ.
having-died for no benefit to-the honored

11.1 λεχθέντων δὲ τούτων τε καὶ τοιούτων λόγων πρὸς
having-been-said and these both and such words by
Ἀναξάρχου τοὺς μὲν μετεσχηκότας τῆς βουλῆς ἐπαινεῖν
Anaxarchus the indeed having-shared of-the plan to-approve
τὸν λόγον καὶ δὴ ἐθέλειν ἄρχεσθαι τῆς προσκυνήσεως,
the speech and indeed to-wish to-begin of-the obeisance
τοὺς Μακεδόνας δὲ τοὺς πολλοὺς ἀχθομένους τῷ λόγῳ
the Macedonians and the many being-vexed at-the speech
σιγῇ ἔχειν.
in-silence to-keep

11.2 Καλλισθένην δὲ ὑπολαβόντα, Ἀλέξανδρον μέν, εἰπεῖν,
Callisthenes and having-taken-up Alexander indeed to-have-said
ὦ Ἀνάξαρχε, οὐδεμιᾶς ἀνάξιον ἀποφαίνω τιμῆς ὅσαι
O Anaxarchus of-no unworthy I-declare honor as-many-as
ξύμμετροι ἀνθρώπῳ· ἀλλὰ διακεκρίσθαι γὰρ τοῖς
befitting for-a-man but to-have-been-distinguished for by-the
ἀνθρώποις ὅσαι τε ἀνθρώπιναι τιμαὶ καὶ ὅσαι θεῖαι
men as-many-as both human honors and as-many-as divine
πολλοῖς μὲν καὶ ἄλλοις, καθάπερ ναῶν τε οἰκοδομήσει
by-many indeed also others as of-temples both by-building
καὶ ἀγαλμάτων ἀναστάσει καὶ τεμένη ὅτι τοῖς θεοῖς
and of-statues by-setting-up and precincts that for-the gods
ἐξαιρεῖται καὶ θύεται ἐκείνοις καὶ σπένδεται, καὶ ὕμνοι
are-set-apart and sacrifice-is-made to-them and libation-is-made and hymns
μὲν ἐς τοὺς θεοὺς ποιοῦνται, ἔπαινοι δὲ ἐς ἀνθρώπους, —
indeed to the gods are-composed praises and to men
ἀτὰρ οὐχ ἥκιστα τῷ τῆς προσκυνήσεως νόμῳ.
but not least by-the of-the obeisance custom

τοὺς μὲν γὰρ ἀνθρώπους φιλεῖσθαι πρὸς τῶν ἀσπαζομένων, 11.3
the indeed for men to-be-kissed by the greeting
τὸ θεῖον δέ, ὅτι ἄνω που ἱδρυμένον καὶ οὐδὲ ψαῦσαι
the divine but because above somewhere set and not-even to-touch
αὐτοῦ θέμις, ἐπὶ τῷδε ἄρα τῇ προσκυνήσει γεραίρεται,
it lawful for this then with-the obeisance is-honored
καὶ χοροὶ τοῖς θεοῖς ἵστανται καὶ παιᾶνες ἐπὶ τοῖς θεοῖς
and choruses for-the gods are-set-up and paeans for the gods
ᾄδονται. καὶ οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ὁπότε γε καὶ αὐτῶν
are-sung and nothing wonderful since at-least also of-the-very
τῶν θεῶν ἄλλοις ἄλλαι τιμαὶ πρόσκεινται, καὶ ναὶ μὰ
the gods to-others other honors belong and yes by
Δία ἥρωσιν ἄλλαι, καὶ αὗται ἀποκεκριμέναι τοῦ θείου.
Zeus to-heroes other also these set-apart from-the divine
οὔκουν εἰκὸς ξύμπαντα ταῦτα ἀναταράσσοντας τοὺς 11.4
not-therefore likely all these-things confounding the
μὲν ἀνθρώπους ἐς σχῆμα ὑπέρογκον καθιστάναι τῶν
indeed men into a-form overweening to-put of-the
τιμῶν ταῖς ὑπερβολαῖς, τοὺς θεοὺς δὲ τό γε ἐπὶ
honors by-the excesses the gods and the at-least on
σφίσιν ἐς ταπεινότητα οὐ πρέπουσαν καταβάλλειν τὰ ἴσα
themselves to humiliation not befitting to-cast-down the equal
ἀνθρώποις τιμῶντας. οὔκουν οὐδὲ Ἀλέξανδρον ἀνασχέσθαι
to-men honoring not-therefore even Alexander to-have-endured
ἄν, εἰ τῶν ἰδιωτῶν τις εἰσποιοῖτο ταῖς βασιλικαῖς
— if of-the private-persons anyone should-intrude-himself on-the royal
τιμαῖς χειροτονίᾳ ἢ ψήφῳ οὐ δικαίᾳ.
honors by-show-of-hands or by-vote not just
πολὺ ἂν οὖν δικαιότερον τοὺς θεοὺς δυσχεραίνειν ὅσοι 11.5
much — then more-justly the gods to-be-indignant as-many-as
ἄνθρωποι ἐς τὰς θείας τιμὰς σφᾶς εἰσποιοῦσιν ἢ πρὸς
men into the divine honors themselves intrude or by

ἄλλων εἰσποιούμενοι ἀνέχονται. Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ πόρρω
others being-intruded endure Alexander and far-beyond
τοῦ ἱκανοῦ ἀνδρῶν ἀγαθῶν τὸν ἄριστον εἶναί τε καὶ
the sufficient of-men good the best to-be both and
δοκεῖν, καὶ βασιλέων τὸν βασιλικώτατον καὶ στρατηγῶν
to-seem and of-kings the most-kingly and of-generals
τὸν ἀξιοστρατηγότατον.
the most-worthy-to-command

11.6 καὶ σέ, εἴπερ τινὰ ἄλλον, ὦ Ἀνάξαρχε, εἰσηγητήν τε
and you if-indeed anyone else O Anaxarchus introducer both
τούτων τῶν λόγων ἐχρῆν γίγνεσθαι καὶ κωλυτὴν τῶν
of-these the words it-was-necessary to-be and preventer of-the
ἐναντίων, ἐπὶ σοφίᾳ τε καὶ παιδεύσει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
contrary on-account-of wisdom both and education with-Alexander
ξυνόντα. οὔκουν ἄρχειν γε τοῦδε τοῦ λόγου πρέπον
being-associated not-therefore to-begin at-least this the speech fitting
ἦν, ἀλλὰ μεμνῆσθαι γὰρ οὐ Καμβύσῃ οὐδὲ Ξέρξῃ
it-was but to-remember for not with-Cambyses nor with-Xerxes
ξυνόντα ἢ ξυμβουλεύοντα, ἀλλὰ Φιλίππου μὲν παιδί,
being-associated or advising but of-Philip indeed with-the-son
Ἡρακλείδῃ δὲ ἀπὸ γένους καὶ Αἰακίδῃ, ὅτου οἱ πρόγονοι
a-Heracleid and by family and an-Aeacid whose the ancestors
ἐξ Ἄργους ἐς Μακεδονίαν ἦλθον, οὐδὲ βίᾳ, ἀλλὰ νόμῳ
from Argos to Macedonia came and-not by-force but by-law
Μακεδόνων ἄρχοντες διετέλεσαν.
of-Macedonians ruling continued

11.7 οὔκουν οὐδὲ αὐτῷ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ζῶντι ἔτι θεῖαι τιμαὶ
not-therefore even himself — to-Heracles living still divine honors
παρ᾽ Ἑλλήνων ἐγένοντο, ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ τελευτήσαντι πρόσθεν
from Greeks came but not-even having-died before
ἢ πρὸς τοῦ θεοῦ τοῦ ἐν Δελφοῖς ἐπιθεσπισθῆναι ὡς
than by the god the in Delphi to-have-been-ordained-by-oracle as

θεὸν τιμᾶν Ἡρακλέα. εἰ δέ, ὅτι ἐν τῇ βαρβάρῳ γῇ οἱ
a-god to-honor Heracles if but because in the barbarian land the
λόγοι γίγνονται, βαρβαρικὰ χρὴ ἔχειν τὰ φρονήματα,
words take-place barbarian it-is-necessary to-have the thoughts
καὶ ἐγὼ τῆς Ἑλλάδος μεμνῆσθαί σε ἀξιῶ, ὦ Ἀλέξανδρε,
also I — of-Greece to-remember you I-ask O Alexander
ἧς ἕνεκα ὁ πᾶς στόλος σοι ἐγένετο, προσθεῖναι
of-which for-the-sake the whole expedition for-you was to-add
τὴν Ἀσίαν τῇ Ἑλλάδι.
— Asia — to-Greece
καὶ οὖν ἐνθυμήθητι, ἐκεῖσε ἐπανελθὼν ἆρά γε καὶ τοὺς 11.8
and then consider there having-returned whether at-least also the
Ἕλληνας τοὺς ἐλευθερωτάτους προσαναγκάσεις ἐς τὴν
Greeks the freest you-will-compel into the
προσκύνησιν, ἢ Ἑλλήνων μὲν ἀφέξῃ, Μακεδόσι δὲ
obeisance or from-Greeks indeed you-will-abstain on-Macedonians but
προσθήσεις τήνδε τὴν ἀτιμίαν, ἢ διακεκριμένα ἔσται σοι
you-will-impose this the dishonor or distinguished will-be by-you
αὐτῷ τὰ τῶν τιμῶν ἐς ἅπαν, ὡς πρὸς Ἑλλήνων μὲν
yourself the-things of-the honors in all so-as by Greeks indeed
καὶ Μακεδόνων ἀνθρωπίνως τε καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς τιμᾶσθαι,
and Macedonians humanly both and in-Greek-fashion to-be-honored
πρὸς δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων μόνων βαρβαρικῶς;
by but the barbarians only barbarically
εἰ δὲ ὑπὲρ Κύρου τοῦ Καμβύσου λέγεται πρῶτον 11.9
if and about Cyrus the (son)-of-Cambyses it-is-said first
προσκυνηθῆναι ἀνθρώπων Κῦρον καὶ ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐμμεῖναι
to-have-received-obeisance of-men Cyrus and for this to-have-persisted
Πέρσαις τε καὶ Μήδοις τήνδε τὴν ταπεινότητα, χρὴ
among-Persians both and Medes this the humiliation it-is-necessary
ἐνθυμεῖσθαι ὅτι τὸν Κῦρον ἐκεῖνον Σκύθαι ἐσωφρόνισαν,
to-consider that — Cyrus that Scythians chastened

πένητες ἄνδρες καὶ αὐτόνομοι, καὶ Δαρεῖον ἄλλοι αὖ
poor men and independent and Darius others again
Σκύθαι, καὶ Ξέρξην Ἀθηναῖοι καὶ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ
Scythians and Xerxes Athenians and Lacedaemonians and
Ἀρτοξέρξην Κλέαρχος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ξὺν τούτοις
Artaxerxes Clearchus and Xenophon and the with these
μύριοι, καὶ Δαρεῖον τοῦτον Ἀλέξανδρος μὴ προσκυνούμενος.
ten-thousand and Darius this Alexander not receiving-obeisance

12.1 ταῦτα δὴ καὶ τοιαῦτα εἰπόντα Καλλισθένην ἀνιᾶσαι
these-things indeed and such having-said Callisthenes to-have-pained
μὲν μεγαλωστὶ Ἀλέξανδρον, Μακεδόσι δὲ πρὸς θυμοῦ
indeed greatly Alexander to-Macedonians but according-to heart
εἰπεῖν. καὶ τοῦτο γνόντα Ἀλέξανδρον πέμψαντα
to-have-spoken and this having-perceived Alexander having-sent
κωλῦσαι μεμνῆσθαι ἔτι τῆς προσκυνήσεως.
to-have-prevented to-mention any-longer the obeisance

12.2 ἀλλὰ σιγῆς γὰρ γενομένης ἐπὶ τοῖς λόγοις ἀναστάντας
but silence for having-fallen at the words having-risen
Περσῶν τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους ἐφεξῆς προσκυνεῖν. Λεοννάτου
of-Persians the oldest in-order to-do-obeisance Leonnatus
δέ, ἕνα τῶν ἑταίρων, ἐπειδή τις ἐδόκει τῶν Περσῶν
and one of-the companions when some-one seemed of-the Persians
αὐτῷ οὐκ ἐν κόσμῳ προσκυνῆσαι, τὸν δὲ ἐπιγελάσαι τῷ
to-him not in good-form to-have-done-obeisance him and to-have-laughed at-the
σχήματι τοῦ Περσοῦ ὡς ταπεινῷ· καὶ τούτῳ χαλεπήναντα
posture of-the Persian as abject and with-him having-been-angered
τότε Ἀλέξανδρον ξυναλλαγῆναι αὖθις. ἀναγέγραπται δὲ
then Alexander to-have-been-reconciled again has-been-recorded and
δὴ καὶ τοιόσδε λόγος.
indeed also such an-account

προπίνειν φιάλην χρυσῆν ἐν κύκλῳ Ἀλέξανδρον πρώτοις 12.3
to-pledge a-bowl golden in circle Alexander first
μὲν τούτοις πρὸς οὕστινας ξυνέκειτο αὐτῷ τὰ τῆς
indeed to-these with whom had-been-agreed by-him the-matter of-the
προσκυνήσεως, τὸν δὲ πρῶτον ἐκπιόντα τὴν φιάλην
obeisance the and first having-drunk-off the bowl
προσκυνῆσαί τε ἀναστάντα καὶ φιληθῆναι πρὸς αὐτοῦ,
to-have-done-obeisance both having-risen and to-have-been-kissed by him
καὶ τοῦτο ἐφεξῆς διὰ πάντων χωρῆσαι.
and this in-order through all to-have-gone
ὡς δὲ ἐς Καλλισθένην ἦκεν ἡ πρόποσις, ἀναστῆναι μὲν 12.4
when and to Callisthenes came the pledging to-have-risen indeed
Καλλισθένην καὶ ἐκπιεῖν τὴν φιάλην, καὶ προσελθόντα
Callisthenes and to-have-drunk-off the bowl and having-approached
ἐθέλειν φιλῆσαι οὐ προσκυνήσαντα. τὸν δὲ τυχεῖν
to-wish to-kiss not having-done-obeisance him and to-have-happened
μὲν τότε διαλεγόμενον Ἡφαιστίωνι· οὔκουν προσέχειν
indeed then conversing with-Hephaestion not-therefore to-pay
τὸν νοῦν, εἰ καὶ τὰ τῆς προσκυνήσεως ἐπιτελῆ
the attention whether also the-matter of-the obeisance completed
τῷ Καλλισθένει ἐγένετο.
— by-Callisthenes was
ἀλλὰ Δημήτριον γὰρ τὸν Πυθώνακτος, ἕνα τῶν ἑταίρων, 12.5
but Demetrius for the (son)-of-Pythonax one of-the companions
ὡς προσήει αὐτῷ ὁ Καλλισθένης φιλήσων, φάναι ὅτι οὐ
as approached him — Callisthenes about-to-kiss to-say that not
προσκυνήσας πρόσεισιν. καὶ τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον οὐ παρασχεῖν
having-done-obeisance he-approaches and — Alexander not to-allow
φιλῆσαι ἑαυτόν· τὸν δὲ Καλλισθένην, φιλήματι, φάναι,
to-kiss himself — and Callisthenes by-a-kiss to-say
ἔλαττον ἔχων ἄπειμι.
less having I-go-away

12.6 καὶ τούτων ἐγώ, ὅσα ἐς ὕβριν τε τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου
and of-these I as-much-as to insolence both the of-Alexander
τὴν ἐν τῷ παραυτίκα καὶ ἐς σκαιότητα τὴν Καλλισθένους
the in the moment and to boorishness the of-Callisthenes
φέροντα, οὐδὲν οὐδαμῇ ἐπαινῶ, ἀλλὰ τὸ καθ' αὑτὸν γὰρ
tending nothing in-any-way I-praise but the as-regards himself for
κοσμίως τίθεσθαι ἐξαρκεῖν φημί, αὔξοντα ὡς ἀνυστὸν
in-orderly-manner to-conduct to-suffice I-say exalting as far-as-possible
τὰ βασιλέως πράγματα ὅτῳ τις ξυνεῖναι οὐκ ἀπηξίωσεν.
the of-a-king affairs with-whom one to-associate not refused

12.7 οὔκουν ἀπεικότως δι' ἀπεχθείας γενέσθαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
not-therefore unreasonably into hatred to-have-come for-Alexander
Καλλισθένην τίθεμαι ἐπὶ τῇ ἀκαίρῳ τε παρρησίᾳ καὶ
Callisthenes I-consider for the untimely both frankness and
ὑπερόγκῳ ἀβελτερίᾳ. ἐφ' ὅτῳ τεκμαίρομαι μὴ χαλεπῶς
overweening folly from which I-infer not with-difficulty
πιστευθῆναι τοὺς κατειπόντας Καλλισθένους, ὅτι μετέσχε
to-have-been-believed the having-denounced Callisthenes that he-shared
τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς τῆς γενομένης Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐκ τῶν παίδων,
of-the plot the made against-Alexander from the pages
τοὺς δέ, ὅτι καὶ ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸς ἐς τὸ ἐπιβουλεῦσαι.
the-others and that also he-incited himself to the to-plot
ξυνέβη δὲ τὰ τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς ὧδε.
happened and the-things of-the plot thus

The pages, sons of leading Macedonians, serve the king, guard his sleep, and hunt with him. Hermolaus is flogged for striking a boar before Alexander and plots with his lover Sostratus and others to kill the king asleep. On their night of watch Alexander drinks till dawn, by chance say some, at a Syrian prophetess's urging says Aristobulus. Epimenes tells his lover, the plot reaches Ptolemy, and the pages, tortured, name others. Some say Hermolaus listed the king's crimes before the plotters were stoned. Aristobulus and Ptolemy say the pages named Callisthenes, most that Alexander's hatred made him believe it; Aristobulus has him die of disease in chains, Ptolemy racked and hanged.

ἐκ Φιλίππου ἦν ἤδη καθεστηκὸς τῶν ἐν τέλει Μακεδόνων 13.1
from Philip it-was already established of-the in office Macedonians
τοὺς παῖδας ὅσοι ἐς ἡλικίαν ἐμειρακιεύοντο καταλέγεσθαι
the sons as-many-as to age were-growing-up to-be-enrolled
ἐς θεραπείαν τοῦ βασιλέως, τά τε περὶ τὴν ἄλλην δίαιταν
for service of-the king the both about the other way-of-life
τοῦ σώματος διακονεῖσθαι βασιλεῖ καὶ κοιμώμενον φυλάσσειν
of-the body to-serve to-the-king and sleeping to-guard
τούτοις ἐπετέτραπτο. καὶ ὁπότε ἐξελαύνοι βασιλεύς, τοὺς
to-these had-been-entrusted and whenever rode-out the-king the
ἵππους παρὰ τῶν ἱπποκόμων δεχόμενοι ἐκεῖνοι προσῆγον
horses from the grooms receiving they brought-up
καὶ ἀνέβαλλον οὗτοι βασιλέα τὸν Περσικὸν τρόπον καὶ
and set-on-horseback these the-king the Persian manner and
τῆς ἐπὶ θήρᾳ φιλοτιμίας βασιλεῖ κοινωνοὶ ἦσαν.
of-the in hunting rivalry with-the-king partners were
τούτων καὶ Ἑρμόλαος ἦν, Σωπόλιδος μὲν παῖς, φιλοσοφίᾳ 13.2
of-these also Hermolaus was of-Sopolis indeed son to-philosophy
δὲ ἐδόκει προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν καὶ Καλλισθένην θεραπεύειν
and seemed to-apply the mind and Callisthenes to-court

ἐπὶ τῷδε. ὑπὲρ τούτου λόγος κατέχει, ὅτι ἐν θήρᾳ
for this about him an-account holds that in hunting
προσφερομένου Ἀλεξάνδρῳ συὸς ἔφθη βαλὼν τὸν σῦν
charging-at Alexander a-boar anticipated having-struck the boar
ὁ Ἑρμόλαος· καὶ ὁ μὲν σῦς πίπτει βληθείς, Ἀλέξανδρος
— Hermolaus and the indeed boar falls struck Alexander
δὲ τοῦ καιροῦ ὑστερήσας ἐχαλέπηνε τῷ Ἑρμολάῳ καὶ
and the opportunity having-missed was-angry — with-Hermolaus and
κελεύει αὐτὸν πρὸς ὀργὴν πληγὰς λαβεῖν ὁρώντων τῶν
orders him in anger blows to-receive watching the
ἄλλων παίδων, καὶ τὸν ἵππον αὐτοῦ ἀφείλετο.
other pages and the horse his he-took-away
13.3 τοῦτον τὸν Ἑρμόλαον ἀλγήσαντα τῇ ὕβρει φράσαι πρὸς
this — Hermolaus pained at-the insult to-tell to
Σώστρατον τὸν Ἀμύντου, ἡλικιώτην τε ἑαυτοῦ καὶ
Sostratus the (son)-of-Amyntas age-mate both his-own and
ἐραστὴν ὄντα, ὅτι οὐ βιωτόν οἱ ἐστι μὴ τιμωρησαμένῳ
lover being that not livable for-him it-is not having-punished
Ἀλέξανδρον τῆς ὕβρεως, καὶ τὸν Σώστρατον οὐ χαλεπῶς
Alexander for-the insult and — Sostratus not with-difficulty
συμπεῖσαι μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου, ἅτε ἐρῶντα.
to-persuade to-share-in the deed inasmuch-as loving-(him)
13.4 ὑπὸ τούτων δὲ ἀναπεισθῆναι Ἀντίπατρόν τε τὸν
by these and to-have-been-persuaded Antipater both the
Ἀσκληπιοδώρου τοῦ Συρίας σατραπεύσαντος καὶ Ἐπιμένην
(son)-of-Asclepiodorus of-the of-Syria having-been-satrap and Epimenes
τὸν Ἀρσαίου καὶ Ἀντικλέα τὸν Θεοκρίτου καὶ Φιλώταν
the (son)-of-Arsaeus and Anticles the (son)-of-Theocritus and Philotas
τὸν Κάρσιδος τοῦ Θρᾳκός. ὡς οὖν περιῆκεν ἐς Ἀντίπατρον
the (son)-of-Carsis the Thracian when then came-round to Antipater

ἡ νυκτερινὴ φυλακή, ταύτῃ τῇ νυκτὶ ξυγκείμενον εἶναι
the night watch on-this the night agreed to-be
ἀποκτεῖναι Ἀλέξανδρον, κοιμωμένῳ ἐπιπεσόντας.
to-kill Alexander him-sleeping having-fallen-upon
ξυμβῆναι δὲ οἱ μὲν αὐτομάτως λέγουσιν ἔστε 13.5
to-have-happened and the-ones indeed by-chance say until
ἐφ' ἡμέραν πίνειν Ἀλέξανδρον, Ἀριστόβουλος δὲ ὧδε
into day to-drink Alexander Aristobulus and thus
ἀνέγραψε. Σύραν γυναῖκα ἐφομαρτεῖν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ κάτοχον
recorded a-Syrian woman to-follow Alexander possessed
ἐκ τοῦ θείου γιγνομένην· καὶ ταύτην τὸ μὲν πρῶτον
by the divine becoming and her the indeed first
γέλωτα εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ τε καὶ τοῖς ἀμφ' αὐτόν· ὡς
a-laughingstock to-be to-Alexander both and to-the around him when
δὲ τὰ πάντα ἐν τῇ κατοχῇ ἀληθεύουσα ἐφαίνετο,
and the-things all in the possession speaking-truly she-appeared
οὐκέτι ἀμελεῖσθαι ὑπ' Ἀλεξάνδρου, ἀλλ' εἶναι γὰρ τῇ
no-longer to-be-neglected by Alexander but to-be for for-the
Σύρᾳ πρόσοδον πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ νύκτωρ καὶ μεθ'
Syrian access to the king both by-night and by
ἡμέραν, καὶ καθεύδοντι πολλάκις ἤδη ἐπιστῆναι.
day and him-sleeping many-times already to-have-stood-over
καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε ἀπαλλασσομένου ἐκ τοῦ πότου 13.6
and indeed also then departing from the drinking-party
κατεχομένην ἐκ τοῦ θείου ἐντυχεῖν, καὶ δεῖσθαι ἐπανελθόντα
possessed by the divine to-have-met and to-beg having-returned
πίνειν ὅλην τὴν νύκτα· καὶ Ἀλέξανδρον θεῖόν τι εἶναι
to-drink whole the night and Alexander divine something to-be
νομίσαντα ἐπανελθεῖν τε καὶ πίνειν, καὶ οὕτως τοῖς
having-thought to-have-returned both and to-drink and thus for-the
παισὶ διαπεσεῖν τὸ ἔργον.
pages to-have-fallen-through the deed

13.7 τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ Ἐπιμένης ὁ Ἀρσαίου τῶν μετεχόντων
on-the and next-day Epimenes the (son)-of-Arsaeus of-the sharing
τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς φράζει τὴν πρᾶξιν Χαρικλεῖ τῷ Μενάνδρου,
of-the plot tells the deed to-Charicles the (son)-of-Menander
ἐραστῇ ἑαυτοῦ γεγονότι· Χαρικλῆς δὲ φράζει Εὐρυλόχῳ
lover his-own having-become Charicles and tells Eurylochus
τῷ ἀδελφῷ τῷ Ἐπιμένους. καὶ ὁ Εὐρύλοχος ἐλθὼν
the brother the of-Epimenes and — Eurylochus having-gone
ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ Λάγου
to the tent the of-Alexander to-Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus
τῷ σωματοφύλακι καταλέγει ἅπαν τὸ πρᾶγμα· ὁ δὲ
the bodyguard recounts all the matter he and
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἔφρασε. καὶ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ξυλλαβεῖν κελεύει
to-Alexander told and — Alexander to-arrest orders
ὧν τὰ ὀνόματα εἶπεν ὁ Εὐρύλοχος· καὶ οὗτοι
of-whom the names said — Eurylochus and these
στρεβλούμενοι σφῶν τε αὐτῶν κατεῖπον τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν
being-tortured of-them both selves denounced the plot
καί τινας καὶ ἄλλους ὠνόμασαν.
and some also others named

14.1 Ἀριστόβουλος μὲν λέγει ὅτι καὶ Καλλισθένην ἐπᾶραι σφᾶς
Aristobulus indeed says that also Callisthenes to-have-incited them
ἔφασαν ἐς τὸ τόλμημα· καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ὡσαύτως λέγει. οἱ
they-said to the daring-deed and Ptolemy likewise says the
δὲ πολλοὶ οὐ ταύτῃ λέγουσιν, ἀλλὰ διὰ μῖσος γὰρ τὸ ἤδη
but many not this-way say but because-of hatred for the already
ὂν πρὸς Καλλισθένην ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου καὶ ὅτι ὁ Ἑρμόλαος
being toward Callisthenes from Alexander and because — Hermolaus
ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ἐπιτήδειος ἦν τῷ Καλλισθένει, οὐ χαλεπῶς
to the most intimate was — with-Callisthenes not with-difficulty
πιστεῦσαι τὰ χείρω ὑπὲρ Καλλισθένους Ἀλέξανδρον.
to-have-believed the worse about Callisthenes Alexander

ἤδη δέ τινες καὶ τάδε ἀνέγραψαν, τὸν Ἑρμόλαον 14.2
already and some also these-things recorded — Hermolaus
προαχθέντα ἐς τοὺς Μακεδόνας ὁμολογεῖν τε
brought-forward before the Macedonians to-confess both
ἐπιβουλεῦσαι — καὶ γὰρ οὐκ εἶναι ἔτι ἐλευθέρῳ
to-have-plotted also for not to-be any-longer for-a-free
ἀνδρὶ φέρειν τὴν ὕβριν τὴν Ἀλεξάνδρου — πάντα
man to-bear the insolence the of-Alexander all-things
καταλέγοντα, τήν τε Φιλώτα οὐκ ἔνδικον τελευτὴν καὶ
recounting the both of-Philotas not just end and
τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ Παρμενίωνος ἔτι ἐκνομωτέραν καὶ
the of-the father his Parmenion still more-lawless and
τῶν ἄλλων τῶν τότε ἀποθανόντων, καὶ τὴν Κλείτου ἐν
of-the others the then having-died and the of-Cleitus in
μέθῃ ἀναίρεσιν, καὶ τὴν ἐσθῆτα τὴν Μηδικήν, καὶ τὴν
drunkenness killing and the dress the Median and the
προσκύνησιν τὴν βουλευθεῖσαν καὶ οὔπω πεπαυμένην, καὶ
obeisance the planned and not-yet ceased and
πότους τε καὶ ὕπνους τοὺς Ἀλεξάνδρου· ταῦτα οὐ
drinking-bouts both and sleeps the of-Alexander these-things not
φέροντα ἔτι ἐλευθερῶσαι ἐθελῆσαι ἑαυτόν τε καὶ τοὺς
bearing any-longer to-free to-have-wished himself both and the
ἄλλους Μακεδόνας. τοῦτον μὲν δὴ αὐτόν τε καὶ τοὺς ξὺν
other Macedonians him indeed indeed himself both and the with
αὐτῷ ξυλληφθέντας καταλευσθῆναι πρὸς τῶν παρόντων.
him arrested to-have-been-stoned by those present
Καλλισθένην δὲ Ἀριστόβουλος μὲν λέγει δεδεμένον ἐν 14.3
Callisthenes and Aristobulus indeed says bound in
πέδαις ξυμπεριάγεσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἔπειτα νόσῳ
fetters to-have-been-carried-around with-the army then by-disease
τελευτῆσαι, Πτολεμαῖος δὲ ὁ Λάγου στρεβλωθέντα καὶ
to-have-died Ptolemy but the (son)-of-Lagus having-been-tortured and

κρεμασθέντα ἀποθανεῖν. οὕτως οὐδὲ οἱ πάνυ πιστοὶ ἐς
hanged to-have-died so not-even the very trustworthy for
τὴν ἀφήγησιν καὶ ξυγγενόμενοι ἐν τῷ τότε Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
the narrative and having-been-with in the then-(time) Alexander
ὑπὲρ τῶν γνωρίμων τε καὶ οὐ λαθόντων σφᾶς ὅπως
about the well-known both and not having-escaped-notice them how
ἐπράχθη ξύμφωνα ἀνέγραψαν.
it-was-done consistent-things recorded

14.4 πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα ὑπὲρ τούτων αὐτῶν ἄλλοι
many and also other-things about these very-things others
ἄλλως ἀφηγήσαντο, ἀλλ᾽ ἐμοὶ ταῦτα ἀποχρῶντα ἔστω
otherwise narrated but for-me these-things sufficient let-be
ἀναγεγραμμένα. ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὐ πολλῷ ὕστερον
recorded these-things indeed indeed not much later
πραχθέντα ἐγὼ ἐν τοῖσδε τοῖς ἀμφὶ Κλεῖτον ξυνενεχθεῖσιν
done I in these the about Cleitus having-befallen
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἀνέγραψα, τούτοις μᾶλλόν τι οἰκεῖα
Alexander recorded these more somewhat akin
ὑπολαβὼν ἐς τὴν ἀφήγησιν.
having-judged-(them) for the narrative

The European Scythians offer a royal bride and alliance, and Pharasmanes of the Chorasmians offers to guide Alexander to the Colchians and Amazons. Alexander says India comes first and the Black Sea later. Springs of water and oil appear by his tent, which Aristander reads as toil followed by victory. He sweeps Sogdiana in five columns. Spitamenes raids Bactria and ambushes a relief party, and Craterus defeats his Massagetae. Coenus beats Spitamenes in battle, his allies desert him, and the Massagetae send his head to Alexander.

παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον δὲ ἦκεν καὶ αὖθις Σκυθῶν τῶν ἐκ 15.1
to Alexander and came also again of-Scythians the from
τῆς Εὐρώπης πρεσβεία ξὺν τοῖς πρέσβεσιν οἷς αὐτὸς ἐς
— Europe an-embassy with the envoys whom he-himself to
Σκύθας ἔστειλεν. ὁ μὲν δὴ τότε βασιλεὺς τῶν Σκυθῶν
Scythians sent the indeed indeed then king of-the Scythians
ὅτε οὗτοι ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπέμποντο τετελευτηκὼς
when these by Alexander were-sent having-died
ἐτύγχανεν, ἀδελφὸς δὲ ἐκείνου ἐβασίλευεν.
happened brother and his was-reigning
ἦν δὲ ὁ νοῦς τῆς πρεσβείας ἐθέλειν ποιεῖν πᾶν τὸ ἐξ 15.2
was and the intent of-the embassy to-be-willing to-do all the by
Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπαγγελλόμενον Σκύθας· καὶ δῶρα ἔφερον
Alexander being-enjoined Scythians and gifts they-brought
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Σκυθῶν ὅσα
for-Alexander from the king of-the Scythians as-many-as
μέγιστα νομίζεται ἐν Σκύθαις· καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα ὅτι
greatest are-esteemed among Scythians and the daughter that
ἐθέλει Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δοῦναι γυναῖκα βεβαιότητος οὕνεκα
he-wishes to-Alexander to-give as-wife of-security for-the-sake
τῆς πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον φιλίας τε καὶ ξυμμαχίας.
of-the toward Alexander friendship both and alliance

15.3 εἰ δὲ ἀπαξιοῖ τὴν Σκυθῶν βασίλισσαν γῆμαι Ἀλέξανδρος,
if but disdains the of-Scythians princess to-marry Alexander
ἀλλὰ τῶν γε σατραπῶν τῶν τῆς Σκυθικῆς χώρας καὶ
yet of-the at-least satraps of-the of-the Scythian country and
ὅσοι ἄλλοι δυνάσται κατὰ τὴν γῆν τὴν Σκυθίδα, τούτων
as-many-as other potentates throughout the land the Scythian of-these
τὰς παῖδας ἐθέλειν δοῦναι τοῖς πιστοτάτοις τῶν ἀμφ᾽
the daughters to-be-willing to-give to-the most-trusted of-the around
Ἀλέξανδρον· ἥξειν δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἔφασκεν, εἰ κελεύοιτο,
Alexander to-be-going-to-come and also himself he-said if he-were-bidden
ὡς παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἀκοῦσαι ὅσα ἐπαγγέλλοι.
so-as from himself Alexander to-hear as-much-as he-might-enjoin
15.4 ἀφίκετο δ᾽ ἐν τούτῳ παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον καὶ Φαρασμάνης ὁ
arrived and in this to Alexander also Pharasmanes the
Χορασμίων βασιλεὺς ξὺν ἱππεῦσι χιλίοις καὶ πεντακοσίοις.
of-Chorasmians king with horsemen thousand and five-hundred
ἔφασκεν δὲ ὁ Φαρασμάνης ὅμορος οἰκεῖν τῷ τε Κόλχων
said and — Pharasmanes neighboring to-dwell to-the both of-Colchians
γένει καὶ ταῖς γυναιξὶ ταῖς Ἀμαζόσι, καὶ εἰ θέλοι
race and to-the women the Amazons and if should-wish
Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπὶ Κόλχους τε καὶ Ἀμαζόνας ἐλάσας
Alexander against Colchians both and Amazons having-marched
καταστρέψασθαι τὰ ἐπὶ τὸν πόντον τὸν Εὔξεινον ταύτῃ
to-subdue the to the sea the Euxine there
καθήκοντα γένη, ὁδῶν τε ἡγεμὼν ἔσεσθαι ἐπηγγέλλετο
extending races of-roads both guide to-be-going-to-be he-promised
καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τῇ στρατιᾷ παρασκευάσειν.
and the provisions for-the army to-be-going-to-provide
15.5 τοῖς τε οὖν παρὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἥκουσι φιλάνθρωπα
to-the both then from the Scythians having-come kind
ἀποκρίνεται Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ ἐς τὸν τότε καιρὸν ξύμφορα,
answers Alexander and for the then occasion suitable

γάμου δὲ οὐδὲν δεῖσθαι Σκυθικοῦ, καὶ Φαρασμάνην
of-marriage but not-at-all to-need Scythian and Pharasmanes
ἐπαινέσας τε καὶ φιλίαν καὶ ξυμμαχίαν πρὸς αὐτὸν
having-praised both and friendship and alliance with him
ξυνθέμενος αὑτῷ μὲν τότε οὐκ ἔφη ἐν καιρῷ εἶναι
having-concluded for-himself indeed then not he-said in season to-be
ἐλαύνειν ἐπὶ τὸν Πόντον· Ἀρταβάζῳ δὲ τῷ Πέρσῃ,
to-march against — Pontus with-Artabazus and the Persian
ὅτῳ τὰ Βακτρίων ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐπετέτακτο, καὶ
to-whom the-affairs of-Bactrians by Alexander had-been-entrusted and
ὅσοι ἄλλοι πρόσχωροι τούτῳ σατράπαι ξυστήσας
as-many-as others neighboring to-him satraps having-introduced
Φαρασμάνην ἀποπέμπει ἐς τὰ ἤθη τὰ αὐτοῦ.
Pharasmanes he-sends-back to the haunts the his
αὑτῷ δὲ τὰ Ἰνδῶν ἔφη ἐν τῷ τότε μέλειν. 15.6
for-himself and the-affairs of-Indians he-said in the then-(time) to-be-of-concern
τούτους γὰρ καταστρεψάμενος πᾶσαν ἂν ἤδη ἔχειν τὴν
these for having-subdued all — already to-have —
Ἀσίαν· ἐχομένης δὲ τῆς Ἀσίας ἐπανιέναι ἂν ἐς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
Asia being-held and — Asia to-return — to — Greece
ἐκεῖθεν δ' ἐφ' Ἑλλησπόντου τε καὶ τῆς Προποντίδος ξὺν
thence and by-way-of Hellespont both and — Propontis with
τῇ δυνάμει πάσῃ τῇ τε ναυτικῇ καὶ τῇ πεζικῇ ἐλάσειν
the force whole the both naval and the land-force to-be-going-to-march
εἴσω τοῦ Πόντου· καὶ ἐς τὸ τότε ἠξίου ἀποθέσθαι
within — Pontus and for the then he-asked to-reserve
Φαρασμάνην ὅσα ἐν τῷ παραυτίκα ἐπηγγέλλετο.
Pharasmanes as-much-as at the present he-was-promising
αὐτὸς δὲ ἐπὶ τὸν Ὄξον τε ποταμὸν ᾖει αὖθις καὶ εἰς τὴν 15.7
he-himself and to — Oxus both river went again and into —
Σογδιανὴν προχωρεῖν ἐγνώκει, ὅτι πολλοὺς τῶν Σογδιανῶν
Sogdiana to-advance had-decided because many of-the Sogdians

ἐς τὰ ἐρύματα ξυμπεφευγέναι ἠγγέλλετο οὐδὲ ἐθέλειν
into the strongholds to-have-fled-together was-reported nor to-be-willing
κατακούειν τοῦ σατράπου, ὅστις αὐτοῖς ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου
to-obey the satrap who over-them by Alexander
ἐπετέτακτο. στρατοπεδεύοντος δὲ αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ
had-been-set encamping and him on the river
τῷ Ὄξῳ οὐ μακρὰν τῆς σκηνῆς τῆς αὐτοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου
— Oxus not far from-the tent the of-himself Alexander
πηγὴ ὕδατος καὶ ἄλλη ἐλαίου πηγὴ πλησίον αὐτῆς ἀνέσχε.
a-spring of-water and another of-oil spring near it rose
15.8 καὶ Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ Λάγου τῷ σωματοφύλακι ἐπειδὴ
and to-Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus the bodyguard when
ἐσηγγέλθη τὸ τέρας, Πτολεμαῖος Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἔφρασεν.
was-reported the portent Ptolemy to-Alexander told
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ ἔθυεν ἐπὶ τῷ φάσματι ὅσα οἱ μάντεις
Alexander and sacrificed for the apparition as-much-as the seers
ἐξηγοῦντο. Ἀρίστανδρος δὲ πόνων εἶναι σημεῖον τοῦ
directed Aristander and of-toils to-be a-sign of-the
ἐλαίου τὴν πηγὴν ἔφασκεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ νίκην ἐπὶ τοῖς
oil the spring said but also victory after the
πόνοις σημαίνειν.
toils to-signify
16.1 διαβὰς οὖν ξὺν μέρει τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐς τὴν Σογδιανήν,
having-crossed then with part of-the army into — Sogdiana
Πολυπέρχοντα δὲ καὶ Ἄτταλον καὶ Γοργίαν καὶ Μελέαγρον
Polyperchon and and Attalus and Gorgias and Meleager
αὐτοῦ ἐν Βάκτροις ὑπολιπόμενος τούτοις μὲν παρήγγειλεν
there in Bactra having-left to-these indeed he-ordered
τήν τε χώραν ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχειν, ὡς μή τι νεωτερίσωσιν
the both country in guard to-keep so-that not anything should-revolt
οἱ ταύτῃ βάρβαροι, καὶ τοὺς ἔτι ἀφεστηκότας αὐτῶν ἐξαιρεῖν·
the there barbarians and the still having-revolted of-them to-subdue

αὐτὸς δὲ ἐς πέντε μέρη διελὼν τὴν ἅμα οἱ στρατιὰν 16.2
he-himself and into five parts having-divided the together-with him army
τῶν μὲν Ἡφαιστίωνα ἄρχειν ἔταξε, τῶν δὲ
of-the-one indeed Hephaestion to-command he-appointed of-the-second and
Πτολεμαῖον τὸν Λάγου τὸν σωματοφύλακα· τοῖς τρίτοις
Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus the bodyguard over-the third
δὲ Περδίκκαν ἐπέταξε· τῆς δὲ τετάρτης τάξεως Κοῖνος
and Perdiccas he-set of-the and fourth division Coenus
καὶ Ἀρτάβαζος ἡγοῦντο αὐτῷ· τὴν δὲ πέμπτην μοῖραν
and Artabazus led for-him the and fifth part
ἀναλαβὼν αὐτὸς ἐπῄει τὴν χώραν ὡς ἐπὶ Μαράκανδα.
having-taken himself went-through the country as toward Maracanda
καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὡς ἑκάστοις προὐχώρει ἐπῄεσαν, τοὺς μέν τινας 16.3
and the others as to-each it-went-forward went-through the indeed some
τῶν ἐς τὰ ἐρύματα ξυμπεφευγότων βίᾳ ἐξαιροῦντες, τοὺς
of-the into the strongholds having-fled-together by-force taking the-others
δὲ καὶ ὁμολογίᾳ προσχωροῦντάς σφισιν ἀναλαμβάνοντες.
and also by-agreement coming-over to-them receiving
ὡς δὲ ξύμπασα αὐτῷ ἡ δύναμις ἐπελθοῦσα τῶν Σογδιανῶν
when and all for-him the force having-traversed of-the Sogdians
τῆς χώρας τὴν πολλὴν ἐς Μαράκανδα ἀφίκετο, Ἡφαιστίωνα
of-the country the most to Maracanda arrived Hephaestion
μὲν ἐκπέμπει τὰς ἐν τῇ Σογδιανῇ πόλεις συνοικίζειν,
indeed he-sends-out the in — Sogdiana cities to-resettle
Κοῖνον δὲ καὶ Ἀρτάβαζον ὡς ἐς Σκύθας, ὅτι ἐς Σκύθας
Coenus and and Artabazus as to Scythians because to Scythians
καταπεφευγέναι Σπιταμένης αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο, αὐτὸς δὲ
to-have-fled Spitamenes to-him was-reported himself and
ξὺν τῇ λοιπῇ στρατιᾷ ἐπιὼν τῆς Σογδιανῆς ὅσα ἔτι
with the remaining army going-against — of-Sogdiana as-much-as still
πρὸς τῶν ἀφεστηκότων κατείχετο ταῦτα οὐ χαλεπῶς ἐξῄρει.
by the having-revolted was-held these not with-difficulty he-took

16.4 ἐν τούτοις δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου ὄντος Σπιταμένης τε καὶ σὺν
in these and Alexander being Spitamenes both and with
αὐτῷ τῶν Σογδιανῶν τινες φυγάδων ἐς τῶν Σκυθῶν
him of-the Sogdian some fugitives into the of-Scythians
τῶν Μασσαγετῶν καλουμένων τὴν χώραν ξυμπεφευγότες
the Massagetae called the country having-fled
ξυναγαγόντες τῶν Μασσαγετῶν ἱππέας ἑξακοσίους
having-collected of-the Massagetae cavalry six-hundred
ἀφίκοντο πρός τι φρούριον τῶν κατὰ τὴν Βακτριανήν.
arrived at some fort of-the in — Bactriana
16.5 καὶ τῷ τε φρουράρχῳ οὐδὲν πολέμιον προσδεχομένῳ
and on-the both garrison-commander nothing hostile expecting
ἐπιπεσόντες καὶ τοῖς ξὺν τούτῳ τὴν φυλακὴν ἔχουσιν τοὺς
having-fallen and on-the with him the guard holding the
μὲν στρατιώτας διέφθειραν, τὸν φρούραρχον δὲ ἑλόντες
indeed soldiers they-destroyed the garrison-commander and having-taken
ἐν φυλακῇ εἶχον. θαρσήσαντες δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ φρουρίου τῇ
in custody kept having-taken-courage and at-the of-the fort the
καταλήψει ὀλίγαις ἡμέραις ὕστερον Ζαριάσποις πελάσαντες
capture few days later to-Zariaspa having-approached
τῇ μὲν πόλει προσβαλεῖν ἀπέγνωσαν, λείαν δὲ πολλὴν
the indeed city to-attack they-gave-up booty but much
περιβαλλόμενοι ἤλαυνον.
rounding-up drove
16.6 ἦσαν δὲ ἐν τοῖς Ζαριάσποις νόσῳ ὑπολελειμμένοι τῶν
were and in — Zariaspa by-illness left-behind of-the
ἑταίρων ἱππέων οὐ πολλοὶ καὶ ξὺν τούτοις Πείθων τε
companion cavalry not many and with these Peithon both
ὁ Σωσικλέους, ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλικῆς θεραπείας τῆς ἐν
the (son)-of-Sosicles over the royal household the in
Ζαριάσποις τεταγμένος, καὶ Ἀριστόνικος ὁ κιθαρῳδός.
Zariaspa posted and Aristonicus the harper

καὶ οὗτοι αἰσθόμενοι τῶν Σκυθῶν τὴν καταδρομὴν ἤδη
and these having-perceived of-the Scythians the raid already
γὰρ ἐκ τῆς νόσου ἀναρρωσθέντες ὅπλα τε ἔφερον καὶ
for from the illness having-recovered arms both they-bore and
τῶν ἵππων ἐπέβαινον ξυναγαγόντες τούς τε μισθοφόρους
the horses mounted having-collected the both mercenary
ἱππέας ἐς ὀγδοήκοντα, οἳ ἐπὶ φυλακῇ τῶν Ζαριάσπων
cavalry about eighty who for guard — of-Zariaspa
ὑπολελειμμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ τῶν παίδων τινὰς τῶν βασιλικῶν
left-behind were and of-the pages some the royal
ἐκβοηθοῦσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μασσαγέτας.
sally-out against the Massagetae
καὶ τῇ μὲν πρώτῃ προσβολῇ οὐδὲν ὑποτοπήσασι τοῖς 16.7
and at-the indeed first attack nothing suspecting the
Σκύθαις ἐπιπεσόντες τήν τε λείαν ξύμπασαν ἀφείλοντο
Scythians having-fallen-on the both booty all took-away-from
αὐτοὺς καὶ τῶν ἀγόντων τὴν λείαν οὐκ ὀλίγους ἀπέκτειναν.
them and of-the driving the booty not few killed
ἐπανιόντες δὲ αὐτοὶ ἀτάκτως, ἅτε οὐδενὸς ἐξηγουμένου,
returning but themselves in-disorder as no-one leading
ἐνεδρευθέντες πρὸς Σπιταμένους καὶ τῶν Σκυθῶν τῶν
ambushed by Spitamenes and the Scythians of-the
μὲν ἑταίρων ἀποβάλλουσιν ἑπτά, τῶν δὲ μισθοφόρων
indeed companions they-lose seven of-the and mercenary
ἱππέων ἑξήκοντα. καὶ Ἀριστόνικος ὁ κιθαρῳδὸς αὐτοῦ
cavalry sixty and Aristonicus the harper there
ἀποθνήσκει, οὐ κατὰ κιθαρῳδὸν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς γενόμενος.
dies not like a-harper a-man brave having-proved
Πείθων δὲ τρωθεὶς ζῶν λαμβάνεται πρὸς τῶν Σκυθῶν.
Peithon and wounded alive is-taken by the Scythians

17.1 καὶ ταῦτα ὡς Κρατερῷ ἐξηγγέλθη, σπουδῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς
and these-things when to-Craterus were-reported in-haste against the
Μασσαγέτας ἤλαυνεν. οἱ δὲ ὡς ἐπύθοντο πλησίον
Massagetae he-rode they and when they-learned near
ἐπελαύνοντά σφισι Κρατερόν, ἔφευγον ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς εἰς
riding-at them Craterus fled at full-speed as into
τὴν ἐρήμην. καὶ Κρατερὸς ἐχόμενος αὐτῶν αὐτοῖς τε
the desert and Craterus keeping-close-to them with-them both
ἐκείνοις περιπίπτει οὐ πόρρω τῆς ἐρήμου καὶ ἄλλοις
those-very falls-in not far from-the desert and other
ἱππεῦσι Μασσαγετῶν ὑπὲρ τοὺς χιλίους.
horsemen of-Massagetae over the thousand

17.2 καὶ μάχη γίγνεται τῶν τε Μακεδόνων καὶ τῶν Σκυθῶν
and battle takes-place of-the both Macedonians and of-the Scythians
καρτερά· καὶ ἐνίκων οἱ Μακεδόνες. τῶν δὲ Σκυθῶν
fierce and won the Macedonians of-the and Scythians
ἀπέθανον μὲν ἑκατὸν καὶ πεντήκοντα ἱππεῖς· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
died indeed hundred and fifty horsemen the and others
οὐ χαλεπῶς ἐς τὴν ἐρήμην διεσώθησαν, ὅτι ἄπορον
not with-difficulty into the desert got-safe-away because impossible
ἦν προσωτέρω τοῖς Μακεδόσι διώκειν.
it-was farther for-the Macedonians to-pursue

17.3 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Ἀλέξανδρος Ἀρτάβαζον μὲν τῆς
and in this Alexander Artabazus indeed from-the
σατραπείας τῆς Βακτρίων ἀπαλλάττει δεηθέντα διὰ
satrapy the of-Bactrians relieves having-asked on-account-of
γῆρας, Ἀμύνταν δὲ τὸν Νικολάου σατράπην ἀντ᾽
old-age Amyntas and the (son)-of-Nicolaus as-satrap in-place-of
αὐτοῦ καθίστησι. Κοῖνον δὲ ἀπολείπει αὐτοῦ τήν τε
him appoints Coenus and he-leaves there the both
αὐτοῦ τάξιν καὶ τὴν Μελεάγρου ἔχοντα καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων
his-own battalion and the of-Meleager having and of-the companion

ἱππέων ἐς τετρακοσίους καὶ τοὺς ἱππακοντιστὰς πάντας
cavalry about four-hundred and the mounted-javelin-men all
καὶ τῶν Βακτρίων τε καὶ Σογδιανῶν καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι
and of-the Bactrians both and Sogdians and as-many-as others
μετὰ Ἀμύντου ἐτάχθησαν, προστάξας ἅπασιν ἀκούειν
with Amyntas were-posted having-ordered all to-obey
Κοίνου καὶ διαχειμάζειν αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ Σογδιανῇ, τῆς τε
Coenus and to-winter there in — Sogdiana of-the both
χώρας ἕνεκα τῆς φυλακῆς καὶ εἴ πῃ ἄρα Σπιταμένην
country for-the-sake-of the guarding and if somewhere then Spitamenes
περιφερόμενον κατὰ τὸν χειμῶνα ἐνεδρεύσαντας ξυλλαβεῖν.
roaming-about during the winter having-ambushed to-catch
Σπιταμένης δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ὡς φρουραῖς τε 17.4
Spitamenes and and the around him when by-garrisons both
πάντα κατειλημμένα ἑώρων ἐκ τῶν Μακεδόνων καί
all-places occupied they-saw by the Macedonians and
σφιν ἄπορα πάντῃ τὰ τῆς φυγῆς ἐγίγνετο, ὡς ἐπὶ
for-them impossible on-all-sides the-ways of-the flight were-becoming as against
Κοῖνόν τε καὶ τὴν ξὺν τούτῳ στρατιὰν ἐτράποντο, ὡς
Coenus both and the with him army turned so-as
ταύτῃ μᾶλλόν τι ἀξιόμαχοι ἐσόμενοι. ἀφικόμενοι δὲ
there more somewhat a-match about-to-be having-arrived and
ἐς Γαβάς, χωρίον τῆς Σογδιανῆς ὀχυρὸν ἐν μεθορίῳ
at Gabae a-place — of-Sogdiana strong in borderland
τῆς τε Σογδιανῶν γῆς καὶ τῆς Μασσαγετῶν Σκυθῶν
of-the both of-Sogdians land and of-the of-Massagetae Scythians
ᾠκισμένον, ἀναπείθουσιν οὐ χαλεπῶς τῶν Σκυθῶν ἱππέας
situated they-persuade not with-difficulty of-the Scythians horsemen
ἐς τρισχιλίους συνεμβάλλειν σφίσιν ἐς τὴν Σογδιανήν.
about three-thousand to-invade-with them into — Sogdiana

17.5 οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι οὗτοι ἀπορίᾳ τε πολλῇ ἔχονται καὶ ἅμα
the and Scythians these by-poverty both great are-gripped and at-the-same-time
ὅτι οὔτε πόλεις εἰσὶν αὐτοῖς οὔτε ἑδραῖοι οἰκοῦσιν, ὡς
because neither cities are for-them nor settled they-dwell so-as
δειμαίνειν ἂν περὶ τῶν φιλτάτων, οὐ χαλεποὶ ἀναπεισθῆναί
to-fear — for the dearest not difficult to-be-persuaded
εἰσιν ἐς ἄλλον καὶ ἄλλον πόλεμον. ὡς δὲ Κοῖνός τε
they-are into one and another war when and Coenus both
καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἔμαθον προσιόντας τοὺς ξὺν Σπιταμένει
and the around him learned approaching the with Spitamenes
ἱππέας, ἀπήντων καὶ αὐτοὶ μετὰ τῆς στρατιᾶς.
horsemen they-went-to-meet also themselves with the army
17.6 καὶ γίγνεται αὐτῶν μάχη καρτερά, καὶ νικῶσιν οἱ
and takes-place their battle fierce and win the
Μακεδόνες, ὥστε τῶν μὲν βαρβάρων ἱππέων ὑπὲρ τοὺς
Macedonians so-that of-the indeed barbarian horsemen over the
ὀκτακοσίους πεσεῖν ἐν τῇ μάχῃ, τῶν δὲ ξὺν Κοίνῳ ἱππέας
eight-hundred to-fall in the battle of-the and with Coenus horsemen
μὲν ἐς εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε, πεζοὺς δὲ δώδεκα. οἵ τε οὖν
indeed about twenty and five infantry and twelve the both then
Σογδιανοὶ οἱ ἔτι ὑπολειπόμενοι ξὺν Σπιταμένει καὶ τῶν
Sogdians the still remaining with Spitamenes and of-the
Βακτρίων οἱ πολλοὶ ἀπολείπουσιν ἐν τῇ φυγῇ Σπιταμένην
Bactrians the most abandon in the flight Spitamenes
καὶ ἀφικόμενοι παρὰ Κοῖνον παρέδοσαν σφᾶς αὐτοὺς Κοίνῳ,
and having-come to Coenus surrendered them selves to-Coenus
17.7 οἵ τε Μασσαγέται οἱ Σκύθαι κακῶς πεπραγότες τὰ μὲν
the both Massagetae the Scythians badly having-fared the indeed
σκευοφόρα τῶν ξυμπαραταξαμένων σφίσι Βακτρίων τε καὶ
baggage of-the having-fought-alongside them Bactrians both and
Σογδιανῶν διήρπασαν, αὐτοὶ δὲ ξὺν Σπιταμένει ἐς τὴν
Sogdians plundered themselves and with Spitamenes into the

ἔρημον ἔφευγον. ὡς δὲ ἐξηγγέλλετο αὐτοῖς Ἀλέξανδρος
desert fled when and it-was-reported to-them Alexander
ἐν ὁρμῇ ὢν ἐπὶ τὴν ἔρημον ἐλαύνειν ἀποτεμόντες τοῦ
in impulse being toward the desert to-march having-cut-off —
Σπιταμένους τὴν κεφαλὴν παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον πέμπουσιν,
of-Spitamenes the head to Alexander they-send
ὡς ἀποτρέψοντες ἀπὸ σφῶν αὐτῶν τούτῳ τῷ ἔργῳ.
as about-to-divert from them selves by-this the deed

VII · THE SOGDIAN ROCK AND RHOXANE

Alexander winters at Nautaca and sends out satraps. In spring he attacks the Sogdian Rock, whose defenders jeer that he needs winged soldiers. He offers prizes, and three hundred climbers scale the cliff by night with tent pegs and ropes; thirty fall, and the defenders surrender at the sight of the rest. Among the captives is Rhoxane, daughter of Oxyartes, whom Alexander marries rather than abuse, and Arrian praises his restraint. A eunuch is said to have told Darius of his wife's honorable treatment. At the Rock of Chorienes Alexander bridges a deep ravine, Oxyartes persuades Chorienes to surrender, and Chorienes, left in command, feeds the snowbound army.

καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κοῖνός τε ἐς Ναύτακα παρ' Ἀλέξανδρον 18.1
and in this Coenus both to Nautaca to Alexander
ἐπανέρχεται καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Κρατερόν τε καὶ Φραταφέρνην
returns and the around Craterus both and Phrataphernes
τὸν τῶν Παρθυαίων σατράπην καὶ Στασάνωρ ὁ Ἀρείων,
the of-the Parthyaeans satrap and Stasanor the of-Arians
πεπραγμένων σφίσι πάντων ὅσα ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου
having-been-done by-them all as-many-as by Alexander
ἐτέτακτο.
had-been-ordered

18.2 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ περὶ Ναύτακα ἀναπαύων τὴν στρατιὰν ὅ
Alexander and around Nautaca resting the army what
τι περ ἀκμαῖον τοῦ χειμῶνος, Φραταφέρνην μὲν ἀποστέλλει
ever indeed height of-the winter Phrataphernes indeed sends-off
ἐς Μάρδους καὶ Ταπούρους Αὐτοφραδάτην ἐπανάξοντα
to Mardians and Tapurians Autophradates about-to-bring-back
τὸν σατράπην, ὅτι πολλάκις ἤδη μετάπεμπτος ἐξ
the satrap because many-times already summoned by
Ἀλεξάνδρου γιγνόμενος οὐχ ὑπήκουε καλοῦντι.
Alexander being not he-obeyed calling

18.3 Στασάνορα δὲ ἐς Δράγγας σατράπην ἐκπέμπει, ἐς Μήδους
Stasanor and to Drangians as-satrap he-sends-out to Medes
δὲ Ἀτροπάτην ἐπὶ σατραπείᾳ καὶ τοῦτον τῇ Μήδων,
and Atropates for satrapy also this-one the (one)-of-Medes
ὅτι Ὀξυδάτης ἐθελοκακεῖν αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο. Σταμένην
because Oxydates to-shirk-deliberately to-him appeared Stamenes
δὲ ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνος στέλλει, ὅτι Μαζαῖος ὁ Βαβυλώνιος
and over Babylon he-sends because Mazaeus the Babylonian
ὕπαρχος τετελευτηκέναι αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο. Σώπολιν δὲ
hyparch to-have-died to-him was-reported Sopolis and
καὶ Ἐπόκιλλον καὶ Μενίδαν ἐς Μακεδονίαν ἐκπέμπει, τὴν
and Epocillus and Menidas to Macedonia he-sends-out the
στρατιὰν τὴν ἐκ Μακεδονίας αὐτῷ ἀνάξοντας.
army the from Macedonia for-him about-to-bring-up

18.4 ἅμα δὲ τῷ ἦρι ὑποφαίνοντι προὐχώρει ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν ἐν
together-with and the spring dawning he-advanced as toward the in
τῇ Σογδιανῇ πέτραν, ἐς ἣν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν Σογδιανῶν
— Sogdiana rock into which many indeed of-the Sogdians
ξυμπεφευγέναι αὐτῷ ἐξηγγέλλετο· καὶ ἡ Ὀξυάρτου δὲ γυνὴ
to-have-fled-together to-him was-reported and the of-Oxyartes and wife
τοῦ Βακτρίου καὶ αἱ παῖδες αἱ Ὀξυάρτου ἐς τὴν πέτραν
the Bactrian and the daughters the of-Oxyartes into the rock

ταύτην ξυμπεφευγέναι ἐλέγοντο, Ὀξυάρτου αὐτὰς ὡς ἐς
this to-have-fled-together were-said Oxyartes them as into
ἀνάλωτον δῆθεν τὸ χωρίον ἐκεῖνο ὑπεκθεμένου,
impregnable forsooth the place that having-placed-out-of-harm's-way
ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἀφειστήκει ἀπ' Ἀλεξάνδρου. ταύτης γὰρ
because also himself had-revolted from Alexander this for
ἐξαιρεθείσης οὐκέτι οὐδὲν ὑπολειφθήσεσθαι ἐδόκει τῶν
having-been-taken no-longer anything to-be-going-to-be-left it-seemed of-the
Σογδιανῶν τοῖς νεωτερίζειν ἐθέλουσιν.
Sogdians for-the to-revolt wishing
ὡς δὲ ἐπέλασαν τῇ πέτρᾳ, καταλαμβάνει πάντῃ 18.5
when and they-approached the rock he-finds on-every-side
ἀπότομον ἐς τὴν προσβολὴν σιτία τε ξυγκεκομισμένους
sheer for the attack provisions both having-gathered-in
τοὺς βαρβάρους ὡς ἐς χρόνιον πολιορκίαν. καὶ χιὼν πολλὴ
the barbarians as for long siege and snow much
ἐπιπεσοῦσα τήν τε πρόσβασιν ἀπορωτέραν ἐποίει τοῖς
having-fallen the both approach more-difficult made for-the
Μακεδόσι καὶ ἅμα ἐν ἀφθονίᾳ ὕδατος τοὺς βαρβάρους
Macedonians and at-the-same-time in abundance of-water the barbarians
διῆγεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὡς προσβάλλειν ἐδόκει τῷ χωρίῳ.
kept but even so to-attack it-seemed-good the place
καὶ γάρ τι καὶ ὑπέρογκον ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων 18.6
and for something also overweening by the barbarians
λεχθὲν ἐς φιλοτιμίαν. ξὺν ὀργῇ ἐμβεβλήκει Ἀλέξανδρον.
said into ambition with anger had-thrown Alexander
προκληθέντες γὰρ ἐς ξύμβασιν καὶ προτεινομένου σφίσιν,
having-been-invited for to agreement and it-being-proposed to-them
ὅτι σώοις ὑπάρξει ἐπὶ τὰ σφέτερα ἀπαλλαγῆναι
that safe it-will-be-possible to the their-own to-depart
παραδοῦσι τὸ χωρίον, οἱ δὲ σὺν γέλωτι βαρβαρίζοντες
having-surrendered the place they and with laughter speaking-barbarously

πτηνοὺς ἐκέλευον ζητεῖν στρατιώτας Ἀλέξανδρον, οἵτινες
winged bade to-seek soldiers Alexander who
αὐτῷ ἐξαιρήσουσι τὸ ὄρος, ὡς τῶν γε ἄλλων
for-him will-take the mountain as of-the at-least other
ἀνθρώπων οὐδεμίαν ὥραν σφίσιν οὖσαν.
men no regard to-them being

18.7 ἔνθα δὴ ἐκήρυξεν Ἀλέξανδρος τῷ μὲν πρώτῳ ἀναβάντι
there indeed proclaimed Alexander to-the indeed first having-climbed
δώδεκα τάλαντα εἶναι τὸ γέρας, δευτέρῳ δὲ ἐπὶ τούτῳ
twelve talents to-be the prize to-the-second and after him
τὰ δεύτερα καὶ τρίτῳ τὰ ἐφεξῆς, ὡς τελευταῖον εἶναι
the second and to-the-third the next so-that last to-be
τῷ τελευταίῳ ἀνελθόντι τριακοσίους Δαρεικοὺς τὸ γέρας.
for-the last having-gone-up three-hundred darics the prize
καὶ τοῦτο τὸ κήρυγμα παρώξυνεν ἔτι μᾶλλον καὶ ἄλλως
and this the proclamation incited still more also otherwise
τοὺς Μακεδόνας ὡρμημένους.
the Macedonians eager

19.1 ξυνταξάμενοι δὴ ὅσοι πετροβατεῖν ἐν ταῖς
having-formed indeed as-many-as to-rock-climb in the
πολιορκίαις αὐτῷ μεμελετήκεσαν, ἐς τριακοσίους τὸν
sieges for-him had-practiced about three-hundred the
ἀριθμόν, καὶ πασσάλους μικροὺς σιδηροῦς, οἷς αἱ
number and pegs small iron with-which the
σκηναὶ καταπεπήγεσαν αὐτοῖς, παρασκευάσαντες, τοῦ
tents had-been-pitched for-them having-prepared for-the
καταπηγνύναι αὐτοὺς ἔς τε τὴν χιόνα ὅπου πεπηγυῖα
to-fix them into both the snow where frozen
φανείη καὶ εἴ πού τι τῆς χώρας ἔρημον χιόνος
it-should-appear and if anywhere any of-the ground bare of-snow
ὑποφαίνοιτο, καὶ τούτους καλωδίοις ἐκ λίνου ἰσχυροῖς
should-show and these with-cords of flax strong

ἐκδήσαντες τῆς νυκτὸς προὐχώρουν κατὰ τὸ ἀποτομώτατόν
having-tied in-the night they-advanced at the steepest
τε τῆς πέτρας καὶ ταύτῃ ἀφυλακτότατον.
both of-the rock and there least-guarded
καὶ τούτους τοὺς πασσάλους καταπηγνύντες τοὺς μὲν ἐς 19.2
and these the pegs fixing the-ones indeed into
τὴν γῆν, ὅπου διεφαίνετο, τοὺς δὲ καὶ τῆς χιόνος ἐς
the earth where it-showed-through the-others and also of-the snow into
τὰ μάλιστα οὐ θρυφθησόμενα, ἀνεῖλκον σφᾶς αὐτοὺς
the-(parts) most not about-to-crumble hauled them selves
ἄλλοι ἄλλῃ τῆς πέτρας. καὶ τούτων ἐς τριάκοντα μὲν
one another-way of-the rock and of-these about thirty indeed
ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει διεφθάρησαν, ὥστε οὐδὲ τὰ σώματα αὐτῶν
in the ascent perished so-that not-even the bodies of-them
ἐς ταφὴν εὑρέθη ἐμπεσόντα ἄλλῃ καὶ ἄλλῃ τῆς χιόνος.
for burial were-found having-fallen here and there of-the snow
οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἀναβάντες ὑπὸ τὴν ἕω καὶ τὸ ἄκρον 19.3
the and rest having-climbed toward the dawn and the summit
τοῦ ὄρους καταλαβόντες σινδόνας κατέσειον ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
of-the mountain having-seized linen-cloths waved as toward the
στρατόπεδον τῶν Μακεδόνων, οὕτως αὐτοῖς ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου
camp of-the Macedonians so for-them by Alexander
παρηγγελμένον. πέμψας δὴ κήρυκα ἐμβοῆσαι ἐκέλευσε τοῖς
it-having-been-ordered having-sent indeed a-herald to-shout he-ordered to-the
προφυλάσσουσι τῶν βαρβάρων μὴ διατρίβειν ἔτι, ἀλλὰ
outposts of-the barbarians not to-delay any-longer but
παραδιδόναι σφᾶς· ἐξευρῆσθαι γὰρ δὴ τοὺς πτηνοὺς
to-surrender themselves to-have-been-found for indeed the winged
ἀνθρώπους καὶ ἔχεσθαι ὑπὸ αὐτῶν τοῦ ὄρους τὰ ἄκρα· καὶ
men and to-be-held by them of-the mountain the heights and
ἅμα ἐδείκνυεν τοὺς ὑπὲρ τῆς κορυφῆς στρατιώτας.
at-the-same-time he-pointed-out the above the peak soldiers

19.4 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἐκπλαγέντες τῷ παραλόγῳ τῆς ὄψεως
the and barbarians astounded by-the unexpectedness of-the sight
καὶ πλείονάς τε ὑποτοπήσαντες εἶναι τοὺς κατέχοντας τὰ
and more both suspecting to-be the holding the
ἄκρα καὶ ἀκριβῶς ὡπλισμένους ἐνέδοσαν σφᾶς αὐτούς·
heights and fully armed surrendered them selves
οὕτω πρὸς τὴν ὄψιν τῶν ὀλίγων ἐκείνων Μακεδόνων
so at the sight of-the few those Macedonians
φοβεροὶ ἐγένοντο. ἔνθα δὴ ἄλλων τε πολλῶν γυναῖκες καὶ
frightened they-became there indeed of-others both many wives and
παῖδες ἐλήφθησαν καὶ ἡ γυνὴ ἡ Ὀξυάρτου καὶ οἱ παῖδες.
children were-taken and the wife the of-Oxyartes and the children
19.5 καὶ ἦν γὰρ Ὀξυάρτῃ παῖς παρθένος ἐν ὥρᾳ γάμου,
and was for to-Oxyartes a-daughter maiden in season of-marriage
Ῥωξάνη ὀνόματι, ἣν δὴ καλλίστην τῶν Ἀσιανῶν γυναικῶν
Rhoxane by-name whom indeed most-beautiful of-the Asian women
λέγουσιν ὀφθῆναι οἱ ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ στρατεύσαντες μετά
they-say to-have-been-seen the with Alexander having-campaigned after
γε τὴν Δαρείου γυναῖκα. καὶ ταύτην ἰδόντα Ἀλέξανδρον ἐς
at-least the of-Darius wife and her having-seen Alexander into
ἔρωτα ἐλθεῖν αὐτῆς· ἐρασθέντα δὲ οὐκ ἐθελῆσαι ὑβρίσαι
love to-have-come of-her having-fallen-in-love but not to-have-wished to-outrage
καθάπερ αἰχμάλωτον, ἀλλὰ γῆμαι γὰρ οὐκ ἀπαξιῶσαι.
as a-captive but to-marry for not to-have-disdained
19.6 καὶ τοῦτο ἐγὼ Ἀλεξάνδρου τὸ ἔργον ἐπαινῶ μᾶλλόν
and this I of-Alexander the deed praise more
τι ἢ μέμφομαι. καίτοι τῆς γε Δαρείου γυναικός,
somewhat than I-blame and-yet — at-least of-Darius wife
ἣ καλλίστη δὴ ἐλέγετο τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ γυναικῶν, ἢ
who most-beautiful indeed was-said of-the in — Asia women either
οὐκ ἦλθεν ἐς ἐπιθυμίαν ἢ καρτερὸς αὐτὸς αὑτοῦ ἐγένετο,
not he-came into desire or master himself of-himself he-was

νέος τε ὢν καὶ τὰ μάλιστα ἐν ἀκμῇ τῆς εὐτυχίας,
young both being and at-the most in height of-the good-fortune
ὁπότε ὑβρίζουσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ὁ δὲ κατηδέσθη τε καὶ
when act-insolently the men he but felt-shame both and
ἐφείσατο, σωφροσύνῃ τε πολλῇ διαχρώμενος καὶ δόξης
spared with-self-control both much using and of-reputation
ἅμα ἀγαθῆς οὐκ ἀτόπῳ ἐφέσει.
at-the-same-time good not misplaced with-desire
καὶ τοίνυν καὶ λόγος κατέχει ὀλίγον μετὰ τὴν μάχην, ἣ 20.1
and indeed also a-story holds a-little after the battle which
πρὸς Ἰσσῷ Δαρείῳ τε καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ξυνέβη, ἀποδράντα
at Issus for-Darius both and Alexander happened having-run-away
ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Δαρεῖον τὸν εὐνοῦχον τὸν φύλακα αὐτῷ τῆς
to-have-come to Darius the eunuch the guard for-him of-the
γυναικός. καὶ τοῦτον ὡς εἶδε Δαρεῖος, πρῶτα μὲν πυθέσθαι
wife and this-one when saw Darius first indeed to-have-inquired
εἰ ζῶσιν αὐτῷ αἱ παῖδες καὶ ἡ γυνή τε καὶ ἡ μήτηρ.
whether are-alive for-him the daughters and the wife both and the mother
ὡς δὲ ζώσας τε ἐπύθετο καὶ βασίλισσαι ὅτι καλοῦνται καὶ 20.2
when and living both he-learned and queens that they-are-called and
ἡ θεραπεία ὅτι ἀμφ' αὐτάς ἐστιν, ἥντινα καὶ ἐπὶ Δαρείου
the attendance that around them is which also under Darius
ἐθεραπεύοντο, ἐπὶ τῷδε αὖ πυθέσθαι εἰ σωφρονεῖ αὐτῷ
they-were-attended after this again to-have-inquired whether is-chaste for-him
ἡ γυνὴ ἔτι. ὡς δὲ σωφρονοῦσαν ἐπύθετο, αὖθις ἐρέσθαι
the wife still when and chaste he-learned again to-have-asked
μή τι βίαιον ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου αὐτῇ ἐς ὕβριν ξυνέβη· καὶ
whether any violent from Alexander to-her for outrage happened and
τὸν εὐνοῦχον ἐπομόσαντα φάναι ὅτι· ὦ βασιλεῦ, οὕτω τοι
the eunuch having-sworn to-say that O king so surely
ὡς ἀπέλιπες ἔχει ἡ σὴ γυνή, καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἀνδρῶν
as you-left is the your wife and Alexander of-men

ἄριστός τέ ἐστι καὶ σωφρονέστατος. ἐπὶ τοῖσδε ἀνατεῖναι
best both is and most-self-controlled at this to-have-raised
Δαρεῖον ἐς τὸν οὐρανὸν τὰς χεῖρας καὶ εὔξασθαι ὧδε·
Darius to the heaven the hands and to-have-prayed thus
20.3 ἀλλ᾽ ὦ Ζεῦ βασιλεῦ, ὅτῳ ἐπιτέτραπται νέμειν τὰ
but O Zeus king to-whom has-been-entrusted to-dispense the
βασιλέων πράγματα ἐν ἀνθρώποις, σὺ νῦν μάλιστα μὲν
of-kings affairs among men you now most indeed
ἐμοὶ φύλαξον Περσῶν τε καὶ Μήδων τὴν ἀρχήν, ὥσπερ
for-me guard of-Persians both and Medes the rule as
οὖν καὶ ἔδωκας· εἰ δὲ δὴ ἐγὼ οὐκέτι σοι βασιλεὺς τῆς
then also you-gave if but indeed I no-longer to-you king —
Ἀσίας, σὺ δὲ μηδενὶ ἄλλῳ ὅτι μὴ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ παραδοῦναι
of-Asia you but to-no-one other except — Alexander hand-over
τὸ ἐμὸν κράτος. οὕτως οὐδὲ πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων ἄρα
the my power so not-even by the enemies then
ἀμελεῖται ὅσα σώφρονα ἔργα.
are-neglected as-many-as self-controlled deeds
20.4 Ὀξυάρτης δὲ ἀκούσας τοὺς παῖδας ἐχομένους, ἀκούσας
Oxyartes and having-heard the children held having-heard
δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ Ῥωξάνης τῆς θυγατρὸς ὅτι μέλει αὐτῆς
and also about Rhoxane the daughter that it-is-a-care of-her
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, θαρσήσας ἀφίκετο παρὰ Ἀλέξανδρον, καὶ
to-Alexander having-taken-courage arrived to Alexander and
ἦν ἐν τιμῇ παρ᾽ αὐτῷ, ἦπερ εἰκὸς ἐπὶ ξυντυχίᾳ τοιαύτῃ.
was in honor with him as likely on chance such
21.1 Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ὡς τὰ ἐν Σογδιανοῖς αὐτῷ
Alexander and when the-affairs among Sogdians for-him
διεπέπρακτο, ἐχομένης ἤδη καὶ τῆς πέτρας ἐς Παρειτάκας
had-been-accomplished held already also the rock to Pareitacae
προὐχώρει, ὅτι καὶ ἐν Παρειτάκαις χωρίον τι ὀχυρόν,
advanced because also in Pareitacae a-place some strong

ἄλλην πέτραν, κατέχειν ἐλέγοντο πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων.
another rock to-hold were-said many of-the barbarians
ἐκαλεῖτο δὲ αὕτη Χοριήνου ἡ πέτρα· καὶ ἐς αὐτὴν αὐτός τε
was-called and this of-Chorienes the rock and into it himself both
ὁ Χοριήνης ξυμπεφεύγει καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑπάρχων οὐκ ὀλίγοι.
— Chorienes had-fled and others of-the hyparchs not few
ἦν δὲ τὸ μὲν ὕψος τῆς πέτρας ἐς σταδίους εἴκοσι, 21.2
was and the indeed height of-the rock about stades twenty
κύκλος δὲ ἐς ἑξήκοντα· αὐτὴ δὲ ἀπότομος πάντοθεν,
circuit and about sixty itself and sheer on-all-sides
ἄνοδος δὲ ἐς αὐτὴν μία καὶ αὐτὴ στενή τε καὶ
ascent and to it one and this narrow both and
οὐκ εὔπορος, οἷα δὴ παρὰ τὴν φύσιν τοῦ χωρίου
not easy as indeed contrary-to the nature of-the place
πεποιημένη, ὡς χαλεπὴ εἶναι καὶ μηδενὸς εἴργοντος καὶ
made so-that difficult to-be even no-one hindering and
καθ' ἕνα ἀνελθεῖν, φάραγξ τε κύκλῳ περιεῖργε τὴν
in single-file to-go-up a-ravine both in-circle surrounded the
πέτραν βαθεῖα, ὥστε ὅστις προσάξειν στρατιὰν τῇ πέτρᾳ
rock deep so-that whoever to-lead-up an-army to-the rock
ἔμελλε, πολὺ πρόσθεν αὐτῷ τὴν φάραγγα εἶναι χωστέον,
was-about long before for-him the ravine to-be to-be-filled-up
ὡς ἐξ ὁμαλοῦ ὁρμᾶσθαι προσάγοντα ἐς προσβολὴν τὸν
so-as from level to-start bringing-up for attack the
στρατόν. ἀλλὰ καὶ ὣς Ἀλέξανδρος ἥπτετο τοῦ ἔργου·
army but even so Alexander took-in-hand the work
οὕτως πάντα ᾤετο χρῆναι βατά τε αὐτῷ καὶ 21.3
so all-things he-thought it-to-be-necessary passable both for-himself and
ἐξαιρετέα εἶναι, ἐς τοσόνδε τόλμης τε καὶ εὐτυχίας
to-be-taken to-be to so-great of-daring both and good-fortune
προκεχωρήκει. τέμνων δὴ τὰς ἐλάτας πολλαὶ γὰρ καὶ
he-had-advanced cutting indeed the firs many for also

ὑπερύψηλοι ἐλάται ἦσαν ἐν κύκλῳ τοῦ ὄρους κλίμακας
very-high firs were in circle of-the mountain ladders
ἐκ τούτων ἐποίει, ὡς κάθοδον εἶναι ἐς τὴν φάραγγα
from these he-made so-that descent to-be into the ravine
τῇ στρατιᾷ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἄλλως κατελθεῖν ἐς αὐτήν.
for-the army not for was-it otherwise to-go-down into it
21.4 καὶ τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας αὐτὸς Ἀλέξανδρος ἐφειστήκει τῷ
and the indeed days himself Alexander stood-over the
ἔργῳ τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατοῦ ἔχων ἐργαζόμενον, τὰς δὲ
work the half of-the army having working the and
νύκτας ἐν μέρει οἱ σωματοφύλακες αὐτῷ εἰργάζοντο,
nights in turn the bodyguards for-him worked
Περδίκκας τε καὶ Λεοννάτος καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου,
Perdiccas both and Leonnatus and Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus
τῷ λοιπῷ μέρει τῆς στρατιᾶς τριχῇ διανενεμημένῳ,
with-the remaining part of-the army in-three divided
ὅπερ αὐτῷ ἐς τὴν νύκτα ἀπετέτακτο. ἤνυτον δὲ τῆς
which for-him for the night had-been-assigned they-accomplished and in-the
ἡμέρας οὐ πλέον ἢ περ εἴκοσι πήχεις καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ὀλίγον
day not more than twenty cubits and in-the night little
ἀποδέον, καίτοι ξυμπάσης τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐργαζομένης· οὕτω
falling-short although all the army working so
τό τε χωρίον ἄπορον ἦν καὶ τὸ ἔργον ἐν αὐτῷ χαλεπόν.
the both place difficult was and the work in it hard
21.5 κατιόντες δ' ἐς τὴν φάραγγα πασσάλους κατεπήγνυον ἐς
going-down and into the ravine pegs they-fixed into
τὸ ὀξύτατον τῆς φάραγγος, διέχοντας ἀλλήλων ὅσον
the steepest of-the ravine standing-apart from-one-another as-much-as
ξύμμετρον πρὸς ἰσχύν τε καὶ ξυνοχὴν τῶν ἐπιβαλλομένων.
proportionate for strength both and holding-together of-the things-laid-on
ἐπέβαλλον δὲ πλέγματα ἐκ λύγων εἰς γεφύρας μάλιστα ἰδέαν,
they-laid and hurdles of osiers into of-bridges most form

καὶ ταῦτα ξυνδοῦντες χοῦν ἄνωθεν ἐπεφόρουν, ὡς ἐξ ὁμαλοῦ
and these binding-together earth from-above they-heaped so-as from level
γίγνεσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ τὴν πρόσοδον τὴν πρὸς τὴν πέτραν.
to-become for-the army the approach the toward the rock
οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι τὰ μὲν πρῶτα κατεφρόνουν ὡς ἀπόρου 21.6
the and barbarians at-the indeed first despised as impossible
πάντῃ τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος· ὡς δὲ τοξεύματα ἤδη
on-every-side of-the undertaking when and arrows already
ἐς τὴν πέτραν ἐξικνεῖτο καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀδύνατοι ἦσαν
into the rock reached and they-themselves unable were
ἄνωθεν ἐξείργειν τοὺς Μακεδόνας ἐπεποίητο γὰρ αὐτοῖς
from-above to-keep-off the Macedonians had-been-made for for-them
προκαλύμματα πρὸς τὰ βέλη, ὡς ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῖς ἀβλαβῶς
screens against the missiles so-as under them unharmed
ἐργάζεσθαι ἐκπλαγεὶς ὁ Χοριήνης πρὸς τὰ γιγνόμενα
to-work astounded — Chorienes at the happening
κήρυκα πέμπει πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον, δεόμενος Ὀξυάρτην οἱ
a-herald sends to Alexander asking Oxyartes to-him
ἀναπέμψαι. καὶ πέμπει Ὀξυάρτην Ἀλέξανδρος.
to-send-up and sends Oxyartes Alexander
ὁ δὲ ἀφικόμενος πείθει Χοριήνην ἐπιτρέψαι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ αὑτόν 21.7
he and having-arrived persuades Chorienes to-entrust to-Alexander himself
τε καὶ τὸ χωρίον. βίᾳ μὲν γὰρ οὐδὲν ὅ τι οὐχ ἁλωτὸν
both and the place by-force indeed for nothing what ever not capturable
εἶναι Ἀλεξάνδρῳ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ τῇ ἐκείνου, ἐς πίστιν
to-be for-Alexander and for-the army the his into trust
δὲ ἐλθόντος καὶ φιλίαν, τὴν πίστιν τε καὶ δικαιότητα
but coming and friendship the trustworthiness both and justice
μεγαλωστὶ ἐπῄνει τοῦ βασιλέως, τά τε ἄλλα καὶ τὸ
greatly he-praised of-the king the both other-things and the
αὐτοῦ ἐν πρώτοις ἐς βεβαίωσιν τοῦ λόγου προφέρων.
his-own among first for confirmation of-the word putting-forward

21.8 τούτοις πεισθεὶς ὁ Χοριήνης αὐτός τε ἦκε παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον
by-these persuaded — Chorienes himself both came to Alexander
καὶ τῶν οἰκείων τινὲς καὶ ἑταίρων αὐτοῦ. ἐλθόντι
and of-the kinsmen some and companions his to-him-having-come
δὲ τῷ Χοριήνῃ φιλάνθρωπά τε ἀποκρινάμενος καὶ πίστιν
and — Chorienes kind-things both having-answered and pledge
ἐς φιλίαν δοὺς αὐτὸν μὲν κατέχει, πέμψαι δὲ κελεύει
for friendship having-given him indeed he-detains to-send and orders
τῶν συγκατελθόντων τινὰς αὐτῷ ἐς τὴν πέτραν τοὺς
of-the having-come-down-with some him to the rock the
κελεύσοντας ἐνδοῦναι τὸ χωρίον.
about-to-order to-surrender the place

21.9 καὶ ἐνδίδοται ὑπὸ τῶν ξυμπεφευγότων, ὥστε καὶ αὐτὸς
and it-is-surrendered by the having-fled-together so-that also himself
Ἀλέξανδρος ἀναλαβὼν τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἐς πεντακοσίους
Alexander having-taken of-the shield-bearers about five-hundred
ἀνέβη κατὰ θέαν τῆς πέτρας, καὶ τοσούτου ἐδέησεν
went-up for viewing of-the rock and so-far fell-short
ἀνεπιεικές τι ἐς τὸν Χοριήνην ἔργον ἀποδείξασθαι,
unreasonable any toward — Chorienes deed to-display
ὥστε καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ χωρίον ἐκεῖνο ἐπιτρέπει Χοριήνῃ καὶ
that also itself the place that he-entrusts to-Chorienes and
ὕπαρχον εἶναι ὅσωνπερ καὶ πρόσθεν ἔδωκεν.
hyparch to-be of-all-that also before he-granted

21.10 ξυνέβη δὲ χειμῶνί τε κακοπαθῆσαι αὐτῷ τὴν στρατιὰν
it-happened and by-winter both to-suffer for-him the army
πολλῆς χιόνος ἐπιπεσούσης ἐν τῇ πολιορκίᾳ καὶ ἅμα
much snow having-fallen in the siege and at-the-same-time
ἀπορίᾳ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιέσθησαν. ἀλλὰ Χοριήνης ἐς
by-lack of-the provisions they-were-pressed but Chorienes for
δίμηνον σιτία ἔφη δώσειν τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ ἔδωκεν σῖτόν
two-months rations he-said to-be-going-to-give to-the army and gave grain

τε καὶ οἶνον τῶν ἐν τῇ πέτρᾳ ἀποθέτων κρέα τε ταριχηρὰ
both and wine of-the in the rock stored meats both salted
κατὰ σκηνήν. καὶ ταῦτα δοὺς οὐκ ἔφασκεν ἀναλῶσαι
by tent and these having-given not he-said to-have-used-up
τῶν παρεσκευασμένων ἐς τὴν πολιορκίαν οὐδὲ τὴν δεκάτην
of-the prepared for the siege even the tenth
μοῖραν. ἔνθεν ἐν τιμῇ μᾶλλον τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἦν ὡς οὐ
part thence in honor more — with-Alexander he-was as not
πρὸς βίαν μᾶλλον ἢ κατὰ γνώμην ἐνδοὺς τὴν πέτραν.
by force more than by choice having-surrendered the rock

VIII · INTO INDIA

Craterus defeats the last rebels, and after the affair of Callisthenes at Bactra Alexander crosses the Caucasus into India with Taxiles' submission. Hephaestion and Perdiccas go ahead to prepare the crossing of the Indus, taking Peucelaotis on the way. Alexander turns against the Aspasians, is wounded in the shoulder, and storms their towns. Ptolemy kills their chief in single combat. At a mountain Alexander divides his force in three and defeats them, taking, Ptolemy says, more than forty thousand captives and more than two hundred thirty thousand cattle. He marches on the Assacenians across the Guraeus.

ταῦτα δὲ καταπραξάμενος Ἀλέξανδρος αὐτὸς μὲν ἐς 22.1
these-things and having-accomplished Alexander himself indeed to
Βάκτρα ᾖει, Κρατερὸν δὲ τῶν ἑταίρων ἱππέας ἔχοντα
Bactra went Craterus and of-the companions cavalry having
ἑξακοσίους καὶ τῶν πεζῶν τήν τε αὑτοῦ τάξιν καὶ
six-hundred and of-the infantry the both his-own battalion and
τὴν Πολυπέρχοντος καὶ Ἀττάλου καὶ τὴν Ἀλκέτα ἐπὶ
the of-Polyperchon and of-Attalus and the of-Alcetas against

Κατάνην τε καὶ Αὐστάνην ἐκπέμπει, οἳ δὴ μόνοι ἔτι
Catanes both and Austanes he-sends-out who indeed alone still
ὑπελείποντο ἐν τῇ Παρειτακηνῶν χώρᾳ ἀφεστηκότες.
remained in the of-Pareitacenians country in-revolt

22.2 καὶ μάχης γενομένης πρὸς αὐτοὺς καρτερᾶς νικῶσιν οἱ
and battle having-taken-place against them fierce win the
ἀμφὶ Κρατερὸν τῇ μάχῃ· καὶ Κατάνης μὲν ἀποθνήσκει
around Craterus in-the battle and Catanes indeed dies
αὐτοῦ μαχόμενος, Αὐστάνης δὲ ξυλληφθεὶς ἀνήχθη
there fighting Austanes and having-been-captured was-brought-up
παρ᾽ Ἀλέξανδρον· τῶν δὲ ξὺν αὐτοῖς βαρβάρων ἱππεῖς
to Alexander of-the and with them barbarians cavalry
μὲν ἀπέθανον ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι, πεζοὶ δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς
indeed died hundred and twenty infantry and about the
χιλίους πεντακοσίους. ταῦτα δὲ ὡς ἐπράχθη τοῖς ἀμφὶ
thousand five-hundred these-things and when had-been-done by-the around
Κρατερόν, καὶ οὗτοι ἐς Βάκτρα ᾔσαν. καὶ ἐν Βάκτροις τὸ
Craterus also these to Bactra went and in Bactra the
ἀμφὶ Καλλισθένην τε καὶ τοὺς παῖδας πάθημα Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
about Callisthenes both and the pages affair for-Alexander
ξυνηνέχθη.
befell

22.3 ἐκ Βάκτρων δὲ ἐξήκοντος ἤδη τοῦ ἦρος ἀναλαβὼν τὴν
from Bactra and ending already the spring having-taken the
στρατιὰν προὐχώρει ὡς ἐπ᾽ Ἰνδούς, Ἀμύνταν ἀπολιπὼν
army he-advanced as toward Indians Amyntas having-left
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῶν Βακτρίων καὶ ξὺν αὐτῷ ἱππέας μὲν
in the country of-the Bactrians and with him cavalry indeed
τρισχιλίους καὶ πεντακοσίους, πεζοὺς δὲ μυρίους.
three-thousand and five-hundred infantry and ten-thousand

ὑπερβαλὼν δὲ τὸν Καύκασον ἐν δέκα ἡμέραις ἀφίκετο εἰς 22.4
having-crossed and — Caucasus in ten days he-arrived at
Ἀλεξάνδρειαν πόλιν τὴν κτισθεῖσαν ἐν Παραπαμισάδαις,
Alexandria city the founded among Parapamisadae
ὅτε τὸ πρῶτον ἐπὶ Βάκτρων ἐστέλλετο. καὶ τὸν μὲν
when the first toward Bactra he-set-out and the indeed
ὕπαρχον, ὅστις αὐτῷ ἐπὶ τῆς πόλεως τότε ἐτάχθη,
hyparch who by-him over the city then was-appointed
παραλύει τῆς ἀρχῆς, ὅτι οὐ καλῶς ἐξηγεῖσθαι ἔδοξε·
he-dismisses from-the office because not well to-govern he-seemed
προσκατοικίσας δὲ καὶ ἄλλους τῶν περιοίκων τε 22.5
having-settled-in-addition and also others of-the neighbors both
καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν ἐς τὴν
and as-many-as of-the soldiers unfit-for-battle were into —
Ἀλεξάνδρειαν Νικάνορα μέν, ἕνα τῶν ἑταίρων, τὴν πόλιν
Alexandria Nicanor indeed one of-the companions the city
αὐτὴν κοσμεῖν ἐκέλευσε, σατράπην δὲ Τυρίεσπιν κατέστησε
itself to-regulate he-ordered satrap and Tyriespis he-appointed
τῆς τε χώρας τῆς Παραπαμισαδῶν καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ἔστε
of-the both country of-the Parapamisadae and of-the other as-far
ἐπὶ τὸν Κωφῆνα ποταμόν.
to the Cophen river
ἀφικόμενος δὲ ἐς Νίκαιαν πόλιν καὶ τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ θύσας 22.6
having-arrived and at Nicaea city and — to-Athena having-sacrificed
προὐχώρει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Κωφῆνα, προπέμψας κήρυκα
he-advanced as toward — Cophen having-sent-ahead a-herald
ὡς Ταξίλην τε καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ποταμοῦ,
to Taxiles both and the on this-side of-the Indus river
κελεύσας ἀπαντᾶν ὅπως ἂν ἑκάστοις προχωρῇ. καὶ
having-ordered to-meet-him as — to-each it-might-suit and
Ταξίλης τε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὕπαρχοι ἀπήντων, δῶρα τὰ
Taxiles both and the other hyparchs met-him gifts the

μέγιστα παρ᾽ Ἰνδοῖς νομιζόμενα κομίζοντες, καὶ τοὺς
greatest among Indians esteemed bringing and the
ἐλέφαντας δώσειν ἔφασκον τοὺς παρὰ σφίσιν ὄντας,
elephants to-be-going-to-give they-said the among them being
ἀριθμὸν ἐς πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν.
in-number about five and twenty

22.7 ἔνθα δὴ διελὼν τὴν στρατιὰν Ἡφαιστίωνα μὲν καὶ
there indeed having-divided the army Hephaestion indeed and
Περδίκκαν ἐκπέμπει ἐς τὴν Πευκελαῶτιν χώραν ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν
Perdiccas he-sends-out into the Peucelaotis country as toward the
Ἰνδὸν ποταμόν, ἔχοντας τήν τε Γοργίου τάξιν καὶ Κλείτου
Indus river having the both of-Gorgias battalion and of-Cleitus
καὶ Μελεάγρου καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων ἱππέων τοὺς ἡμίσεας καὶ
and of-Meleager and of-the companion cavalry the half and
τοὺς μισθοφόρους ἱππέας ξύμπαντας, προστάξας τά τε κατὰ
the mercenary cavalry all having-ordered the both along
τὴν ὁδὸν χωρία ἢ βίᾳ ἐξαιρεῖν ἢ ὁμολογίᾳ παρίστασθαι
the road places either by-force to-take or by-agreement to-win-over
καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν ἀφικομένους παρασκευάζειν
and at the Indus river having-arrived to-prepare
ὅσα ἐς τὴν διάβασιν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ξύμφορα. ξὺν
as-much-as for the crossing of-the river useful with
τούτοις δὲ καὶ Ταξίλης καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὕπαρχοι στέλλονται.
these and also Taxiles and the other hyparchs set-out

22.8 καὶ οὗτοι ὡς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμόν, ἔπρασσον
and these when they-arrived at the Indus river did
ὅσα ἐξ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἦν τεταγμένα. Ἄστις δὲ ὁ τῆς
as-much-as by Alexander had-been ordered Astis and the —
Πευκελαώτιδος ὕπαρχος νεωτερίσας αὐτός τε ἀπόλλυται
of-Peucelaotis hyparch having-revolted himself both perishes
καὶ τὴν πόλιν προσαπώλεσεν, ἐς ἥντινα ξυμπεφεύγει.
and the city destroyed-besides into which he-had-fled

ἐξεῖλον γὰρ αὐτὴν ἐν τριάκοντα ἡμέραις προσκαθήμενοι
they-took for it in thirty days besieging
οἱ ξὺν Ἡφαιστίωνι. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν Ἄστις ἀποθνήσκει,
the with Hephaestion and himself indeed Astis dies
τῆς πόλεως δὲ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι ἐτάχθη Σαγγαῖος, ὃς ἔτι
of-the city and to-take-care was-appointed Sangaeus who still
πρόσθεν πεφευγὼς Ἄστιν παρὰ Ταξίλην ηὐτομολήκει· καὶ
before having-fled Astis to Taxiles had-deserted and
τοῦτο ἦν αὐτῷ τὸ πιστὸν πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον.
this was for-him the pledge toward Alexander
Ἀλέξανδρος δέ, ἄγων τοὺς ὑπασπιστὰς καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων 23.1
Alexander and leading the shield-bearers and of-the companion
ἱππέων ὅσοι μὴ σὺν Ἡφαιστίωνι ἐτετάχατο καὶ τῶν
cavalry as-many-as not with Hephaestion had-been-posted and of-the
πεζεταίρων καλουμένων τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς τοξότας καὶ
foot-companions called the battalions and the archers and
τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τοὺς ἱππακοντιστάς, προὐχώρει ἐς
the Agrianians and the mounted-javelin-men advanced into
τὴν Ἀσπασίων τε καὶ Γουραίων χώραν καὶ Ἀσσακηνῶν.
the of-Aspasians both and Guraeans country and of-Assacenians
πορευθεὶς δὲ παρὰ τὸν Χόην καλούμενον ποταμὸν 23.2
having-marched and along the Choes called river
ὀρεινήν τε ὁδὸν καὶ τραχεῖαν καὶ τοῦτον διαβὰς
a-mountainous both road and rough and this having-crossed
χαλεπῶς τῶν μὲν πεζῶν τὸ πλῆθος βάδην ἕπεσθαί οἱ
with-difficulty of-the indeed infantry the multitude at-a-walk to-follow him
ἐκέλευσεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν τοὺς ἱππέας ξύμπαντας καὶ
he-ordered himself and having-taken the cavalry all and
τῶν πεζῶν τῶν Μακεδόνων ἐς ὀκτακοσίους ἐπιβιβάσας
of-the infantry the Macedonian about eight-hundred having-mounted
τῶν ἵππων ξὺν ταῖς ἀσπίσι ταῖς πεζικαῖς σπουδῇ ἦγεν,
on-the horses with the shields the infantry in-haste he-led

ὅτι τοὺς ταύτῃ οἰκοῦντας βαρβάρους ξυμπεφευγέναι ἔς
because the there dwelling barbarians to-have-fled into
τε τὰ ὄρη τὰ κατὰ τὴν χώραν ἐξηγγέλλετο αὐτῷ καὶ
both the mountains the throughout the country it-was-reported to-him and
ἐς τὰς πόλεις ὅσαι ὀχυραὶ αὐτῶν ἐς τὸ ἀπομάχεσθαι.
into the cities as-many-as strong of-them for the to-fight-from
23.3 καὶ τούτων τῇ πρώτῃ καθ᾽ ὁδὸν πόλει ᾠκισμένῃ προσβαλὼν
and of-these the first on road city situated having-attacked
τοὺς μὲν πρὸ τῆς πόλεως τεταγμένους ὡς εἶχεν ἐξ
the indeed before the city drawn-up as he-was at
ἐφόδου ἐτρέψατο καὶ κατέκλεισεν ἐς τὴν πόλιν, αὐτὸς
the-first-assault he-routed and shut-in into the city himself
δὲ τιτρώσκεται βέλει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος ἐς τὸν ὦμον·
and is-wounded by-a-missile through the breastplate into the shoulder
τὸ δὲ τραῦμα οὐ χαλεπὸν αὐτῷ ἐγένετο· ὁ γὰρ θώραξ
the but wound not severe for-him was the for breastplate
ἔσχε τὸ μὴ οὐ διαμπὰξ διὰ τοῦ ὤμου ἐλθεῖν τὸ βέλος·
prevented the not not right-through through the shoulder to-go the missile
καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου ἐτρώθη καὶ Λεοννάτος.
and Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus was-wounded and Leonnatus
23.4 τότε μὲν δὴ ἵνα ἐπιμαχώτατον τοῦ τείχους ἐφαίνετο
then indeed indeed where most-assailable of-the wall it-appeared
ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο πρὸς τῇ πόλει· τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ὑπὸ
he-encamped by the city on-the and next-day toward
τὴν ἕω, διπλοῦν γὰρ τεῖχος περιεβέβλητο τῇ πόλει,
the dawn double for a-wall had-been-thrown-around the city
ἐς μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἅτε οὐκ ἀκριβῶς τετειχισμένον
to indeed the first inasmuch-as not exactly walled
οὐ χαλεπῶς ἐβιάσαντο οἱ Μακεδόνες, πρὸς δὲ τῷ
not with-difficulty forced the Macedonians at but the
δευτέρῳ ὀλίγον ἀντισχόντες οἱ βάρβαροι, ὡς αἵ τε
second a-little having-held-out the barbarians when the both

κλίμακες προσέκειντο ἤδη καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν βελῶν πάντοθεν
ladders were-set already and by the missiles from-all-sides
ἐτιτρώσκοντο οἱ προμαχόμενοι, οὐκ ἔμειναν, ἀλλὰ κατὰ
were-being-wounded the defenders not they-stood-firm but by
τὰς πύλας ὡς ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη ἐκπίπτουσιν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως.
the gates as toward the mountains they-burst-out from the city
καὶ τούτων οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ φυγῇ ἀποθνήσκουσιν, ὅσους 23.5
and of-these the-ones indeed in the flight die as-many-as
δὲ ζῶντας ἔλαβον αὐτῶν, ξύμπαντας ἀποκτείνουσιν
and alive they-took of-them all kill
οἱ Μακεδόνες, ὅτι ἐτρώθη ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν Ἀλέξανδρος
the Macedonians because was-wounded by them Alexander
ὀργιζόμενοι· οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ ἐς τὰ ὄρη, ὅτι οὐ μακρὰν
being-angered the many but into the mountains because not far
τῆς πόλεως τὰ ὄρη ἦν, ἀπέφυγον. τὴν πόλιν δὲ
from-the city the mountains were escaped the city and
κατασκάψας ἐς Ἄνδακα ἄλλην πόλιν ἦγε. ταύτην δὲ
having-razed to Andaca another city he-led this and
ὁμολογίᾳ ἐνδοθεῖσαν κατασχὼν Κρατερὸν μὲν ξὺν τοῖς
by-agreement surrendered having-taken Craterus indeed with the
ἄλλοις ἡγεμόσι τῶν πεζῶν καταλείπει αὐτοῦ ἑξαιρεῖν ὅσαι
other commanders of-the infantry he-leaves there to-take as-many-as
ἂν ἄλλαι πόλεις μὴ ἑκοῦσαι προσχωρῶσι καὶ τὰ κατὰ
— other cities not willingly should-come-over and the-affairs throughout
τὴν χώραν ὅπως ξυμφορώτατον ἐς τὰ παρόντα κοσμεῖν.
the country as most-advantageously for the present to-arrange
αὐτὸς δὲ ἄγων τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς τε καὶ τοὺς τοξότας 24.1
he-himself and leading the shield-bearers both and the archers
καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τὴν Κοίνου τε καὶ Ἀττάλου τάξιν
and the Agrianians and the of-Coenus both and of-Attalus battalion
καὶ τῶν ἱππέων τὸ ἄγημα καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἑταίρων ἐς
and of-the cavalry the agema and of-the other companions about

τέσσαρας μάλιστα ἱππαρχίας καὶ τῶν ἱπποτοξοτῶν τοὺς
four roughly hipparchies and of-the mounted-archers the
ἡμίσεας ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Εὐασ *** πόλεως
half as toward the river — Euas (lacuna) of-the-city
προὐχώρει, ἵνα ὁ τῶν Ἀσπασίων ὕπαρχος ἦν· καὶ
advanced where the of-the Aspasians hyparch was and
διελθὼν πολλὴν ὁδὸν δευτεραῖος ἀφίκετο πρὸς τὴν πόλιν.
having-traversed long road on-the-second-day arrived at the city
24.2 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσάγοντα αἰσθόμενοι Ἀλέξανδρον
the and barbarians approaching having-perceived Alexander
ἐμπρήσαντες τὴν πόλιν ἔφευγον πρὸς τὰ ὄρη. οἱ δ'
having-set-fire-to the city fled to the mountains the and
ἀμφ' Ἀλέξανδρον εἴχοντο τῶν φευγόντων ἔστε ἐπὶ τὰ
around Alexander kept-close-to the fleeing as-far to the
ὄρη, καὶ φόνος πολὺς γίγνεται τῶν βαρβάρων, πρὶν
mountains and slaughter great takes-place of-the barbarians before
ἐς τὰς δυσχωρίας φθάσαι ἀπελθόντας.
into the difficult-ground to-get-first having-gone-away
24.3 τὸν δὲ ἡγεμόνα αὐτὸν τῶν ταύτῃ Ἰνδῶν Πτολεμαῖος ὁ
the and leader himself of-the there Indians Ptolemy the
Λάγου πρός τινι ἤδη γηλόφῳ ὄντα κατιδὼν καὶ τῶν
(son)-of-Lagus at some already hillock being having-seen and of-the
ὑπασπιστῶν ἔστιν οὓς ἀμφ' αὐτὸν ξὺν πολὺ ἐλάττοσιν
shield-bearers there-are whom around him with far fewer
αὐτὸς ὢν ὅμως ἐδίωκεν ἔτι ἐκ τοῦ ἵππου· ὡς δὲ
himself being nevertheless pursued still from the horse when and
χαλεπὸς ὁ γήλοφος τῷ ἵππῳ ἀναδραμεῖν ἦν, τοῦτον
difficult the hillock for-the horse to-run-up was this
μὲν αὐτοῦ καταλείπει παραδούς τινι τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν
indeed there he-leaves having-handed-it-over to-one of-the shield-bearers
ἄγειν, αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς εἶχε πεζὸς τῷ Ἰνδῷ εἵπετο.
to-lead he-himself and as he-was on-foot the Indian followed

ὁ δὲ ὡς πελάζοντα ἤδη κατεῖδε τὸν Πτολεμαῖον, αὐτός 24.4
he and when approaching already he-saw — Ptolemy himself
τε μεταβάλλει ἐς τὸ ἔμπαλιν καὶ οἱ ὑπασπισταὶ ξὺν αὐτῷ.
both turns to the back and the shield-bearers with him
καὶ ὁ μὲν Ἰνδὸς τοῦ Πτολεμαίου διὰ τοῦ θώρακος παίει
and the indeed Indian — Ptolemy through the breastplate strikes
ἐκ χειρὸς ἐς τὸ στῆθος ξυστῷ μακρῷ, καὶ ὁ θώραξ
at close-quarters into the chest with-a-lance long and the breastplate
ἔσχε τὴν πληγήν· Πτολεμαῖος δὲ τὸν μηρὸν διαμπὰξ
held the blow Ptolemy and the thigh right-through
βαλὼν τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ καταβάλλει τε καὶ σκυλεύει αὐτόν.
having-hit of-the Indian throws-down both and strips him
ὡς δὲ τὸν ἡγεμόνα σφῶν κείμενον οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν εἶδον, 24.5
when and the leader their lying the around him saw
οὗτοι μὲν οὐκέτι ἔμενον, οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῶν ὀρῶν αἰρόμενον
these indeed no-longer stood the and from the mountains being-carried-off
τὸν νεκρὸν τοῦ ὑπάρχου ἰδόντες πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων
the corpse of-the hyparch having-seen by the enemy
ἤλγησάν τε καὶ καταδραμόντες ξυνάπτουσιν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ
grieved both and having-run-down join over him
μάχην καρτερὰν πρὸς τῷ γηλόφῳ. ἤδη γὰρ καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
battle fierce by the hillock already for also Alexander
ἔχων τοὺς ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων καταβεβηκότας πεζοὺς πρὸς
having the from the horses having-dismounted infantry by
τῷ γηλόφῳ ἦν. καὶ οὗτοι ἐπιγενόμενοι μόγις ἐξέωσαν
the hillock was and these having-come-up with-difficulty pushed-out
τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς ἐς τὰ ὄρη καὶ τοῦ νεκροῦ ἐκράτησαν.
the Indians into the mountains and of-the corpse got-possession
ὑπερβαλὼν δὲ τὰ ὄρη Ἀλέξανδρος ἐς πόλιν κατῆλθεν, 24.6
having-crossed and the mountains Alexander to a-city came-down
ᾗ ὄνομα ἦν Ἀριγαῖον· καὶ ταύτην καταλαμβάνει
to-which name was Arigaeum and this he-finds

ἐμπεπρησμένην ὑπὸ τῶν ἐνοικούντων καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους
burned by the inhabitants and the people
πεφευγότας. ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ
fled there and arrived to-him also the around
Κρατερὸν ξὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ πεπραγμένων σφίσι ξυμπάντων
Craterus with the army having-been-done by-them all
ὅσα ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐτέτακτο.
as-much-as by the king had-been-ordered

24.7 ταύτην μὲν δὴ τὴν πόλιν, ὅτι ἐν ἐπικαίρῳ χωρίῳ
this indeed indeed the city because in advantageous place
ἐδόκει ᾠκίσθαι, ἐκτειχίσαι τε προστάσσει Κρατερῷ
it-seemed to-have-been-founded to-fortify both he-orders to-Craterus
καὶ ξυνοικίσαι ἐς αὐτὴν τούς τε προσχώρους ὅσοι
and to-settle into it the both neighbors as-many-as
ἐθελονταὶ καὶ εἰ δή τινες ἀπόμαχοι τῆς στρατιᾶς.
volunteers and if indeed any unfit-for-battle of-the army
αὐτὸς δὲ προὐχώρει ἵνα ξυμπεφευγέναι ἐπυνθάνετο τοὺς
he-himself and advanced where to-have-fled-together he-learned the
πολλοὺς τῶν ταύτῃ βαρβάρων. ἐλθὼν δὲ πρός τι
many of-the there barbarians having-come and to some
ὄρος κατεστρατοπέδευσεν ὑπὸ ταῖς ὑπωρείαις τοῦ ὄρους.
mountain he-encamped under the foothills of-the mountain

24.8 καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Πτολεμαῖος ὁ Λάγου ἐκπεμφθεὶς μὲν
and in this Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus sent-out indeed
ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐς προνομήν, προελθὼν δὲ προσωτέρω
by Alexander for foraging having-gone-forward but farther
αὐτὸς ξὺν ὀλίγοις ὡς ἐς κατασκοπήν, ἀπαγγέλλει
himself with few as for reconnaissance reports
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ πυρὰ κατιδεῖν τῶν βαρβάρων πλείονα ἢ ἐν
to-Alexander fires to-have-seen of-the barbarians more than in
τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατοπέδῳ.
the of-Alexander camp

καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος τῷ μὲν πλήθει τῶν πυρῶν ἠπίστησεν, 24.9
and Alexander the indeed number of-the fires disbelieved
εἶναι δέ τι ξυνεστηκὸς τῶν ταύτῃ βαρβάρων αἰσθόμενος
to-be but something gathered of-the there barbarians having-perceived
μέρος μὲν τῆς στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ καταλείπει πρὸς τῷ ὄρει
part indeed of-the army there he-leaves by the mountain
ὡς εἶχον ἐστρατοπεδευμένους· αὐτὸς δὲ ἀναλαβὼν ὅσοι
as they-were encamped he-himself and having-taken as-many-as
ἀποχρῶντες ἐς τὰ ἀπηγγελμένα ἐφαίνοντο, ὡς πλησίον
sufficient for the reported-things appeared when near
ἤδη ἀφεώρων τὰ πυρά, τρίχα διανέμει τὴν στρατιάν.
already they-saw the fires in-three divides the army
καὶ τῷ μὲν ἑνὶ ἐπέταξε Λεοννάτου τὸν σωματοφύλακα, 24.10
and over-the indeed one he-set Leonnatus the bodyguard
ξυντάξας αὐτῷ τήν τε Ἀττάλου καὶ τὴν Βαλάκρου
having-assigned to-him the both of-Attalus and the of-Balacrus
τάξιν· τὴν δευτέραν δὲ μοῖραν Πτολεμαίῳ τῷ Λάγου
battalion the second and part to-Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus
ἄγειν ἔδωκε, τῶν τε ὑπασπιστῶν τῶν βασιλικῶν τὸ
to-lead he-gave of-the both shield-bearers the royal the
τρίτον μέρος καὶ τὴν Φιλίππου καὶ Φιλώτα τάξιν καὶ
third part and the of-Philip and of-Philotas battalion and
δύο χιλιαρχίας τῶν τοξοτῶν καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας καὶ τῶν
two chiliarchies of-the archers and the Agrianians and of-the
ἱππέων τοὺς ἡμίσεας· τὴν δὲ τρίτην μοῖραν αὐτὸς ἦγεν
cavalry the half the and third part he-himself led
ἵνα οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν βαρβάρων ἐφαίνοντο.
where the most of-the barbarians appeared
οἱ δὲ ὡς ᾔσθοντο προσάγοντας τοὺς Μακεδόνας, κατεῖχον 25.1
they and when perceived approaching the Macedonians held
γὰρ χωρία ὑπερδέξια, τῷ τε πλήθει σφῶν θαρσήσαντες καὶ
for positions commanding by-the both number of-theirs having-taken-courage and

τῶν Μακεδόνων, ὅτι ὀλίγοι ἐφαίνοντο, καταφρονήσαντες
of-the Macedonians because few they-appeared having-despised
ἐς τὸ πεδίον ὑποκατέβησαν· καὶ μάχη γίγνεται καρτερά.
into the plain came-down and battle takes-place fierce
ἀλλὰ τούτους μὲν οὐ ξὺν πόνῳ ἐνίκα Ἀλέξανδρος·
but these indeed not with toil defeated Alexander
25.2 οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Πτολεμαῖον οὐκ ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ παρετάξαντο,
the and around Ptolemy not in the level drew-up
ἀλλὰ γήλοφον γὰρ κατεῖχον οἱ βάρβαροι, ὀρθίους
but a-hillock for held the barbarians in-column
ποιήσαντες τοὺς λόχους, Πτολεμαῖος προσῆγεν ᾗπερ
having-made the companies Ptolemy led-up where
ἐπιμαχώτατον τοῦ λόφου ἐφαίνετο, οὐ πάντῃ τὸν λόφον
most-assailable of-the hill appeared not on-every-side the hill
κυκλωσάμενος, ἀλλ᾽ ἀπολιπών, εἰ φεύγειν ἐθέλοιεν οἱ
having-surrounded but having-left if to-flee they-should-wish the
βάρβαροι, χώραν αὐτοῖς ἐς τὴν φυγήν.
barbarians room for-them for the flight
25.3 καὶ γίγνεται καὶ τούτοις μάχη καρτερὰ τοῦ χωρίου τῇ
and takes-place also with-these battle fierce of-the place by-the
χαλεπότητι καὶ ὅτι οὐ κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς ταύτῃ
difficulty and because not like the other the there
βαρβάρους οἱ Ἰνδοί, ἀλλὰ πολὺ δή τι ἀλκιμώτατοι
barbarians the Indians but far indeed somewhat most-valiant
τῶν προσχώρων εἰσίν. ἐξώσθησαν δὲ καὶ οὗτοι ἀπὸ τοῦ
of-the neighbors are were-pushed-out and also these from the
ὄρους ὑπὸ τῶν Μακεδόνων· καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Λεοννάτον τῇ
mountain by the Macedonians and the around Leonnatus with-the
τρίτῃ μοίρᾳ τῆς στρατιᾶς ὡσαύτως ἔπραξαν· ἐνίκων γὰρ
third part of-the army likewise did they-won for
καὶ οὗτοι τοὺς κατὰ σφᾶς.
also these the opposite them

καὶ λέγει Πτολεμαῖος ἀνθρώπους μὲν ληφθῆναι τοὺς 25.4
and says Ptolemy men indeed to-have-been-taken the
πάντας ὑπὲρ τετρακισμυρίους, βοῶν δὲ ὑπὲρ τὰς τρεῖς καὶ
all over forty-thousand of-oxen and over the three and
εἴκοσι μυριάδας· καὶ τούτων τὰς καλλίστας ἐπιλεξάμενον
twenty myriads and of-these the finest having-selected
Ἀλέξανδρον, ὅτι διαφέρουσαι αὐτῷ κάλλει τε καὶ μεγέθει
Alexander because surpassing to-him in-beauty both and in-size
ἐφαίνοντο, πέμψαι ἐθέλειν ἐς Μακεδονίαν ἐργάζεσθαι τὴν
they-appeared to-send to-wish to Macedonia to-work the
χώραν.
land
ἐντεῦθεν ἐπὶ τὴν τῶν Ἀσσακηνῶν χώραν ἦγεν· τούτους γὰρ 25.5
thence to the of-the Assacenians country he-led these for
ἐξηγγέλλετο παρεσκευάσθαι ὡς μαχουμένους, ἱππέας μὲν
it-was-reported to-have-prepared-themselves as about-to-fight cavalry indeed
ἐς δισχιλίους ἔχοντας, πεζοὺς δὲ ὑπὲρ τοὺς τρισμυρίους,
about two-thousand having infantry and over the thirty-thousand
τριάκοντα δὲ ἐλέφαντας. Κρατερὸς μὲν δὴ ἐκτετειχικὼς
thirty and elephants Craterus indeed indeed having-fortified
ἤδη τὴν πόλιν, ἐφ' ἧς τῷ οἰκισμῷ κατελέλειπτο, τούς
already the city for whose the settlement he-had-been-left the
τε βαρύτερον ὡπλισμένους τῆς στρατιᾶς Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἦγεν
both more-heavily armed of-the army to-Alexander brought
καὶ τὰς μηχανάς, εἴ που πολιορκίας δεήσειεν.
and the engines if anywhere of-siege there-should-be-need
αὐτὸς δὲ Ἀλέξανδρος τούς τε ἑταίρους ἱππέας ἄγων καὶ τοὺς 25.6
himself and Alexander the both companion cavalry leading and the
ἱππακοντιστὰς καὶ τὴν Κοίνου καὶ Πολυπέρχοντος τάξιν
mounted-javelin-men and the of-Coenus and of-Polyperchon battalion

καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας τοὺς χιλίους καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἦει ὡς
and the Agrianians the thousand and the archers went as
ἐπὶ τοὺς Ἀσσακηνούς· ἦγε δὲ διὰ τῆς Γουραίων χώρας.
against the Assacenians he-led and through the of-Guraeans country
25.7 καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐπώνυμον τῆς χώρας τὸν Γουραῖον
and the river the named-after of-the country — Guraeus
χαλεπῶς διέβη, διὰ βαθύτητά τε καὶ ὅτι ὀξὺς ὁ ῥοῦς ἦν
with-difficulty he-crossed because-of depth both and because swift the current was
αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ λίθοι στρογγύλοι ἐν τῷ ποταμῷ ὄντες σφαλεροὶ
in-it and the stones round in the river being slippery
τοῖς ἐπιβαίνουσιν ἐγίγνοντο. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ὡς προσάγοντα
for-the stepping-on-them were the and barbarians when approaching
ᾔσθοντο Ἀλέξανδρον, ἀθρόοι μὲν ἐς μάχην καταστῆναι οὐκ
they-perceived Alexander massed indeed into battle to-take-position not
ἐτόλμησαν, διαλυθέντες δὲ ὡς ἕκαστοι κατὰ πόλεις ταύτας
dared having-broken-up and as each by cities these
ἐπενόουν ἀπομαχόμενοι διασώζειν. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος πρῶτα
they-intended defending to-save and Alexander first
μὲν ἐπὶ Μάσσαγα ἦγε, τὴν μεγίστην τῶν ταύτῃ πόλεων.
indeed against Massaga led the greatest of-the there cities

At Massaga the Indian mercenaries charge, and Alexander feigns retreat to draw them from the walls before turning on them; he is shot in the ankle. On the third day a bridge thrown from an engine breaks under the press of men, and on the fourth the city's commander is killed by a missile from an engine. The mercenaries agree to serve with Alexander but plan to slip away by night, and he surrounds and cuts them down, takes the city, and captures Assacanus' mother and daughter. Bazira will not yield to Coenus, who fortifies a post against it and beats a sally as he leaves, while Alexander marches on Ora, which falls at the first assault.

ὡς δὲ προσῆγεν ἤδη τοῖς τείχεσι, θαρρήσαντες οἱ 26.1
when and he-approached already the walls having-taken-courage the
βάρβαροι τοῖς μισθοφόροις τοῖς ἐκ τῶν πρόσω Ἰνδῶν,
barbarians in-the mercenaries the from the farther Indians
ἦσαν γὰρ οὗτοι ἐς ἑπτακισχιλίους, ὡς στρατοπεδευομένους
were for these about seven-thousand when encamping
εἶδον τοὺς Μακεδόνας, δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ἤεσαν.
they-saw the Macedonians at-a-run against them went
καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος ἰδὼν πλησίον τῆς πόλεως ἐσομένην 26.2
and Alexander having-seen near the city about-to-be
τὴν μάχην προσωτέρω ἐκκαλέσασθαι αὐτοὺς βουληθεὶς
the battle farther to-draw-out them wishing
τῶν τειχῶν, ὡς εἰ τροπὴ γίγνοιτο, ἐγίγνωσκεν γὰρ
from-the walls so-that if a-rout should-occur he-knew for
ἐσομένην, μὴ δι' ὀλίγου ἐς τὴν πόλιν καταφυγόντες
about-to-be lest at short-distance into the city having-fled
εὐμαρῶς διασώζοιντο, ὡς ἐκθέοντας εἶδε τοὺς βαρβάρους,
easily they-might-be-saved when running-out he-saw the barbarians
μεταβαλλομένους κελεύει τοὺς Μακεδόνας ὀπίσω ἀποχωρεῖν
turning-about he-orders the Macedonians back to-withdraw

ὡς πρὸς γήλοφόν τινα ἀπέχοντα ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, ἵναπερ
as toward a-hillock some distant from the place where-indeed
στρατοπεδεύειν ἐγνώκει, ἑπτά που μάλιστα σταδίους.
to-encamp he-had-resolved seven about approximately stades
26.3 καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀναθαρσήσαντες, ὡς ἐγκεκλικότων ἤδη
and the enemy having-taken-heart as having-given-way already
τῶν Μακεδόνων, δρόμῳ τε καὶ ξὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ
the Macedonians at-a-run both and with no order
ἐφέροντο ἐς αὐτούς. ὡς δὲ ἐξικνεῖτο ἤδη τὰ τοξεύματα,
rushed at them when and reached already the arrows
ἐνταῦθα Ἀλέξανδρος ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος ἐπιστρέψας ἐς
then Alexander at a-signal having-wheeled against
αὐτοὺς τὴν φάλαγγα δρόμῳ ἀντεπῆγε.
them the phalanx at-a-run led-against
26.4 πρῶτοι δὲ οἱ ἱππακοντισταί τε αὐτῷ καὶ οἱ Ἀγριᾶνες
first and the mounted-javelin-men both for-him and the Agrianians
καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἐκδραμόντες ξυνέμιξαν τοῖς βαρβάροις·
and the archers having-run-out engaged the barbarians
αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν φάλαγγα ἐν τάξει ἦγεν. οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ
he-himself and the phalanx in order led the and Indians
τῷ τε παραλόγῳ ἐκπλαγέντες καὶ ἅμα ἐν χερσὶ
by-the both unexpected astounded and at-the-same-time in hands
γεγενημένης τῆς μάχης ἐγκλίναντες ἔφευγον ἐς τὴν πόλιν.
having-become the battle having-given-way fled into the city
καὶ ἀπέθανον μὲν αὐτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς διακοσίους, οἱ δὲ
and died indeed of-them about the two-hundred the and
λοιποὶ ἐς τὰ τείχη κατεκλείσθησαν. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
rest into the walls were-shut-in and Alexander
προσῆγε τῷ τείχει τὴν φάλαγγα, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν τοξεύεται
led-up to-the wall the phalanx and thereupon is-shot
μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ τείχους ἐς τὸ σφυρὸν οὐ χαλεπῶς.
indeed from the wall in the ankle not severely

ἐπαγαγὼν δὲ τὰς μηχανὰς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τῶν μὲν 26.5
having-brought-up and the engines on-the next-day of-the indeed
τειχῶν τι εὐμαρῶς κατέσεισε, βιαζομένους δὲ ταύτῃ τοὺς
walls some easily he-shook-down forcing but there the
Μακεδόνας ᾗ παρέρρηκτο τοῦ τείχους οὐκ ἀτόλμως οἱ
Macedonians where had-been-broken of-the wall not without-daring the
Ἰνδοὶ ἠμύνοντο, ὥστε ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀνεκαλέσατο
Indians defended-themselves so-that on-this indeed the day he-called-back
τὴν στρατιάν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ τῶν τε Μακεδόνων αὐτῶν
the army on-the and next-day of-the both Macedonians themselves
ἡ προσβολὴ καρτερωτέρα ἐγίγνετο καὶ πύργος ἐπήχθη
the attack fiercer became and a-tower was-brought-up
ξύλινος τοῖς τείχεσιν, ὅθεν ἐκτοξεύοντες οἱ τοξόται καὶ βέλη
wooden to-the walls whence shooting the archers and missiles
ἀπὸ μηχανῶν ἀφιέμενα ἀνέστελλεν ἐπὶ πολὺ τοὺς Ἰνδούς.
from engines being-shot checked to great-extent the Indians
ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲ ὡς βιάσασθαι εἴσω τοῦ τείχους οἷοί τε ἐγένοντο.
but not-even so to-force within the wall able — were
τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ προσαγαγὼν αὖθις τὴν φάλαγγα καὶ ἀπὸ 26.6
on-the and third having-brought-up again the phalanx and from
μηχανῆς γέφυραν ἐπιβαλὼν τοῦ τείχους ᾗ παρερρωγὸς
an-engine a-bridge having-thrown onto-the wall where broken
ἦν, ταύτῃ ἐπῆγε τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς, οἵπερ αὐτῷ καὶ Τύρον
it-was there he-led-on the shield-bearers who-very for-him also Tyre
ὡσαύτως ἐξεῖλον. πολλῶν δὲ ὑπὸ προθυμίας ὠθουμένων
likewise had-taken many and by eagerness pushing-forward
ἄχθος λαβοῦσα μεῖζον ἡ γέφυρα κατερράγη καὶ πίπτουσι
burden having-taken greater the bridge broke and fall
ξὺν αὐτῇ οἱ Μακεδόνες.
with it the Macedonians

26.7 οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἰδόντες τὸ γιγνόμενον λίθοις τε ξὺν
the and barbarians having-seen the happening with-stones both with
βοῇ ἀπὸ τῶν τειχῶν καὶ τοξεύμασι καὶ ἄλλῳ ὅτῳ
shouting from the walls and with-arrows and other whatever
τις μετὰ χεῖρας ἔχων ἐτύγχανεν ἢ ὅτῳ τις ἐν τῷ τότε
each in hands having happened or whatever each in the then
ἔλαβεν ἐξηκόντιζον ἐς τοὺς Μακεδόνας· οἱ δὲ καὶ
took hurled at the Macedonians the-others and also
κατὰ θύρας, αἵτινες αὐτοῖς κατὰ τὰ μεσοπύργια μικραὶ
through doors which for-them in the curtain-walls small
ἦσαν, ἐκθέοντες ἐκ χειρὸς ἔπαιον τεταραγμένους.
were running-out from hand struck them-thrown-into-confusion

27.1 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ πέμπει Ἀλκέταν ξὺν τῇ αὐτοῦ τάξει τούς
Alexander and sends Alcetas with the his-own battalion the
τε κατατετρωμένους ἀναλαβεῖν καὶ ὅσοι προσεμάχοντο
both wounded to-pick-up and as-many-as were-fighting
ἐπανακαλέσασθαι ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ τῇ
to-recall as toward the camp and on-the
τετάρτῃ ὡσαύτως ἀπ᾽ ἄλλης μηχανῆς ἄλλη ἐπιβάθρα
fourth likewise from another engine another gangway
αὐτῷ προσήγετο πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος.
for-him was-brought-up to the wall

27.2 καὶ οἱ Ἰνδοί, ἕως μὲν αὐτοῖς ὁ ἡγεμὼν τοῦ χωρίου περιῆν,
and the Indians while indeed for-them the commander of-the place survived
ἀπεμάχοντο καρτερῶς· ὡς δὲ βέλει ἀπὸ μηχανῆς τυπεὶς
fought-back strongly when and by-a-missile from an-engine struck
ἀποθνήσκει ἐκεῖνος, αὐτῶν τε οἱ μέν τινες πεπτωκότες
dies he of-them both the indeed some having-fallen
ἐν τῇ ξυνεχεῖ πολιορκίᾳ, οἱ πολλοὶ δὲ τραυματίαι τε καὶ
in the continuous siege the many and wounded both and
ἀπόμαχοι ἦσαν, ἐπεκηρυκεύοντο πρὸς Ἀλέξανδρον.
unfit-for-battle were sent-a-herald to Alexander

τῷ δὲ ἀσμένῳ γίνεται ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς διασῶσαι· καὶ 27.3
for-him and gladly it-happens men brave to-save and
ξυμβαίνει ἐπὶ τῷδε Ἀλέξανδρος τοῖς μισθοφόροις Ἰνδοῖς
comes-to-terms on this Alexander with-the mercenary Indians
ὡς καταταχθέντας ἐς τὴν ἄλλην στρατιὰν ξὺν αὐτῷ
that having-been-enrolled into the other army with himself
στρατεύεσθαι. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἐξῆλθον ξὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις,
to-campaign they indeed indeed came-out with the arms
καὶ κατεστρατοπέδευσαν κατὰ σφᾶς ἐπὶ γηλόφῳ, ὃς
and encamped by themselves on a-hillock which
ἦν ἀντίπορος τοῦ τῶν Μακεδόνων στρατοπέδου. νυκτὸς
was opposite the of-the Macedonians camp by-night
δὲ ἐπενόουν δρασμῷ διαχρησάμενοι ἐς τὰ σφέτερα ἤθη
but they-intended by-flight having-resorted to the their-own haunts
ἀπαναστῆναι οὐκ ἐθέλοντες ἐναντία αἵρεσθαι τοῖς ἄλλοις
to-withdraw not wishing against to-take the other
Ἰνδοῖς ὅπλα.
Indians arms
καὶ ταῦτα ὡς ἐξηγγέλθη Ἀλεξάνδρῳ, περιστήσας τῆς 27.4
and these-things when were-reported to-Alexander having-surrounded in-the
νυκτὸς τῷ γηλόφῳ τὴν στρατιὰν πᾶσαν κατακόπτει
night the hillock with-the army whole he-cuts-down
τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς ἐν μέσῳ ἀπολαβών, τήν τε πόλιν αἱρεῖ κατὰ
the Indians in middle having-caught the both city takes by
κράτος ἐρημωθεῖσαν τῶν προμαχομένων, καὶ τὴν μητέρα
force emptied of-the defenders and the mother
τὴν Ἀσσακάνου καὶ τὴν παῖδα ἔλαβεν. ἀπέθανον δὲ ἐν τῇ
the of-Assacanus and the daughter took died and in the
πάσῃ πολιορκίᾳ τῶν ξὺν Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἐς πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν.
whole siege of-the with Alexander about five and twenty

27.5 ἔνθεν δὲ Κοῖνον μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ Βάζιρα ἐκπέμπει, γνώμην
thence and Coenus indeed as toward Bazira he-sends-out judgment
ποιησάμενος ὅτι μαθόντες τῶν Μασσακανῶν τὴν ἅλωσιν
having-made that having-learned of-the Massacanians the capture
ἐνδώσουσι σφᾶς αὐτούς. Ἄτταλον δὲ καὶ Ἀλκέταν καὶ
they-will-surrender them selves Attalus and and Alcetas and
Δημήτριον τὸν ἱππάρχην ἐπὶ Ὦρα στέλλει, ἄλλην πόλιν,
Demetrius the cavalry-commander toward Ora he-sends another city
παραγγείλας περιτειχίζειν τὴν πόλιν ἔστ᾽ ἂν ἀφίκηται αὐτός.
having-ordered to-wall-around the city until — should-arrive he-himself
27.6 καὶ γίγνεται ἐκδρομὴ τῶν ἐκ τῆς πόλεως ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ
and takes-place a-sally of-the from the city against the around
Ἀλκέταν. οὐ χαλεπῶς δὲ τρεψάμενοι αὐτοὺς οἱ Μακεδόνες
Alcetas not with-difficulty but having-routed them the Macedonians
εἴσω τοῦ τείχους ἐς τὴν πόλιν ἀποστρέφουσι. καὶ Κοίνῳ
within the wall into the city turn-back and for-Coenus
οὐ προχωρεῖ τὰ ἐν τοῖς Βαζίροις, ἀλλὰ πιστεύοντες γὰρ
not goes-forward the-things in — Bazira but trusting for
τοῦ χωρίου τῇ ὀχυρότητι, ὅτι ὑπερύψηλόν τε ἦν καὶ
of-the place in-the strength because very-high both it-was and
πάντῃ ἀκριβῶς τετειχισμένον, οὐδὲν ξυμβατικὸν ἐνεδίδοσαν.
on-every-side thoroughly fortified nothing conciliatory they-offered
27.7 ταῦτα μαθὼν Ἀλέξανδρος ὥρμητο μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ Βάζιρα,
these-things having-learned Alexander had-set-out indeed as toward Bazira
γνοὺς δὲ ὅτι τῶν προσοίκων τινὲς βαρβάρων παριέναι
having-learned but that of-the neighboring some barbarians to-get-in
ἐς τὰ Ὦρα τὴν πόλιν λαθόντες μέλλουσι, πρὸς Ἀβισάρου
into — Ora the city unnoticed are-about by Abisares
ἐπὶ τῷδε ἐσταλμένοι, ἐπὶ τὰ Ὦρα πρῶτον ἦγε· Κοῖνον
for this sent toward — Ora first he-led Coenus
δὲ ἐπιτειχίσαι τῇ πόλει τῶν Βαζιρέων καρτερόν τι χωρίον
and to-wall-against the city of-the Bazirians strong some place

προσέταξε, καὶ ἐν τούτῳ φυλακὴν καταλιπόντα ἀποχρῶσαν,
he-ordered and in this a-garrison having-left sufficient
ὡς μὴ ἄδεια εἴη τοῖς ἐν τῇ πόλει χρῆσθαι τῇ χώρᾳ,
so-that not freedom might-be for-the in the city to-use the country
αὐτὸν ἄγοντα τῆς στρατιᾶς τὴν λοιπὴν παρ᾽ αὑτὸν ἰέναι.
himself leading of-the army the rest to himself to-go
οἱ δὲ ἐκ τῶν Βαζίρων ὡς εἶδον ἀπιόντα ξὺν τῷ 27.8
the and from — Bazira when they-saw departing with the
πλείστῳ τῆς στρατιᾶς τὸν Κοῖνον, καταφρονήσαντες τῶν
greatest-part of-the army — Coenus having-despised the
Μακεδόνων, ὡς οὐ γενομένων ἄν σφισιν ἀξιομάχων,
Macedonians as not being — for-them a-match
ἐπεκθέουσιν ἐς τὸ πεδίον· καὶ γίγνεται αὐτῶν μάχη
run-out into the plain and takes-place their battle
καρτερά. καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ πίπτουσι μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐς
fierce and in this fall indeed of-the barbarians about
πεντακοσίους, ζῶντες δὲ ἐλήφθησαν ὑπὲρ τοὺς ἑβδομήκοντα·
five-hundred alive and were-taken over the seventy
οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐν τῇ πόλει ξυμφυγόντες βεβαιότερον ἤδη
the and rest in the city having-fled-together more-securely already
εἴργοντο τῆς χώρας ὑπὸ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπιτειχίσματος.
were-shut-off from-the country by the from the fort
καὶ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ δὲ τῶν Ὤρων ἡ πολιορκία οὐ 27.9
and for-Alexander and — Ora the siege not
χαλεπὴ ἐγένετο, ἀλλ᾽ εὐθὺς ἐξ ἐφόδου προσβαλὼν τοῖς
difficult was but at-once at first-assault having-attacked the
τείχεσι τῆς πόλεως ἐκράτησε, καὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας τοὺς
walls of-the city he-mastered-it and the elephants the
ἐγκαταλειφθέντας ἔλαβε. καὶ ταῦτα οἱ ἐν τοῖς Βαζίροις
left-behind took and these-things those in — Bazira

ὡς ἔμαθον, ἀπογνόντες τὰ σφέτερα πράγματα ἀμφὶ μέσας
when learned having-despaired the their affairs about middle
νύκτας τὴν πόλιν ἐκλείπουσιν, ἔφυγον δὲ ἐς τὴν πέτραν.
night the city abandon fled and to the rock

X · AORNUS

The people of Bazira and the other barbarians flee to the rock of Aornus, which legend says even Heracles could not take, and Arrian doubts Heracles ever reached India. Alexander garrisons Ora and Massaga, fortifies Bazira, makes Nicanor satrap west of the Indus, wins Peucelaotis, and leaves Craterus at Embolima to gather supplies. Ptolemy seizes a height by a rough path, and Alexander fights his way up to join him. The army builds a great mound toward the rock, and a few Macedonians seize a hillock level with it. The Indians offer surrender meaning to escape by night; Alexander climbs in with seven hundred men as they leave and kills many, and gives the rock to Sisicottus to garrison. He then pursues the brother of Assacanus, hunts his elephants, and builds ships for the Indus.

28.1 ὧς δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι βάρβαροι ἔπραττον· ἀπολιπόντες τὰς
so and also the other barbarians did having-left the
πόλεις ξύμπαντες ἔφευγον ἐς τὴν πέτραν τὴν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ
cities all fled to the rock the in the country
τὴν Ἄορνον καλουμένην. μέγα γάρ τι τοῦτο χρῆμα πέτρας
the Aornus called great for some this thing of-rock
ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ταύτῃ ἐστί, καὶ λόγος ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς κατέχει
in the country this is and a-story about it holds
οὐδὲ Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ Διὸς ἁλωτὸν γενέσθαι τὴν πέτραν.
not-even for-Heracles the (son)-of-Zeus capturable to-have-been the rock
28.2 εἰ μὲν δὴ καὶ ἐς Ἰνδοὺς ἀφίκετο ὁ Ἡρακλῆς ὁ Θηβαῖος
if indeed indeed also to Indians came — Heracles the Theban
ἢ ὁ Τύριος ἢ ὁ Αἰγύπτιος ἐς οὐδέτερα ἔχω ἰσχυρίσασθαι·
or the Tyrian or the Egyptian to neither I-can to-affirm

μᾶλλον δὲ δοκῶ ὅτι οὐκ ἀφίκετο, ἀλλὰ πάντα γὰρ ὅσα
rather but I-think that not he-came but all for as-many-as
χαλεπὰ οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἐς τοσόνδε ἄρα αὔξουσιν αὐτῶν
difficult the men to so-great then they-magnify of-them
τὴν χαλεπότητα, ὡς καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἂν ἄπορα γενέσθαι
the difficulty as even — for-Heracles — impossible to-have-been
μυθεύειν. κἀγὼ ὑπὲρ τῆς πέτρας ταύτης οὕτω γιγνώσκω,
to-tell-in-myth and-I about the rock this so I-judge
τὸν Ἡρακλέα ἐς κόμπον τοῦ λόγου ἐπιφημίζεσθαι.
— Heracles for boast of-the story to-be-attached
τὸν μὲν δὴ κύκλον τῆς πέτρας λέγουσιν ἐς διακοσίους 28.3
the indeed indeed circuit of-the rock they-say about two-hundred
σταδίους μάλιστα εἶναι, ὕψος δὲ αὐτῆς, ἵναπερ
stades approximately to-be height and of-it where-indeed
χθαμαλώτατον, σταδίων ἕνδεκα, καὶ ἀνάβασιν χειροποίητον
lowest stades eleven and ascent hand-made
μίαν χαλεπήν· εἶναι δὲ καὶ ὕδωρ ἐν ἄκρᾳ τῇ πέτρᾳ πολὺ
one difficult to-be and also water on top-of the rock much
καὶ καθαρόν, πηγὴν ἀνίσχουσαν, ὡς καὶ ἀπορρεῖν ἀπὸ τῆς
and pure a-spring rising so-that also to-flow-off from the
πηγῆς ὕδωρ, καὶ ὕλην καὶ γῆν ἀγαθὴν ἐργάσιμον ὅσην
spring water and timber and soil good arable as-much-as
καὶ χιλίοις ἀνθρώποις ἀποχρῶσαν ἂν εἶναι ἐργάζεσθαι.
even for-a-thousand men sufficient — to-be to-work
καὶ ταῦτα ἀκούοντα Ἀλέξανδρον πόθος λαμβάνει ἐξελεῖν 28.4
and these-things hearing Alexander longing seizes to-take
καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ὄρος, οὐχ ἥκιστα ἐπὶ τῷ ἀμφὶ τὸν
also this the mountain not least on-account-of the about —
Ἡρακλέα μύθῳ πεφημισμένῳ. τὰ μὲν δὴ Ὧρα καὶ τὰ
Heracles myth spread-abroad — indeed indeed Ora and —

Μάσσαγα φρούρια ἐποίησεν ἐπὶ τῇ χώρᾳ, τὰ Βάζιρα δὲ
Massaga forts he-made over the country — Bazira and
τὴν πόλιν ἐξετείχισε.
the city he-fortified

28.5 καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἡφαιστίωνά τε καὶ Περδίκκαν αὐτῷ ἄλλην
and the around Hephaestion both and Perdiccas for-him another
πόλιν ἐκτειχίσαντες, Ὀροβάτις ὄνομα τῇ πόλει ἦν, καὶ
city having-fortified Orobatis name to-the city was and
φρουρὰν καταλιπόντες ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν ᾔεσαν·
a-garrison having-left as toward the Indus river went
ὡς δὲ ἀφίκοντο, ἔπρασσον ἤδη ὅσα ἐς τὸ ζεῦξαι
when and they-arrived they-were-doing already as-much-as for the to-bridge
τὸν Ἰνδὸν ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐτέτακτο.
— Indus by Alexander had-been-ordered

28.6 Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τῆς μὲν χώρας τῆς ἐπὶ τάδε τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
Alexander and of-the indeed country the on this-side of-the Indus
ποταμοῦ σατράπην κατέστησε Νικάνορα τῶν ἑταίρων.
river satrap appointed Nicanor of-the companions
αὐτὸς δὲ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν
himself and the indeed first as toward the Indus river
ἦγε, καὶ πόλιν τε Πευκελαῶτιν οὐ πόρρω τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ
led and city both Peucelaotis not far — from-Indus
ᾠκισμένην ὁμολογίᾳ παρεστήσατο καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ φρουρὰν
situated by-agreement won-over and in it a-garrison
καταστήσας τῶν Μακεδόνων καὶ Φίλιππον ἐπὶ τῇ φρουρᾷ
having-established of-the Macedonians and Philip over the garrison
ἡγεμόνα, ὁ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα προσηγάγετο μικρὰ πολίσματα
commander he and also other brought-over small towns
πρὸς τῷ Ἰνδῷ ποταμῷ ᾠκισμένα. ξυνείποντο δὲ αὐτῷ
by the Indus river situated followed and him
Κωφαῖός τε καὶ Ἀσσαγέτης οἱ ὕπαρχοι τῆς χώρας.
Cophaeus both and Assagetes the hyparchs of-the country

ἀφικόμενος δὲ ἐς Ἐμβόλιμα πόλιν, ἣ ξύνεγγυς τῆς πέτρας 28.7
having-arrived and at Embolima city which near the rock
τῆς Ἀόρνου ᾠκεῖτο, Κρατερὸν μὲν ξὺν μέρει τῆς στρατιᾶς
— Aornus was-situated Craterus indeed with part of-the army
καταλείπει αὐτοῦ, σῖτόν τε ἐς τὴν πόλιν ὡς πλεῖστον
leaves there grain both into the city as most
ξυνάγειν καὶ ὅσα ἄλλα ἐς χρόνιον τριβήν, ὡς ἐντεῦθεν
to-gather and as-many-as other-things for long delay so-that thence
ὁρμωμένους τοὺς Μακεδόνας χρονίῳ πολιορκίᾳ ἐκτρυχῶσαι
setting-out the Macedonians by-long siege to-wear-out
τοὺς κατέχοντας τὴν πέτραν, εἰ μὴ ἐξ ἐφόδου ληφθείη.
the holding the rock if not at first-assault it-should-be-taken
αὐτὸς δὲ τοὺς τοξότας τε ἀναλαβὼν καὶ τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας 28.8
he-himself and the archers both having-taken and the Agrianians
καὶ τὴν Κοίνου τάξιν καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἄλλης φάλαγγος
and the of-Coenus battalion and from the other phalanx
ἐπιλέξας τοὺς κουφοτάτους τε καὶ ἅμα εὐοπλοτάτους
having-selected the lightest both and at-the-same-time best-armed
καὶ τῶν ἑταίρων ἱππέων ἐς διακοσίους καὶ ἱπποτοξότας
and of-the companion cavalry about two-hundred and mounted-archers
ἐς ἑκατὸν προσῆγε τῇ πέτρᾳ. καὶ ταύτῃ μὲν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
about hundred he-led-up to-the rock and on-this indeed the day
κατεστρατοπεδεύσατο, ἵνα ἐπιτήδειον αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο, τῇ
he-encamped where suitable to-him it-appeared on-the
δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ὀλίγον προελθὼν ὡς πρὸς τὴν πέτραν
and next-day a-little having-advanced as toward the rock
αὖθις ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἦκον παρ᾽ αὐτὸν
again he-encamped and in this came to him
τῶν προσχώρων τινές, σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς ἐνδιδόντες καὶ
of-the neighbors some them both selves surrendering and

ἡγήσεσθαι φάσκοντες ἐς τῆς πέτρας τὸ ἐπιμαχώτατον,
to-be-going-to-guide saying to of-the rock the most-assailable-part
ὅθεν οὐ χαλεπὸν αὐτῷ ἔσεσθαι ἑλεῖν τὸ χωρίον.
whence not difficult for-him it-would-be to-take the place
29.1 καὶ ξὺν τούτοις πέμπει Πτολεμαῖον τὸν Λάγου τὸν
and with these he-sends Ptolemy the (son)-of-Lagus the
σωματοφύλακα τούς τε Ἀγριᾶνας ἄγοντα καὶ τοὺς ψιλοὺς
bodyguard the both Agrianians leading and the light-troops
τοὺς ἄλλους καὶ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἐπιλέκτους, προστάξας,
the other and of-the shield-bearers picked-men having-ordered
ἐπειδὰν καταλάβῃ τὸ χωρίον, κατέχειν μὲν αὐτὸ ἰσχυρᾷ
whenever he-seizes the place to-hold indeed it with-strong
φυλακῇ, οἱ δὲ σημαίνειν ὅτι ἔχεται.
guard to-him and to-signal that it-is-held
29.2 καὶ Πτολεμαῖος ἐλθὼν ὁδὸν τραχεῖάν τε καὶ δύσπορον
and Ptolemy having-gone a-road rough both and hard-to-pass
λανθάνει τοὺς βαρβάρους κατασχὼν τὸν τόπον· καὶ
escapes-notice the barbarians having-occupied the spot and
τοῦτον χάρακι ἐν κύκλῳ καὶ τάφρῳ ὀχυρώσας πυρσὸν
this with-palisade in circle and ditch having-fortified a-beacon
αἴρει ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους ἔνθεν ὀφθήσεσθαι ὑπὸ Ἀλεξάνδρου
raises from the mountain whence to-be-seen by Alexander
ἔμελλεν. καὶ ὤφθη τε ἅμα ἡ φλὸξ καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος
it-was-likely and was-seen both at-the-same-time the flame and Alexander
ἐπῆγε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τὴν στρατιάν· ἀμυνομένων δὲ τῶν
led-up on-the next-day the army defending-themselves but the
βαρβάρων οὐδὲν πλέον αὐτῷ ὑπὸ δυσχωρίας ἐγίγνετο.
barbarians nothing more for-him on-account-of difficult-ground came-about
29.3 ὡς δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἄπορον τὴν προσβολὴν κατέμαθον
when and for-Alexander impossible the attack they-learned
οἱ βάρβαροι, ἀναστρέψαντες τοῖς ἀμφὶ Πτολεμαῖον
the barbarians having-turned on-the around Ptolemy

αὐτοὶ προσέβαλλον· καὶ γίγνεται αὐτῶν τε καὶ τῶν
themselves made-attack and takes-place their both and of-the
Μακεδόνων μάχη καρτερά, τῶν μὲν διασπάσαι τὸν
Macedonians battle fierce of-the-ones indeed to-tear-apart the
χάρακα σπουδὴν ποιουμένων, τῶν Ἰνδῶν, Πτολεμαίου δὲ
palisade effort making the Indians of-Ptolemy and
διαφυλάξαι τὸ χωρίον· καὶ μεῖον σχόντες οἱ βάρβαροι
to-preserve the position and the-worse having the barbarians
ἐν τῷ ἀκροβολισμῷ νυκτὸς ἐπιγενομένης ἀπεχώρησαν.
in the skirmishing night having-come-on withdrew
Ἀλέξανδρος δὲ τῶν Ἰνδῶν τινα τῶν αὐτομόλων πιστόν 29.4
Alexander and of-the Indians one of-the deserters trustworthy
τε ἄλλως καὶ τῶν χωρίων δαήμονα ἐπιλεξάμενος πέμπει
both otherwise and of-the places knowing having-selected sends
παρὰ Πτολεμαῖον τῆς νυκτός, γράμματα φέροντα τὸν
to Ptolemy in-the night letters carrying the
Ἰνδόν, ἵνα ἐνεγέγραπτο, ἐπειδὰν αὐτὸς προσβάλλῃ τῇ
Indian where had-been-written whenever he-himself attacks the
πέτρᾳ, τὸν δὲ ἐπιέναι τοῖς βαρβάροις κατὰ τὸ ὄρος μηδὲ
rock him and to-attack the barbarians along the mountain nor
ἀγαπᾶν ἐν φυλακῇ ἔχοντα τὸ χωρίον, ὡς ἀμφοτέρωθεν
to-be-content in guard holding the place so-that from-both-sides
βαλλομένους τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς ἀμφιβόλους γίγνεσθαι.
being-shot the Indians beset-on-both-sides to-become
καὶ αὐτὸς ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἄρας ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου 29.5
and himself with the day having-set-out from the camp
προσῆγε τὴν στρατιὰν κατὰ τὴν πρόσβασιν, ᾗ
led-up the army along the approach by-which
Πτολεμαῖος λαθὼν ἀνέβη, γνώμην ποιούμενος, ὡς, εἰ
Ptolemy unnoticed went-up judgment making that if

ταύτῃ βιασάμενος ξυμμίξει τοῖς ἀμφὶ Πτολεμαῖον, οὐ
there having-forced-his-way he-will-join the around Ptolemy not
χαλεπὸν ἔτι ἐσόμενον αὐτῷ τὸ ἔργον. καὶ ξυνέβη οὕτως.
difficult still about-to-be for-him the work and it-happened so
29.6 ἔστε μὲν γὰρ ἐπὶ μεσημβρίαν ξυνειστήκει καρτερὰ μάχη τοῖς
while indeed for until midday was-joined fierce battle for-the
τε Ἰνδοῖς καὶ τοῖς Μακεδόσιν, τῶν μὲν ἐκβιαζομένων
both Indians and the Macedonians of-the-ones indeed forcing-their-way
ἐς τὴν πρόσβασιν, τῶν δὲ βαλλόντων ἀνιόντας· ὡς δὲ
into the approach of-the-others and shooting those-going-up when and
οὐκ ἀνίεσαν οἱ Μακεδόνες, ἄλλοι ἐπ᾽ ἄλλοις ἐπιόντες, οἱ δὲ
not let-up the Macedonians others after others coming-on the and
πρόσθεν ἀναπαυόμενοι, μόγις δὴ ἀμφὶ δείλην ἐκράτησαν
before resting with-difficulty indeed about afternoon they-mastered
τῆς παρόδου καὶ ξυνέμιξαν τοῖς ξὺν Πτολεμαίῳ. ἐκεῖθεν δὲ
the passage and joined the with Ptolemy thence and
ὁμοῦ ἤδη γενομένη ἡ στρατιὰ πᾶσα ἐπήγετο αὖθις ὡς
together already having-become the army whole was-led again as
ἐπ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν πέτραν· ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἔτι ἄπορος ἦν αὐτῇ ἡ
against itself the rock but for still impossible was for-it the
προσβολή, ταύτῃ μὲν δὴ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος γίγνεται.
attack on-this indeed indeed the day this the end comes-about
29.7 ὑπὸ δὲ τὴν ἕω παραγγέλλει στρατιώτῃ ἑκάστῳ κόπτειν
toward and the dawn he-orders soldier each to-cut
χάρακας ἑκατὸν κατ᾽ ἄνδρα. καὶ οὗτοι κεκομμένοι ἦσαν καὶ
stakes hundred per man and these cut were and
αὐτὸς ἐχώννυεν ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ λόφου, ἵνα
himself was-heaping-up having-begun from the summit of-the hill where
ἐστρατοπεδευκότες ἦσαν, ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν πέτραν χῶμα μέγα,
encamped they-were as toward the rock a-mound great
ἔνθεν τοξεύματά τε ἂν ἐξικνεῖσθαι ἐς τοὺς προμαχομένους
whence arrows both — to-reach to the defenders

αὐτῷ ἐφαίνετο καὶ ἀπὸ μηχανῶν βέλη ἀφιέμενα· καὶ
to-him it-appeared and from engines missiles being-shot and
ἐχώννυον αὐτῷ πᾶς τις ἀντιλαμβανόμενος τοῦ ἔργου· καὶ
heaped-up for-him every one laying-hold of-the work and
αὐτὸς ἐφειστήκει θεατὴς καὶ ἐπαινέτης τοῦ ξὺν προθυμίᾳ
himself stood-over as-spectator and praiser of-the with eagerness
περαινομένου, κολαστὴς δὲ τοῦ ἐν τῷ παραχρῆμα ἐκλιποῦς.
being-accomplished punisher and of-the in the moment slack
τῇ μὲν δὴ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ὡς ἐπὶ στάδιον ἔχωσεν 30.1
on-the indeed indeed first day as-far-as about a-stade heaped
αὐτῷ ὁ στρατός. ἐς δὲ τὴν ὑστεραίαν οἵ τε σφενδονῆται
for-him the army on and the next-day the both slingers
σφενδονῶντες ἐς τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς ἐκ τοῦ ἤδη κεχωσμένου καὶ
slinging at the Indians from the already heaped-up and
ἀπὸ τῶν μηχανῶν βέλη ἀφιέμενα ἀνέστελλε τῶν Ἰνδῶν
from the engines missiles being-shot checked of-the Indians
τὰς ἐκδρομὰς τὰς ἐπὶ τοὺς χωννύοντας. καὶ ἐχώννυτο
the sallies the against the heaping-up and was-being-heaped
αὐτῷ ἐς τρεῖς ἡμέρας ξυνεχῶς τὸ χωρίον. τῇ τετάρτῃ δὲ
for-him for three days continuously the place on-the fourth and
βιασάμενοι τῶν Μακεδόνων οὐ πολλοὶ κατέσχον ὀλίγον
having-forced-their-way of-the Macedonians not many seized a-small
γήλοφον ἰσόπεδον τῇ πέτρᾳ. καὶ Ἀλέξανδρος οὐδέν τι
hillock level with-the rock and Alexander not at-all
ἐλινύων ἐπῆγε τὸ χῶμα ξυνάψαι ἐθέλων τὸ χωννύμενον
pausing led-on the mound to-join wishing the being-heaped-up
τῷ γηλόφῳ, ὅντινα οἱ ὀλίγοι αὐτῷ ἤδη κατεῖχον.
to-the hillock which the few for-him already held
οἱ δὲ Ἰνδοὶ πρός τε τὴν ἀδιήγητον τόλμαν τῶν ἐς 30.2
the and Indians at both the indescribable daring of-the onto
τὸν γήλοφον βιασαμένων Μακεδόνων ἐκπλαγέντες καὶ τὸ
the hillock having-forced Macedonians astounded and the

χῶμα ξυνάπτον ἤδη ὁρῶντες, τοῦ μὲν ἀπομάχεσθαι
mound joining already seeing from-the indeed to-fight-back
ἔτι ἀπείχοντο, πέμψαντες δὲ κήρυκας σφῶν παρὰ
still they-refrained having-sent and heralds of-theirs to
Ἀλέξανδρον ἐθέλειν ἔφασκον ἐνδοῦναι τὴν πέτραν, εἴ
Alexander to-be-willing said to-surrender the rock if
σφισι σπένδοιτο. γνώμην δὲ ἐπεποίηντο ἐν τῷ ἔτι
with-them he-would-make-a-truce resolve and had-made in the still
διαμέλλοντι τῶν σπονδῶν διαγαγόντες τὴν ἡμέραν νυκτὸς
delaying of-the truce having-spent the day by-night
ὡς ἕκαστοι διασκεδάννυσθαι ἐπὶ τὰ σφέτερα ἤθη.
as each to-scatter to the their-own haunts
30.3 καὶ τοῦτο ὡς ἐπύθετο Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐνδίδωσιν αὐτοῖς χρόνον
and this when learned Alexander he-allows them time
τε ἐς τὴν ἀποχώρησιν καὶ τῆς φυλακῆς τὴν κύκλωσιν
both for the withdrawal and of-the guard the encirclement
τὴν πάντῃ ἀφελεῖν. καὶ αὐτὸς ἔμενεν ἔστε ἤρξαντο τῆς
the on-every-side to-remove and himself waited until they-began the
ἀποχωρήσεως· καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἀναλαβὼν τῶν σωματοφυλάκων
withdrawal and in this having-taken of-the bodyguards
καὶ τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἐς ἑπτακοσίους κατὰ τὸ ἐκλελειμμένον
and of-the shield-bearers about seven-hundred at the abandoned-part
τῆς πέτρας ἀνέρχεται ἐς αὐτὴν πρῶτος, καὶ οἱ Μακεδόνες
of-the rock goes-up into it first and the Macedonians
ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἀνιμῶντες ἀλλήλους ἀνῄεσαν.
one another-way hauling-up one-another went-up
30.4 καὶ οὗτοι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀποχωροῦντας τῶν βαρβάρων
and these against the withdrawing of-the barbarians
τραπόμενοι ἀπὸ ξυνθήματος, πολλοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἐν τῇ
having-turned at a-signal many indeed of-them in the
φυγῇ ἀπέκτειναν, οἱ δὲ καὶ πεφοβημένως ἀποχωροῦντες
flight killed the-others and also in-panic withdrawing

κατὰ τῶν κρημνῶν ῥίψαντες σφᾶς ἀπέθανον. εἴχετό τε
down the cliffs having-thrown themselves died was-held both
Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ἡ πέτρα ἡ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἄπορος γενομένη καὶ
by-Alexander the rock the — for-Heracles impossible having-been and
ἔθυεν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῇ Ἀλέξανδρος καὶ κατεσκεύασε φρούριον,
sacrificed on it Alexander and built a-fort
παραδοὺς Σισικόττῳ ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς φρουρᾶς, ὃς ἐξ
having-handed-it-to Sisicottus to-take-charge of-the garrison who from
Ἰνδῶν μὲν πάλαι ηὐτομολήκει ἐς Βάκτρα παρὰ Βῆσσον,
Indians indeed long-ago had-deserted to Bactra to Bessus
Ἀλεξάνδρου δὲ κατασχόντος τὴν χώραν τὴν Βακτρίαν
Alexander and having-occupied the country the Bactrian
ξυνεστράτευέ τε αὐτῷ καὶ πιστὸς ἐς τὰ μάλιστα ἐφαίνετο.
campaigned-with both him and faithful to the most appeared
ἄρας δ᾽ ἐκ τῆς πέτρας ἐς τὴν Ἀσσακηνῶν χώραν 30.5
having-set-out and from the rock into the of-Assacenians country
ἐμβάλλει. τὸν γὰρ ἀδελφὸν τὸν Ἀσσακάνου ἐξηγγέλλετο
he-invades the for brother the of-Assacanus was-reported
τούς τε ἐλέφαντας ἔχοντα καὶ τῶν προσχώρων βαρβάρων
the both elephants having and of-the neighboring barbarians
πολλοὺς ξυμπεφευγέναι ἐς τὰ ταύτῃ ὄρη. καὶ
many to-have-fled-together into the there mountains and
ἀφικόμενος ἐς Δύρτα πόλιν τῶν μὲν ἐνοικούντων οὐδένα
having-arrived at Dyrta city of-the indeed inhabitants no-one
καταλαμβάνει οὐδὲ ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῇ πρὸς τῇ πόλει· ἐς δὲ
he-finds nor in the country the by the city on and
τὴν ὑστεραίαν Νέαρχόν τε καὶ Ἀντίοχον τοὺς χιλιάρχους
the next-day Nearchus both and Antiochus the chiliarchs
τῶν ὑπασπιστῶν ἐκπέμπει·
of-the shield-bearers he-sends-out

30.6 καὶ Νεάρχῳ μὲν τοὺς Ἀγριᾶνας τοὺς ψιλοὺς ἄγειν ἔδωκεν,
and to-Nearchus indeed the Agrianians the light-troops to-lead he-gave
Ἀντιόχῳ δὲ τήν τε αὑτοῦ χιλιαρχίαν καὶ δύο ἐπὶ
to-Antiochus and the both his-own chiliarchy and two in-addition-to
ταύτῃ ἄλλας. ἐστέλλοντο δὲ τά τε χωρία κατοψόμενοι
this others they-were-sent and the both places about-to-survey
καὶ εἴ πού τινας τῶν βαρβάρων ξυλλαβεῖν ἐς ἔλεγχον
and if anywhere some of-the barbarians to-seize for questioning
τῶν κατὰ τὴν χώραν, τῶν τε ἄλλων καὶ μάλιστα
of-the-things in the country of-the both others and most
δὴ τὰ ἀμφὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας ἔμελεν αὐτῷ μαθεῖν.
indeed the-things about the elephants it-was-of-concern to-him to-learn
30.7 αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν ἤδη ἦγε, καὶ ἡ
he-himself and as toward the Indus river already led and the
στρατιὰ αὐτῷ ὡδοποίει τὸ πρόσω ἰοῦσα ἄπορα ἄλλως
army for-him made-a-road the forward going impassable otherwise
ὄντα τὰ ταύτῃ χωρία. ἐνταῦθα ξυλλαμβάνει ὀλίγους τῶν
being the there places there he-seizes a-few of-the
βαρβάρων, καὶ παρὰ τούτων ἔμαθεν, ὅτι οἱ μὲν ἐν
barbarians and from these learned that the indeed in
τῇ χώρᾳ Ἰνδοὶ παρὰ Ἀβισάρῃ ἀποπεφευγότες εἶεν, τοὺς
the country Indians to Abisares having-fled-away were the
δὲ ἐλέφαντας ὅτι αὐτοῦ κατέλιπον νέμεσθαι πρὸς τῷ
but elephants that there they-left to-graze by the
ποταμῷ τῷ Ἰνδῷ· καὶ τούτους ἡγήσασθαί οἱ τὴν ὁδὸν
river — Indus and these to-guide him the road
ἐκέλευσεν ὡς ἐπὶ τοὺς ἐλέφαντας.
he-ordered as toward the elephants
30.8 εἰσὶ δὲ Ἰνδῶν πολλοὶ κυνηγέται τῶν ἐλεφάντων, καὶ
are and of-Indians many hunters of-the elephants and
τούτους σπουδῇ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν εἶχεν Ἀλέξανδρος, καὶ τότε
these zealously around himself kept Alexander and then

ἐθήρα ξὺν τούτοις τοὺς ἐλέφαντας· καὶ δύο μὲν αὐτῶν
he-hunted with these the elephants and two indeed of-them
ἀπόλλυνται κατὰ κρημνοῦ σφᾶς ῥίψαντες ἐν τῇ διώξει,
perish down a-cliff themselves having-thrown in the pursuit
οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ξυλληφθέντες ἔφερόν τε τοὺς ἀμβάτας καὶ
the and others having-been-caught carried both the riders and
τῇ στρατιᾷ ξυνετάσσοντο.
with-the army were-ranked
ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ὕλῃ ἐργασίμῳ ἐνέτυχε παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν, 30.9
when and also timber fit-for-work he-came-upon along the river
καὶ αὕτη ἐκόπη αὐτῷ ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς καὶ ναῦς
also this was-cut for-him by the army and ships
ἐποιήθησαν. καὶ αὗται κατὰ τὸν Ἰνδὸν ποταμὸν ἤγοντο
were-made and these down the Indus river were-brought
ὡς ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν, ἥντινα Ἡφαιστίων καὶ Περδίκκας
as toward the bridge which Hephaestion and Perdiccas
αὐτῷ ἐξῳκοδομηκότες πάλαι ἦσαν.
for-him having-built long-before were